**Printer’s Manuscript of the Book of Mormon, circa August 1829–circa January 1830**

* [Source Note](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#ft-source-note)
* [Historical Introduction](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#ft-historical-intro)

**Document Transcript**

Title Page

[](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#1272667654668886001)The Book of Mormon—— An account written by the hand of Mormon upon plates taken from the plates of Nephi wherefore it is an abridgment of the record of the People of Nephi & also of the Lamanites written to the Lamanites which are a remnant of the house of Israel & also to Jew & Gentile written by way of commandment & also by the spirit of Prophesy & of revelation written & sealed up & hid up unto the Lord that they might not be destroid to come forth by the gift & power of God unto the interpretation thereof sealed by the hand of Moroni & hiid hid up unto the Lord to come forth in due time by the way of Gentile the interpretation thereof by the gift of God an abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also which as <​is​> a record of the People of Jared which were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the People when they were building a tower to get to heaven which is to shew unto the remnant of the house of Israel how great things the Lord hath done for their fathers & that they may know the covenants of the Lord that they are not cast off forever & also to the convinceing of the Jew & Gentile that Jesus is the Christ the Eternal God manifesting himself unto all Nations & now if there be fault it be the mistake of men wherefore condemn not the things of God that ye may be found spotless at the Judgment seat of Christ

—— By Joseph Smith Juniour Author & proprietor

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Northen District of [New York](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#13278244762044901685) } | to wit<​.​> |
|  |  |

Be it remembered that on the eleventh day of June in the fifty third year of the independance of the [United States of America](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#14944265883676764142) A.D 1829 Joseph Smith Junior of the sai said Destrict hath deposited in this office the title of a Book the right whereof he claims a author in the words following to wit

Tthe Book of Mormon. . &.C.—— By Joseph Smith Junor Author & propri <​propriet[or]​>

[R R Lansing](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#6737230034864446350) Cherk of the [United States](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#9036876440002683146) Destrict cort for the Northren District of [New York](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#1322982149805701178) [p. [i]]

[verso blank] [p. [ii]]

Preface

Preface

To the Reader——

As mang fals reports have been Sirculated respecting this <​the following​> work & also many unlawful measures taken by evil desineing persons to destroy me & also the work I would inform you that I translated by the gift & power of God & caused to be written one hundred & sixteen pages the which I took from the Book of Lehi which was an account abridged from the plates of Lehi by the hand of Mormon which said account some person or persons have stolen & kept from me notwithstanding my utmost exersion to recover it again & being commanded of the Lord that I should not translate the same over again for Satan had put it into their hearts to tempt the Lord their God by altering the words that they did read conterary from that which I translated & caused to be written & if I should bring forth the same words again or in other words if I should translate the same over again they would publish that which they had stolen & Satan would stir up the hearts of this generation that they might not receive this work but behold the Lord said unto me I will not suffer that Satan shall accomplish his evil design in this thing therefore thou shalt translate from the plates of Nephi untill yeu ye come to that which ye have translated which ye have retained & behold ye shall publish it as the record of Nephi & thus I will confound those who have altered my words I will not suffer that they shall destroy my work yea I will shew unto them that my wisdom is greater then the cunning of the Devil wherefore to be obediant unto the commands commandments of God I have through his grace & mercy accomplished that which he hath commanded me respecting this thing

I would also inform you that the plates of which hath been spoken was found in the township of [Manchester](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#7761956185367704483) Ontario County New Yorkk

The Author [p. [iii]]

[verso blank] [p. [iv]]

First Nephi, Chapter 1 [1 Nephi 1–5]

The Book of Nephi his reign & ministry. An account of Lehi & his Wife Sariah & his four Sons being called beginning at the eldest Laman Lemuel Sam & Nephi— the Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem because he prophesieth unto the people cocerning their iniquity— & they seek to destroy his life— he taketh three days journey un into the wilderness with his family— Nephi taketh his Brethren & returns to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews— the account of their sufferings— they take the Daughters of Ishmael to wife— they take their families & depart into the wilderness— their sufferings & afflictions in the wilderness— the cours of their travels— they come to the large waters— Nephis Brethren rebelleth against him he confoundeth them & buildeth a ship— they call the place[1](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#5929821997533678410) Bountiful— they cross the large waters into the promised land .&C. this is according to the account of Nephi or in other words I Nephi wrote this record— I Nephi haveing been bor born of goodly parents therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father & haveing seen many afflictions in the cours of my days nevertheless haveing been highly favored of the Lord in all my days yea haveing had a great knowledg of the goodness & the mysteries of God therefore I make a record of my procedings in my days yea I make a record in the language of my father which consists of the learning of the Jews & the language of the Egyptians & I know that the record which I make to be true & I make it with mine own [ha]nd & I make it according to my knowledge [2](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15583393000833206266" \o "Note)for it came to pass in the commencement of the <​first year of the​> reign of Zedekiah King of Judah my father Lehi haveing dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days & in that same year there came many prophits prophesying unto the people that they must repent of or that <​the​> great City Jerusalem must be destroid wherefore it came <​to​> pass that my father Lehi as he went forth prayed unto the Lord yea even with all his heart in behalf of his People & it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord there came a pillar of fire & dwelt upon a rock before him & he saw & heard much & because of the things which he saw & heard he did quake & tremble excedingly & it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem & he cast himself upon his bed being overcome with the spirit & [th]e things which he had seen & being thus overcome with the spirit he was [carried away i]n a vision[3](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18226341540332890950" \o "Note) [even] t[hat] he [sa]w the Heavens op[en] & h[e] tho[u][ght he saw God sitting upon his throne surrounded with numberless] [4](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16666568483420593522" \o "Note) [p. 1] concorses of angels in the attitude of singing & praiseing their God & [it][5](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3441654074160198208" \o "Note) came to pass that he saw one desending out of the midst of Heaven & he beheld that his luster was above that of the Sun at noonday & he also saw twelve others follouing him & their brightness did excede that of the Stars in the firmament & they came down & went forth upon the face of the earth & th[e] first came & stood before my father & gave unto him a Book & bade[6](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "567287165521968327" \o "Note) <​bade​> him that he should <​read it​> & it came to pass that as he read he was filled with the spirit of the Lord & he read saying wo wo unto Jerusalem for I have seen thine abominations yea & many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem that it shoul be destroid & the inhabitants thereof many should perish by the sword & many should be carried away captive into Babylon & it came to pass that when my father had read & saw many great & marvelous things he did exclaim many things unto the Lord such as great & marvelous are thy works O Lord God Almighty thy throne is high in the Heavens & thy power & goodness <​& mercy​> is over all the in habitants of the earth & because thou art merciful thou wilt not Suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish & after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God for his soul did rejoice & his whole heart was filled because of the things which he had seen yea which the Lor[d] had shewn unto him & now I Nephi do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written for he hath written many things which he hath saw in visions & in dreams & he also hath written may things which he prophesyed & spake unto his children which I shall not make a full account but I shall make an account of my procedings in my days behold I make an abridgment of the record of my father upon plates which I have made with m[ine] own hands wherefore after that I have abridged the record of my father of my father then will I make an account of mine own life therefore I would that ye should know that after the Lord had shewn so many <​marvelous​> things unto my father Lehi yea concerning the destruction of Jerusalem behold he went forth among the people & began to prophesy & to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen & heard & it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them for he truly testified of their wickedness & their abominations & he testified that the things which he saw & heard & also the things which he read in the Book manifested plainly of the comeing of a Messiah & also the redemption of the world & when the Jews heard these things they were angery with him yea even as with the prophets of Old whom they had cast out & st[oned][7](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9472755383425535515" \o "Note) [& s]l[a]i[n] & they also sought[8](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7122047425061008433" \o "Note) hi[s lif]e th[a]t they [mi]ght take it [away but] [behold I Nephi will shew unto you that the tender mercies of the lord] [9](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14036000101180365153" \o "Note) [p. 2] is over all them whom he hath chosen because of their faith to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance for behold it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father yea even in a dream & sayeth unto him blessed art thou Lehi because of the things which thou hast done & because thou hast been faithful & declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee behold they seek to take away thy life & it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father even in a dream that he should take his family & depart into the wilderness & it came to pass that he was obediant unto the word of the Lord wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him & it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness & he left his house & the land of his inheritance & his gold & his silver & his precious things & took nothing with him save it were his family & provisions & tents & he departed into the wilderness & he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea & he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which was[10](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11787923662243701376" \o "Note) nearer the Red Sea & he did travel in the wilderness with his family which consisted of my Mother Sariah & my elder Brethren which were Laman Lemuel & Sam & it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness he pitched his tent in a vally beside a river of water & it came to pass & that he built an altar of stones & he made an offering unto the Lord & gave thanks unto the Lord our God & it came to pass that he called the name of the River Laman & it empted into the red Sea & the vally was in the borders near the mouth thereof & when my father saw that the waters of the river empted into the fountain of the red Sea he spake unto Laman Saying O that thou mightest be like unto this river continually runing into the fountain of all righteousness & he also spake unto Lemuel[11](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14658620214410436323" \o "Note) O that thou mightest be like unto this <​vally​> firm & steadfast & immoveable in keeping the commandments of the Lord now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman & Lemuel for behold they did murmur in many things against their father because that he was a visionary <​man​> & that he had lead them out of the land of Jerusalem to leave the land of their inheritance & their gold & their silver & their precious things & to perish in the wilderness & this they said he had done because of the foolish immagionations of his heart & this <​thus​> Laman & Lemuel being the eldest did murmur against their father & they did murmur because they knew knew not the dealings of that God who had created them neither did they believe that Jerusalem that great City could be destroid according to the words of the prophets & they were like unto the Jews which were at Jerusalem which sought to take away the life of my father & it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the vally of Lemuel with power being filled [p. 3] with the spirit untill their frames did shake before him & he did confound them that they derst not utter against him wherefore they did do as he commanded them & my father dwelt in a tent & it came to pass that I Nephi being exceding young nevertheless being large in statture & also haveing great desires to know of the mysteries of God wherefore I did cry unto the Lord & behold he did visit me & did soften my[12](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15556174134714314233" \o "Note) heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father wherefore I did not rebell against him like unto my Brothers & I spake unto Sam makeing known unto him the things which <​t​>he Lord had manifested unto me by his holy spirit & it came to pass that he believed in my words but behold Laman & Lemuel would not hearken unto my words & being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them & it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me saying blessed art thou Nephi because because of thy faith for thou hast sought me diligently with lowliness of heart & in as much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper & shall be lead to a land of promise yea even a land which I have prepared for you yea a land which is choice above of all other lands & in asmuch as thy Brethren shall rebell against thee they shall be cut off from the presance of the Lord & in as much as thou shalt keep my commandments thou shalt be made a ruler & a teacher over thy Brethren for behold in that day that they shall rebell against me I will curse them even with a sore curse & they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebell against me also & if it so be that they rebell against me they shall be a scorge unto thy seed to stir them up in the ways of rememberance & it came to pass that I Nephi returned from speaking with the Lord to the tent of my father & it came to pass that he spake unto me saying behold I have dreamed a dream in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy Brethren shall return to Jerusalem for behold Laban hath the record of the Jews & also a genealogy of my[13](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10912712783334780057" \o "Note) forefathers & they are engraven upon plates of Brass wherefore the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy Brothers should go unto the house of Laban & seek the records & bring them down hither into the wilderness & now behold thy Brothers murmur saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them but behold I have not required it of them but it is a commandment of the Lord therefore go my Son & thou shalt be favoured of the Lord because thou hast not murmured & it came to pass that I Nephi said unto my father I will go & do the things which the Lord hath commanded [p. 4] for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them & it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceding glad for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord & I Nephi & my Brethren took our journey in the wilderness with our tents to go up to the land of Jerusalem & it came to pass that when we had come[14](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8699602686493692048" \o "Note) up to the land of Jerusalem I & my Brethren did consult one with another & we cast lots which of us should go in unto the house of Laban & it came to pass that the lo[t] fell upon Laman & Laman went in unto the house of Laban & he talked with him as he sat in his house & he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of Brass which contained the genealogy of my father & behold it came to pass that Laban was angery & thrust him out from his presance & he would not that he shold have the records wherefore he said unto hism behold thou art a robber & I will slay thee but Laman fled out of his presance & told the things which Laban had done unto us & we began to be exceding sorrowful & my Brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness but behold I said unto them that as the Lord liveth & as we live we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness untill we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us wherefore let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord therefore let us go down to the land of our fathers inheritance for behold he left gold & silver & all manner of riches & all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord[15](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4461261100589199724" \o "Note) for he knowing[16](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14157794075795224469" \o "Note) that Jerusalem must be destroid because of the wickedness of the People for behold they have rejected the words of the prophets wherefore if my father should dwell in the land after that he had <​hath​> been commanded to flee out of the land behold he would also perish wherefore it must needs be that he flee out of the land & behold it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records that we might preserve unto our children the language of our fathers & also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets which have been delivered unto them by the spirit & power of God since the world began even down unto this presants time [17](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11434145014855185523" \o "Note)& it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my Brethren that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord God & it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance & we did gather to gether our gold & our Silver & our precious things & after that we had gathered these things together we went up again unto the house of Laban & it came to pass that we went in unto Laban & desired him that he would give unto us the [p. 5] records which were engraven upon the plates of Brass for which we would give unto him our gold & our silver & all our precious things & it came to pass that when Laban saw our property that it was exceding great he did lust after it insomuch that he thrust us out & sent his servants to slay us that he might obtain our property & it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban & we were obliged to leave behind our property & it fell into the hands of Laban & it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness & the servants of Laban did not overtake us & we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock & it came to pass that Laman was angery with me & also with my father & also was Le[mu]el for he hearkened unto the words of Laman wherefore Laman & Lemuel did speak many hard things <​words​> unto us their younger Brethre◊<​Brothres​> & they did smite us even with a rod & it came to <​pass​> as they smote us with a rod behold an angel of the Lord came & stood before them & he spake unto them saying why do ye smite your younger Brothers with a rod know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you & this because of your iniquities behold thou shalt go up to Jerusalem again & the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands & after that the angel had spake unto us he departed & after that the angel had departed Laman & Lemuel again began to murmur saying how is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban u◊o into our hands behold he is a mighty man & he can command fifty yea even he can slay fifty then why not us & it came to pass that I spake unto my Brethren saying let us go up again unto Jerusalem & let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord for behold he is mightyer then all the earth then why not mightyer then Laban & his fifty yea or even <​then​> his tens of thousands therefore let us go up let us be strong like unto Moses for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea & they divided hither & thither & our fathers came through out of captivity on dry ground & the armies of phar◊a[18](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7125663663786788391" \o "Note) did follow & were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea now behold ye know that this is true & ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you wherefore can ye doubt let us go up the Lord is able to deliver us even as our fathers & to destroy Laban even as the Egytians now when I had spoken these words they was yet wroth & did still continue to murmur nevertheless they did follow me up untill we came without the walls of Jerusalem & it was by night & I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls & after that they had hid themselves I Nephi crept in into the city & went forth towards the house of Laban & I was hid lead by the spirit not knowing beforehand the things which I should do nevertheless I went forth & as I came near unto the house of Laban I beh [p. 6]eld & a man & he had fallen to the earth before me for he was drunken with wine & when I came to him I found that it was Laban & I beheld his sword & I drew it forth from the sheath thereof & the hilt thereof was of pure gold & the workmanship thereof was exceding fine & I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel & it came to pass that I was constrained by the spirit that I should kill Laban but I said in my heart never at any time have I shed the blood of man & I shrunk & would that I might not slay him & the spirit saith unto me again behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands yea & I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life yea & he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord & he also had taken away our property & it came to pass that the spirit said unto me again slay slay him for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes it is better that one man should perish then that a Nation should dwindle & perish in unbelief & now when I Nephi had heard these words I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness saying that in as much as thy seed shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land of promise yea & I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses save they should have the law & I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of Brass & again I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause that I might obtain the records according to his commands commandments therefore I did obey the voice of the spirit & took Laban by the hair of the head & I smote off his head with his own sword & after that I had smote off his head with his own sword I took the garments of Laban & put them upon mine own boddy yea even every whit & I did gird on his armour about my loins & after that I had done this I went in forth unto the treasuary of Laban & as I went forth towards the treasuary of Laban behold I saw the servant of Laban which had the keys of the treasuary & I commanded him in the voice of Laban that he should go with me into the treasuay & he supposeing[19](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11838108169519222699" \o "Note) me to be his master Laban for he beheld the garments & also the sword girted about my loins & he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews he knowing that his master Laban had been out by night among them & I spake unto him as if it had been Laban & I also spake unto him that I should carry the engraveings which were upon the plates of Brass to my elder Brethren which were without the walls & I also bade him that he should follow me & he supposing that I spake of the Brethren of the Church & that I was truly that Laban whom I had slew wherefore he did follow me & he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews as I went forth unto my Brethren which were without the walls [p. 7] & it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was excedingly frightened & also Lemuel & Sam & they fled from before my presance for they supposed it was Laban & that he had slain me & had sought to take away their lives also & it came to pass that I called after them & they did hear me wherefore they did cease to flee from my presance & it came to pass that when the servant of Laban Beheld my Brethren he began to tremble & was about to flee from before me & return to the city of Jerusalem & now I Nephi being a man of large <​in​> stature & also haveing received much strength of the Lord therefore I did seize upon the Servant of Laban & held him that he should not flee & it came to pass that I spake with him that if he would hearken unto my words as the Lord liveth & as I live even so that if he would hearken unto our words we would spare his life & I spake unto him even with an oath that he need not fear that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us & I also spake unto him saying surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing & shall we not be diligent in heark keeping the commandments[20](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5285366339211135146" \o "Note) of the Lord therefore if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us & it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake now Zoram was the name of the Servant & he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto my <​our​>[21](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3097812961524489813" \o "Note) father & he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth now we were desireous that he should tarry with us for this cause that the Jews might not know concerning our flight unto into the wilderness lest they should persue us & destroy us & it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us our fears did cease concerning him & it came to pass that we took the plates of Brass & the servant of Laban & departed into the wilderness & journied unto the tent of our father & it came to pass that after we had came down into the wilderness unto our father behold he was filled with joy & also my B◊other Mother Sariah was exceding glad for she truly had mourned because of us for she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness & she also had complained against my father telling him that he was a visionary man saying behold thou hast lead us forth from the land of our inheritance & my sons are no more & we perish in the wilderness & after this manner of language had my Mother complained against my father & it had came to pass that my father spake unto her saying I know that I am a visionary man for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God but had tarried at Jerusalem & had perished with my Brethren but Behold I have obtained a land of promise inthewhich things I do rejoice yea & I know that the Lord will deliver my Sons out of the hands of Laban & bring ◊o them down again unto us in the wilderness & after this manner of language did my father Lehi [p. 8] comfort my Mother Mother Sariah concening us while we journied in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem to obtain the record of the Jews & when we had returned to the tent of my father behold their joy was full & my Mother was comforted & she spake saying now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee unto into the wilderness yea & I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons & delivered them out of the hands of Laban & gave them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them & after this manner of la[ng]uage did she speak & it came to pass that they did rejoice excedingly & did offer sacrifice & burnt offerings unto the Lord & they gave thanks unto the God of Israel & after <​that​> they had given thanks unto the God of Israel my father Lehi took the records which were engraven upon the plates of Brass & he did search them from the beginning & he beheld that they did contain the five Books of Moses which gave an acco[u]nt of the creation of the world & also of Adam & Eve which was our first parents & also a record of the Jews from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah King of Judah & also the prophesies of the holy prophets from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah & also many prophesies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah & it came to pass that my father Lehi also found upon the plates of Brass a genealogy of his fathers wherefore he knew that he was a decendant of Joseph yea even that Joseph which was the Son of Jacob which was sold into Egypt & which was preserved by the hand of the Lord that he might preserve his father Jacob & all his household from perishing with famine & they were also lead out of captivity & out of the land of Egypt by that same God who had preserved them & thus my father Lehi did discover the genealogy of his fathers & Laban also was a decendant of Joseph wherefore he & his fathers had kept the records & now when my father saw all these things he was filled with the spirit & began to prophesy concerning his seed that these plates of Brass should go forth unto all Nations Kindreds tongues & people which were of his seed wherefore he said that these plates of Brass should never perish neither should they be dimed any more by time & he prophesied many things concerning his seed & it came to pass that thus far I & my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us & we had obtained the record which the Lord had commanded us us & searched them & found that they were desireable yea even of great worth unto us insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our Children wherefore it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us as we journied in the wilderness towards the land of promise.——

First Nephi, Chapter 2 [1 Nephi 6–9]

Chapter 2.d.

And now I Nephi do not give the genealogy of my father<​s​> in this part of [p. 9] my record neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father wherefore I do not write it in this work for it sufficeth me to say that we are a decendant <​of Joseph​> & it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give to give a full account of all the things of my father for they cannot be written upon these plates for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God for the fullness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jaco[b] & be saved wherefore the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write b[u]t the things which are pleasing unto God & unto them which are not of the world wherefore I shall give commandment unto my seed that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men & now I would that ye might know that after my father Lehi had madean end of prophesying concerning his seed it came to pass that the Lord spake un unto him again saying[22](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9756940497378506440" \o "Note) that it was not mete for him Lehi that he should take his family into the wilderness alone but that his Sons should take daughters to wife that they[23](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8727866288250603175" \o "Note) might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise & it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I Nephi & my Brethren should again return unto into[24](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6207495514113718399" \o "Note) the land of Jerusalem & bring down Ishmael & his family into the wilderness & it came to pass that I Nephi did again with my Brethren go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem & it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael & we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord & it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael & also his household[25](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9904974879668674284" \o "Note) insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father & it came to pass that as we journied in the wilderness behold Laman & Lemuel & two of the daughters of Ishmael & the two Sons of Ishmael & their families did rebell against us yea against I Nephi & Sam & their father Ishmael & his sons wife & his three Sons other daughters & it came to pass in the which rebellion they were desireous to return unto the land of Jerusalem & now I Nephi being grieved for the hardness of their hearts therefore I spake unto them saying yea even unto Laman & <​unto​> Lemuel behold thou art mine elder Brethren & how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts & so blind in your minds that ye have need that I your younger Brother should speak unto you yea & set an example for you how is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord how is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord yea & how is it that ye have forgot how great things the Lord hath done for us in delivering us out of the [p. 10] hands of Laban & also that we should obtain the record yea & how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will for the children of men if it so be that they exercise faith in him wherefore let us be faithful in him & if it so be that we are faithful in him we shall obtain the land of promise & ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled for behold the <​spirit <​of​> the​>[26](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5052426077089101962" \o "Note) Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them for behold they have rejected the prophets & Jeremiah have they cast into prison & they have sought to take away the life of my father insomuch that they have driven him out of the land now behold I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them & now if ye have choice go up to the land & remember the words which I speak unto you that if ye go ye will also perish for thus the spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak & it came to pass that when I Nephi had spoken these words unto my Brethren they were angery with me & it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me for behold they were exceding wroth & they did bind me with cords for they sought to take away my life that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts but it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord saying O Lord according to my faith which is in thee[27](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8629831275021523385" \o "Note) wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my Brethren yea even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound & it came to pass that when I had said these words behold the bands were loosed from off my hands & feet & I stood before my Brethren & I spake unto them again & it came to pass & I stood before m) that they were angery with me again & sought to lay hands upon me but behold one of the daughters of Ishmael yea & also her Mother & one of the Sons of Ishmael did plead with my Brethren insomuch that they did soften their hearts & they did cease striveing to take away my life & it came to pass that they were sorrowful because of their wickedness insomuch that they did bow down before me & did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me & it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done & I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness & it came to pass that they did so & after that they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey toward the tent of our father & it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father & after that I & my Brethren & all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father they did give thanks unto the Lord their God & they did offer sacrifice[28](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18134942526020169553" \o "Note) & burnt offerings unto him & it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner [p. 11] of seeds of every kind both of grain of every kind & also of the seeds of fruits of every kind & it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us saying behold I have dreamed a dream or in other words I have seen a vision & behold because of the thing which I have seen I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi & also of Sam for I have reason to suppose that they & also many of their seed will be saved but behold Laman & Lemuel I fear excedingly because of you for behold me[29](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5865535175227957409" \o "Note) <​me​>thought I saw a dark & dreary wilderness & it came to pass that I saw a man & he was drest <​dressed​> in a white robe & he came & stood before me & it came to pass that he spake unto me & said bade me follow him & it came to pass that as I followed him & after I had followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark & dreary waste & after that I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me according to the multitude of his tender mercies & it came to pass that after I had prayed unto the Lord behold beheld a large & spacious field & it came to pass that I beheld a tree whose fruit was desireable to make one happy & it came to pass that I did go forth & partook of the fruit thereof & I beheld that it was most sweet above all that I ever had before tasted yea & I beheld that the fruit thereof was white to excede all the whiteness that I had ever seen & as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceding great joy wherefore I began to be desireous that my family should partake of it also for I knew that it was desireous above all other fruit & as I cast my eyes round about that perhaps I might discover my family also & I beheld a river of water & it ran along & it was near the tree of which I was partakeing the fruit & I looked to behold from whence it came & I saw the head thereof a little way off & at the head thereof I beheld your Mother Sariah & Sam & Nephi & they stood as if they knew not whither they should go & it came to pass that I beckened unto them & I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me & partake of the fruit which was desireable above all other fruit & it came to pass that they did come unto me & partake of the fruit <​also​> & it came to pass that I was desireous that Laman & Lemuel should come & partake of the fruit also wherefore I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river that perhaps I might see them & it came to pass that I saw them but they would not come unto me[30](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17502985129921485288" \o "Note) & I beheld a rod of iron & it extended along the bank of the river & lead to the tree by which I stood & I also beheld a strait[31](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10323806889682921894" \o "Note) & narrow path which came along by the rod of iron even to the tree by which I stood & it also lead by the head of the fountain unto a large & spacious field as if it had [p. 12] been a world & I saw numberless concourses of People many of whom were pressing forward that they might obtain the path which lead unto the tree by which I stood & it came to pass that they did come forth & commence in the path which lead to the tree & it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness yea even an exceding great mist of darkness insomuch that they which had commenced in the path did loose <​lose​> their way that they wandered off & were lost & it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward & they came forth & caught hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did press forward through the mist<​s​> of darkness clinging to the rod of iron even untill they did come forth & partake <​partook​> of the fruit of the tree & after that they had partook of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed & I also cast my eyes round about & behold[32](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5195495370743387977" \o "Note) on the other side of the river of water a great & spacious building & it stood as it were in the air high above the earth & it was filled with People both old & young both male & feemale & their manner of dress was exceding fine & they were in the attitude <​of​> mocking & pointing their fingers towards those which had came at[33](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3583508485084499568" \o "Note) & were partakeing of the fruit & after that they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed because of those that were a scoffing at them & they fell away into forbidden paths & were lost & <​now​> I Nephi do not speak all the words of my father but be to be short in writing behold he saw other multitude<​s​> pressing forward & they came & cought hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did press their way forward continually holding fast to the rod of iron untill they came forth & fell down & partook of the fruit of the tree & he also saw other multitudes feeling[34](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7337516086826405099" \o "Note) their way towards that great & spacious building & it came to pass that many were drowned in the debths of the fountain & many were lost from his view wandering in strange roads & great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building & after that they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me & those that were partakeing of the fruit also but we beheld <​headed​> heeded them not these are[35](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7919008875738582232" \o "Note) the words of my father for <​as​> many as heeded them had fallen away & Laman & Lemuel partook not of the fruit saith my father & it came to pass that after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision which were many he said unto us because of these things which he saw in a vision he excedingly feared <​for Laman & Lemuel yea he <​feared​>​> lest they should be cast off from the presance of the Lord & he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent that they would hearken to his words in that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them & not cast them off yea my father did preach unto them & after that he had preached unto them & also prophesied unto them of many things he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord & he did cease speaking unto them & all these things did my father see & hear & speak as he dwelt in a tent in the vally of Lemuel & also a great many more things which cannot be written upon these plates & now as I have spoken concerning these plates behold they are not the plates upon which I make a [p. 13] full account of the history of my people for the plates upon which I make a full account of my People I have given the name of Nephi wherefore they are called the plates of Nephi after mine own name & these plates also are called the plates of Nephi nevertheless I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my People & upon the other Plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the Kings & the wars & contentions of my People wherefore these Plates are for the more part of the ministry & the other Plates are for the more part of the reign of the Kings & the wars & contentions of my People wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him which purpose I know not but the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning wherefore he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men for behold he hath all power unto the fulfiling of all his words & thus it is Amen.

First Nephi, Chapter 3 [1 Nephi 10–14]

Chapt [blank]—— And now I Nephi procede to give an account upon these plates of my procedings[36](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4623360402666658382" \o "Note) & my reign & ministry wherefore to procede with mine account I must speak somewhat of the things of my father & also of my Brethren for behold it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream & also of exhorting them to all diligence he spake unto them concerning the Jews how that after they were destroied yea even that great City Jerusalem & that many were carried away captive into Babylon that according to the own due time of the Lord they should return again yea even[37](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12882580622402511311" \o "Note) be brought back out of Captivity & after they are brought back out of Captivity to posess again the land of their inheritance[38](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16078887683393385197" \o "Note) yea even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem a Prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews yea even a Messiah or in other words a saviour of the world & he also spake concerning the Prophets how great a number had testified of these things concerning this Messiah of which he had spoken or this Redeemer of the world wherefore all mankind was in a lost & in a fallen state & ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer & he spake also concerning a Prophet which should come before the Messiah to prepare the way of the Lord yea even he should go forth & cry in the wilderness prepare ye the way of the Lord & make his paths strait for there standeth one among you whom ye know not & he is mightyer then I whose shoes latchet I am not worthy to unloose & much spake my father concerning this thing & my father saith that he should Baptise in Bethebara beyond Jordan & he also spake that he should Baptise with water yea even that he should Baptise the Messiah with water & after that he had Baptised the Messiah with water he should behold & bear record that he had Baptised the Lamb of God which should take away the sin<​s​>[39](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4624361259764233267" \o "Note) of the world & it came to pass that after my father had spoken these words these words he spake unto my Brethren concerning the Gospel which should be preached among the Jews & also concerning the dwindleing of [p. 14] the Jews in unbelief & after that they had Slain the Messiah which should come & after that he had been slain he should rise from the dead <​dead​> & should make himself manifest by the Holy Ghost unto the Gentiles yea even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles & also concerning the House of Israel that they should be compared like unto an Olive tree whose branches should be broken off & should be scattered upon all the face of the earth wherefore he said it must needs be that we should be[40](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5762534235963618669" \o "Note) lead with one accord into the <​land of​> promised land unto the fulfiling of the word of the Lord that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth & after that the House of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered togethered again or in fine that after the Gentiles had received the fullness of the Gospel the natural branches of the Olive tree or the remnants of the house of Israel should be grafted in or come to the Knowledge of the true Messiah their Lord & their Redeemer & after this manner of language did my father Prophesy & speak unto my Brethren & also many more things which I do not write in this Book for I have written as many of them as are <​were​> expediant for me in mine other Book & all these things of which I have spoken was done as my father dwelt in a tent in the vally of Lemuel [41](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1861665406741216729" \o "Note)& it came to pass that after I Nephi haveing heard all the word<​s​> of my father concerning the things which he saw in a vision & also the things which he spake by the Power of the Holy Ghost which power he received by faith on the the Son of God & the Son of God was the Messiah which should come & it came to pass that I Nephi was desireous also that I might see & hear & know of these things by the power of the holy Ghost which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the Children of men for he is the same yesterday today & forever & the way is prepared[42](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "25768402534922674" \o "Note) from the foundation of the world if it So be that they repent & come unto him for he that diligently seeketh shall find & the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto him <​them​> by the power of the holy Ghost as well in this time[43](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1047498815520674952" \o "Note) as in times of old & as well in times of old as in times to come wherefore the Course of the Lord is one eternal round therefore remember O man for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into Judgment wherefore if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation then ye are found unclean before the Judgment seat of God & no unclean thing can dwell with God wherefore ye must be cast off forever & the holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things & deny them not [44](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4431826730179961148" \o "Note)for it came to pass that after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen & believeing that the Lord was able to mak<​e​> [p. 15] them known unto me wherefore as I sat pondering in mine heart I was Caught away in the spirit of the Lord yea into an exceding high mountain[45](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6409161624830586474" \o "Note) which I never had before seen & upon which I never had before sat my foot & the spirit saith unto me behold what desirest thou & I saith I desire to behold the things which my father saw & the spirit saith unto me believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken & I said yea thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father [46](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8618579946494471967" \o "Note)& when I had spoken <​spake​> these words the spirit cried with a loud voice saying Hosanna to the Lord the most high God for he is God over all the earth yea even above all & blessed art thou Nephi because thou believest in the Son of the most high God wherefore[47](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2273795397630075069" \o "Note) thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired & behold & behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted thou shalt also behold a man decending out of Heaven & him shall ye witness & after that ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God & it came to pass that the spirit saith unto me look & I looked & beheld a tree & it was like unto the tree which my father had seen & the beauty thereof was far beyond yea exceding of all beauty & the whiteness thereof did excede the whiteness of the driven snow & it came to pass that after <​that​> I had seen the tree I said unto the spirit I behold thou hast shewn unto me the tree which is precious[48](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16096963787048876778" \o "Note) above all & he saith unto me what desirest thou & I said unto him to know the interpretation thereof for I spake unto him as a man speaketh for I beheld that he was in the form of a man yet nevertheless I knew that it was the spirit of the Lord & he spake unto me as a man speaketh unto <​with​> another & it came to pass that he said unto me look & I looked as if to look upon him & I saw him not for he had gone from before my presance & it came to pass that I looked & beheld the great City Jerusalem & also other Cities & I beheld the City of Nazareth & in the City of Nazareth I beheld a virgin & she was exceding fair & white & it came to pass that I saw the heavens open & an Angel came down & stood before me & he saith unto me Nephi what beholdest thou & I saith unto him a virgin most beautiful & fair above all other virgins & he saith unto me knowest thou the condecention of God & I said unto him I know that he loveth his Children nevertheless I do not know the meaning of all things & he said unto me behold the virgin which thou seest is the Mother of God after the manner of the flesh & it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the spirit & after that she had been Carried away in the spir [p. 16] spirit for the space of a time the Angel spake unto me saying look & I looked & beheld the virgin again bearing a Child in her arms & the Angel said unto me behold the Lamb of God yea even the eternal God Father[49](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2190394280250492162" \o "Note) knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw & I answered him saying yea it is the love of God which shedeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men wherefore it is the most desireable above all things & he spake unto me saying yea & the most joyous to the soul & after that he had said these words he said unto me look & I looked & I beheld the Son of God agoing forth among the Children of men & <​&​> I saw many fall down at his feet & worship him & it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of Iron which my father had seen was the word of God which lead to the fountain of liveing waters or to the tree of life which waters are a representation of the love of God & I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God & the Angel said unto me aga[i]n look & behold the condsention of God & I looked & beheld the redeemer of the world of which my father had spoken & I also beheld the Prophet which should prepare the way before him & the Lamb of God went forth & was Baptised of him & after that he was Baptised I beheld the Heavens open & the holy Ghost come down out of heaven & abode upon him in the form of a dove & I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the People in power & great glory & the multitudes were gathered together to hear him & I beheld that they cast him out from among them & I also beheld twelve others following him & it came to pass that they were carried away in the spirit from before my face that I saw them not & it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again saying look & I looked & I beheld the heavens open again & I saw angels decending upon the Children of men & they did minister unto them & he spake unto me again saying look & I looked & I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men & I beheld multitudes of People which were sick & which were afflicted of all manner of deseases & with Devils & unclean spirits & the Angel spake & shewed all these things unto me & they were healed by the Power of the Lamb of God & the Devils & the unclean spirits were cast out & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me again saying look & I looked & beheld the Lamb of God that he was taken by the People yea the everlasting God[50](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8263794062559580367" \o "Note) was Judged of the world & I saw & bear[51](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12332883186857090253" \o "Note) record & I Nephi saw that he was lifted up upon the Cross & slain for the Sins of the world & after that he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth that they were gathered together to fight against the Apostles of the [p. 17] Lamb for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord & the multitude of the earth was gathered together & I beheld that they were in a large & a spacious building like unto the building which my father saw & the Angel of the Lord spake unto me again saying behold the world & the wisdom thereof yea behold the House of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve Apostles of the Lamb & it came to pass that I saw & bear[52](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14849784501285101772" \o "Note) record that the great & spacious building was the pride of the world & it fell & the fall[53](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14023142099986615263" \o "Note) thereof was exceding great & the Angel of the Lord spake unto me again saying thus shall be the destruction of all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People that shall fight against the twelve Apostles of the Lamb & it came to pass that the Angel said unto me look & behold thy seed & also the seed of thy brethren & I looked & beheld the band the land of promise & I beheld multitudes of People yea even as it were in number as many as the sand of the Sea & it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered togethered to Battle <​one​> against the other & I beheld wars & rumors of wars & great slaughters with the sword among my People & it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away after the manner of wars & contentions in the land & I beheld many Cities yea even that I did not number them & it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise & I saw lightnings & I heard thunderings & earthquakes & all manner of tumultuous noises & I saw the earth & the rocks that they rent[54](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11066309204702495142" \o "Note) & I saw mountains tumbling into pecies & I saw the plains of the earth that they were broken up & I saw many Cities that they were sunk & I saw many that they were burned with fire & I saw many that they did tumble to the earth because of the quakeing thereof & it came to pass that after I saw these things I saw the vapor of darkness that it passed from off the face of the earth & behold I saw multitudes which had fallen[55](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5459140477818446971" \o "Note) because of the great & terrible Judgments of the Lord & I saw the Heavens open & the Lamb of God decending out of Heaven & he came down & shewed himself unto them & I also saw & bear[56](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5737180364061494373" \o "Note) record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others & they were ordained of God & chosen & the Angel spake unto me saying behold the twelve Desiples of the Lamb which are chosen to minister unto thy seed & he saith unto me thou remembereth the twelve Apostles of the Lamb behold they are they which shall Judge the twelve tribes of Israel wherefore the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be Judged of them for ye are of the house of Israel & these twelve ministers which thou beholdest shall [p. 18] Judge thy seed & behold they are righteous forever for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood & the Angel saith unto me look & I looked & beheld their <​three​> garments <​generations​> did pass away in righteousness & their garments were white like even like unto the Lamb of God & the Angel said unto me these are made white in the blood of the Lamb because of their faith in him & I Nephi also saw many of the fourth Generation which did pass away in righteousness & it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together & the Angel said unto me behold thy seed & also the seed of thy Brethren & it came to pass that I looked & beheld the People of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my Brethren & they were gathered together to battle & the Angel spake unto me saying behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw yea even the river <​of​> which he spake & the debths thereof are the debths of hell & the mists of darkness are the temptations of the Devil which blindeth the eyes & hardeneth the hearts of the children of men & leadeth them away into broad roa roads that[57](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11571688398045859692" \o "Note) they may perish[58](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11690475296044537606" \o "Note) & are lost & the large & spacious building which thy father saw is vain imagionations & the pride of the Children of men & a great & a terrible gulf divideth them yea even the word[59](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17692644746655292655" \o "Note) of the Justice of the Eternal God & Jesus Christ[60](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16280928505770096068" \o "Note) which is the Lamb of God of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record from the beginning of the world untill this time & from this time hence forth & forever & while the Angel spoke these words I beheld & saw that the seed of my Brethren did contend against my seed according to the word of the Angel & because of the pride of my seed & the temptations of the Devil I beheld that the seed of my Brethren did overpower the People of my seed & it came to pass that I beheld & saw the People of the seed of my Brethren that they had overcome my seed & they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land & I saw them gathered together in multitudes & I saw wars & rumours of wars among them & in wars & rumors of wars I saw many Generations pass away & the Angel said unto me behold these shall dwindle in unbelief & it came to pass that I beheld that after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark & loathsome & a filthy People full of idleness & all manner of abominations & it came to pass that the angel spake unto me saying look & I looked & beheld may <​many​> Nations & Kingdoms & the Angel saith unto me what beholdest thou & I said I behold many Nations & Kingdoms & he saith unto me these are the Nations & Kingdoms of the Gentiles & it came to pass that I saw among the Nations of the Gentiles the foundation[61](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17909083537909667730" \o "Note) of a great church & the Angel said unto me behold the foundation[62](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9804247470483831586" \o "Note) of a church which is most abominable above all other churches which slayeth the Saints of God yea & tortereth them & bindeth them down & [p. 19] yoketh them with a yoke of iron & bringeth them down into captivity & it came to pass that I beheld this great & abominable <​Church​> & I saw the Devil that he was the founder of it & I also saw gold & silver & silks & scarlots & fine twined linnen & all manner of precious cloathing & I saw many Harlots & the Angel spake unto me saying behold the gold & the silver & the silks & the scarlots & the fine twined linnen & the precious cloathing & the Harlots are the desires of this great & abominable Church & also for the pride <​praise​> of the world do they destroy the saints of God & bring them [63](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1269039037375089687" \o "Note)down into captivity & it came to pass that I looked & beheld many waters & they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my Brethren & it came to pass that the Angel saith unto me behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy Brethren & I looked & beheld a man among the Gentiles which was[64](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6397132369299696135" \o "Note) seperated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters & I beheld the spirit of God that it came down & & wrought upon the man & he went forth upon the wat many waters even unto the seed of my Brethren which were in the promised land & it came to pass that I beheld the spirit of God that it wrought upon other Gentiles & they went forth out of captivity upon the many waters & it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise & I beheld & I beheld the wrath of God that it was upon the seed of my Brethren & they were scattered before the Gentiles & they were smitten & I beheld the spirit of the Lord that it was upon the Gentiles that they did prosper & obtain the land for[65](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1372762379853751882" \o "Note) their inheritance & I beheld that they were white & exceding fair & beautiful like unto my People before that they were slain & it came to pass that I Nephi beheld that the Gentiles which had gone forth <​out​> of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord & the power of the Lord was with them & I beheld that their Mother Gentiles was with them gathered together upon the waters & upon the land also to battle against them & I beheld that the power of God was with them & also that the wrath of God was upon all them that were gathered together against them to battle & I Nephi beheld that the Gentiles which had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other Nations & it came to pass that I Nephi beheld that they did prosper in the Land & I beheld a Book & it was carred forth among them & the Angel saith unto me knowest thou the meaning of the Book & I saith unto him[66](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5411783469468456345" \o "Note) I know not & he sayeth unto me <​behold​> it procedideth out of the <​the​> mouth of a Jew & I Nephi beheld it & he saith unto me the Book which thou beholdest is a record of the Jews which contains the Covenants of the Lord which he hath made unto the House of Israel & it also containeth many of the Prophesies of the Holy Prophets & it is a record like unto the engraveings which are upon the plates of Brass save there are not so many nevertheless they contain the [p. 20] Covenants of the Lord which he hath made unto the House of Israel wherefore they are of great worth unto the Gentiles & the Angel of the Lord said unto me thou hast beheld that the Book proceded forth from the mouth of a Jew & when it proceded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the planeness[67](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7902131992749687452" \o "Note) of the Gospel of the Lord[68](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2525099398560350866" \o "Note) of whom the twelve Apostles bear[69](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4653882091747411934" \o "Note) record & they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God wherefore these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles according to the truth which is in God & after that they go forth by the hand of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb from the Jews unto the Gentiles behold after this thou seest the foundation of a[70](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11451451848151873766" \o "Note) great & abominable Church which is the most abominable above all[71](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15994783379734986500" \o "Note) other Churches for behold they have taken away from the Gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain & most precious & also many Covenants of the Lord have they taken away & all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord that they might blind the eyes & hearden the hearts of the children of men wherefore thou seest that after the Book hath gone forth through the hands of the great & abominable Church that there are many plain & precious[72](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3788216076798382428" \o "Note) things taken away from the Book which is the Book of the Lamb of God & after that these plane & precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles[73](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15896887437236898258" \o "Note) & after it goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles yea even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity & thou seest because of the many plain & precious things which have been taken out of the Book which were plain unto the <​understanding of the​> children of men according to the planeness which is in <​the​> Lamb of God &[74](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10275176533240959860" \o "Note) because of these things which are taken away out of the Gospel of the Lamb & an exceding great many do stumble yea insomuch that Satan hath great power over them nevertheless thou beholdest that the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity & have been lifted up by the power of God above all other Nations upon the face of the Land which is choice above all other lands which is the land which[75](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1442077782420401630" \o "Note) the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the Land of their inheritance wherefore thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed which is among thy Brethren neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy Brethren neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful <​state of​> state of woundedness[76](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11237690554922211558" \o "Note) which thou beholdest that they are in because of the plain & most precious parts of the Gospel of the Lamb which hath been kept back by that abominable Church whose formation thou hast seen wherefore saith the Lamb of God I will be merciful unto the Gentiles [p. 21] unto the visiting of the remnant of the House of Israel in great Judgment & it came to pass that the Angel of the Lord spake unto me saying behold saith the Lamb of God after that I have visited the remnant of the House of Israel & this remnant of which I speak is the seed of thy father wherefore after that I have visited them in Judgment & smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles & after that the Gentiles do stumble excedingly because of the most plain & precious parts of the Gospel of the Lamb which hath been kept back by that abominable Church which is the Mother of Harlots saith the Lamb wherefore I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day saith the Lamb insomuch that I will bring forth unto them in mine own power much of my Gospel which shall be plain & precious saith the Lamb for behold saith the Lamb I will manifest myself unto thy seed that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them which shall be plain & precious & after that thy seed shall be destroid & dwindle in unbelief & also the seed of thy Brethren behold these things shall be hid up to come forth unto the Gentiles by the gift & power of the Lamb & in them shall be written my Gospel saith the Lamb & my Rock & my Salvation & blessed are they which shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day for they shall have the gift & the power of the Holy Ghost & if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day & shall be saved in the everlasting Kingdom of the Lamb yea whoso shall publish peace that shall publish tidings of great joy how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be & it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my Brethren & also the Book of the Lamb of God which had proced<​ed​> forth from the mouth of the Jew & I beheld that it came forth from the Genteles unto the remnant of the seed of my Brethren & after it had come forth unto them I beheld other Books which Came forth by the power of the Lamb un from the Gentiles unto them unto the Convinceing of the gentiles & the remnant of the seed of my Brethren & also to the Jews which were scattered upon all the face of the earth that the records of the prophets & of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb are true & the Angel spake unto me saying these last records which thou hast seen among the Gentiles shall establish the truth of the first which is[77](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1934325381848369940" \o "Note) of the twelve Apostles of <​the​> Lamb & shall make known the plain & precious things which have been taken away from them & shall make known unto all Kindreds Tongues & People that the Lamb of God is the eternal Father & the saviour of the world & that all men must Come unto him or they cannot be saved & they must come accoding to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb & the words of the [p. 22] Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed as well as in the records of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb wherefore they both shall be established in one for there is one God & one Shepherd over all the earth & the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all Nations both unto the Jews & also unto the Gentiles & after that he hath manifested himself unto the Jews & also unto the Gentiles then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles & also unto the Jews & the last shall be first & the first shall be last & it shall come to pass that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word & also in Power in verry deed unto the takeing away of their stumbleing Blocks if it so be that they hearden not their hearts against the Lamb & if it so be that they hearden their hearts against the Lamb of God they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father yea they shall be numbered among the House of Israel & they shall be a blest People upon the promised land forever they shall <​be​> no more brought down into captivity & the House of Israel shall no more be confounded & that great pit which hath been diged for them by that great & abominable Church which was founded by the Devil & his Children that he might lead away the Souls of men down to Hell yea that great pit which hath been diged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who diged it unto their utter destruction saith the Lamb of God not the destruction of the Soul save it be the casting of it into that Hell which hath no end for behold this is according to the captivity of the Devil & also according to the Justice of God upon all those who will work wickedness & abomination before him & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me Nephi saying thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them & thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the House of Israel & thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish therefore wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they hearden their hearts against the Lamb of God for the time cometh saith the Lamb of God that I will work a great & a marvelous work among the children of men a work which shall be everlasting either on the one hand or on the other either to the convinceing of them unto peace & life eternal or unto the deliverance of them to the heardness of their hearts & the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity & also unto destruction both temporally & spiritually according to the captivity of the Devil of which I have spoken & it came to pass that when the Angel had spoken these words he saith unto me remember thou the covenants of the Father unto the House of Israel I saith unto him yea & it came to pass that he sayeth unto me look & behold that great & abominable Church which is the Mother of abominations whose founder[78](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "280730226284804135" \o "Note) is the Devil & he saith unto me behold there is save it be two churches the one is the church of the Lamb of God & the other is the Church of the Devil wherefore whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great Church which is the Mother of abominations & she is the whoar of all the earth & it came to pass that I looked & beheld the whore of all the earth & she sat upon many waters & she had dominion over all the earth among all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People & it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God & its numbers were few because of the wickedness & abominations of the whore which sat upon many waters nevertheless I beheld that the church of the Lamb which were the Saints of God were also upon all the face of the earth & their dominion[79](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9359230189147936800" \o "Note) upon the face of the earth were small because of the wickedness of the great whore which I saw & it came to pass that I behed beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together in multitudes[80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3008348332873141626" \o "Note) upon the face of all the earth among all the Nations of the Gentiles to fight against the Lamb of God & it came to pass that I Nephi beheld the power of the Lamb of the God that it decended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb & upon the covenant people of the Lord which were scattered upon all the face of the earth & they were armed with righteousness & with the power of God in great glory & it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon the[81](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12192999966685245804" \o "Note) great & abominable church insomuch that there were wars & rumors of wars among all the Nations & Kindreds of the earth & as there began to be wars & rumors of wars among all the Nations which belonged to the mother off abominations the Angel spake unto me saying behold the wrath of God is upon the Mother of Harlots & behold thou seest all these things & when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the Mother of Harlots which is the great & abominable church of all the earth whose founder is the Devil then at that day the work of the Father shall commence in prepareing the way for the fulfiling of his covenants which he hath made to his People which are of the House of Israel & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me saying look & I looked & beheld a man & he was dressed dressed in a white robe & the Angel said unto me behold one of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb behold he shall see & write the remainder of [p. 24] these things yea & also many things which have been & he shall also write concerning the end of the world wherefore the things which he shall write are just & true & behold they are written in the Book which thou beheld proceding out of the mouth of the Jew & at the time they proceded out of the mouth of the Jew or at the time the Book proceded out of the mouth of the Jew the things which were written were plain & pure & most precious & easy to the understanding of all men & behold the things which this Apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen & behold th behold the remainder shalt thou see but the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write for the Lord God hath ordained the Apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them & also others which have been to them hath he shown all things & they have written them & they are sealed up to come forth in their purity according to the truth which is in the Lamb in the own due time of the Lord unto the House of Israel [82](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11062899432907988028" \o "Note)& I Nephi heard & bear[83](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14976424792261632043" \o "Note) record that the name of the Apostle of the Lamb was John according to the word of the Angel & behold I Nephi am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw & heard[84](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12502237367169196088" \o "Note) wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me & I have not written but a small part of the things which I saw & <​I​> bear record that I saw the things which my father Saw & the Angel of the Lord did make them known unto me & now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit & if all the things which I saw are not true written the things which I have written are true & thus it is Amen

First Nephi, Chapter 4 [1 Nephi 15]

Chapter I[85](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "752764854880667652" \o "Note)

And it came to pass that after I Nephi had been carreid away in the spirit & seen all these things I returned to the tent of my father & it came to pass that I beheld my Brethren & they were disputeing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them for he truly spake many great things unto them which was hard to be understood save a man should enqure of the Lord & they being hard in their hearts therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they had ought & now I Nephi was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts & also because of the things which I had seen & knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men [86](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10322720469676519612" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all because of the destructions[87](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5807585658730297496" \o "Note) of my People for I had[88](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1539956447823716012" \o "Note) beheld their fall fall[89](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16548248946947346639" \o "Note) [p. 25] [90](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "327422381320645540" \o "Note)& it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my Brethren desireing to know of them the cause of their disputeations & they said behold we cannot understand the words of <​which​> our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the Olive tree & also concerning the Gentiles & I said unto them have ye enquired of the Lord & they said unto me we have not for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us behold I said unto them how is it that ye do not keep the Commandments of the Lord how is it that ye will perish because of the hardness of your hearts do ye not remember the things which[91](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15949242097407687071" \o "Note) the Lord hath said if ye will not harden your hearts & ask me in faith believeing that ye shall receive with diligence in keeping my commandments surely these things shall be made known unto you [92](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8134713489388991966" \o "Note)behold I say unto you that the House of Israel was compared unto an Olive tree by the spirit of the Lord which was in our fathers[93](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1442244248443167825" \o "Note) & behold & are we not broken off from the House of Israel & are we not a branch of the House of Israel & now the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fullness of the Gentile<​s​> is that in the latter day<​s​> when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief yea for the space of many years & many Generations after that the Messiah hath manifested himself in body unto the Children of men then shall the fullness of the Gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles & from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed & at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the House of Israel & that they are the covenant People of the <​Lord​> & then shall they know & come to the knowledge of their forefathers & also to the knowledge of the Gospel of their redeemer which was ministered unto their fathers by him wherefore they shall come to the knowledge of their redeemer & the verry points of his doctrine that they may know how to come unto him & be saved & then at that day will they not rejoice & give praise unto their everlasting God their Rock & their Salvation yea at that day will they not receive strength & nourishment from the true vine yea will they not come unto the true fold of God behold I say unto you yea they shall be remembered[94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2714096005041090886" \o "Note) again among the House of Israel they shall be gathered grafted in being a natural branch of the Olive tree into the true Olive tree & this is what our father meaneth & he meaneth that it will not come to pass untill after that they are scattered by the Gentiles & he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles that the Lord may shew his power unto the Gentiles [p. 26] for the verry reason <​cause​> that he shall be rejected of the Jews or of the House of Israel wherefore our father hath not spoken of our seed alone but also of all the House of Israel pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the Kindreds of the earth be blessed [95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "843154438903720500" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I Nephi spake much unto them concerning these things yea I spake unto them concerning the restoreng <​restoration​> of the Jews in the latter days & I did rehears unto them the words of Isaiah which spake concerning the restoration of the Jews or of the House of Israel & after that they were restored they should nomore be confounded neither should they be scattered again & it came to pass that I did speak many[96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16911773732182200400" \o "Note) words unto my Brethren that they were passified & did humble themselves before the Lord [97](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10079707912769361888" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they did speak unto me again saying what meaneth the thing which of our father saw in a dream what meaneth the tree which he saw & I said unto them it was a representation of the tree of life & they said unto me what meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw that lead to the tree & I said unto them that it was the word of God & whoso would hearken unto the word of God & would hold fast unto it they would never perish neither could the temptations & the firey darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness to lead them away to destruction wherefore I Nephi did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord yea I did exhort them with all the energes of my soul & with all the faculty which I posessed that they would give heed to the word of God & remember to keep his commandments allwaysin all things & they said unto me what meaneth the river of water which our father saw & I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness & so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water & I said unto them that it was an awful gulf which sepparateth the wicked from the tree of life & also from the Saints of God & I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful Hell which the Angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked & I said unto them that our father also saw that the Justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous & the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flameing fire which ascendeth up unto God forever & ever & hath no end [98](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12941266458111862313" \o "Note)& they said unto me doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation or doth it mean the final state of the Soul after the death of the temporal baby or doth it speak of the things which are temporal & it came to pass that I said unto them that [p. 27] it was a representation of things both temporal & spiritual for the day should come that they must be Judged of their works yea even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation wherefore if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also as to the things which are spiritual which are pertaining to righteousness wherefore they must be brought to stand before God to be Judged of their work & if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy & if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the Kingdom of God if so the Kingdom of God must be filthy also but behold I say unto you the Kingdom of God is not filthy & there cannot any unclean thing enter into the Kingdom of God wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy & there is a place prepared yea even that awful Hell of which I have <​spoken​> & the Devil is the preparator[99](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12433797435040401698" \o "Note) of it wherefore the final state of the Souls ofmen[100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14879891320937991588" \o "Note) is to dwell in the Kingdom of God or to be cast out because of that Justice of which I have spoken wherefore the wicked are rejected[101](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8315465244780029015" \o "Note) from the righteous & also from that tree of life whose fruit is most precious & most desireable above[102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15536063633482878037" \o "Note) all other fruits yea & it is the greatest of all the gifts of God & thus I spake unto my Brethren Amen

First Nephi, Chapter 5 [1 Nephi 16–19:21]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass that after I Nephi had made an end of speaking to my Brethren behold they said unto me thou hast declared unto us hard things more then that which were are able to bear [103](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17887008418132392506" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked according to the truth & the righteous have I justified & testified that they should be lifted up at the last day wherefore the guilty taketh the truth to be hard for it cutteth them to the verry centre & now my Brethren if ye were righteous & were willing to hearken to the truth & give heed unto to it that ye might walk uprightly before God then ye would not murmur because of the truth & say thou speakest hard things against us & it came to pass that I Nephi did exhort my Brethren with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord & it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord insomuch that I had joy & great hopes of them that they would walk in the paths of righteousness now all these things were said & done as my father dwelt in a tent in the vally which he called Lemuel [104](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16554568325513616958" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I Nephi took one of the Daughters of Ishmael to wife & also my Brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife & also Zoram took the [p. 28] elder[105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3063526402291065997" \o "Note) daughter of Ishmael to wife & thus my father had fulfilledall the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him & also I Nephi had been blessed of the Lord excedingly & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night & commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journy into the wilderness & it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning & went forth to the tent door & to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship & it was of fine Brass & within the Ball was two spindles & the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness & it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness & all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us & we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness & it came to pass that we did take our tents & departed in to the wilderness across the river Laman & it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days nearly a South Southeast direction & we did pitch our tents again & we did call the name of the place Shazer & it came to pass that we did take our bows & our arrows & go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families & after that we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness to the place of Shazer & we did go forth again in the wilderness following the same direction keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness which was in the borders near the Red Sea & it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days slaying food by the way with our bows & our arrows & our stones & our slings & we did follow the directions of the ball which lead us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness & after that we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents for the space of a time that we might again rest ourselves & obtain food for our families & it came to pass that as I Nephi went forth to slay food behold I did break my bow which was made of fine steel & after that I did break my bow behold my Brethren were angery with me because of the loss of my bow for we did obtain no food & it came to pass that we did return without food to our families & being much fateagued because of their journying they did suffer much for the want of food & it came to pass that Laman & Lemuel & the Sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur excedingly because of their sufferings & afflictions in the wilderness & also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God yea & they were all excding sorrowful even that they did murmur against the Lord now it came to pass that I Nephi haveing been afflicted [p. 29] with my Brethren because of the loss of my bow & their bows haveing lost their springs it began to be exceding difficult yea insomuch that we could obtain no food & it came to pass that I Nephi did speak much unto my Brethren because that they had hard hardoned their hearts against even unto complaing against the Lord their God & it came to pass that I Nephi did make out of wood a bow & out of a strait stick an arrow wherefore I did arm miself with a bow & an arrow with a sling & with stones & I said unto my father whither shall I go to obtain food & it came to pass that he did enquire of the Lord for they had humbled themselves because of my word[106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "947696415652682349" \o "Note) for I did say many things in unto them in the energy of my Soul & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father & he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord insomuch that he was brought down into the debths of sorrow & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him look upon the Ball & behold the things which are written & it came to pass that when my father saw <​beheld​> the things which were written upon the Ball he did fear & tremble excedingly & also my Brethren & the Sons of Ishmael & our wives & it came[107](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8975614092301774906" \o "Note) to pass that I Nephi beheld that the pointers which were in the Ball that they did work according to the faith & diligence & heed which we did give unto them & there was also written upon them a new writing which was plain to be read which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord & it was written & changed from time to time according to the faith & diligence which we gave unto it & thus we see that the Lord by small means <​the Lord​> Can bring about great things & it came to pass that I Nephi did go forth up into the top of the mountain according to the directions which was[108](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3274873374991994299" \o "Note) given upon the Ball & it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts insomuch that I did obtain food for our families & it came to pass that I did return to our tents bearing the beasts which I had slain & now when they beheld that I had obtained food how great was their joy & it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord & did give thanks unto him & it came to pass that we did again take our journy traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning & after that we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again that we might tarry for the space of a time & it came to pass that Ishmael died & was buried in the place which was called Nahom & it came to pass that the Daughters of Ishmael did mourn excedingly because of the loss of their father & because of their afflictions in the wilderness & they did murmur against my father because that he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem saying our father is dead yea & we have wandered much in the wilderness & we have suffered much afflictions [p. 30] hunger thirst & fateague & after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hungar & thus they did murmur against my father & also against me & they were desireous to return again to Jerusalem & Laman saith unto Lemuel & also unto the Sons of Ishmael behold let us slay our father & also our Brother Nephi who hath taken it upon him to be our ruler & our teacher who are his elder Brethren now he saith that the Lord hath talked with him & also that Angels hath ministered unto him but behold we know that he lieth unto us & he telleth us these things & he worketh many things by his cunning arts that he may deceive our eyes thinking perhaps that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness & after that he hath lead us away he hath thought to make himself a King & a ruler over us that he may do with us according to his will & pleasure & after this manner did my Brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger & it came to pass that the Lord was with us yea even the voice of the Lord came & did speak many words unto them & did chasten them excedingly & after that they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger & did repent of their Sins insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food that we did not perish & it came to pass that we did again take our journy in the wilderness & we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth & we did travel & wade through much afflictions in the wilderness & our women bare children in the wilderness & so great was the blessings of the Lord upon us that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness our women did give plenty of suck for their children & were strong yea even like unto the men & they began to bear their journyings without murmurings[109](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3014274019911347542" \o "Note) & thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfiled & if it so be that the Children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them <​them &​> strengthen them & provide means[110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18144040577856246148" \o "Note) whereby they can accomplish the thing which he hath Commanded them wherefore he did provide means[111](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14232171693160623151" \o "Note) for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness & we did sojourn for the space of many years yea even eight years in the wilderness & we did come to the land which we called Bountiful because of its much fruit & also wild honey & all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish & we beheld the Sea which we called Irreantum which being interpreted is many waters & it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the Sea Shore & notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions & much difficulty yea even somuch that we cannot write them all we was excedingly rejoiced when we came to the Sea shore & we called the [p. 31] place Bountiful because of its much fruit & it came to pass that after I Nephi had been in the land Bountiful for the space of many days the voice of the Lord came unto me saying arese & get thee into the mountain & it came to pass that I arose & went up into the mountain & cried unto the Lord & it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me saying thou shalt construct a ship after themanner which I shall shew thee that I may carry thy People arcross these waters & I sayeth Lord whither shall I go that I may find oar to moulton that I may make tools to construct the Ship after the manner which thou has shewn unto me & it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find oar that I might make tools & it came to pass that I Nephi did make Bellowses wherewith to blow the fire of the skins of Beasts & after that I had made Bellowses that I might have where with to blow the fire I did smite two stones together that I might make fire for the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire as we journyed in the wilderness for he sayeth I will make that thy food shall become sweet that ye cook it not & I will also be you<​r​> light in the wilderness & I will prepare y◊ the way before you if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments wherefore in as much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be lead towards the promesed land & ye shall know that it is by me that ye are lead yea & the Lord said also that after ye have ariven[112](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15230594355324001555" \o "Note) to the promised land ye shall know that I the Lord am God & that I the Lord did deliver you from destruction yea that I did bring you out of the Land of Jerusalem wherefore I Nephi did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord & I did exhort my Brethren to faithfulness & diligence & it came to pass that I did make tools of the oar which I did moulton out of the rock & whenmy Brethren saw that I was about to build a ship they began to murmur against me saying our Brother is a fool for he thinketh that he can build a ship yea & he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters & thus my Brethren did complain against me & were desireous that they might not labour for they did not believe that I could build a ship neither would they believe that I were instructed of the Lord & now it came to pass that I Nephi was exceding sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts & now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts insomuch that they did rejoice over me saying we knew that ye could not construct a ship for we knew that ye were lacking in Judgment wherefore thou canst not accomplish so great a work & thou art like unto our father lead away by the foolish imagionations of his heart yea he hath lead us out of the land of Jeru [p. 32]salem & we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years & our women have toiled being big with child & they have bourn children in the wilderness & suffered all things save it were death & it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem then to have suffered these afflictions behold these many years we have suffered in the wilderness which time we might have enjoid our possessions & the land of our inheritance yea & we might have been happy & we know that the People which were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous People for they keep[113](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17347574801431176895" \o "Note) the statutes & the Judgments of the Lord & all his commandments according to the law of Moses wherefore we know that they are a righteous People & our father hath Judged & them & hath lead us away because we would hearken to unto his words[114](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15018835703614053807" \o "Note) yea & our Brother is like unto him & after this manner of Language did my Brethren murmur & complain against us & it came to pass that I Nephi spak unto them saying do ye believe that our fathers which were the Children of Israel would have been lead away out of the hands of the Egytians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord yea do ye suppose that they would have been lead out of Bondage if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of Bondage now ye know that the Children of Isael were in Bondage & ye know that they were laiden with tasks which were grieveous to be bourn wherefore ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them that they should be brought out of Bondage now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work & ye know that by his word the waters of the red Sea was divided hither & thither & they passed through on dry ground but ye know that the Egytians were drowned in the red Sea which were the armies of Pharaoh & ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness yea & ye also know that Moses by his word according to the power of God which was in him smote the Rock & there came forth water that the Children of Israel might quench their thirst & notwithstanding they being lead they Lord their God their redeemer going before them leading them by day & giveing light unto them by night & doing all things for them which was expediant for man to receive they heardoned their hearts & blind<​ed​> their minds & reviled against Moses & against the true & liveing God & it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them & according to his word he did lead them & according to his word he did to <​do​> all things for them & there was not anything done save it were by his word & after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driveing out the children of the land [p. 33] yea unto the scattering them to destruction & now do ye suppose that the children of this land which were in the land of promise which were driven <​driven​> out by our fathers do ye suppose that they were righteous behold I say unto you nay do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice then they if they had been righteous I say unto you nay behold the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one he that is righteous is favoured of God but behold this People had rejected every word of God & they were ripe in iniquity & the fullness of the wrath of God was upon them & the Lord did curse the land against them & bless it unto our fathers yea he did curse it against them unto their destruction & he did bless <​it​> unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it behold the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited & he hath created his children that they should possess it & he raiseth up a righteous Nation & destroyeth the Nations of the wicked & he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands & the wicked he destroyeth & curseth the land unto them for their sakes he ruleth high in the Heavens for it is his throne & this earth is his footstool & he loveth them which will have him to be their God behold he loved our fath fathers & he covenanted with them yea even Abraham Isaac & Jacob & he remembered the covenants which he had made wherefore he did bring them out of the land of Egypt & he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod for they hardoned their hearts even as ye have & the lord straitened them because of their iniquity he sent firey flying[115](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14149535722050863616" \o "Note) Serpants among them & after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed & the labour which they had to perform were to look & because of the simpleness of the way[116](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8276114056815758751" \o "Note) or the easeiness of it there were many which perished & they did heardon their hearts from time to time & they did revile against Moses & also against God nevertheless ye know that they were lead forth by his matchless power into the land of promise & now after all these things the time has come that they have become wicked yea nearly unto ripeness & I know not but they are at this day about to be destroid for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroid save a few only which shall be lead away into captivity wherefore the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness & the Jews also sought to take away his life yea & ye also have sought to take away his life wherefore ye are murderers in your hearts & ye are like unto they ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God ye have seen an Angel & he spake unto you yea ye have heard his voice from time to time & he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice but ye were past feeling that ye could [p. 34] not feel his words wherefore he hath spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder & ye also know that by the power of his Almygty word he can cause the <​earth​> that it shall pass away yea & ye know that by his word he can cause that rough places be made smooth & smooth places shall be broken up O then why is it that ye can be so hard in your hearts behold my Soul is rent with anguish because of you & my heart is pained I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever behold I am full of the spirit of God insomuch as if my frame had no strength & now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angery with me & were desireous to throw me into the debths of the Sea & as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them saying in the name of the Almighty God I command you that ye touch me not for I am filled with the power of God even unto the consumeing of my flesh & whoso shall lay their hands upon me shall wither even as a dried weed[117](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6800501593574534456" \o "Note) & he shall beas nought before the power of God for God shall smite him & it came to pass that I Nephi sayeth unto them that they should murmur no more against their father neither should they withhold their labour from me for God had commanded me that I should build a ship & I sayeth unto them if God had commanded me to do all things I could do it if he should command me that I should say unto this water be thou earth it should be earth & if I should say it it would be done & now if the Lord hath such great power & hath wrought so many miricles among the children of men how is it that he cannot instruct me that I should build a ship & it came to pass that I Nephi said many things unto my Brethren insomuch that they were confounded & could not contend against me neither dearst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers even for the space of many days now they dearst not do this least they should wither fefore me so powerful was the spirit of God & thus it had wrought upon them & it came to pass that the Lord said unto me streach forth thine hand again unto thy Brethren & they shall not wither before thee but I will shock them saith the Lord & this will I do that they may know that I am the Lord their God [118](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7274354481863302728" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I streached forth my hand unto my Brethren & they did not wither before me but the Lord did shake them even according to the word which he has <​had​> spoken & now they said we know of a surety that the Lord is with thee for we know that it is the power of the Lord that hath shaken us & they fell down before me & were about to worship me but I would not suffer them say saying I am thy Brother [p. 35] yea even thy younger Brother wherefore worship the Lord thy God & honour thy father & thy Mother that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee & it came to pass that they did worship the Lord & did go forth with me & we did work timbers of curious workmanship & the Lord did shew me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship now I Nephi did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men neither did build the Ship after the manner of man but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shewn unto me wherefore it was not after the manner of men & I Nephi did go into the mount oft & I did pray oft unto the Lord wherefore the Lord shewed unto me great things & it came to pass t◊◊◊ after I had finished the ship according to the word of the Lord my Brethren beheld that it was good & that the workmanship thereof was exceding fine wherefore they did humble themselves again before the Lord & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father that we should arise & go down into the ship & it came to pass that on the morrow after that we had prepared all things much fruits & meat from the wilderness & honey in abundance & provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us we did go down into the Ship with all our loading & our seeds & whatsoever thing we had brought with us every one according to his age wherefore we did all go down into the Ship with our wives & our Children & now my father had begat two Sons in the wilderness the eldest[119](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14791249254104420176" \o "Note) was called Jacob & the younger Joseph & it came to pass that after we had all gone down in <​into​> the Ship & had taken with us our provisions & things which had been commanded us we did put forth into the Sea & were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land & after that we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days behold my Brethren & the Sons of Ishmael & also their wives began to make themselves merry insomuch that they began to dance & to sing & to speak with much rudeness yea even to that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither yea they were lifted up unto exceding rudeness & I Nephi began to fear excedingly least the Lord should be angery with us & smite us because of our iniquity that we should be swallowed up in the debths of the Sea wherefore I Nephi began to speak to them with much soberness but behold they were angery with me saying we will not that our younger Brother shall be a ruler over us & it came to pass that Laman & Lemuel did take me & bind me with Cords & they did tread <​treat​> me with much hashness nevertheless the Lord did suffer it that he might shew forth his power unto the fulfiling of his word which he hath spoken— [p. 36] concerning the wicked & it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move the Compass which had been prepared of the Lord did cease to work wherefore they knew not whither they should stear the Ship insomuch that there arose a great storm yea a great & terrible tempest & we were driven back upon the waters for the Space of three days & they began to be frightened excedingly least they should be drowned in the Sea nevertheless they did loose me not & on the fourth day which we had been driven back the tempest began to be exceding sore & it Came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the debths of the Sea & after that we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days my Brethren began to see that the Judgments of God was upon them & that they t perish save that they should repent of their iniquities wherefore they came unto me & loosed the bands[120](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14475154047127855542" \o "Note) which was upon my rists & behold they had much swolen excedingly & also mine ancles were much swolen & great was the Soreness thereof nevertheless I did look unto my God & I did praise him all the day long & I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions now my father Lehi had said many things unto them & also unto the Sons of Ishmael but behold they did breath out much threatnings against any one that should speak for me & my parents being stricken in years & haveing suffered much grief because of their Children they were brought down yea even upon their sick beds because of their grief & much sorrow & the iniquity of my Brethren they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God yea their gray hairs were about be to be brought down to lye low in the dust yea even they were near to be cast into a[121](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5450630877518418883" \o "Note) waterry grave & Jacob & Joseph also being young haveing need of much nourishment were grieved because of the afflictions of their Mother & also my wife with her tears & prayers & also my children did not soften their hearts of my Brethren that they would loose me & there was nothing save it were the power of God which threattened them with destruction could soften their hearts wherefore when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the debths of the Sea they repented of the thing which they had done insomuch that they loosed me & it came to pass that after they had loosed me behold I took the compass & it did work whither I desired it & it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord & after that I had prayed the winds did cease & the storm did cease & there was a great calm & it came to pass that I Nephi did guide the Ship that we sailed again towards the promised land & it came to pass that after [p. 37] we had sailed for the space of many days we did arive to the promised land & we went forth upon the land & did pitch our tents & we did call it the promised land & it came to pass that we did begin to till the ground <​earth​> & we began to plant seeds yea we did put all our seeds into the earth which we hah had brought from the land of Jerusalem & it came to pass that they did grow excedingly wherefore we were blessed in abundance & it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise as we journied in the wilderness that there were was[122](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6209742672417347096" \o "Note) beasts in the forests of every kind both the cow & the Ox & the Ass & the Horse & the goat & the wild goat & all manner of wild animels which were for the use of men & we did find all manner of ore both of gold & of Silver & of Copper & it came to pass that the Lord commanded me wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my People & upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father & also our journyings in the wilderness & the Prophesies of my father & also many of mine own Prophesies have I engraven upon them & I knew not at that time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates wherefore the record of my father & the genealogy of his forefathers[123](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5201183923625568061" \o "Note) & the more part of all our procedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those plates[124](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4947547030358486473" \o "Note) of which I have spoken wherefore the things which transpired before that I made these Plates are of a truth more particularly made mention upon the first plates & after that I made these plates by way of Commandment I Nephi received a commandment that the ministry & the prophesies the more plain & precious parts of them should be written upon them <​these​> plates & that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of[125](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15927293975792818595" \o "Note) my People which should possess the land & also for other wise purposes which purposes are known unto the Lord wherefore I Nephi did make a record upon the other plates which gives an account or which gives a greater account of the wars & contentions & distructions of my People & this have I done & commanded my People that[126](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6106448774424935295" \o "Note) they should do after that I was gone & that these plates should be handed down from one generation to an other or from one Prophet to another untill further commandments of the Lord & an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter[127](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7639042818576518738" \o "Note) & then behold I procede according to that which I have spoken & this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my People nevertheless I do not write any thing upon plates save it be that I think to [p. 38] it be sacred & now if I do err even did they err of Old not that I would excuse myself because of other men but because of the weakness which is in me according to the flesh I would excuse myself for the things which some men esteem to be of great worth both to the body & soul others set at nought & trample under their feet yea even the verry God of Israel do men trample under their feet I saay <​say​> trample under their feet be but I would speak in other words they do set him at nought & hearken not to the voice of his Councils & behold he cometh according to the words of the Angel in Six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem & the world because of their iniquity shall Judge him to be a thing of nought wherefore they scourge him & he suffereth it & they smite him & he suffereth it yea they spit upon him & he suffereth it because of his loveing kindness & his long suffering towards the children of men & the God of our fathers which were lead out of Egypt out of bondage & also were preserved in the wilderness by him yea the God of Abraham & of Isaac & the God of Jacob yieldeth himself according to the words of the Angel as a man into the hands of wicked men to be bifted <​lifted​> up according to the words of Zenock & to be crucified according to the words of Neum & to be buried in a Sepulchar &[128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1236783209533777277" \o "Note) according to the words of Zenos which he spake concerning the three days of darkness which should be a sign given of his death unto them who should inhabit the Isles of the Sea more especially given unto them which are of the house of Israel for thus spake the Prophet the Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel it at that day some with his voice because of <​their​> righteousness unto their great joy & Salvation & others with the thunderings & the lightnings of his power by tempest by fire & by smoke & vapour of darkness & by the opening of the earth & by mountains which shall be carried up & all these things must surely come saith the Prophet Zenos & the Rocks of the earth must rend & because of the groanings of the earth many of the Kings of the Isles of the Sea shall be wrought upon by the spirit of God to exclaim the God of Nature suffers & as for they which are at Jerusalem saith the Prophet shall be scourged by all People saith the Prophet because they Crucify the God of Israel & turned their hearts aside rejecting signs & wonders & power & glory of the God of Israel & because they turned their hearts aside saith the Prophet & have dispised the Holy one of Israel they shall wander in the flesh & perish & become a hiss & a by word & be hated among [p. 39] all Nations nevertheless when that day cometh saith the Prophet that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy one of Israel then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers yea then will he remember the Isles of the Sea yea & all the People which are of the house of Israel will I gather in saith the Lord according to the words of the Prophets Zenos from the four quarters of the eath <​earth​> yea & all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord saith the Prophet every Nation Kindred Tongue & People shall be blessed & I Nephi have written these things unto my People that perhaps I might perswade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer wherefore I speak unto all the house of Israel if it so be that they should obtain these things for behold I have worked workings in the spirit which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak for they which are at Jerusalem for had not the Lord been merciful to shew unto me concerning them even as he had Prophets of old for he surely did shew unto Prophets of old all things concerning them & also he did shew unto many concerning us wherefore it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of Brass——

First Nephi, Chapter 6 [1 Nephi 19:22–21:26]

Chapter [blank] Now it came to pass that I Nephi did teach these <​my​> things unto my <​Brethren these​> things & it came to pass that I did read many things to them which were engraven upon the plates of Brass that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands among People of old & I did read many things unto them which were in the Book[129](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12726365487796427466" \o "Note) of Moses but that I might more fully perswade them to believe in the Lord their redeemer wherefore I did read unto them that which was written by the Prophet Isaiah for I did liken all Scriptures unto us that it might be for our profit & learning wherefore I spake unto them saying hear ye the words of the Prophet ye which are a remnant of the House of Israel a branch which have been broken off hear ye the words of the Prophet which was <​written​> unto all the house of Israel & liken it unto yourselves that ye may have hope as well as your Brethren from whom ye have been broken off for after this manner hath the Prophet written hearken & hear this O house of Israel <​Jacob​> which are called by the name of Israel & are come forth out of the waters of Judah[130](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8442787288056059018" \o "Note) which swear by the name of the Lord & make mention of the God of Israel yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness nevertheless they call themselves of the holy city but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel which is the Lord of hosts yea the Lord of hoasts is his name beho [p. 40]ld I have declared the former things from the beginning & they went forth out of my mouth & I shewed them I did shew them suddenly & I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate & thy neck was an iron sinew & thy <​thy​> brow brass & I have even from the beginning declared to thee before it came to pass I shewed them thee & I shewed them for fear least thou shouldst say mine Idol hath done them & my graven image & my moulton image hath commanded them thou hast seen & heard[131](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12495201533016705026" \o "Note) all this & will ye not declare them & that I have shewed thee new things from this time even hiden things & thou didst not know them they are created now & not from the beginning even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee least thou shouldst say behold I knew them yea & thou heardest not yea thou knewest not yea from that time thine ear was not opened for I knew that thou wouldst deal verry treacherously & wast called a transgressor from thy womb[132](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8478524420168170167" \o "Note) nevertheless for thy <​my name​> name sake will I defer mine anger & for my praise will I refrain from thee that I cut thee not off for behold I have refined thee I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction for mine own sake yea for mine own sake will I do this for I will not suffer[133](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15349530733736967321" \o "Note) my name to be polluted & I will not give my glory unto another hearken unto me O Jacob & Israel my called for I am he & I am the first & I am also the last mine hand hath also laid the foundations of the earth & my right hand hath spaned the heavens & I called unto them & they stand up together all ye assemble yourselves & hear which among them hath declared these things unto them the Lord hath loved him yea & he will fulfil hiss word which he hath declared by them & he will do his pleasure on Babylon & his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans also saith the Lord I the Lord yea I have spoken yea I have called him to declare I have brought him & he shall make his way prosperous come ye near unto me I have not spoken in secret from the beginning from the time that it was declared have I spoken & the Lord God & his spirit hath sent me & thus saith the Lord thy redeemer the holy one of Israel I have sent him the Lord thy God which teacheth thee to profit which leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go hath done it O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments then had thy peace been as a river & thy righteousness as the waves of the Sea thy seed also had been as the sand the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof his name should not have been cut off nor destroid from before me go ye forth of Babylon flee ye from the Chaldeans with a voice of singing [p. 41] declare ye tell this utter to the end of the earth say ye the Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob & they thirsted not he lead them through the deserts he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them he cleaved the rock also & the waters gushed out & notwithstanding he hath done all this & greater also there is no peace saith the Lord unto the wicked & again hearken O ye house of Israel all ye that are broken off & are driven out because of the Pastors <​wickedness​> of the pastors of my People yea all ye that are broken off that are scattered abroad which are of my People O house of Israel listen O Isles unto me & hearken ye People from far the Lord hath called me from the womb from the bowels of my Mother hath he made mention of my name & he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me & made me a polished shaft in his quiver hath he hid me & said unto me thou art my servant O Israel in whom I will be glorified then I said I have laboured in vain I have spent my strength for nought & in vain surely my Judgment is with the Lord & my work with my God & & now saith the Lord that formed me from the womb <​womb​> that I should be his servant to bring Jacob again to him thou Israel be not gathered yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord & my God shall be my strength & he said it is a light thing that thou shoulds be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob & to restore the preserved of Israel I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles that thou myest by <​be​> my salvation unto the ends of the earth thus saith the Lord the redeemer of Israel his holy one to him whom man despiseth to him whom the Nations abhoreth to servant of rulers Kings shall see & arise princes also shall worship because of the Lord that is faithful thus saith the Lord in an exceptable time have I heard thee O Isles of the Sea & in a day of salvation have I helped thee & I will preserve thee & give thee my servant for a covenant for a <​of​> the People to establish the earth to cause to inherit the desolate heritages that thou mayest say to the prisoners go forth to them that sit in darkness shew yourselves they shall feed in the ways & their pastures shall be in all high places they shall not hunger nor thirst neither shall the heat nor the Sun smite them for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them even by the springs of waters shall he guide them & I will make all my mountains away & my high ways shall be exhalted & then O house of Israel behold these shall come from far & lo these from the North & from the west & these from the land of Sinim sing O Heavens & be joyful O earth for the feet of them which are in the east shall be established & break forth into singing O mountains for they shall [p. 42] be smitten no more for the Lord hath comforted his People & will have mercy upon his afflicted but behold Zion hath said the Lord hath forsaken me & my Lord hath forgotton me but he will shew that he hath not for can a woman forget he<​r​> sucking child that she should not have compassion on the Son of her womb yea they may forget yet will I not forget thee O house of Israel behold I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands thy walls are continually before me thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers & they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee lift up thine eyes round about & behold all these gather themselves together & they shall come to thee & as I live saith the Lord thou shalt surely cloth thee with them all as with an ornament & bind them on even as a bride for thy waste & thy desolate places & the land of thy destruction shall even now be to narrow by reason of the inhabitants & they that swallowed thee up shall be far away the Children which thou shalt have after thou hast lost the other shall again in thine ears say the place is to strait for me give place to me that I may dwell then shalt thou say in thine heart who hath begotten me these seeing I have lost my children & am desolate a captive & removeing to & fro & who hath brought up these behold I was left alone these where have they been thus saith the Lord God behold I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles & set up my standard to the People & they shall bring thy Sons in their arms & thy daughters <​shall be carried​> upon their shoulders & kings shall be thy nursing fathers & their Queens thy nursing mothers they shall bown down to thee with their face towards the earth & lick up the dust of thy feet & thou shalt know that I am the Lord for they shall not be be ashamed that wait for me for shall the prey be taken from the mighty or the lawful captive delivered but thus saith the Lord even the captive of the mighty shall be taken away & the prey of the terrible shall be delivered for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee & I will save thy children & I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine & all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy saviour & thy redeemer the mighty one of Jacob

First Nephi, Chapter 7 [1 Nephi 22]

Chapter [blank] And now it came to pass that after I Nephi after that I had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of Brass my Brethren came unto me & said unto me what mean these things which ye have read behold are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual which shall come to pass according to the spirit & not the flesh [p. 43] & I Nephi sayeth unto them behold they were made manifest[134](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13122679264656457340" \o "Note) unto the prophet by the voice of the spirit for by the spirit are all things made known unto the Prophets which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh wherefore the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal & spiritual for it appears that the house of Israel sooner of or later will be scattered upon all the face of the earth & also among all Nations & before there are many which are <​already​> lost from the knowledge of they which are at Jerusalem yea the more part of all the tribes have been lead away & they are scattered to & fro upon the isles of the Sea & whether they are none of us knoweth save that we know that they have been lead away & since that they have been lead away these things have been prophesied concerning them & also concerning all they which shall hereafter be scattered & be confounded because of the holy one of Israel for against him will they hearden their hearts wherefore they shall be scattered among all Nations & shall be hated by all men nevertheless after that they have been nursed by the Gentiles & the Lord hath lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles & set them up for a standard & their children shall be carried in their arms & their daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders behold these things of which are spoken are temporal for thus is the covenants of the Lord with our fathers & it meaneth us in the days to come & also all our Brethren which are of the house of Israel & it meaneth that the time that the time cometh that after all the house of Irael have been scattered & confounded that the Lord God will raise up a mighty Nation among the Gentiles yea even upon the face of this land & by them shall our seed be scattered & after that our seed is scattered the Lord God will procede to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles which shall be of great worth unto our seed wherefore it is likened unto the being nourished[135](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13259647808341928672" \o "Note) by the Gentiles & being carried on <​in​> their arms & upon their shoulders & it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles & not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel unto the makeing known of the covenants of the father of heaven unto Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed & I would my Brethren that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bear his arm in the eyes of the Nations wherefore the Lord God will procede to make bear his arm in the eyes of all the Nations in bringing about his covenants & his Gospel unto them <​they​> which <​are​> of the house of Israel wherefore he will bring them again out of captivity & they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance[136](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11222594510366458582" \o "Note) & they shall be brought out of obscurity & out of darkness & they shall [p. 44] know that the Lord is their Saviour & their redeemer the mighty one of Israel & the blood of that great & abominable church which is the whore of all the earth shall turn upon their own heads for they shall war among themselves & the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads & they shall be drunken with their own blood & every Nation which shall war against thee O house of Israel shall be turned one against another & they shall fall into the pit which they diged to ensnare the People of the Lord & all which[137](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5025850478067320984" \o "Note) fight against Zion shall be destroid & that great whore which hath perverted the right ways of the Lord yea that great & abominable Church shall tumble to the dust & great shall be the fall of it for behold saith the prophet that the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the Children of men for the day soon cometh that all the proud & they which do wickedly shall be as stubble & the day cometh that they must be burned for the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon <​all​> the Children of men for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous wherefore he will prerserve the righteous by his power even if it so be that the fullness of his wrath must come & the righteous be preserved even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire wherefore the righteous need not fear for thus saith the Prophet the<​y​> shall be saved even if it so be as by fire behold my Brethren I say unto you that these things must shortly come yea even blood & fire & vapour of smoke must come & it must needs be upon the face of this land <​earth​> & it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will hearden their hearts against the holy one of Israel for behold the righteous shall not perish for the time surely must come that all they which fight against Zion shall be cut off & the Lord will surely prepare a way for his People unto the fulfiling of the words of Moses which he spake saying a prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you like unto me him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you & it shall come to pass that all they which will not hear that prophet shall be Cut off from among the People & now I Nephi declare unto you that this Prophet of whom Moses spake was the holy one of Israel wherefore he shall execute justice <​Judgment​> in righteousness & the righteous need not fear for it is they which shall not be confounded but it is the kingdom of the Devil which shall be built up among the Children of men which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh for the time speedily shall come that all Churches which are built up to get gain & [p. 45] all they which are built up to get power over the flesh & they which are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world & they which seek the lusts of the flesh & the things of the world & to do all manner of iniquity yea in fine all they which belong to the Kingdom of the Devil it is they which ned fear & tremble & quake it is they which must be brought low in the dust it is they which must be consumed as stuble & this is according to the words of the Prophet & the time cometh speadily that the righteous must be lead up as calves of the stall & the holy one of Israel must reign & in dominion & might & Power & great glory & he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth & he numbereth his sheep & they know him & there shall be one fold & one Shepherd & he shall feed his Sheep & in him they shall find pasture & because of the righteousness of his People Satan hath no power wherefore he cannot be loosed for the space of many years for he hath no power over the hearts of the People for they dwell in righteousness & the holy one of Israel reigneth & now behold I Nephi say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh beut but behold all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People shall dwell safely in the holy one of Israel if it so be that they will repent & now I Nephi make an end for I dearst not speak further as ye<​t​> <​yet​> concerning these things wherefore my Brethren I would that ye should consider that the things which have been witten upon the plates of Brass are true & they testify that a man must be obediant to the commandments of God wherefore ye need not suppose that I & my father are the only ones which[138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10236853855198511225" \o "Note) have testified & also taught them wherefore if ye shall be obediant to the commandments & endure to the end ye shall be saved at the last day & thus it is Amen——

Second Nephi, Chapter 1 [2 Nephi 1–2]

The <​second​> Book of Nephi Chapter .1.st

An account of the death of Lehi— Nephis Brethren rebelleth against him— the Lord warns Nephi to tepart <​depart​> into the wilderness .&C. his journyings in the wilderness .&C.— And now it came to pass that after <​after I​> Nephi had made an end of teaching my Brethren our father Lehi d◊ also spake many things unto them how great things[139](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11068851566823342271" \o "Note) the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem & he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters & the mercies of God in spareing their lives that they were not swallowed up in the Sea & he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise which they had obtained how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem for behold saith he I have seen a vision inthewhich I know that Jerusalem is destroid & had we remained [p. 46] in Jerusalem we should also have perished but said he notwithstanding our afflictions we have obtained a land of promise & a land which is choice above all other lands a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed yea the Lord hath covenanted[140](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1446443527498448228" \o "Note) this land unto me & to my children forever & also all they which should be lead out of other countries by the hand of the Lord wherefore I Lehi Prophesy according to the workings of the spirit which is in me that there shall be none come into this land save they should be brought by the hand of the Lord wherefore this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring & if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given it shall be a land of liberty unto them wherefore they shall never be brought down into captivity if so it shall be because of iniquity for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever & behold it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other Nations for behold many Nations would overrun the land that there would be no place for an inheritance wherefore I Lehi have obtained a promise that inasmuch as they which the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments they shall prosper upon the face of this land & they shall be kept from all other Nations that they may possess this land unto themselves & if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land & there shall be none to molest them nor to take away the land of their inheritance & they shall dwell safely forever but behold when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief after that they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord haveing a knowledge of the creation of the earth & all men knowing the great & marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world haveing power given them to do all things by faith haveing all the commandments from the beginning & haveing been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise behold I say if the day shall come that they will reject the holy one of Israel the true Messiah their redeemer & their God behold the Judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them yea he will bring other Nations unto them & he will give unto them power & he will take away from them the lands of their inheritance <​possessions​> & he will cause them to be scattered & smitten yea as one generation paseth to another there shall be bloodsheds & great visitations [p. 47] among them wherefore my Sons I would that ye would remember yea I would that ye would hearken unto my words O that ye would awake awake from a deep sleep yea even from the Sleep of hell & shake off the awful chanes by which ye are bound which are the chanes which bind the Children of men that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of miseary & wo awake & arise from the dust & hear the words of a trembleing parent whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold & silent grave from whence no traveller can return a few more days & I go the way of all the earth but behold the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell I have beheld his glory & I am encercled about eternally in the arms of his love & I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes & the Judgments of the Lord behold this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning my heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time for I have feared least for the hardness of your hearts least the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath against <​upon you​> that ye be cut off & destroid forever or that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations & ye are visited by sword & by famine & are hated & are lead according to the will & captivity of the Devil O my Sons that these things might not come upon you but that ye might be a choice & a favoured People of the Lord but behold his will be done for his ways are righteousness forever & he hath said that inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land but inas much as ye will not keep my[141](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7798664403997041966" \o "Note) commandments ye shall be cut off frommy[142](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8117691127185163971" \o "Note) presance & now that my soul might have joy in you & that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you that I might not be brought down with grief & sorrow to the grave arise from the dust my sons & be men & be determined in one mind & in one heart united in all things that ye may not come down into captivity that ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing & also that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you unto the destruction yea the eternal destruction of both soul & body awake my Sons put on the armour of righteousness shake off the chanes with which ye are bound & come forth out of obscurity & arise from the dust rebell no more against your Brother whose vews have been glorious & who hath kept the commandments from the time we left Jerusalem & who hath been an instrument in the hands of God in bringing us forth into the land of promise [p. 48] for were it not for him we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness nevertheless ye sought to take away his life yea & he hath suffered much sorrow because of you & I excedingly fear & tremble because of you least he shall suffer again for behold ye have accused him that he sought power & authority over you but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you but he hath sought the glory of God & your own eternal wellfare & ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you ye say that he hath used sharpness ye say that[143](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8241156121765915080" \o "Note) he hath been angery with you but behold his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God which was in him & that which ye call anger was the truth according to that which is in God which he could not con strain manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities & it must needs be that the power of God must be with him even unto his commanding you that ye must obey but behold it was not him but it was the spirit of the Lord which was in him which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it & now my Son Laman & also Lemuel & Sam & also my Sons which are the Sons of Ishmael behold if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish & if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing yea even my first blessing but if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing yea even my blessing & it shall rest upon him & now Zoram I speak unto you behold thou art the servant of Laban nevertheless thou hast been brought out of the land of <​the land of​> Jerusalem & I know that thou art a true friend unto my Son Nephi forever wherefore because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land & nothing save it shall be iniquity among them shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever wherefore if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord the Lord hath covenanted <​consecrated​> this land for the security of thy Seed with the seed of my Son & now Jacob I speak unto you thou art my first born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness & behold in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions & much sorrow because of the rudeness of thy Brethren nevertheless Jacob my first born in the wilderness thou knowest the greatness of God & he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain wherefore thy soul shall be blessed & thou shalt dwell safely with thy Brother Nephi & thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God wherefore I know that thou art redeemed because of the righteousness of thy redeemer for thou hast beheld that in the fullness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men & thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory wherefore thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh for the spirit is the same yestarday to day & forever[144](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5239974704328956802" \o "Note) [p. 49] & the way is prepared from the fall of man & salvation is free & men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil & the law is given unto men & by the law no flesh is justified or by the law men are cut off yea by the temporal law they were cut off & also by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good & because <​become​> miserable forever wherefore redemption cometh in & through the holy Messiah for he is full of grace & truth behold he offereth himself a sacrifice for Sin to answer the ends of the law unto all those which have a broken heart & a contrite spirit & unto none else can the ends of the law be answered wherefore how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitents of the earth that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presance of God save it be through the merits & mercy & grace of the holy Messiah which layeth down his life according to the flesh & taketh it again by the power of the spirit that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead being the first that should rise wherefore he is the first fruits unto God inas much as he shall make intersession for all the children of men & they that believe in him shall be saved & because of the intersession for all. all men cometh unto God <​whe​>refore they stand in the presance of him to be judged of him according to the truth & holiness which is in him wherefore the ends of the law which the holy one hath given unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed to answer the ends of the atonement for it must needs be that there is an opposition in all things if not so my first born in the wilderness righteousness could not be brought to pass neither wickedness neither holiness nor miseary neither good nor bad wherefore all things must needs be <​a compound​> accomplished <​in​> one wherefore if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead haveing no life neither death nor corruption nor incorruption happiness nor miseary neither sense nor insensibility wherefore it must needs have been created for a thing of nought wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation wherefore this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God & his eternal purposses & also the power & the mercy & the justice of God & if ye shall say there is no law ye shall also say there is no sin & if ye shall say there is no Sin ye shall also say there is no righteousness & if there be no righteousness there be no happiness & if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor miseary & if these things are not there is no God & if there is no God we are not neither the earth for there could have been no creation of things neither to act nor to be acted upon [p. 50] wherefore all things must have vanished away & now my Son I speak unto you these things for your profit & learning for there is a God & he hath created all things both the heavens & the earth & all things that in them is both things to act & things to be acted upon & to bring about his eternal purposses in the end of man after that he had created our first parents & the beasts of the field & the fowls of the air & in fine all things which are created it must needs be that there was an opposition even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life the one being sweet & the other bitter wherefore the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself wherefore man could not act for himself save it should be that he were entised by the one or the other & I Lehi according to the things which I have read must needs suppose that an Angel of God according to that which is written had fallen from heaven wherefore he became a devil haveing sought that which was evil before God & because that he had fallen from heaven & had became miserable forever & he sought also the miseary of all mankind wherefore he sayeth unto eve yea even that old serpant which is the Devil which is the father of all lies wherefore he sayeth partake of the forbidden fruit & ye shall not die but ye shall be as God knowing good & evil & after that Adam & Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out from the garden of Eden to till the Earth & they have brought forth children yea even the family of all the earth & the days of the children of me<​n​> were prolonged according to the will of God that they might repent while in the flesh wherefore their state became a State of probation & their time was lengthened according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men for he gave commandment that all men must repent for he shewed unto all men that they were lost because of the transgression of their parents & now behold if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen but he would have remained in the Garden of Eden & all things which were created must have remained in the same state which they were after that they were created & they must have remained forever & had no end & they would have had no children wherefore they would have remained in a state of innosence haveing no joy for they knew no miseary doing no good for they knew no Sin but behold all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things Adam fell that men might be & men are that they might have joy & the Messiah cometh in the fullness of time that he might redeem the children of men from the fall & because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become frao <​free​> forever knowing good from evil to act for themselves & not to be acted upon save it be by the punishment of the Law[145](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5176227668758203595" \o "Note) at the great & last day according to <​the​> commandments which God hath given wherefore men are free according <​to​> the flesh & all things are given them which is expediant unto man & they are free to chose liberty & [p. 51] eternal life through the great mediator[146](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9181977285967542205" \o "Note) of all men or to chose captivity & death according to the captivity & power of the Devil for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself & now my Sons I would that ye should look to the great mediator & hearken unto his great Commandments & be faithful unto his words & chose eternal life according to the will of his holy spirit & not chose eternal death according to the will of the flesh & <​the​> evil which is therein which giveth the spirit of the Devil power to captiveate to bring you down to hell that he may reign over you in his own Kingdom I have spoken these few words unto you all my Sons in the last days of my probation & I have chosen the good part according to the words of the Prophet & I have none other object save it be the everlasting wellfare of your Souls Amen.——

Second Nephi, Chapter 2 [2 Nephi 3]

Chapter [blank] And now I speak unto you Joseph my last born thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions yea in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy Mother bear thee & may the Lord[147](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16133764303098191613" \o "Note) consecrate also unto thee this land which is a most precious land for thine inheritance & the inheritance of thy seed with thy Brethren for thy security forever if it so be that ye shall keep the Commandments of the holy one of Israel & now Joseph my last born whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions may the Lord bless thee forever for thy seed shall not utterly be destroid for behold thou art the fruit of my loins & I am a decendant of Joseph which was carried captive into Egypt & great was the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph wherefore Joseph truly saw our day & he obtained a promise of the Lord that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel not the Messiah but a branch which was to be broken off nevertheless to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days in the spirit of power unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light yea out of hidden darkness & out of captivity unto freedom for Joseph truly testified saying a seer shall the Lord my God raise up which shall be a choice Seer unto the fruit of my loins yea Josep truly said thus saith the Lord unto me a choice Seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins <​& he​> shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins & unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins his Brethren which shall be of great worth unto them even to the bringing of them to the knowlege of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers & I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work save the work which I shall command him & I will make him great in mine eyes for he shall do my work & he shall be great like unto Moses whom I have said I would raise up unto you to deliver my People O house of Israel & Moses will I raise up to deliver thy People out of the land of Egypt but a Seer will I [p. 52] raise up out of the fruit of thy loins & unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins & not to the bringing forth my word only saith the Lord but to the convinceing them of my word which shall have already gone forth among them wherefore the fruit of my[148](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5626299558451647204" \o "Note) loins shall write & the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write & that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins & also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah shall grow together unto the confounded confounding of fals doctrines & laying down of contensions & establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins & bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days & also to the knowledge of my covenants saith the Lord & out of weakness he shall be made strong in that day when my work shall commence among all my People unto the restoreing thee O House of Israel saith the Lord & thus prophesied Josep saying behold that Seer will the Lord bless & they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded for this promise of which I have obtained of the Lord of the fruit of thy loins shall be fulfilled behold I am sure of the fulfiling of this promise & his name shall be called after me & it shall be after the name of his father & he shall be like unto me for the thing which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand by the power of the Lord shall bring my People unto Salvation yea thus Prophesied Josep I am sure of this thing even as I am sure of the promise of Moses for the Lord hath said unto me I will preserve thy seed forever & the Lord hath said I will raise up a Moses & I will give power unto him in a rod & I will <​give​> Judgment unto him in writing yet I will not loose his tongue that he shall speak much for I will not make him mighty in <​in​> speaking but I will write unto him my law by the finger of mine own hand & I will make one[149](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6731824945373908897" \o "Note) a spoaksman for him & the Lord said unto me also I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins & I will make one <​for​> him a spokesman & I behold I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins unto the fruit of thy loins & the spoaksman of thy loins shall declare it & the words which he shall write shall be the words which is expediant in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins & it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust for I know their faith & they shall cry from the dust yea even repentance unto their Brethren even that after many generations have gone by them & it shall come to pass that their cry shall go even according to the simpleness of their words because of their faith their words shall procede forth out of my mouth unto their Brethren which are the fruit of thy loins & the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers & now behold my Son Joseph after this manner did my father of old Prophesy wherefore because of this covenant thou art blessed for thy seed shall not be destroid [p. 53] for they shall hearken unto the words of the Book & there shall raise up one mighty among them which shall do much good both in word & in deed being an instrument in the hands of God with exceding faith to work mighty wonders & do that thing which is great in the sight of God unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel & unto the seed of thy Brethren & now blessed art thou Joseph behold thou art little wherefore hearken unto the words of thy Brother Nephi & it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken remember the words of thy dieing father Amen——

Second Nephi, Chapter 3 [2 Nephi 4]

Chapter [blank]—— And now I Nephi speak concerning the prophesies of my fa[150](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10812556455881820731" \o "Note) <​which​> my father hath spoken concerning Joseph who was carried into Egypt for behold he truly prophesied concerning all his Seed & the prophesies which he wrote these there are not many greater & he prophesied concerning us & our future generations & they are written upon the plates of Brass wherefore after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophesies of Joseph he called the children of Laman his Sons & his daughters & sayeth unto them behold my Sons & my daughters which are the Sone & the daughters of my first born I would that ye should give ear unto my words for the Lord God hath said that inasmuch as ye shall keep my Commandments ye shall prosper in the land & in as much as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presance but behold my Sons & my Daughters I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you for behold I know that if ye are brought up in the right way that ye should go ye will not depart from it wherefore if ye are cursed behold I leave my blessing upon you that the Cursing may be taken from you & be answered upon the heads of your parents wherefore because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish wherefore he will be merciful unto you & unto your seed forever & it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the Sons & Daughters of Laman he caused that the Sons & daughters of Lemuel be to be brought before him & he spake unto them saying behold the <​my​> Sons & the <​my​> Daughters which are the Sons & the Daughters of my Second Son behold I leave unto you the Same blessing which I left unto the Sons & Daughters of Laman wherefore thou shalt not utterly be destroid but in the end thy seed shall be blessed & it came to pass that <​when​> my father <​had​> made an end of speaking in unto them Behold it came to pass that he spake unto the Sons of Ishmael yea & even all his household & after that he had made an end of speaking unto them he spake unto Sam saying blessed art thou & thy Seed for thou shalt inherit the land land like unto thy Brother Nephi & thy seed shall be numbered with his seed & thou shalt be even like unto thy Brother & thy seed [p. 54] like unto his seed & thou shalt be blessed in all thy days & it came to pass that after Lehi had spake[151](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2904724655462630739" \o "Note) unto all his household according to the feelings of his heart & the spirit of the Lord which was in him he waxed old & it came to pass that he died & was buried & it came to pass that not many days after his Death Laman & Lemuel & the Sons of Ishmael were angery with me becaus of the admonitions of the Lord for I Nephi was constrained to speak unto them according to the word for I had spake many things unto them & also my father before his death many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates for a more history part are written upon mine other plates & upon these I write the things of my Soul & many of the Scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of Brass for my Soul deliteth in the Scriptures & my heart pondereth <​them​> & writeth them for the learning & the profit of my children behold my Soul deliteth in the things of the Lord & my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen & heard nevertheless notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord in shewing me his great & marvelous works my heart exclaimeth O wretched man that I am yea my heart sorroweth because of mine flesh my Soul grieveth because of mine iniquity I am encompassed about because of the temptations & the Sins which doth so easily beset me & when I desire to rejoice my heart groaneth because of my Sins nevertheless I know in whom I have trusted my God hath been my support he hath lead me through mine afflictions in the wilderness & he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep he hath filled me with his love even unto the Consumeing of my flesh he hath confounded mine enemies unto the causeing of them to quake before me behold he hath heard my cry by day & he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night time & by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him yea my voice have I sent upon high & Angels came down & ministered unto me & upon the wings of his spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceding high Mountains & mine eyes hath beheld great things yea even to great for man therefore I was bidden that I should not write them O then if I have seen so great things if the Lord in his condesension unto me <​the​> children of men hath visited me[152](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7480936163716171257" \o "Note) in so much mercy why should my heart weep & my Soul linger in the vally of sorrow & my flesh waste away & my strength slacken because of mine afflictions & why should I yield be to sin because of my flesh yea why should I give way to temptations that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace & afflict my soul why am I angery because of mine enemy awake my soul no longer droop in Sin rejoice O my heart & give place [p. 55] no more for the enemy of my Soul do not anger again because of mine enimies do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions rejoice O my heart & cry unto the Lord & say O Lord I will praise thee forever yea my Soul will rejoice in thee my God & the rock of my Salvation O Lord wilt thou redeem my Soul wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of Sin may the gates of hell be shut continually before me because that my heart is broken & my spirit is contrite O Lord wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me that I may walk in the path of the low vally that I may be strict in the plane road O Lord wilt thou ensercle me around in the robe of thy righteousness O Lord wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies wilt thou make my path strait before me wilt thou not place a stumbleing block in my way but that thou wouldst clear my way before me & hedge not up my way but the ways of mine enemy O Lord I have trusted in thee & I will trust in thee forever I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh for I know that cursed is he that puteth his trust in the arm of flesh yea cursed is he that puteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm yea I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh yea my God will give me if I ask not amiss therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee I will cry unto thee my God the rock of my righteousness behold my woice shall forever ascend up unto thee my Rock & mine everlasting God Amen——

Second Nephi, Chapter 4 [2 Nephi 5]

Chapter [blank]

—— Behold it came to pass that I Nephi did cry much unto the Lord my God because of the anger of my Brethren but behold their anger did increase against me insomuch that they did seek to take away my life yea they did murmur against me saying our younger Brother thinketh to rule over us & we have had much trial because of him wherefore now let us slay him that we may not be afflicted more because of his words for behold we will not that he shall be our ruler for it belongeth unto us which are the elder Brethren to rule over this People now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me but it sufficeth me to say that they did seek to take away my life & it came to pass that the Lord did warn me that I Nephi should depart from them & flee into the wilderness & all they which would go with me wherefore it came to pass that I Nephi did take my family & also Zoram & his family & Sam mine elder Brother & his family & Jacob & Josep mine <​my​> younger Brethren & also my sisters & all theye which would go with me & all theye which would go with me were theye which would go <​believed​> in the warnings & the revelations of God wherefore they did hearken unto my words & we did take our tents & [p. 56] whatsoever things were possible for us & did journy in the wilderness for the space of many days & after that we had journied for the space of many days we did pitch our tents & my People would that we should call the name of the place Nephi wherefore we did call it Nephi & all they which were with me did take it upon them to call themselves the People of Nephi & we did observe to keep the Judgments & the statutes & the commandments of the Lord in all things according to the law of Moses & the Lord was with us & we did prosper excedingly for we did sow seed & we did reap again in abundance & we began to raise flocks & heards & animels of every kind & I Nephi had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of Brass & also the Ball or compass which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord according to that whch <​which​> is written & it came to pass that we began to prosper excedingly & to multiply in the land & I Nephi did take the sword <​sword​> of Laban & after the manner of it did make many swords least by any means the People which were now called Lamanites should come upon us & destroy us for I knew their hatred towards me & my children & they which were called my people & I did teach my People that they should build buildings & that they should work in all manner of wood & of Iron & of Copper & of Brass & of Steel & of Gold & of Silver & of Precious Ores which were in great abundance & I Nephi did build a Temple & I did construct it after the manner of the Temple of Solomon save it were not build built of so many precious things for they were not to be found upon the land wherefore it could not be built like unto Solomons Temple but the manner of the construction was like unto the Temple of Solomon & the workmanship thereof was exceding fine & it came to pass that I Nephi did cause my People that they should be industrious & that they should labour with their hands & it came to pass that they would that I should be their King but I Nephi was desireous that they should have no King nevertheless I did do for them according to that which was in my power & behold the words of the Lord had been fulfiled unto my Brethren which he spake concerning them that I should be their ruler & their teacher wherefore I had been their[153](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "569459089530528109" \o "Note) ruler & their teacher according to the commandments of the Lord untill the time that they sought to take away my life wherefore the word of the Lord was fulfiled which he spake unto me saying that in as much as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presance of the Lord & behold they were cut off from his presance & he had caused the cursing to come upon <​them​> yea even a sore curseing because of their iniquity for behold they had heardened their hearts against him that they had become like unto a flint wherefore as they were white & exceding fair & delightsome that they might not be enticeing unto my People therefore the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them [p. 57] & thus saith the Lord God I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy People save they shall repent of their iniquities & cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing & the Lord spake it & it was done & because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle People full of mischief & subtelty & did seek in the wilderness for beasts of pray & the Lord God said unto me they shall be a scorge unto thy seed to stir them up in rememberance of me & in as much as they will not remember me & hearken unto my words they shall scorge them even unto destruction & it came to pass that I Nephi did consecrate Jacob & Joseph that they should be priests & teachers over the Land of my People & it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness & thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem & I Nephi had cept the records upon my plates which I had made of my People thus far & it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me make other plates & thou shalt ingraven many things upon them which are good in my sight for the profit of thy People wherefore I Nephi to be obediant to the commandments of the Lord went & made these plates upon which I have engraven these things & I engravened that which is pleasing unto God & if my People be pleased with the things of God they be pleased with mine engraveings which are upon these plates & if my People desire to know the more particular part of the history of my People they must search mine other Plates & it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away & we had already had wars & contentions with our Brethren

Second Nephi, Chapter 5 [2 Nephi 6–8]

Chapter [blank]

The words of Jacob the Brother of Nephi which he spake unto the People of Nephi behold my beloved Brethren that I Jacob haveing been called of God & ordained after <​the manner of​> his holy order & haveing been consecrated by my Brother Nephi unto whom ye look as a King or a protector & on whom ye depend for safety behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceding many things nevertheless I speak unto you again for I am desireous for the wellfare of your Souls yea mine anxiety is great for you & ye yourselves know that it ever has been for I have exhorted you with all diligence & I have taught you the words of my father & I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written from the creation of the world & now behold I would speak unto you concerning things which are & which are to come wherefore I will read you the words of Isaiah & they are the words which my Brother hath desired me that I should speak unto you & I speak them[154](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14120624394925915263" \o "Note) unto you for your sakes that ye may learn & glorify the name of your God & now the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel wherefore they may be likened unto you for ye are of the house of Israel & there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you because that ye are of the house of Israel & now [p. 58] these are the words thus saith the Lord God behold I will lift up mine hand unto the Gentiles & set up my standard to the People & they shall bring thy Sons in their arms & thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders & Kings shall be thy nursing fathers & their Queens thy nursing Mothers they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth & lick up the dust of thy feet & thou shalt know that I am the Lord for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me & now I Jacob would speak somewhat concerning these things <​words​> for behold the Lord hath shewn me that they which were at Jerusalem from whence we came have been slain & carr[i]ed away captive nevertheless the Lord hath shewn unto me that they should return again & he also hath shewn unto me that the Lord God the holy one of Israel should manifest himself unto them in the flesh & after that he should manifest himself they should scorge him & crucify him according to the words of the Angel which spake it unto me & after that they have hardened their hearts & stiffened their necks against the holy one of Israel behold the Judgments of the holy one of Israel shall come upon them & the day cometh that they shall be smitten & afflicted wherefore after they are driven to & fro for thus saith the Angel many shall be afflicted in the flesh & shall not be suffered to perish because of the prayers of the faithful wherefore they shall be scattered & smitten & hated nevertheless the Lord will be merciful unto them that when they shall come to the knowledge of their redeemer they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance & blessed are the Gentiles they of whom the prophet hath written for behold if it so be that they shall repent & fight not against Zion & do not unite themselves to that great & abominable church they shall be saved for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he hath made unto his children & for this cause the Prophet hath written these things wherefore they that fight against Zion & the covenant People of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet & the People of the Lord shall not be ashamed for the People of the Lord are they which wait for him for they still wait for the comeing of the Messiah & behold according to the words of the Prophet the Messiah will set himself again <​the second time​> to recover them which <​wherefore​> he will manifest himself unto them in power & great glory unto the destruction of their enemies when that day cometh when they shall believe in him & none will he destroy that believeth in him & they that believe not in him shall be destroid both by fire & by tempest & by earthquakes & by bloodsheds & by pestilence & by famine & they shall know that the Lord is God the holy one of Israel for shall the pray be taken from the mighty or the lawful captive delivered but thus saith the Lord even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away & the pray of the terrible shall be delivered for the mighty God shall deliver his covenant People for thus saith the Lord I will contend [p. 59] with them that contendeth with thee & I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh & they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine & all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Saviour & thy redeemer the mighty one of Jacob yea for thus saith the Lord have I put thee away or have I cast thee off forever for thus saith the Lord where is the bill of your Mothers divorsement to whom have I put thee away or to which of my creditors have I sold you yea to whom have I sold you behold for your iniquities have you <​ye​> sold yourselves & for your transgressions is your Mother put away wherefore when I come there was no man when I called yea there was none to answer O House of Israel is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem or have I no power to deliver behold at my rebuke I dry up the Sea I make their rivers a wilderness & their fish to stink because the waters are dried up & they dieth because of thirst I cloath the heavens with blackness & I make sackcloth their covering the Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned that I should know how to speak a word in Season unto thee O house of Israel when he <​ye are​> weary he waketh morning by morning he waketh mine ear to hear as the learned the Lord God hath appointed[155](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10633269663580960702" \o "Note) mine ear & I was not rebellious neither turned away back I gave my back to the smiter & my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair I hid not my face from shame & spitting for the Lord God will help me therefore shall I not be confounded therefore have I set my face like a flint & I know that I shall not be ashamed & the Lord is near & he Justifieth me who will contend with me let him <​us​> stand together who is mine adversary let him come near <​me​> & I will smite him with the strength of my mouth for the Lord God will help me & all they which shall condemn me behold all they shall wax old as a garment & the moth shall eat them up who is among you that feareth the Lord that obeyeth the voice of his servant that walketh in darkness & hath no light behold all ye that kindleth fire that compass yourselves about with sparks walk in the light of your fire & in the sparks which ye have kindled this shall ye have of mine hand ye shall lye down in sorrow hearken to me ye that follow after righteousness look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn & to the hole of the pit from whence ye are diged look unto Abraham your father & unto Sarah she that bear you for I called him alone & blessed him for the Lord shall comfort Zion he will comfort all her waste places & he will make her wilderness like Eden Eden & her desert like the garden of the Lord Joy & gladness shall be found therein thanks giveing & the voice of melody hearken unto me my beloved <​People &​> give ear unto me O my Nation for a law shall procede from me & I will make my Judgment to rest for a light thing <​of​> the People my righteousness is near my salvation is gone forth & mine arm shall Judge the People the isles shall wait [p. 60] upon me & on mine arm shall they trust lift up your eyes to the heavens & look upon the earth beneath for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke & the earth shall wax old like a garment & they that dwell therein shall die in like manner but my salvation shall be forever & my righteousness shall not be abolished hearken unto me ye that know righteousness the People in whose heart I have written my law fear ye not the reproach of men neither be ye afraid of their revileings for the moth shall eat <​them up​> like a garment & the worm shall eat them like wool but my righteousness shall be forever & my salvation from generation to generation Awake awake put on strength O arm of the Lord awake as in the ancient days art thou not it that hath cut Rahab & wounded the dragon art thou not it which hath dried the Sea the waters of the great deep that hath made the debths of the Sea away for the ransomed to pass over therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return & come with singing unto Zion & everlasting Joy & holiness shall be upon their heads & they shall obtain gladness & Joy sorrow & mourning shall flee away I am he yea I am he that comforteth you behold who art thou that thou shouldst be afraid of man which shall die & of the Son of man which shall be made like unto grass & forgetest the Lord thy maker that hath streached forth the heavens & laid the foundations of the earth & hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor as if he were ready to destroy & where is the fury of the oppressor the captive exile hasteneth that he may be delivered <​loosed​> <​&​> that he should <​not​> die in the pit nor that his bread should fail but I am the Lord thy God whose waves roared the Lord of hosts is my name & I have put my words in thy mouth & hath covered thee in the shadow of thy <​mine​> hand that I may plant the heavens & lay the foundations of the earth & say unto Zion behold thou art my People awake awake stand up O Jerusalem which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury thou hast drunk<​en​> the dregs of the cup of trembleing rung out & none to guide her among all the Sons she hath brought forth neither that taketh her by the hand of all the Sons she hath brought up these two Sons are come unto thee who shall be sorry for thee thy desolation & destruction & the famine & the sword & by whom shall I comfort thee thy Sons have fainted save these two they lie at the head of all the streets as a wild Bull in a net they are full of the fury of the Lord the rebuke of thy God therefore hear now this thou afflicted & drunken & not with wine thus saith thy Lord the Lord & thy God pleadeth the cause of thy <​his​> People behold I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembleing the dregs of the cup of my fury thou shalt no more drink it again but I will put it unto the hand of them that afflict thee which I said to thy Soul bow down that we may go over & thou hast laid thy body as the ground & as the street to them that went over awake awake put on thy strength [p. 61] O Zion put on thy beautiful garments O Jerusalem the holy City for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised & the unclean shake thyself from the dust arise sit down O Jerusalem loose thyself from the bands of thy neck O captive daughter of Zion——

Second Nephi, Chapter 6 [2 Nephi 9]

Chapter [blank] And now my beloved Brethren I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he hath covenanted with all the house of Israel that he hath spoken unto the Jews by the mouth of his holy Prophets even from the beginning down from Generation to Generation untill the time cometh that they shall be restored to the true church & fold of God when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance & shall & shall be established in all their lands of promise behold my beloved Brethren I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice & lift up your heads forever because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon you<​r​> Children for I know that thou hast searched much many of you to know of things to come wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away & die nevertheless in our bodies we shall see God yea & I know that ye know that in the body he shall shew himself unto they at Jerusalem from whence we came for it is expediant that it should be among them for it behoveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh & die for all men that all men might become subject unto him for as death hath passed upon all men to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator there must needs be a power of resurrection & the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall & the fall came by reason of transgression & because man became fallen they were cut off from the presance of the Lord wherefore it must needs be an infinate atonement save it should be an infinate atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption wherefore the first Judgment whiich <​which​> came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration & if so this flesh must have laid down to rot & to crumble to its Mother earth to rise no more O the wisdom of God his mercy & grace for behold if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that Angel which fell from before the presance of the Lord Eternal God & became the Devil to rise no more & our spirits must have become like unto him & we become Devils Angels to a Devil to be shut out from the presance of our God & to remain with the father of lies in miseary like unto himself yea to that being who beguiled our first Parents who transfo[r]meth himself nigh unto an Angel of light & stireth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder & all manner of secret works of darkness O how great the goodness of our God who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster yea that monster death & hell which I call the death of the body & also the death of the spirit & because of the way of deliverance [p. 62] of our God the holy one of Israel this death of whcih I have spoken which is the temporal shall deliver up its dead which death is the grave & this death of which I have spoken which is the spiritual death shall deliver up its dead which spiritual death is hell wherefore death & hell must deliver up its dead & hell must deliver up its captive spirits & the grave must deliver up its captive bodies & the do bodies & the spirits of men will be restored one to the other & it is by the power of the <​resurrection of the​> holy one of Israel O how great the plan of our God for on the other hand the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous & the grave deliver up the body of the righteous & the spirit & the body is restored to itself again & all[156](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "461911285408987027" \o "Note) men become incorruptable & immortal & they are lieveing souls haveing a perfect knowledg like unto us in the flesh save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect wherefore we shall have a perfect knowledg of all our guilt & our uncleanness & our nakedness & the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment & their righteousness being cloathed with purity yea even with the robe of righteousness & it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life insomuch as they have become immortal they must appear before the Judgment seat of the holy one of Israel & then cometh the Judgment & then must they be Judged according to the holy Judgment[157](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10427671554408246091" \o "Note) of God & assuredly as the Lord lieveth for the Lord God hath spoken it & it is his Eternal word which cannot pass away that they which are righteous shall be righteous still & they which are filthy shall be filthy still wherefore they which are filthy[158](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16065393939613956870" \o "Note) are the Devil & his Angels & they shall go away unto into everlasting fire prepared for them & their torment is a lake of fire & brimstone whose flames ascendeth up forever & ever & hath no end O the greatness & the Justice of our God for he executeth all his words & they have gone forth out of his mouth & his law must be fulfiled but behold the righteous the Saints of the holy one of Israel they which have believed in the holy one of Israel they which have endured[159](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6866054189006325772" \o "Note) the crosses of the world & despised the shame of it they shall inherit the Kingdom of God which was prepared from them from the foundation of the world & their Joy shall be full forever O the greatness of the mercy of our God the holy one of Israel for he delivereth his Saints from that awful monster the Devil & death & hell & that lake of fire & brimstone which is endless torment O how great the holiness of our God for he knoweth all things & there is not any thing save he know it & he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice for behold he suffereth the pains of all men yea the pains of every liveing creture both[160](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7699615710401268440" \o "Note) men[161](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16051654942277653562" \o "Note) women & children which belong to the family of Adam & he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men that all might stand before him at the great & Judgment <​day​> & he commandeth all men [p. 63] that they must repent & be Baptised in his name haveing perfect faith in the holy one of Israel or they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God & if they will not repent & believe in his name & be baptised in his name & endure to the end they must be damned for the Lord God the holy one of Israel hath spoken it wherefore he hath given a law & where there is no law given there is no punishment & where there is no punishment there is no condemnation & where there is no condemnation the mercies of the holy one of Israel hath[162](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4565259212972182021" \o "Note) claim upon them because of the atonement for they are delivered by the power of him for the atonement satesfieth the demands of his Justice upon all those who hath not the law given to them that they are delivered from that awful monster death & hell & the devil & the lake of fire & brimstone which is endless torment & they are restored to that God who gave them breath which is the holy one of Israel but wo unto him that hath the law given yea that hath all the commandments of God like unto us & that transgresseth them & that wasteth the days of his probation for awful is his State O that cunning plan of the evil one[163](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4021887763208704116" \o "Note) O the vainness & the frailties & the foolishness of men when they are learned they think they are wise & they hearken not unto the councils of God for they set it aside supposeing they know of themselves wherefore their wisdom is foolishness & it profiteth them not wherefore they shall perish but to be learned is good if it so be that they hearken unto the councils of God but wo unto the rich which are rich as to the things of the world for because that they are rich they despise the poor & they persecute the meek & their hearts are upon their treasures wherefore their treasure is their God & behold their treasure shall perish with them also & wo unto the deaf that will not hear for they shall perish wo unto the blind that will not see for they shall[164](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6911140768540679067" \o "Note) perish also wo unto the uncircumcised of heart for a Knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day wo unto the liar for he shall be thrust down to hell wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth for he shall die wo unto them who commit whoredoms for they shall be thrust down to hell yea wo unto they that worship Idols for the Devil of all Devils deliteth in them & in fine wo unto all they that die in their Sins for they shall return to God & behold his face & remain in their Sins O my beloved Brethren remember the awfulness in transgressing against that holy God & also the awfulness of yielding to the enticeings of that cunning one remember to be carnally minded is death & to be spiritually minded is life Eternal O my beloved Brethren give ear to my words remember the greatness of the holy one of Israel do not say that I have spoken hard things against you for if ye do ye will revile against the truth for I have spoken the words of your maker I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness but the righteous [p. 64] fear it not for they love the truth & are not shaken O then my beloved Brethren come unto the Lord the holy one of Israel <​remember​> that his paths are righteousness[165](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11254547165589764162" \o "Note) behold the way for man is narrow but it lieth in a strait course before him & the keeper of the gate is the holy one of Israel & he employeth no servant there & there is none other way save it be by the gate for he cannot be deceived for the Lord God is his name & whoso knocketh to him will he open & the wise & the learned & they that are rich which are puffed up because of their learning & their wisdom & their riches yea they are they whom he despiseth[166](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2733449176117206959" \o "Note) & save they shall cast these things away & [167](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15543832373541136637" \o "Note)consider themselves fools before God & come down in the debths of humility he will not open unto them but the things of the wise & the prudent shall be hid from them forever yea that happiness which is prepared for the Saints O my beloved Brethren remember my words behold I take off my garments & I shake them before you I pray <​the​> God of my Salvation that he view me with his all searching eye wherefore ye shall know at the last day when all men shall be Judged of their works that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my Soul & that I stand with brightness before him & am rid of your blood O my beloved Brethren turn away from your Sins shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast come unto that God who is the rock of your Salvation prepare your Souls for that glorious day when Justice shall be administered unto the righteous even the day of Judgment that ye may not shrink with awful fear that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness & be constrained to exclaim holy holy are thy Judgments O Lord God Almighty but I know my guilt I transgressed thy law & my transgressions are mine & the Devil hath obtained me that I am a prey to his awful miseary but behold my Brethren is it expediant that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure would I be plain unto you according to the planeness of the truth if ye were freed from sin behold if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness but as ye are not holy & ye look upon me as a teacher it must needs be expediant that I teach you the consequences of sin behold my soul abhoreth Sin & my heart delighteth inn righteousness & I will praise the holy name of my God come my brethren every one that thirsteth come ye to the <​waters​> & he that hath no money come buy & eat ye<​a​> come buy wine & milk without money & without price wherefore do not spend money for that which is of no worth nor your labour for that which cannot satisfy hearken diligently unto me & remember the words which I have spoken & come unto the holy one of Israel & feast upon that which perisheth not neither can be corrupted & let your soul delight in fatness behold my beloved Brethren remember the words of your God pray unto him cotinually by day & give thanks unto his holy name by night let your hearts [p. 65] rejoice & behold how great the covenants of the Lord & how great his condesentions unto the Children of men & because of his greatness & his grace & mercy he hath promised unto us that our Seed shall not utterly be destroid according to the flesh but that he would preserve them & in future Generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel & now my Brethren I would speak unto you more but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words Amen——

Second Nephi, Chapter 7 [2 Nephi 10]

Chapter [blank]—— And now I Jacob speak unto you again my beloved Brethren concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken for behold the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh wherefore as it hath been shewn unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief nevertheless God will be merciful unto many & our Children shall be restored that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their redeemer wherefore as I said unto you it must needs be expediant that Christ for in the last night the Angel spake unto me that this should be his name th◊t he should come among the Jews among they which are the more wicked part of the world & they shall crucify him for it behoveth our God & there is none other Nation on earth that would crucify their God for should the mighty miracles be wrought among other Nations they would repent & know that he be their God but because of Priests crafts & iniquities they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him that he be crucified wherefore because of their iniquities destructions famines pestilences & bloodsheds shall come upon them & they which shall not be destroid shall be scattered among all Nations but behold thus sath the Lord God when the day cometh that they shall believe in me that I am Christ then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh upon the earth unto the lands of their inheritance & it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long despersion from the Isles of the Sea & from the four parts of the earth & the Nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me saith God in carying them forth to the lands of their inheritance <​yea​> the Kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them & their Queens shall become nursing Mothers wherefore the promises of the Lord is great unto the Gentiles for he hath spoken it & who can despute but behold this land saith God shall be a land of thine inheritance & the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land & this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles & there shall be no King<​s​> upon the land which shall raise up unto the Gentiles & I will fortify this land against all other Nations & he that fighteth against Zion shall perish saith God for he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish for I the Lord the king of Heaven will be their king & I will be a light unto them forever that hear my words wherefore for [p. 66] this cause that my covenants may be fulfiled which I have made unto the children of men that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness & of murders & of abominations wherefore he that fighteth against Zion both Jew & Gentile both bond & free both male & feemale shall perish for they are they which are the whore of all the earth for they which are not for me are against me saith our <​Our​> God for I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh wherefore my beloved brethren thus saith our God I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles nevertheless I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles that they shall be like unto a father to them wherefore the Gentiles shall be blessed & numbered among the House of Israel wherefore I will consecrate this land unto thy seed & they which shall be numbered among thy seed forever for the land of their inheritance for it is a choice land saith God unto me above oll <​all​> other lands wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me saith God & now my beloved Brethren seeing that our merciful God hath given us so great knowledge concerning these things let us remember him & lay aside our sins & not hang down our heads for we are not cast off nevertheless we have <​been​> driven out of the land of our inheritance but we have been lead to a better land for the Lord hath made the Sea our path & we are upon an Isle of the Sea but great is the promises of the Lord unto they which are upon the Isles of the Sea wherefore as it sayeth Isles there must needs be more then this & they are inhabited also by our Brethren for behold the Lord God hath lead away from time to time from the house of Israel according to his will & pleasure & now behold the Lord remembereth all they which are <​have been​> broken off wherefore he remembereth us also therefore cheer up your hearts & remember that ye are free to act for yourselves to chose this way of everlasting death or the way of Eternal life wherefore my beloved Brethren reconcile yourselves to the will of God & not to the will of the Devil & the flesh & remember that after ye are reconciled unto God that it is only in & through the grace of God that ye are saved wherefore my God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection & also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement that ye may be received into the Eternal Kingdom of God that ye may praise him through grace divine Amen.——

Second Nephi, Chapter 8 [2 Nephi 11–15]

Chapter [blank]

And now Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written for the things which I have written sufficeth me & now I Nephi write more of the words of Isaiah for my Soul delighteth in his words for I will liken his words unto my People & I will send them forth unto all my Children for he verily saw my redeemer [p. 67] even as I have seen him & my Brother Jacob also hath seen him as I have seen him wherefore I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true wherefore by the words of three God hath said I will establish my word nevertheless God sendeth more witnesses & he proveth all his words behold my soul delighteth in proveing unto my People the truth of the comeing of Christ for for this end hath the law of Moses been given & all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world unto man are the typefying of him & also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers yea my soul delighteth in his grace & his Justice & power & mercy in the great & eternal plan of deliverance from death & my soul delighteth in proveing unto my People that save christ should come all men must perish for if there be no Christ there be no God & if there be no God we are not for there could have been no Creation but there is a God & he is Christ & he cometh in the fullness of his own time & now I write some of the words of Isaiah that whoso of my People which shall see these words may lift up their hearts & rejoice for all men now these are the words & ye may liken them unto you & unto all men the word that Isaiah the Son of Amoz <​Amoz Amoz​> saw concerning Judah & Jerusalem & it shall come to pass in the last days when the mountain of the Lords house shall be established in the top of the mountains & shall be exhalted above the to hills & all Nations shall flow unto it & many People shall go & say come ye & let us go up to the mountain of the Lord to the house of the God of Jacob & he will teach us of his ways & we will walk in his paths for out of Zion shall go forth the law & the word of the Lord from Jerusalem & he shall Judge among the Nations & shall rebuke many People & they shall beat their swords into plow shares & their spears into pruneing hooks Nation shall not lift up sword against Nation neither shall they learn war any more O house of Jacob come ye & let us walk in the light of the Lord yea come for ye have all gone astray every one to his wicked ways therefore O Lord thou hast forsaken thy People the house of Jacob because they be replenished from the east & hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines & they please themselves in the children of strangers their land also is full of silver & Gold neither is there any end of their treasures their land is also full of horses neither is there any end of their Charriots their land also is full of Idols they worship the work of their own hands that which their own fingers have made & the mean men boweth down[168](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14675349794076058928" \o "Note) & the great man humbleth himself not therefore forgive him not O ye wicked Ones enter into the rock & hide thee in the dust for the fear of the Lord & the glory of his magesty shall smite thee & it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled & the haughtiness of men shall [p. 68] be bowed down & the Lord alone shall be exhalted in that day for <​the​> day of the Lord of hosts soon cometh upon all Nations yea upon every one yea upon the proud & lofty & upon every one which is lifted up & he shall be brought low yea & the day of the Lord shall come upon all the ceders of Lebanon for they are high & lifted up & upon all the oaks of Bashan & upon all the high mountains & upon all the hills & upon all the Nations which are lifted up & upon every People & upon every high tower & upon every fenced wall & upon all the ships of the Sea & upon all the Ships of Tarshish & upon all the pleasant pictures & the loftiness of man shall be bowed down & the haughtiness of men shall be made low & the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day & the Idols he shall utterly abolish & they shall go into the holes of the rocks & into the caves of the earth for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them & the glory of his magesty shall smite them when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth in that day a man shall cast his Idols of Silver & his Idols of Gold which he hath made for himself to worship to the moles & to the Bats to go into the clefts of the rocks & into the tops of the raged rocks for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them & the magesty of his glory shall smite them when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth cease ye from man whose breath is in his nostrils for wherein is he to be accounted of for behold the Lord the Lord of hosts doth take away from Jerusalem & from Judah the stay & the staff the whole staff of bread & the whole stay of water & th <​the​> mighty man & the man of war the Judge & the Prophet & the prudent & the ancient the captain of fifty & the honourable man & the Counsellor & the cunning atificer & the eloquent Orator & I will give Children unto them to be their princes & babes shall rule over them & the People shall be oppressed every one by another & every one by his neighbor the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient & the base against the honourable when a man shall take hold of his Brother of the house of his father & shall say thou hast cloathing be thou our ruler & let not this ruin come under thy hand in that day shall he swear saying I will not be a healer for in my house is there is neither bread nor cloathing make me not a ruler of the People for Jerusalem is ruined & Judah is fallen because their tongues & their doings have been against the Lord to provoke the eyes of his glory the shew of their countenance doth witness against them & doth declare their Sin to be even as Sodom & they cannot hide it wo unto their Souls for they have rewarded evil unto themselves say unto the righteous that it is well with them for they shall eat the fruit of their doings wo unto the wicked for they shall perish for the reward of their hands shall be upon them & my People Children are their oppressors & women rule over them O my People they wh◊◊h lead thee cause thee to err & destroy the way of thy paths the Lord standeth up to plead & standeth to Judge the People the Lord will enter into Judgment [p. 69] with the ancients of his People & the princes thereof for ye have eaten up the vineyard & the Spoil of the poor in your houses what mean ye ye beat my People to pieces & grind the faces of the Poor saith the Lord God of hosts moreover the Lord saith because the daughters of Zion are haughty & walk with streached forth necks & wanton eyes walking & minceing as they go & makeing a tinkling with their feet therefore the <​Lord​> will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daugters of Zion & the Lord will discover their Secret parts in that day the Lord will take away the bravery of tinkling ornaments & cauls & round tires like the moon the chains & the bracelets & the mufflers the bonnets & the ornaments of the legs & the headbands & the tables tablets & the earrings the rings & nose jewels the changeable suits of apparrel & the mantles & the wimples & the crisping pins the glasses & the fine linnen & hoods & the vails & it shall all come to pass[169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4764418532604033227" \o "Note) in stead of sweet smell there shall be stink & instead of a girdle a rent & instead of wellset hair baldness & instead of a stomacher a girding of sack cloth burning instead of beauty thy men shall fall by the sword & thy mighty in the war & her gates shall lament & mourn & she shall be desolate & shall sit upon the ground & in that day seven women shall take hold of one man saying we will eat our own bread & wear our own apparrel only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach in that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful & glorious the fruit of the earth & excellent & comely to them that are escaped of Israel & it shall come to pass them that are left in Zion & remam <​remaineth​> in Jerusalem shall be called holy every one that is written among the liveing in Jerusalem when the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion & shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of Judgment & by the spirit of burning & the Lord will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion & upon her assemblies a cloud of <​&​> smoke by day & the shineing of a flameing fire by night for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence & there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat & for a place of reffuge & a covet from storm & from rain & then will I sing to my <​well​> beloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard my well beloved hath a vineyard in a verry fruitful hill & he fenced it & gathered out the stones thereof & planted it with the choicest vine & built a tower in the midst of it & also made a winepress therein & he looked that it should bring forth grapes & it brought forth wild grapes & now O inhabitants of Jerusalem & men of Judah Judge I pray you betwixt me & my vineyard what could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it wherefore when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes & now go to I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard I will take away the hedge thereof & it shall be eaten up & I will break down the wall thereof & [p. 70] it shall be troden down & I will lay it waste it shall not be pruned nor digged but there shall Come up briers & thorns I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it for the vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the House of Israel & the men of Judah his pleasant plant & he looked for Judgment & behold oppression for righteousness & <​but but​>[170](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1967554024235928258" \o "Note) behold a cry wo unto them that join house to house till there can be no place that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth in mine <​ears​> saith the Lord of hosts of a truth many houses shall be desolate & great & fair cities without inhabitant yea ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath & the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah wo unto them that rise up early in the morning that they may follow strong drink that continue untill night & wine inflame them & the harp & the viol the tabret & pipe & wine are in their feasts but they regard not the work of the Lord neither consider the opperation of his hand<​s​> therefore my People are gone into captivity because they have no knowledge & their honourable men are famished & their multitude dried up with thirst therefore hell hath enlarged herself & opened her mouth without measure & their glory & their multitude & their pomp & he that rejoiceth shall decend into it & the mean man shall be brought down & the mighty man shall be humbled & the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled but the Lord of hosts shall be exalted in Judgment & God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness then shall the Lambs feed after their manner & the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity & Sin as it we◊e <​were​> with a cart rope that say let him make speed hasten his work that we may see it & let the counsel of the holy one of Israel draw nigh & come that we may know it wo unto them that call evil good & good evil that put darkness for light & light for darkness that put bitter for sweet & sweet for bitter wo unto the wise in their own eyes & prudent in their own sight wo unto the mighty to drink wine & men of strength to mingle strong drink which justify the wicked for reward & take away the righteousness of the righteous from him therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble & the flame consumeth the caff their root shall be rottenness & their blossom shall go up as dust because they have cast away the law of the Lord & de <​of​> hosts & despised the word of the holy one of Israel therefore is the anger of the Lord kindled against his People & he hath streached forth his hand against them & hath smitten them & the hills did tremble & their carcases were torn in the midst of the streets for all this his anger is not turned away but his hand streached out still & he will lift up an ensign to the Nations from far & will hiss unto them from the end of the earth & behold they shall come with speed swiftly none shall be weary nor stumble among them none shall slumber nor sleep neither shall they [p. 71] the girdle of their loins be loosed nor the latchet of their shoes be broken whose arrows shall be sharp & all their bows bent & their horses hoofs shall be counted like flint & their wheels like a whirlwind their roaring like a lion they shall roar like young lions yea they shall roar & lay hold of the prey & shall carry away safe & none shall deliver & in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the Sea & if they look unto the land behold darkness & sorrow & the light is darkened in the heavens thereof——

Second Nephi, Chapter 9 [2 Nephi 16–22]

Chapter [blank]

In the year that King Uzziah died I saw the <​also​> the Lord sitting upon a throne high & lifted up & his train filled the temple above it stood the Seraphims each one had Six wings with twain he covered his face & with twain he covered his feet & with twain he did fly & one cried unto another & said holy holy holy is the Lord of hosts the whole earth is full of his glory & the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried & the house was filled with smoke then said I wo me for I a man of unclean lips & I dwell in the mids of a People of unclean lips for mine eyes have seen the King the Lord of hosts then flew one of the seraphims unto me haveing a live coal in his hand which he had taken with the tongs from off the alter & he laid upon my mouth & said lo this hath touched thy lips & thine iniquity is taken away & thy Sin purged & <​also​> I heard the voice of the Lord saying whom shall I send & who will go for us then I said here I send me & he said go & tell this People hear ye indeed but they understand not & see ye indeed but they perseived not make the heart of this People fat & make their ears heavy & shut their eyes lest they see with their eyes & hear with their ears & understand with their heart & convert & be healed then said I Lord how long & he said untill the Cities be wasted without inhabetent & the houses without man & the land be utterly desolate & the Lord have removed men far away for there shall be a great forsakeing in the midst of the Land but yet in it there shall be a tenth & they shall return & shal be eaten as a teil-tree & as an oak whose substance is in them when the <​they​> cast their leaves so the holy Seed shall be the substance thereof [171](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8332179082021429345" \o "Note)& it Came to pass in the days of Ahaz the Son of Jotham the Son of Uzziah King of Judah &[172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14524908898104053028" \o "Note) Rezin King of Syria & Pekah the Son of Remaliah King of Israel went up towards Jerusalem to war against it but could not prevail <​against​> it & it was told the house of David Saying Syria is confederate with Ephraim & his heart was moved & the heart of his People as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind then said the Lord unto Isaiah go forth now to meet Ahaz thou & Shear-Jashub thy Son at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fullers field & say unto him take heed & be quiet fear not neither be feint-hearted for the two tails of these smokeing firebrands for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria [p. 72] & of the Son of Remeliah because Syria Ephraim & the Son of Remeliah because have taken evil counsel against thee saying let us go up against Judah & vex it & let & us make a breach therein for us & set a King in the midst of it yea the Son of Tabeal thus saith the Lord God it shall not stand neither shall it come to pass for the head of Syria is Damascus & the head of Damascus Rezin & within three score & five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a People & the head of Ephraim is Samaria & the head of Samaria is Remeliahs Son if ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established [173](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9208411939969240238" \o "Note)moreover the Lord spake again unto Ahaz ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God ask either in the debths of or in the hights above but Ahaz said I will not ask neither will I tempt the Lord & he said hear ye now O house of David is it a small thing for you to weary men but will ye weary my God also therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign Behold a virgin shall conceive & shall bear a Son & shall call his name Immanuel butter & honey shall he eat that he may knoy to refuse the evil & to chose the good for before the child shall know to refuse the evil & chose the good the land that thou abhorest shall be forsaken of both her Kings [174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2246981310621362558" \o "Note)the Lord shall bring upon thee & upon thy Children People & upon thy fathers house days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah the King of Assyria & it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt & for the bee that is in the land of Assyria & they shall come & shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys & in the holes of the rocks & upon all thorns & upon all bushes in the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired by them beyond the river by the King of Assyria the head & the hair of the feet & it shall also consume the beard & it shall come to pass that in that day a man shall nourish a young cow & two Sheep & it shall come to pass for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter for butter & honey shall every one eat that is left in the land & it shall come to pass in that day every place shall be where there were a thousand vines that[175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13894767270369282449" \o "Note) a thousand silverlings which shall be for briars & thorns with arrows & with bows shall men come thither because all the land shall become briars & thorns & all hills that shall be diged with the mattock there shall not come thither the fear of briars & thorns but it shall be for the sending forth of Oxen & the tred treading of lesser Cattle [176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "957555736572351033" \o "Note)Moreover the Lord said unto me take thee a great roll & write in it with a mans pen concerning <​Ma​>her-shalal-hash-baz & I took unto me faithful witnesses to record Uriah the Priest & Zechariah the Son of Jerare Jerebechiah & I went unto the Prophetess & she conceived & bear a Son then said the Lord to me call his name Maher-shalal-hash-baz for behold the child shall not have knowledge to cry my father & my Mother before the riches of Damascus & the & the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the King of Assyria [177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3952484614467311511" \o "Note)the Lord[178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8522926312721606780" \o "Note) [p. 73] spake also unto me again saying for as much as this People refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly along & rejoice in Razin & Remeliahs Son now therefore behold the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the River strong & many even the King of Assyria & all his glory & he shall come up over all his channels & go over all his banks & he shall pass through Judah he shall overflow & go ever he shall reach even to the neck & the streaching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land O Immanuel [179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7531746528072252627" \o "Note)associate yourselves O ye People & ye shall be broken in pieces & give ear all ye of far countries gird yourselves & ye shall be broken in pieces gird yourselves & ye shall be broken in pieces take counsel together[180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15811503806909395496" \o "Note) & it shall come to nought speak the word & it shall not stand for God is with us [181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10883576645389341278" \o "Note)for the Lord spake thus to me with A strong hand & insructed me that I should not walk in the way of this People saying say ye not a confederacy to all to whom this People shall say a confederacy neither fear ye their fear nor be afraid sanctify the Lord of hosts himself & let him be your fear & let him be your dread & he shall be for a Sanctuary but for a stone of stumbleing & for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel for a gin & a snoare <​snare​> to the inhabitants of Jerusalem & many among them shall stumble & fall & be broken & be snared & be taken bind up the testimony Seal the land <​law​> among my Desipels & I will wait upon the Lord that hideth his face from the house of Jacob & I will look for him behold I & the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs & for wonders in Israel from the Lord of hosts which dwelleth in mount Zion [182](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8222791557892496512" \o "Note)&[183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12238095881884548313" \o "Note) when they shall say unto you seek unto them that have familiar spirits & unto wizards that peep & mutter should not a People seek unto their God for the liveing to hear from the dead to the law & to the testimony & if they speak not according to this word it is because there is no light in them & they shall pass through it hardly bestead & hungry & it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry they shall fret themselves & curse their King & their God & look upward & they shall look unto the earth & behold[184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3910443393085267547" \o "Note) trouble & darkness dimness of anguish & shall be driven to darkness [185](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15466441825946041582" \o "Note)nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulon & the land of Naphtali & afterward did more grieveiously afflict by the way of the red Sea beyond Jordon in Gallilee of the Nations the People that walked in darkness have seen a great light they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death upon them hath the light shined thou hast multiplied the Nation & increased the joy they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest & as when men rejoice when they divide the spoil for thou hast broken the yoke of his burden & the staff of his shoulder the rod of his oppressor for every Battle of the warrior with confused nois & garments rolled in blood but this shall be with burning & fuel of fire for unto us a child is born unto us a Son is given & the goverment shall be upon his shoulder & his name shall be <​called​> wonderful [p. 74] Counsellor the mighty God the everlasting Father the Prince of peace of the increase of goverment & peace there is no end upon the throne of David & upon his Kingdom to order it & to establish it with Judgment & with Justice from henceforth even forever the Zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this [186](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16888743170811511822" \o "Note)the Lord sent his word unto Jacob & it hath lighted upon Israel & all the People shall know even Ephraim & the inhabitants of Samaria that say in the pride & the stoutness of heart the bricks are fallen down but we will build with hewn stones the Sycamores are cut down but we will change them into Ceders therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him & join his enemies together the Syrians before & the Philistines behind & they shall devour Israel with open mouth for all this his anger is not turned away but his hand streached out still [187](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9463919339481874317" \o "Note)for the People turneth not unto him that smiteth them neither do they the Lord of hosts therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head & tail branch & rush in one day the ancient he is the head & the Prophet that teacheth lies he is the tail for the leaders of this People cause them to err & they that are lead of them are destroid therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men neither shall have mercy on their fatherless & widows for every one of them is a hypocrite & an evil doer & every[188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16668017203967866202" \o "Note) mouth speaketh folly for all this his anger is not turned away but his hand streached out still [189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12522923895720110128" \o "Note)for wickedness burneth as the fire it shall devour the briars & thorns & shall kindle in the thickets <​of the​> forests & they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke through the wrath of the Lord of hosts is the land darkened & the People shall be as the fuel of the fire no man shall spare his Brother & he shall snatch on the right hand & be hungry & he shall eat on the left hand & they shall not be satisfied they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm Mannassah Ephraim & Ephraim Mannassah they together shall be against Judah for all this his anger is not turned away but his hand streached out still [190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10842168387329187558" \o "Note)wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees & that write grieveeousness which they have prescribed to turn aside[191](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3815449579867205453" \o "Note) the needy from Judgment & to take away the right from the poor of my People that widows may be their prey & that they may rob the fatherless & what will ye do in the day of visitation & in the desolation which shall come from far to whom will ye flee for help & where will ye leave your glory without me they shall bow down under the prisoners & they shall fall under the slain for all this his anger is not turned away but his hand streached out still [192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1143923125368280978" \o "Note)O Assyrian the rod of mine anger & the◊◊ staff in their hand is their indignation I will send him against a hypocritical Nation & against the People of my wrath will I give him a Charge to take the spoil & to take the prey & to tread them down like the mire of the streets howbeit he meaneth not so neither doth his heart think so but in his heart it is to destroy & cut off nations not a few for he saith are not my princes altogether kings is not Calno as Carchemish is not Hamath as Arpad is not [p. 75] Samaria as Damascus as my hand hath founded the Kingdoms of the Idols & whose graven images[193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13201997140275851762" \o "Note) them of Jerusalem & of Samaria shall I not as I have done unto Samaria & her Idols so do to Jerusalem & to her Idols wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon mount Zion & upon Jerusalem I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the King of Assyria & the glory of his high looks for he saith by the strength of my hand & by my wisdom I have done these things for I am prudent & I have moved the borders of the People & have robed their[194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10429469908221304792" \o "Note) treasures & I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man & my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the People & as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth & there was none that moved the wing or opened the mouth or peeped shall the Axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it as if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood therefore shall the Lord the Lord of hosts send among his fat ones leanness & under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire & the light of Israel shall be for a fire & his holy one for a flame & shall burn & shall devour his thorns & his briars in one day & shall consume the glory of his forest & of his fruitful field both Soul & body & they shall be as when a standard bearer feinteth & the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few that a child may write them & it shall come to pass in that day that the remnant of Israel & such as are escaped of the house of Jacob shall no more again stay upon him that smote them but shall stay upon the Lord the holy one of Israel in truth the remnant shall return yea even the remnant of Jacob unto the mighty God for though thy People Israel be as the sand of the Sea yet <​yet​> a remnant of them shall return the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness for the Lord God of hosts shall make a consumption even determined in all the land therefore thus saith the Lord God of hosts O my People that dwellest in Zion be not afraid of the Assyrian he shall smite thee with a rod & shall lift up his staff against thee after the manner of Egypt for yet a verry little while & the indigntion shall cease & mine anger in their destruction & the Lord of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Mideon at the rock of Oreb & as his rod was upon the Sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt & it shall come to pas in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder & his yoke from off thy neck & the yoke shall be destroid because of the anointing he is come to Aiath he is passed to Migron at Mishmash he hath laid up his Carriages they are gone over the passage they have taken up their lodging at Geba Ramath is afraid Gibeah of Saul is fled lift up the voice O daughter of Gallim cause it to be heard unto Laish O poor Anathoth Madmenah is removed the inhabitants of Gebim [p. 76] gather themselves to flee as yet shall he remain at Nob that day he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion the hill of Jerusalem behold the Lord the Lord of hosts shall lop the bough with terror & the high ons of terror <​stature​> shall be hewn down & the haughty shall be hunbled & he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron & Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one [195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2672232908635485452" \o "Note)& there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse & a branch shall grow out of his roots & the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him the spirit of wisdom & understanding the spirit of Counsel & might the spirit of knowledge & of the fear of the Lord & he shall not[196](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1091287468740170912" \o "Note) make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord & he shall not Judge after the sight of his eyes neither reprove after the hearing of his ears but with righteousness shall he Judge the poor & reprove with equity for the meek of the earth & he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth & with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked & righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins & faithfulness the girdle of his reigns the wolf also shall dwell with the Lamb & the Leopard shall lie down with the kid & the calf & the young lion & the fatling together & a little child shall lead them & the Cow & the bear shall feed their young ones shall lie down together & the lion shall eat straw like the Ox & the sucking Child shall play on the hole of the asp & the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrices den they shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the Sea [197](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11417293508964280552" \o "Note)& in that day there shall be a root of Jesse which shall stand for an ensign of the People to it shall the Gentiles seek & his rest shall be glorious & it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the Second time to recover the remnant of his People which shall be left from Assyria & from Egypt & from Pathros & from Cush & from Elam & from Shinar & from Hamath & from the Islands[198](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "568803049319504231" \o "Note) of the Sea & he shall set up an ensign for the Nations & shall assemble the out casts of Israel & gathered together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth the envy of Ephraim also shall depart & the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off Ephraim shall not envy Judah & Judah shall not vex Ephraim but they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west they shall spoil them of the east together they shall lay their hand upon Edom & Moab & the Children of Ammon shall obey them & the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian Sea & with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river & shall smite it in the seven streams & make men go over dry shod & there shall be a highway for the remnant of his People which shall be left from Assyria like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt [199](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15971720424573012500" \o "Note)& in that day thou shalt say O Lord I will praise thee though thou wast angery with me thine anger is turned away & thou comfortedst me behold God is my Salvation I trust & not be afraid for the Lord Jehovah[200](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2889039522988595843" \o "Note) is my strength[201](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9683462335978674989" \o "Note) & my song he also is become my salvation therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation [p. 77] & in that day shall ye say praise the Lord call upon his name declare his doings among the People make mention that his name is exalted sing unto the Lord for he hath done excellent things this is known in all the earth cry out & shout thou inhabitant of Zion for great is the[202](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6516070469587486061" \o "Note) holy one of Israel in the midst of thee——

Second Nephi, Chapter 10 [2 Nephi 23–24]

Chapter [blank]—— The burden of Babylon which Isaiah the Son of Amoz did see lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain exalt the voice unto them shake the hand that they may go in to the gates of the nobles I have commanded my sanctified ones I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness the noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a a great People a tumultuous noise of the Nations Kingdoms of Nations gathered together the Lord of hosts mustereth the hosts of the Battle they come from a far country from the end of heaven yea the Lord & the weapons of his indignation to destroy the whole land [203](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8016729514166389248" \o "Note)howl ye for the day of the Lord is at hand it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty therefore shall all hands be feint every mans heart shall melt & they shall be afraid pangs & sorrows shall take hold of them they shall be amaised one at another their faces shall be as flames behold the day of the Lord cometh cruel both with wrath & fierce anger to lay the land desolate & he shall destroy the Sinners therof out of it for the Stars of heaven & the constelations thereof shall not give their light the Sun shall be darkened in his[204](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16680122377402948028" \o "Note) going forth & the Moon shall not cause her light to shine & I will punish the world for evil & the wicked for their iniquity I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease & will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible I will make a man more precious then fine gold even a man then the golden wedge of Ophir therefore I will shake the heavens & the earth shall remove out of her place in the wrath of the Lord of hosts & in the day of his fierce anger & it shall be as the chaste roe & as a Sheep that no man taketh up they shall every man turn to his own People & flee every one into his own land every every one that is proud shall be thrust through yea & every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes their houses shall be spoiled & their wives ravished behold I will stir up the Medes against them which shall not regard silver & gold nor they shall not delight in it their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces & they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb their eyes shall not spare children [205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18437124959465093747" \o "Note)& Babylon the glory of Kingdoms the beauty of the Chaldees excellency shall be as when God overthrew Sodom & Gomorrah it shall never be inhabited neither shall it be dwelt in from Generation to Generation neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there neither shall the Shepherds make their fold their but wild beasts of the desert shall lie there & their houses shall be full of doleful creatures & owls shall dwell there & Satyres shall dance there & the wild beasts of the Islands shall cry in their desolate houses & Dragons in their pleasant palaces & her time is near to come & her day shall not be prolonged [206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9086542142824417123" \o "Note)for I will destroy her speedily yea for I will be merciful unto my People[207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9306822485199338359" \o "Note) [p. 78] but the wicked shall perish [208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13106250491710680989" \o "Note)for the Lord will have mercy on Jacob & will yet chose Israel & set them in their own land & the strangers shall be joined to with them & they shall cleave to the house of Jacob & the People shall take them & bring them to their place yea from far unto the ends of the earth & they shall return to their lands of promise & the house of Israel shall possess them & the land of the Lord shall be for Servants & handmaids & they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives & they shall rule over their oppressors & it shall come to pass that in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest from thy sorrows & from thy fear & from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve & it shall come to pass in that day that thou shalt take up this poberb <​proverb​> against the King of Babylon & say how hath the oppressor ceased the golden City ceased the Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked the Sceptres of the rulers he who smote the People in wrath with a continual stroke he that ruled the nationss in anger is persecuted & none hindereth the whole earth is at rest & is quiet they break forth into singing yea the fir trees rejoice at thee & also the Ceders of Lebanon saying since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us hell from beneath is moed for thee to meet thee at thy coming it stireth up the dead for thee even all the chief ones of the earth it hath raised up from their thrones all the Kings of the nations all they shall speak & say unto thee art thou also become weak as we are <​art​> thou become like unto us thy pomp is brought down to the grave the noise of thy viols is not heard the worm is spread under thee & the worms cover thee how art thou fallen from heaven O Lucifer Son of the Morning art thou cut down to the ground which did weaken the Nations for thou hast said in thy heart I will ascend into heaven I will exalt my throne above the Stars of God I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north I will ascend above the heights of the clouds I will be like the most high yet thou shalt be brought down to hell to the sides of the pit they that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee & shall consider thee & shall say is this the man that made the earth to tremble that did shake Kingdoms & made the world as a wilderness & destroid the cities thereof & opened not the house of his prisoners all the Kings of the nations yea all of them lie in glory every one of them in his own house but thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch & the remnant of those that are slain thrust through with a sword that go down to the stones of the pit as a carcase troden under feet thou shalt not be joined with them in buriel because thou hast destroid thy land & slain thy People the seed of evil doers shall never be renouned prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers that they do not rise nor possess the land nor fill the face of the world[209](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14744514522447566500" \o "Note) with Cities for I will raise up against them saith the Lord of hosts & cut off from Babylon the name & remnant & Son & Nephew saith the Lord I will also make it a possession for the bitern & pools of water & I will sweep it with the bosom of destruction saith the Lord of hosts [210](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2317915358994422667" \o "Note)the Lord of hosts hath sworn saying surely as [p. 79] I have thought so shall it come to pass & as I have purposed so shall it stand that I will bring[211](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1680141565317629356" \o "Note) the Assyrian in my <​land​> land & upon my mountains tread him under foot then shall his yoke depart from off them & his burden depart from off their shoulders this is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth & this is the hand that is streached out upon all nations for the Lord of hosts hath purposed & who shall disannul & his hand streached out & who shall turn it back in the year that King Ahaz died was this burden [212](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4043970526441088590" \o "Note)rejoice not thou whole Palestina because the rod of him that smote thee is broken for out of the Serpants root shall come forth a cockatrice & his fruit shall be a fere fiery flying Serpant & the first born of the poor <​poor​> shall feed & the needy shall lie down in safety & I will kill thy <​root​> root with famine & he shall slay thy remnant howl O gate cry O city thou whole Palestina art desolved for there shall come from the north a smoke & none shall be alone in his appointed times what shall then answer the messengers of the nations that the Lord hath founded Zion & the poor of his People shall trust in it——

Second Nephi, Chapter 11 [2 Nephi 25–27]

Chapter [blank]

Now I Nephi do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah for behold Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my People to understand for they know not concerning the manner of Prophesying among the[213](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8862878069461551270" \o "Note) Jews for I Nephi have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews for their works were works of darkness & their doings were doings of abomination wherefore I write unto my People unto all they that shall receive hereafter these things which I write that they may know the Judgments of God that they come upon all nations according to the word which he hath spoken wherefore hearken O my People which are of the house of Israel & give ear to my words for because that the words of Isaiah are not plane unto you nevertheless they are plane unto all they that are filled with the spirit of Prophesy but I give unto you a prophesy according to the spirit which is in me wherefore I shall prophesy according to the planeness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father for behold my Soul delighteth in planeness unto my people that they may learn yea & my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah for I came out from Jerusalem & mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews & I know that the Jews do understand the things of the Prophets & there is none other People that understand the things of the Prophets <​which were​> spoken unto the Jews like unto them save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews but behold I Nephi have not taught my Children after the manner of the Jews but behold I of myself have dwelt at Jerusalem wherefore I know concerning the regions round about & I have made mention unto my children concerning the Judgments of God which hath come to pass among the Jews unto my children according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken & I do not write them but behold I procede with mine own prophesy according to my planeness in the which I know that no man can err nevertheless in the days that the prophesies of Isaiah shall be[214](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2399819531302556696" \o "Note) fulfiled men shall know [p. 80] of a surety at the times when they shall come to pass wherefore they are of worth unto the Children of men & he that supposeth that they are not unto them will I[215](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6444618321961369652" \o "Note) speak particularly & confine the words unto mine own People for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days for in that day shall they understand them wherefore for their good have I written them & as one generation hath been destroid among the Jews because of iniquity even so have they been destroid from generation to generation according to their iniquities & never hath any of them been destroid save it were fore-told them by the Prophets of the Lord wherefore it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them immediately after my father left Jerusalem nevertheless they hardened their hearts & <​&​> according to my prophesy they have been destroid save it be those which are carried away Captive into Babylon & now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me & notwithstanding that they have been carried away they shall return again & possess the land of Jerusalem wherefore they shall be restored again to the lands of their inheritance but behold they shall have wars & rumors of wars & when the day cometh that the only begotten of the father yea even the Father of heaven & of earth shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh behold they will reject him because of Priestscrafts <​their iniquities​> & the hardness of their hearts & the stiffness of their necks behold they will crucify him & after that he is laid in a Sepulcher for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead with healing in his wings & all they t◊◊◊ shall believe on his name shall be saved in the Kingdom of God wherefore my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him for I have seen his day & my heart doth magnify his holy name & behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead & hath manifested himself unto his People unto as many as will believe on his name behold Jerusalem shall be destroid again for wo unto them that fight against God & the people of his church wherefore the Jews shall be scattered among all Nations yea & also Babylon shall be destroid wherefore the Jews shall be scattered by other Nations & after that they have been scattered & the Lord God hath scourged them by other Nations for the space of many generations yea even down from Generation to generation untill they shall be persuaded to believe in christ the Son of God & the atonement which is infinate forall mankind & when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ & worshep the father in his <​name​> with pure hearts & clean hands & look not forward any more for another Messiah & then at that time the day will come that it must needs be expediant that they should believe these their things <​&​> the Lord the ◊ <​will​> set his <​hand​> again the second time to restore his People from their lost & fallen state wherefore he will procede to do a marvelous work & a wonder among the children of men wherefore he shall bring forth his words unto them which words shall Judge them at the last day for they shall be given them for the purpose of convinceing them of the true Messiah who was rejected by them & unto the convinceing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come for [p. 81] there should not any come save it should be a fals Messiah which should deceive the People for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the People <​Prophets​> Prophets & that Messiah is he which should be rejected of the Jews for according to the words of the Prophets the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem & according to the words of the Prophets & also the word of the Angel of God his name should be Jesus christ the Son of God [216](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14150184193929857906" \o "Note)& now my Brethren I have spoken plane that ye cannot err & as the Lord God lieveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt & gave unto Moses power that he should heal the Nations that after <​that​> they had been bitten by the poisonous Serpants if they would cast their eyes unto the Serpant which he did raise up before them & also give him power that he should smite the rock & the water should come forth yea behold I say unto you that as these things are true & as the Lord God liveth there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ of which I have spoken whereby man can be saved wherefore for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept & preserved & handed down unto my seed from Generation to Generation that the promise may be fulfiled unto Joseph that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand wherefore these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand & they shall go according to the will & pleasure of God & the nations which shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written for we labour diligently to write to <​persuade​> our children & also our Brethren to believe in Christ & to be reconciled to God for we know that it is by grace that we are saved after all that we can do & notwithstanding we believe in Christ we keep the law of Moses & look forward with stedfastness unto Christ untill the Law shall be fulfiled for for this end was the law given wherefore the law hath become dead unto us & we are made alive in Christ because of our faith yet we keep the law because of the Commandments & we talk of Christ we rejoice in Christ we preach of Christ we prophesy of Christ & we write according to our Prophesies that our children my know to what sorce to they may look for a remission of their sins wherefore we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law & they by knowing the deadness of the law may look forward unto that life which is in Christ & know for what end the law was given & after that the law is fulfiled in Christ that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law had ought to be done away [217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16625305593220601004" \o "Note)& now behold my People ye are a stiffnecked People wherefore I have spoken plane unto you that ye cannot misunderstand & the words which I have spoken shall as a testimony against you for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way for the right way is to believe in Christ & deny him not for by denying him ye also deny the Prophets & the law [p. 82] & now behold I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ & deny him not & Christ is the holy one of Israel wherefore ye must bow down before him & woship him with all your might mind & strength & your whole soul & if ye do this ye shall in no wise be cast out & in asmuch as it shall be expediant ye must keep the performances & ordinances of God untill the law shall be fulfiled which was given unto Moses & after that Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall shew himself unto you my children & my beloved Brethren & the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do for behold I say unto you that I have beheld that many Generations shall pass away & there shall be great wars & contentions among my People & after that the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my People of his bearth & also of his death & resurrection & great & terrible shall that day be unto the wicked for they shall perish & they perish because they cast out the Prophets & the Saints & stone them & slay them wherefore the cry of the blood of the Saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them wherefore all they that are proud & that do wickedly the day that cometh shall burn them up saith the Lord of hosts for they shall be as stubble & they that kill the prophets & the Saints the debths of the earth shall swallow them up saith the Lord of hosts & mountains shall cover them & whirlwinds shall carry them away & buildings shall fall upon them & crush them to pieces & grind them to powder & they shall be visited with thunderings & lightnings & earthquakes & all manner of destructions for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them & they shall be as stubble & the day that cometh shall consume them saith the Lord of hosts O the pain & the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my People for I Nephi hath seen it <​& it​> well nigh consumeth me before the presance of the Lord but I must cry unto my God thy ways are just but behold the righteous that hearken unto the words of the Prophets & destroy them not but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given notwithstanding all persecutions behold they are they which shall not perish but the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them & he shall heal <​heal​> them & they shall have peace with him untill three generations shall have passed away & many of the fourth Generation shall have passed away in righteousness & when these things <​shall​> have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my People for notwithstanding the pains of my soul I have seen it wherefore I know that it shall come to pass & they sell themselves for nought for for the reward of their pride & their foolishness they shall reap destruction for because they yienldeth unto the Devil & chose works of darkness rather then light therefore they must go down to hell for the spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man & when the spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction & this grieveth my Soul & as I spake concerning the convinceing of the Jews that Jesus is the verry Christ it must needs be that [p. 83] the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ the Eternal God & that he manifesteth himself unto all they that believe in him by the power of the Holy Gohost yea unto every Nation Kindred Tongue & People working mighty miracles signs & wonders among the children of men according to their faith but behold I prophesy unto ye you concerning the last days concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men after that my seed & the seed of my Brethren <​shall​> have dwindled in unbelief & shall have been smitten by the Gentiles yea after that the Lord God shall have camped against them round about & shall have laid siege against them with a mount & raised forts against them & after that they shall have been brought down low in[218](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5255931518423695607" \o "Note) the dust even that they are not yet the words of the righteous shall be written & the prayers of the faithful shall be heard & all they which have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten for they which shall be destroid shall speak unto them out of the ground & their speach shall be low out of the dust & their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit for the Lord God will give unto him power that he may whisper concerning them even as it were out of the ground & their speach shall whisper out of the dust for thus saith the Lord God they shall write the things which shall be done among them & they shall be written & sealed up in a Book & they that have dwindled in unbelief[219](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1765791864033488639" \o "Note) shall not have them for they seek to destroy the things of God wherefore as they which have been destroid have been destroid speedily & the multitudes of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that paseth away yea thus saith the Lord God it shall be at an instant suddenly & it shall come to pass that they which have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles & the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes & have stumbled because of the greatness of their stumbleing block that they have built up many churches nevertheless they put down the power & the miracles of God & preach up unto themselves their own wisdom & their own learning that they may get gain & grind upon the face of the poor & there are many churches built up which causeth envyings & strifes & malice & there are also secret <​secret​> combinations even as in times of old according to the combinations of the Devil for his he is the founder[220](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3202356556562529514" \o "Note) of all these things yea the founder of murder & works of darkness yea & he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord untill he bindeth them with his strong cords forever for behold my beloved my <​Brethren​> I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness he doeth not any thing save it be for the benefit of the world for he loveth the world even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him wherefore he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his Salvation behold doth he cry unto any saying depart from me behold I say unto you nay but he sayeth come unto me all ye ends of the earth buy milk & honey without money & without price behold hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the Synagoges or out of the houses of worship behold I say unto you nay nay hath he com [p. 84]manded any that they should not partake of his Salvation Behold I say unto you nay but he hath given it free for all men & he hath commanded his People that they should persuade all men unto repentance behold hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness behold I say unto you nay but all men are privileged the one like unto the other & none are forbidden he commandeth that there shall be no priestscrafts for behold priestscrafts are that men preach & set themselves up for a light unto the world that they may get gain & praise of men <​the​> world but they seek not the wellfare of Zion behold the Lord hath forbidden this thing wherefore the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity which charity is love & except they should have charity they were nothing wherefore if they should have charity they would not suffer the labourer in Zion to perish but the labourer in Zion shall labour for Zion for if they labour for money they shall perish & again the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder that they should not lie that they should not steal that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain that they should not envy that they should not have malice that they should not contend one with another that they should not commit whoardoms & that they should not do none of these things for whoso doeth them shall perish for none of these iniquities come of the Lord for he doeth that which is good among the children of men & he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men & he enviteth them all to come unto him & partake of his goodness & he denieth none that come unto him black & white bond & free male & feemale & he remembereth the heathen & all are alike unto God both Jew & Gentile but behold in the last days or in the days of the Gentiles yea behold all the nations of the Gentiles & also the Jews both they which shall come upon this land & they which shall come <​be​> upon other lands yea even upon all the lands of the earth behold they will be drunken with iniquity & all manner of abominations & when that day shall come they shall be visited with the Lord of hosts with thunder & with earthquake & with a great noise & with storm & tempest & with the flame of devouring fire & all the Nations that fight against Zion & that distress her shall be as a dream of a night vision yea it shall be unto them even as unto a hungry man which dreameth & behold he eateth but he awaketh & his soul is empty or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth & behold he drinketh but he awaketh & behold he is faint & his Soul hath appetite yea even so shall the multitude of all the Nations be that fight against mount Zion for behold all ye that do iniquity stay yourselves & wonder for ye shall cry out & cry yea ye shall be drunken but not with wine ye shall stagger but not with strong <​drink​> for behold the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep for behold ye have closed your eyes & ye have rejected the Prophets & your rulers [p. 85] & the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity & it Shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you <​you​> the words of a Book & shall be the words of them which have slumbered & behold the Book shall be sealed & in the Book shall be a revelation from God from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof wherefore because of the things which are sealed up the things which are Sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness & abominations of the People wherefore the Book shall be kept from them but the Book shall be delivered unto a man & he shall deliver the words of the Book which are the words of they which have slumbered in the dust & he shall deliver these words unto another but the words which are Sealed he shall not deliver neither shall he deliver the Book for the Book shall be sealed by the power of God & the revelation & which was Sealed shall be kept in the Booth Book untill the own due time of the Lord that they may come forth for behold they reveal all things from the foundation of the world <​un​>to the end thereof & the day cometh that the[221](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17728820734694944995" \o "Note) words of the Book which were Sealed shall be read upon the house tops & they shall be read by the power of Christ & all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever hath been among the children of men & which ever will be even unto the end of the earth wherefore at that day when the Book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken the Book shall be hid from the eyes of the world that eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it by the power of God besides him to whom the Book shall be delivered & they shall testify to the truth of the Book & the things therein & there is none other which shall view it save it be a few according to the will of God to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead wherefore the Lord God will procede to bring forth the words of the Book & in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word & wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God but behold it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the Book take these words which are not Sealed & deliver them to another that he may shew them unto the learned saying read this I pray thee & the learned will say bring hither the Book & I will read them & now because of the glory of the world & to get gain will they say this & not for the glory of God & the man shall say I cannot bring the Book for it is Sealed then shall the learned say I cannot read it wherefore it shall come to pass that the Lord God will deliver again the Book & the words thereof to him that is not learned & the man that is not learned shall say I am not learned then shall the Lord God say unto him the learned shall not read them for they have rejected them & I am able to do mine own work wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee touch not the things which are <​are​> Sea sealed for I will bring them forth in mine own due time for I will shew [p. 86] unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work Wherefore when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee & obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee then shalt thou Seal up the Book & hade <​hide​> it up unto me that I may preserve the words which the thou hast not read untill I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men for behold I am God & I am a God of miracles & I will shew unto the world that I am the same yesterday today & forever & I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith & again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him for asmuch as this People draw near unto me with their mouth & with them their lips do honour me but have removed their heart far from me & their fear towards me is taught by the precept of men therefore I will procede to do a marvelous work among this People yea a marvelous work & a wonder for the wisdom of their wise & learned shall perish & the understanding of their prudent shall be hid but wo unto them that seek deep to hide their Counsel from the Lord & their works are in the dark & they say who seeth us & who knoweth us & they also say surely your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potters clay but behold I will shew unto them saith the Lord of hosts that I know all their works for shall the work say of him that made it he made me not or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it he had no understanding but behold saith the Lord of Hosts I will shew unto the children of men that it is not yet a verry little while & Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field & the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest & in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the Book & the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity & out of darkness & the meek also shall increase & their joy shall be in the Lord & the poor among men shall rejoice in the holy one of Israel for assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to nought & the scorner is consumed & all that watch for iniquity are cut off & they that make a man an offender for a word & lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate & turn aside the just for a thing of nought therefore thus saith the Lord who redeemed Abraham concerning <​the house of​> Jacob Jacob shall not now beashamed neither shall his face <​now​> wax pale but when he seeth his children the work of my hands in the midst of him they shall Sanctify my name & sanctify the holy one of Israel <​Jacob​> & shall fear the God of Israel they also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding & they that murmured shall learn doctrine——

Second Nephi, Chapter 12 [2 Nephi 28–30]

Chapter [blank]

And now behold my Brethren I have spoken unto you according as the spirit hath constrained me wherefore I know that they must surely come to pass & the things which shall be written out of the Book shall be of great unto the children of men & especially unto our seed which are a remnant of the house of Israel for it shall come [p. 87] to pass in that day that the churches which are built up & not unto the Lord when the one shall say unto the other behold I <​I​> am the Lords & the other shall say I <​I​> am the Lords & thus shall every one say that hath built up churches & not unto the Lord & they shall contend one with another & their priests shall contend one with another & they shall teach with their learning & deny the Holy Ghost which giveth utterance & they deny the power of God the holy one of Israel & they say unto the People hearken unto us & hear ye our precept for behold there is no God today for the Lord & the Redeemer hath done his[222](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4437403983778646732" \o "Note) work & he hath given his power unto men behold hearken ye unto my precept if they shall say there is a miricle wrought by the hand of the Lord believe it not for this day he is not a God of miricles he hath done his work yea & there shall be many which shall say eat drink & be merry for tomorrow we die & it shall be well with us & there shall also be many which shall say eat drink & be merry nevertheless fear God he will justify in committing a little Sin yea lie a little take the advantage of one because of his words dig a pit for thy neighbor there is no harm <​in doing these things​> & do all these things for tomorrow we die & if it so be that we are guilty God will beat us with a few stripes & at last we shall be saved in the Kingdom of God yea & there shall be many which shall teach after this manner fals & vain & foolish doctrine<​s​> & shall be puffed up in their hearts & shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord & their works shall be in the dark & <​the​> blood of the Saints shall cry from the ground against them yea they have all gone out of the way they have become corrupted because of pride & because of fals teachers & fals doctrines their churches have become corrupted & their churches are lifted up because of pride they are puffed up they rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries they rob the poor because of their fine cloathing & they persecute the meek & the poor in heart because in their pride they are puffed up they wear stiff necks & high heads & yea & because of pride & wickedness & abominations & whoredoms they have all gone astray save it be a few which are the humble followers of christ nevertheless they are lead that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men O the wise & the learned & the rich that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts & all they that preach falsdoctrine<​s​> & all they that commit whoredoms & pervert the right way of the Lord wo wo wo be unto them saith the Lord God Almighty for they shall be thrust down to hell wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of nought & revile against that which is good & say that it is of no worth for the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth & in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish but behold if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness & abominations they shall not be destroid saith the Lord of hosts but behold that great & abominable church the whore of all the earth must tumble to the earth & great must be the fall for the Kingdom of the Devil must shake & they which belong to it must needs be stired up unto repentance [p. 88] or the Devil will grasp them with his everlasting chanes & they be stired up to anger & perish for behold at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men & stir them up to anger against that which is good & others will he pacify & tell lull them away into carnal security that they will say all is well in Zion yea Zion prospereth all is well & thus the Devil cheateth their Souls & leadeth them away carefully down to hell & behold others he flatereth <​away​> & telleth them there is no hell & he sayeth unto them I am no Devil for there is none & thus he whispereth in their ears untill he grasps them with his awful chanes from whence there is no deliverance yea they are grasped with death & hell & death & hell &[223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7138130137778416379" \o "Note) the Devil & all that have been siezed therewith must stand before the throne of God & be Judged according to their works from whence they must go into the place pepared for them even a lake of fire & brimstone which is endless torment therefore wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion wo be unto him that cryeth all is well yea wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men & denyeth the power of God & the gift of the Holy Ghost yea wo be unto him that sayeth we have received & we need no more & in fine wo unto all they that tremble & are angery because of the truth of God for behold he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with with gladness & he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall wo be unto him that shall say we have received the word of God & we need no more of the word of God for we have enough for behold thus saith the Lord God I will give unto the children of men line upon line & precept upon precept here a little & their a little & blessed are they that hearken unto my precepts & lend an ear unto my counsel for they shall learn wisdom for unto him that receiveth I will give more & them that shall say we have enough from them shall be taken away even that which they have cursed is he that puteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm or shall hearken unto the precpts of men save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost wo be unto the Gentiles saith the Lord God of hosts for notwithstanding I shall lengthen our out mine arm unto them from day to day they will deny me nevertheless I will be merciful unto them saith the Lord God if they will repent & come unto me for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long saith the Lord God of hosts but behold there shall be many at that day when I shall procede to do a marvelous work among them that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people which are of the House of Israel & also that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee Nephi & also unto thy father that I would remember ye your Seed & that the words of your seed should procede forth out of my mouth unto your seed & my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth for a standard unto my People which are of the house of Israel & because my words shall hiss forth many of the Gentiles shall say a Bible a Bible we have got a Bible & there cannot be any more Bible [p. 89] but thus saith the Lord God O fools they shall have a Bible & it shall procede forth from the Jews mine ancient covenant People & what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them yea what do the Gentiles mean do they remember the travels & the labours & the pains of the Jews & their diligence unto me in bringing forth Salvation unto the Gentiles O ye Gentiles have ye remembered the Jews mine ancient covenant People nay but ye have cursed them & have hated them & have not sought to recover them but behold I will return all these things upon your own heads for I the Lord hath not forgoten my People thou fool that shall say a Bible we have got a Bible & we need no more Bible have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews know ye not that there are more Nations then one Know ye not that I the Lord your God have created all men & that I remember they which are upon the Isles of the Sea & that I rule in the Heavens above & in the earth beneath & I bring forth my word unto the children of men yea even upon all the Nations of the earth wherefore murmur ye because that ye shall receive more of my word know ye not that the testimony of two Nations is a testi witness unto you that I am God that I remember one Nation like unto another wherefore I speak the same words unto one Nation like unto another & when the two Nations shall run together the testimony of the two Nations shall run together also & I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the Same yesterday today & forever & that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure & because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another for my work is not yet finished neither shall it be until the end of man neither from that time henceforth & forever wherefore because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words neither need ye <​ye​> suppose that I have not caused more to be written for I command all men both in the east & in the west & in the North & in the South & in the Islands of the Sea that they shall write the words which I speak unto them for out of the Book<​s​> which shall be written I will Judge the world every man according to their works according to that which is written for behold I shall speak unto the Jews & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto the Nephites & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel which I have lead away & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto all the Nations of the earth & they shall write it & it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites & the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews & the Nephites & the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel & the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites & the Jews & it shall come to pass that my People which are of the house of Israel shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions & my word also shall be gathered in one & I will show unto them that fight against my word & against my People which are of the house of Israel that I am God & that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever [p. 90] & now behold my beloved Brethren I would speak unto you for I Nephi would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous then the Gentiles shall be for except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish & because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroid for behold I say unto you as many of the Gentiles will repent are the covenant People of the Lord & as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cut <​cast​> off for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent <​&​> &[224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6207408177643626822" \o "Note) believe in his Son which is the holy one of Israel <​&​> now I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews & the Gentiles for after the Book of which I have spoken shall come forth & be written unto the Gentiles & Sealed up again unto the Lord there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written & they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our Seed & then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us how that we came out from Jerusalem & that they are a decendant of the Jews & the Gospel of Jesus christ shall be declared among them wherefore they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers & also <​to​> the knowelge of Jesus christ which was had among their fathers & then shall they rejoice for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God & their Scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes & many Generations shall not pass away among them save they shall be a white[225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12658145325285724028" \o "Note) & a delightsome People & it shall come to pass that the Jews which are Scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ & they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land & as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome People & it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all Nations Kindrids Tongues & People to bring about the restoration of his People upon the earth & with righteousness shall the Lord God Judge the poor & reprove with equity for the meek of the earth & he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth & with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked for the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the People & the wicked will he destroy & he will spare his People yea even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire & righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins & faithfulness the girdle of his reins & then shall the wolf dwell with the Lamb & the Leopard shall lie down with the kid & the calf & the young lion & the fatling together & a little child shall lead them & the cow & the bear shall feed their young ones shall lie down together & the Lion shall eat straw like the Ox & the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp & the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice<​s​> den they shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the Sea wherefore the things of all Nations shall be made known yea all things shall be made known unto the children of men there is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed there is no works of darkness save it shall be made— [p. 91] manifest in the light & there is nothing which is sealed upon earth save it shall be loosed wherefore all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed & Satan shall have power over the heart<​s​> of the children of men no more for a long time & now my beloved Brethren I must[226](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16213256965946726255" \o "Note) make an end of my sayings

Second Nephi, Chapter 13 [2 Nephi 31]

Chapter [blank]

And now I Nephi make an end of my prophesying unto you my beloved Brethren & I cannot write but a few things which I know must surely come to pass neither can I write but a few of the words of my Brother Jacob wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ wherefore I shall speak unto you plainly according to the plainness of my prophesying for my Soul delighteth in plainness for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men for the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding for he speaketh unto men according to their language unto their understanding wherefore I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that Prophet which the Lord shewed unto me that should Baptise the Lamb of God which should take away the Sin[227](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4771486792329282878" \o "Note) of the world & now if the Lamb of of God he being holy should have need to be Baptised by water to fulfil all righteousness O then how much more need have we being unholy to be Baptised yea even by water & now I would ask of you my believed beloved Brethren wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being Baptised by water know ye not that he was holy but not withstanding he being holy he showeth unto the children of men that according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father & witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obediant unto <​him​> the Father in keeping his commandments wherefore after that he was Baptised with water the Holy Ghost decended upon him in the form of a dove & again it sheweth unto the children of men the straitness[228](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4757657656948668670" \o "Note) of the path & the narrowness of the gate by which they should enter he <​he​> haveing set the example before them & he sayeth unto the children of men follow thou me wherefore mybeloved Brethren can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father & the Father sayeth repent ye repent ye & be Baptised in the name of my beloved Son & also the woice of the Son came to <​unto​> me saying he that is Baptised in my name to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost like unto me wherefore follow me & do the things which ye have seen me do wherefore my beloved Brethren I know that if ye shall follow the Son with full purpose of heart acting no hypocrasy & no deception before God but with real intent repenting of your Sins witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ by Baptism yea by followein <​following​> your Lord & Saviour down into the water according to his word behold then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost <​yea then cometh the Baptism of fire & of the holy Ghost​> & then can ye speak with the tongue of Angels & shout praises unto the holy one of Israel but behold my beloved Brethren [p. 92] thus came the woice of the Son unto me saying after that ye have repented of your sins & witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments by the Baptism of water & have received the Baptism of fire & of the Holy Ghost & can speak with a new tonge yea even with the tongue of Angels & after this should deny me it would have been better for you that ye had not known me & I heard a voice from the Father saying yea the words of my beloved are true & faithful he that endureth to the end the same shall be saved & now my beloved Brethren I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end in following the example of the Son of the liveing God he cannot be saved wherefore do the things which I have told you that I have seen that your Lord & your Redeemer should do for for this cause have they been shewn unto me that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter for the gate by which ye should enter is repentance & Baptism by water & then cometh a remission of your sins by fire & by the holy Ghost & then are ye in this strait[229](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3119363554568427690" \o "Note) & narrow path which leads to Eternal life yea ye have entered in by the gate ye have done according to the commandments of the Father & the Son & ye have received the holy Ghost which witness of the Father & the Son unto the fulfiling of the promise which he hath made that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive & now my beloved Brethren after that ye have got into this strait[230](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5262732952146765033" \o "Note) & narrow path I would ask if all is done behold I say unto you nay for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him relying wholely upon the merrits of him who is able mighty to save wherefore ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ haveing a perfect brightness of hope & a love of God & of all men wherefore if ye shall press forward feasting upon the word of Christ & endure to the end behold thus saith the Father ye shall have eternal life & now behold my beloved Brethren this is the way & there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the Kingdom of God & now behold this is the doctrine of Christ & the only & true doctrine doctrine of the Father & of the Son & of the Holy Ghost which is one <​one​> God without end Amen

Second Nephi, Chapter 14 [2 Nephi 32]

Chapter [blank]—— And now behold my beloved Brethren I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your minds somewhat <​hearts​> concerning that which ye should do after that ye have entered in by the way but behold why do ye ponder these things in your hearts do ye not remember that I said unto you that after th◊t ye have received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of Angels & now how could ye speak with the tongue of Angels save it were by the Holy Ghost Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost wherefore they speak the words of Christ wherefore I said unto you feast upon the words of Christ for behold the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do wherefore now after that I have spoken these words if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not neither do ye knock wherefore ye are not brought into the light but must perish in the dark for behold again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way & receive the Holy Ghost it will shew unto you all things what ye should do behold [p. 93] this is the doctrine of Christ & there will be no more doctrine given untill after that he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh & when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do <​do​> & now I Nephi cannot say more the spirit stoppeth mine utterance & I am left to mourn because of the unbelief & the wickedness & the ignorance & the stiffneckedness of men for they will not search knowledge nor understanding great knowledge when it is given unto them in planeness even as plane as word can be & now my beloved Brethren I perseive that ye ponder still in your hearts & it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing for if ye would hearken unto the spirit which teacheth a man to pray ye would know that ye must pray for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray but teacheth him that he must not pray but behold I say unto you that ye must pray always & not feint that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee that thy performance may be for the well fare of thy soul

Second Nephi, Chapter 15 [2 Nephi 33]

Chapter [blank]

And now I Nephi cannot write all the things which were taught among my People neither am I mighty in writing like unto speaking for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men but behold there are many that harden their hearts against the holy spirit that it hath no place in them wherefore they cast many things away which are written & esteem them as things of nought but I Nephi have written what I have written & I esteem it as of great worth & especially unto my People for I pray for them continually <​for them​> by day & mine eyes water my pillow by night because of them & I cry unto my God in faith & I know that he will hear my cry & I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my People & the things[231](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5863182979583464698" \o "Note) which I have written in weakness will he make[232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12695174682864628469" \o "Note) strong unto them for it persuadeth them to do good it maketh known unto them of their Fathers & it speaketh of Jesus & persuadeth men[233](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16124068549275374721" \o "Note) to believe in him & to endure to the end which is life eternal & it speaketh harsh against sin according to the planeness of the truth wherefore no man will be angery at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the Devil I glory in planeness I glory in th truth I glory in my Jesus for he hath redeemed my soul from hell I have charity for my People & great faith in christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his Judgmentseat I have charity for the Jew I say Jew because I mean them from whence I came I also have charity for the Gentiles but behold for none of these I cannot hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ & enter into the narrow gate & walk in the strait[234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7163611950802593787" \o "Note) path which leads to life & continue in the path untill the end of the day of probation & now my beloved Brethren & also Jew & all ye ends of the earth hearken unto these words & believe in Christ & if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ & if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words for [p. 94] they are the words of Christ & he hath given them unto me & they teach all men that they should do good & if they are not the words of Christ Judge ye for Christ will shew unto you with power & great glory that they are his words at the last day & you & I shall stand face to face before his bar & ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things notwithstanding my weakness & I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us if not all may be saved in his Kingdom at that great & last day & now my beloved Brethren all they which are of the house of Israel & all ye ends of the earth I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust farewell untill that great day shall come & you that will not partake of the goodness of God & respect the words of the Jews & also my words & the words which shall procede forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God behold I bid you an everlasting farewell for these words shall condemn you at the last day for what I Seal on earth shall be brought against you at the Judgment bar for thus hath the Lord commanded me & I must obey Amen.

Jacob, Chapter 1 [Jacob 1]

The Book of Jacob (Chapter [blank])

The Brother of Nephi the words of his preaching unto his Brethren— He confoundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ— A few words concerning the history of the People of Nephi— for behold it came to pass that fifty & five years had passed away from the time Lehi left Jerusalem wherefore Nephi gave me Jacob a commandment concerning these things plates upon which these things are engraven & he gave me Jacob a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious that I should not touch save it were lightly concerning the history of this People which are called the People of Nephi for he said that the history of his People should be engraven upon his other Plates & that I should preserve these Plates & hand them down unto my seed from generation to generation & if there were preaching which was Sacred or revelation which was great or prophesying that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates & touch upon them as much as it were possible for Christs sake & for the sake of our People for because of faith & great anxiety it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our People what things should happen unto them & we also had many revelations & the spirit of much prophesy wherefore we knew of Christ & his Kingdom which should come wherefore we laboured diligently among our People that we might persuade them to come unto Christ & partake of the goodness of God that they might enter into his rest lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in as in the days of <​provication​> in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness wherefore we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebell against God to provoke him to anger but that all men would believe in christ & view his death & sufferings <​his​> cross & bear the shame of the world wherefore I Jacob take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my Brother Nephi now Nephi began to be old & he saw that he must soon die wherefore he anointed a man [p. 95] to be a King & a ruler over his People now according to the reigns of the Kings the People haveing loved Nephi excedingly he haveing been a great protector for them haveing wealed the sword of Laban in their defence & haveing laboured in all his days for their wellfare wherefore the People were desireous to retain in rememberance his name & whoso should Reign in his stead were calld by the People second Nephi & third Nephi .&C. according to the Reigns of the Kings & thus they were called by the People let them be of whatsoever[235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14517825248090920079" \o "Note) name they would & it came to pass that Nephi died now the People which were not Lamanites were Nephites nevertheless they were called Nephites Jacobites Josephites Zoramites Lamanites Lemuelites & Ishmaelites but I Jacob shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names but I shall call them Lamanites they that seek to destroy the People of Nephi & they which are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites or the People of Nephi according to the reigns of the Kings & now it came to pass that the People of Nephi under the reign of the second king began to grow hard in their hearts & indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices such as like unto David of Old desireing many wives & concubines & also Solomon his Son yea & they also began to search much gold & Silver & began to be lifted up somewhat in pride wherefore I Jacob gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple haveing firstly obtained mine errond from the Lord for I Jacob & my Brother Joseph had been consecrated priests & teachers of this People <​by​> the hand of Nephi & we did magnify our office unto the Lord takeing upon us the responcibility answering the sins of the People upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence wherefore by labouring with our mights their blood might not come upon our garments otherwise their blood would come upon our garments & we would not be found spotless at the last day

Jacob, Chapter 2 [Jacob 2–3]

—— Chapter [blank]—— The words of <​which​> Jacob the Brother of Nephi spake unto the People of Nephi after the death of Nephi— Now my beloved brethren I Jacob according to the responcibility which I am under to God to magnify mine Office with soberness & that I might rid my garments of your sins I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God & ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling but I this day am weighed down with much more desire & anxiety for the wellfare of your souls then I <​have​> hitherto been for behold as yet ye have been obediant unto the word of the Lord which I have given unto you but behold hearken ye unto me & know that by the help of the allpowerful creator of heaven & earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts how that ye are beginning to labour in Sin which sin appeareth verry abominable unto me yea & abominable unto God yea & it grieveth my soul & causeth me to shrink with shame before the presance of my maker that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts & also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speach concerning you before your wives & your Children many of whose feelings are exceding tender & chaste & [p. 96] & delicate before God which thing is pleasing unto God & it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God yea the word which healeth the wounded soul[236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3990741262433363910" \o "Note) wherefore it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained because of the strict commandment which I have received from God to admonish you according to your crimes to enlarge the wounds of those which are already wounded instead of consoleing & healing their wounds & those which have not been wounded instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls & wound their delicate minds but notwithstanding the greatness of the task I must do according to the strict commands of God & tell you concerning your wickedness & abominations in the presance of the pure in heart & the broken heart & under the glance of the pirceing eye of the Almighty God wherefore I must tell you the truth according to the planeness of the word of God for behold as I enquired of the Lord thus came the word unto me saying Jacob get thou up into the temple on the morrow & declare the words which I shall give thee unto this People & now behold my Brethren this is the word which I declare unto you that many of you have begun to search for Gold & for Silver & all manner of precious ores in the which this land which is a land of promise unto you & to your seed doth abound most plentifully & the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly that ye have obtained many riches & because that some of you have obtained more abundantly then that of your Brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts & wear stiff necks & high heads because of the costliness of your apparrel & persecute your Brethren because that ye suppose that ye are better then they & now my Brethren do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing behold I say unto you nay but he condemneth you & if ye persist in these things his Judgments must speadily come unto you O that he would show you that he can pierce you & with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust O that he would rid you from this iniquity, & abomination & O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands & let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls think of your Brethren like to yourselves & be familiar with all & free with your substance that they may be rich like unto you but before that ye seek for riches seek ye for the Kingdom of God & after that ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches if ye seek them & ye will seek <​seek​> them for the intent to do good to cloth the naked & to feed the hungry & to liberate the captive & administer relief to the sick & the afflicted & now my Brethren I have spoken unto you concerning pride & those of you which have afflicted your neighbor & persecuted him because that ye were proud in your hearts of the things which God hath given you what say ye of it do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all things flesh & the one being is as precious in his sight as the other & all flesh is of the dust & for the self same end hath he created them that they[237](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2956018084073811689" \o "Note) [p. 97] should heep his commandments & glorify him forever & now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride & were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime my heart would rejoice excedingly because of you but the word of God burthens me because of your grosser crimes for behold thus saith the Lord this People begineth to wax in iniquity they understand not the Scriptures for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms because of the things which are written concerning David & Solomon his Son behold David & Solomon truly had many wives & conubines which thing was abominable before me saith the Lord wherefore thus saith the Lord I have lead this People forth out of the land of Jerusalem by the power of mine arm that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph wherefore I the Lord God will not suffer that this People shall do like unto them of Old wherefore my Brethren hear me & hearken to the word of the Lord for there shall not any more <​man​> among you have save it be one wife & concubines he shall have none for I the Lord God delighteth in the chastity of women & whoredoms is a-bomination◊[238](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2727712943884889913" \o "Note) before me [239](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14023675942604417109" \o "Note)thus saith the Lord of hosts wherefore this People shall keep my commandments saith the Lord of hosts or cursed be the land for their sakes for if I will saith the Lord of hosts raise up seed unto me I will command my People utherwise they shall hearken unto these things for behold I the Lord have seen the sorrow & heard the mourning of the daughters of my People in the land of Jerusalem yea & in all the lands of my People because of the wickedness & abominations of their husbands & I will not suffer saith the Lord of hosts that the cries of the fair daughters of this People which I have lead out of the land of Jerusalem shall come up unto me against the men of my People saith the Lord of hosts for they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my People because of their tenderness save I shall visit them with a sore curse even unto destruction for they shall not commit whoredoms like unto they of old saith the Lord of hosts & now behold my Brethren ye know that these commandments was given to our father Lehi wherefore ye have known them before & ye have come unto great condenmation for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done behold ye have done greater iniquity then the Lamanites our Brethren ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives & lost the confidence of your Children because of your bad examples before them & the sobings of their hearts ascendeth up to God against you & because of the strictness of the word of God which cometh down against you many hearts died pierced with deep wounds but behold I Jacob would speak unto you that are pure in heart look unto God with firmness of mind & pray unto him with exceding faith & he will console you in your afflictions & he will plead your cause & send down Justice upon those who seek your destruction O all ye that are pure in heart lift up your heads & receive the pleasing word of God & feast upon his love for ye may if your minds are firm [p. 98] forever but wo wo unto you that are not pure in heart that are filthy this day before God for except ye shall repent the land is cursed for your sakes & the Lamanites which are not filthy like unto you nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing shall scorge you even unto destruction & the time speadily cometh that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance & the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you behold the Lamanites whom ye hate because of their filthyness & the cursings which hath come upon their skins are more righteous then you for they have not forgotten the commandments of the Lord which was given unto our father[240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6337197703894193986" \o "Note) that they should have save it were one wife & concubines they should have none & there should not be whoredoms commited among them & now this commandment they observe to keep wherefore because of this observance in keeping this commandment the Lord God will not destroy them but will be merciful unto them & one day they shall become a blessed People behold their husbands love their wives & their wives love their husbands & their husbands & their wives love their Children & their unbelief & their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers wherefore how much better are you then they in the sight of your great Creator [241](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9561898296502039196" \o "Note)O my Brethren I fear that unless ye shall repent of your Sins that their skins will be whiter then yous when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God wherefore a Commandment I give unto you which is the word of God that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skin neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness but ye shall remember your own filthiness & remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers wherefore ye shall remember your Children how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have sot before them & also remember that ye may be◊cau because of your filthiness bring your children unto destruction & their Sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day [242](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13222824207119205135" \o "Note)O my Brethren hearken unto my words arouse the faculties of your souls shake yourselves that ye may awake from the[243](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10658546702924490248" \o "Note) slumber of death & loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become Angels to the Devil to be cast into that lake of fire & brimstone which is the second death & now I Jacob spake many more things unto the People of Nephi warning them against fornication & liciviesness & every kind of sin telling them of the awful consequences of them & a hundredth part of the procedings of this People which now began to be numerous cannot be written upon these plates but many of their procedings are written upon the larger plates & their wars & <​their​> contentions & the reigns of their Kings these plates are called the plates of Jacob & they were made by the hand of Nephi & I make an end of speaking these words

Jacob, Chapter 3 [Jacob 4–5]

Chapter [blank]

—— Now behold it came to pass that I Jacob haveing ministered much unto my People in word & I cannot write but <​a​> little of my words because of the difficulty [p. 99] of engraveing our words upon plates & we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain but whatsoever things we write upon any thing save it be upon plates must perish & vanish away but we can write a few words upon plates which will give our children & also our beloved Brethren a small degree of knowledge concerning us or concerning their fathers now in this thing we do rejoice & we labour diligently to engraven these words upon plates hopeing that our beloved Brethren & our children will receive them with thankful hearts & look upon them that they may learn with joy & not with sorrow neither with contempt concerning their first parents for for this intent have we written these things that they may know that we knew of Christ & we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his comeing & not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory but also all the holy Prophets which were before us behold they believed in Christ & worshiped the Father in his name & also we worship the Father in his name & for this intent we keep the law of Moses it pointing our souls to him & for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obediant unto the commands of God in offering up his Son Isaac which was a similitude of God & his only begotten Son wherefore we search the Prophets & we have many revelations & the spirit of Prophesy & haveing all these witnesses we obtain a hope & our faith becometh unshaken insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus & the verry trees obey us or the mountains or the waves of the Sea nevertheless the Lord God sheweth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace & his great condesensions unto the children of men that we have power to do these things behold great & marvelous are the works of the Lord how unsearchible are the debths of the mysteries of him & it is impossible that man should find out all his ways & no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him wherefore Brethren despise not the revelations of God for behold by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth which earth was created by the power of his word wherefore if God being able to speak & the world was & to speak & man was <​created​> O then why not able to command the earth or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it according to his will & pleasure wherefore Brethren seek not to counsel the Lord but to take counsel from his hand for behold ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom & in Justice & in great mercy over all his works wherefore beloved[244](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3386508616892790846" \o "Note) be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ his only begotten Son that ye may obtain a resurrection according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ & be presented as the first fruits of Christ unto God haveing faith & obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh & now beloved marvel not that I tell you these things for why not speak of the atonement of Christ & attain to a perfect knowledge of him as to attain [p. 100] to the knowledge of a resurrection & the world to come behold my Brethren he that prophesieth let him prophesy to the understanding of men for the Spirit speaketh the truth & lieth not wherefore it speaketh of things as they really are & of things as they really will be wherefore these things are manifested unto us plainly for the salvation of our Souls but behold we are not witnesses alone in these things for God also spake them unto Prophets of old but behold the Jews were a stiffnecked People & they despised the words of plainness & killed the Prophets & sought for things that they could not understand wherefore because of their blindness which blindness came by looking beyond the mark they must needs fall for God hath taken away his plainness from them & delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand because they desired it & because they desired it God hath done it that they may stumble & now I Jacob am lead on by the spirit unto Prophesying for I persieve by the workings of the spirit which is in me that by the stumbleing of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build & have safe foundation but behold according to the Scriptures this stone shall become the great & the last & the only sure foundation upon which the Jews can build & now my Beloved how is it possible that these after haveing rejected the sure foundation can ever build upon it that it may become the head of their corner behold my beloved Brethren I will unfold this mystery unto you if I do not by any means get shaken from my firmness in the spirit & stumble because of my over anxiety for you behold my Brethren do ye not remember to have read the words of the Prophet Zenos which spake unto the house of Israel saying hearken O ye house of Isael & hear the words of me a Prophet of the Lord for behold thus saith the Lord I will liken thee O house of Israel like unto a tame Olive tree which a man took & nourished in his vineyard & it grew & waxed old & began to decay & it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth & he saw that his Olive tree began to decay & he sayeth I will prune it & dig about it & nourish it that perhaps it may shoot forth young & tender branches & it perish not & it came to pass that <​that​> he pruned it & diged about it & nourished it according to his word & it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little young & tender branches but behold the main top thereof began to perish & it came to pass that the master of the vineyard[245](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10192440196683955684" \o "Note) saw it & he sayeth unto his Servant it grieveth me that I should loose this tree wherefore go & pluck the branches from a wild Olive tree & bring them hither unto me & we will pluck aft off those main branches which are beginning to wither away & we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned & behold saith the Lord of the vineyard I take take away many of these young & tender branches & I will graft them whithersoever I will & it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself wherefore I will take these young & tender branches & I will graft them [p. 101] whithersoever I will take thou the branches of the wild Olive tree & graft them in in the stead thereof & these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire & burn them that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard & it came to pass that the Servant of the Lord of the vineyard done according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard & grafted in the branches of the wild Olive tree & the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be diged about & pruned & nourished saying unto his Servant it grieveth me that I should lose this tree wherefore that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not that I might preserve them unto myself I have done this thing wherefore go thy way watch the tree & nourish it according to my words & these will I place in the nithermost part of my vineyard whithersoever I will it mattereth not unto thee & I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree & also that I may lay up fruit thereof against the Season unto myself for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree & the fruit thereof & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way & hid the natural branches of the tame Olive tree in the nithermost parts of the vineyard some in one & some in another according to his will & pleasure & it came to pass that a long time passed away & the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his Servant come let us go down into the vineyard that we <​may​> labour in the vineyard & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard & also the servant went down into the vineyard to labour & it came to pass that the Servant sayeth unto his master behold look here behold the tree & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked & beheld the tree in the which the wild Olive branches had been grafted & it had sprang forth & began to bear fruit & he beheld that it was good & the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit & he sayeth unto the Servant behold the branches of the wild tree have <​hath​> taken hold of the moister of the root thereof that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength & because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches hath brought forth tame fruit now if we had not grafted in these branches the tree thereof would have perished & now behold I shall lay up much fruit which the tree thereof hath brought forth & the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the Season unto mine ownself & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant come let us go to the nithermost parts[246](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7208891852221761708" \o "Note) of the vineyard & behold if the natural branches of the tree hath not brought forth much fruit also that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the Season unto mine ownself & it came to pass that they went forth whither the master <​of the vineyard​>[247](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6685124392970542800" \o "Note) had hid the natural branches of the tree & he sayeth unto the servant behold these & he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit & he behed also that it was good & he sayeth unto the servant take of the fruit thereof & lay it up against the Season that I may preserve it unto mine ownself for behold sayeth he this long time have I nourished it & it hath brought forth much <​fruit​> & it came to pass [p. 102] that the servant sayeth unto his master how comest thou hither to plant this tree or this branch of the tree for behold it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy[248](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "246326299295176196" \o "Note) vineyard & the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto him counsel me not I knew that it was a poor spot of ground wherefore I said unto thee I have nourished it this long time & thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant look hither behold I have planted another branch <​of the tree​> also & thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer then the first but behold the tree I have nourished it this long time & it hath brought forth much fruit therefore gather it & lay it up against the season that I may preserve it unto mine ownself & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth again unto his servant look hither & behold another branch also which I have planted behold that I have nourished also & it hath brought forth fruit & he sayeth unto the servant look hither & behold the last behold this have I planted in a good spot of ground & I have nourished it this long time & only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit & the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit behold I have nourished this tree like unto the others & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit & cast them into the fire but behold the servant sayeth unto him let us prune it & dig about it & nourish it a little longer that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee that thou canst lay it up against the season & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard & the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard & it came to pass that a long time had passed away & the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant come let us go down in[249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16908354823311161217" \o "Note) the vineyard that we may labour again in the vineyard for behold the time draweth near & the end soon cometh wherefore I must lay up fruit against the season unto mine ownself & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard & the servant went down into the vineyard & they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off & the wild branches had been grafted in & behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit every sort according to its number & the Lord of the vineyard saith[250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9367299692909159256" \o "Note) behold this long time have we nourished this tree & I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit but behold this time it hath brought forth much fruit & there is none of it which is good & behold there are all kinds of bad fruit & it profiteth me nothing notwithstanding all our labour & now it grieveth me that I should lose this[251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10659128219614770652" \o "Note) tree & the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant what shall we do unto the tree that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine ownself & the servant sayeth unto his master behold because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild Olive tree they have nourished the roots that they are alive & they have not perished wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his serv [p. 103] servant the tree profiteth me nothing & the roots thereof profiteth me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit nevertheless I know that the roots are good & for mine own purpose I have preserved them & because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth from the wild branches good fruit but behold the wild branches have grew & have overran the roots thereof & because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it[252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15784704876059737982" \o "Note) hath brought forth much evil fruit & because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beheldest that it begineth to perish & it will soon become ripened that it may be cast into the fire except we should do something for it to preserve it & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant let us go down into the nithermost parts of the vineyard & behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit & it came to pass that they went down into the nithermost parts of the vineyard & it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also yea the first & the second & also the last & they had all become corrupt & the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit even that the branch had withered away & died & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept & sayeth unto the servant what could I have done more for my vineyard behold I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard save it were these had become corrupted & now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted & now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down & cast into the fire & behold this last whose branch hath withered away I did plant in a good spot of ground yea even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard & thou beholdest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground that I might plant this tree inthestead thereof & thou beholdest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit & the[253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3286556813627079266" \o "Note) part thereof brought forth wild fruit & because that I plucked not the branches thereof & cast them into the fire behold they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away & now behold notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard the trees thereof hath become corrupted that they bring forth no good fruit & these I have hope to preserve to have laid up fruit thereof against the season unto mine ownself but behold they have become like unto the wild Olive tree & they are of no worth but to be hewn down & cast into the fire & it grieveth me that I should lose them but what could I have done more in my vineyard have I slackened mine hand that I have not nourished it nay I have nourished it & I have diged[254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7118882127769634861" \o "Note) it & I have pruned it & I have dunged it & I have streached forth mine hand allmost all the day long & the end draweth nigh & it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard & cast them into the fire that they should be burned who is it that hath corrupted my vineyard & it came to pass that the servant sayeth [p. 104] unto his master is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard hath not the branches thereof overcame the roots which are good & because that the branches have overcame the roots thereof for behold they grew faster then the strength of the roots there◊f takeing strength unto themselves[255](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5798978124153014385" \o "Note) behold I say is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard hath become corrupted & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant let us go to & hew down the trees of the vineyard & cast them into the fire that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard for I have done all what could I have done more for my vineyard but behold the servant saith unto the Lord of the vineyard spare it a little longer & the Lord saith yea I will spare it a little longer for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard wherefore let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nithermost parts of my vineyard & let us graft them into the tree from whence they came & let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter & graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof & this will I do that the tree may not perish that perhaps I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose & behold the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive wherefore that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose I will take of the[256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7243719892243776949" \o "Note) branches of this tree & I will graft them in unto them yea I will graft in unto them the branches of their Mother tree that I may preserve the roots also unto mine ownself that when they shall be sufficiently strong that perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me & I <​may​> yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard & it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild & grafted in unto the natural trees which also had become wild & they also took of the natural trees which had become wild & grafted into their Mother tree & the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant pluck not the wild branches from the trees save it be those that <​which​> are most bitter & in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said & we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard & we will trim up the branches thereof & we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened that must perish & cast them into the fire & this I do that perhaps the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness & because of the change <​change​> of the branches that the good may overcome the evil & because that I have preserved the natural branches & the roots thereof & that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their Mother tree & have preserved the roots of their Mother tree that perhaps the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit & that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard & perhaps that I may rejoice excedingly that I have preserved the roots & the branches of the first fruit wherefore[257](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4280232875845758892" \o "Note) go to & call servants that we may labour diligently with our mights in the vineyard that we may prepare the way that I may bring forth again the natural fruit which natural fruit is good & the most precious above all other fruit wherefore let us go to & labour with our mights [p. 105] this last time for behold the end draweth nigh & this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard[258](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15559554315366158186" \o "Note) graft in the branches begin at the last that they may be first & that the first may be last & dig about the trees both Old & young the first & the last & the last & the first that all may be nourished once again for the last time wherefore dig about them & prune them & dung them once more for the last time for the end draweth night & if it so be that these last grafts shall grow & bring forth the natural fruit then shall ye prepare the way for them that they may grow & as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit according to the strength of the good & the sise thereof & ye shall not clear away the bad ther<​eof all at once lest the roots thereof should​> & the sise thereof & ye shall not clear away t◊ be to strong for the graft & the graft thereof shall perish & I lose the trees of my vineyard for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow that the root & the top may be equil in strength untill the good shall overcome the bad & the bad be hewn down & cast into the fire that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard & thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard & the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree & the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the natural tree & thus will I bring them together again that they shall bring forth the natural fruit & they shall be one & they <​the​> the bad shall[259](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7408744462010782853" \o "Note) be cast away yea even out of all the land of my vineyard for behold only this once will I prune my vineyard & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant & the servant went & did as the Lord had commanded him & brought other servants & they were few & the Lord of the vineyard saith unto him <​them​> go to[260](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4694889622374567475" \o "Note) & labour in the vineyard with your mights for behold this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard for the end is nigh at hand & the Season soon <​speedily​> cometh & if ye labour with your mights with me ye shall have joy in the fruit of which I shall lay up for <​unto​> myself against the time which will soon come & it came to pass that the servants did go to it & labour with their mights & the Lord of the vineyard laboured also with them & they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things & there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard & the natural branches began to grow & thrive excedingly & the wild branches began to be plucked off & to be cast away & they did keep the root & the top thereof equil according to the strength thereof & thus they laboured with all diligence according to the commondments of the Lord of the vineyard even untill the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard & the Lord[261](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8541168689678001850" \o "Note) had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit & they became like unto one body & the fruit were equil & the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit which was most precious unto him from the beginning & it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good & that his vineyard was [p. 106] no more corrupt he calleth up his servants & sayeth unto them behold for this last time have we nourished my vineyard & thou beholdest that I have done according to my will & I have preserved the natural fruit that it is good even like as it was in the beginning & blessed art thou for because that <​that​> ye have been diligent in labouring with me in my vineyard & have kept my commandments & hath brought unto me again the natural fruit that my vineyard is no more corrupted & the bad is cast away behold ye shall have joy with me[262](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9892035006611899154" \o "Note) because of the fruit of my vineyard for behold for a long time <​will​>[263](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10804105124023284259" \o "Note) I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine ownself against the Season which speedily cometh & fro◊ for the last time have I nourished my vineyard & pruned it & dug about it & dunged it wherefore I will lay up unto mine ownself of the fruit for a long time according to that which I have spoken & when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard then will I cause the good & the bad to be gathered & the good will I preserve unto myself & the bad will I cast away into its own place & then cometh the Season & the end & my vineyard will I cause to be <​burned​> with fire——

Jacob, Chapter 4 [Jacob 6]

Chapter [blank]——

And now[264](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2767975137137940135" \o "Note) my Brethren as I said unto you that I would prophesy behold this is my prophesy that the things which this Zenos spake concerning the house of Israel inthewhich he likened them unto a tame Olive tree must surely come to pass & in the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his People is the day yea even the last time that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power to nourish & prune his vineyard & after that the end soon cometh & how blessed are they who have laboured diligently in his vineyard & how cursed are they which shall be cast out into their own place & the world shall be burned with fire & how me[r]ciful is our God unto us for he remembereth the house of Israel both roots & branches & he streaches forth his hands unto them all the day long & they are a stiffnecked & a gainsaying People but as many as will not hardon their hearts shall be saved in the Kingdom of God wherefore my beloved Brethren I beseach of you in words of soberness that ye would repent & come with full purpose of heart & cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you & while is arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day heardon not your hearts yea to day if ye will hear his voice hardon not your hearts for why will ye die for behold after that ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long will ye bring forth evil fruit that ye must be hewn down & cast into the fire behold will ye reject these words will ye reject the words of the Prophets & will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ after th◊t so many have spoken concerning him & deny the good word of Christ & the Power of God & the gift of the Holy Ghost & quench the Holy spirit & make a mock of the great plan of redemption which hath been laid for you know ye not that if ye wi[ll] [p. 107] do these things that the power of the redemption & the resurrection which is in Christ will bring you to stand with shame & awful guilt before the bar of God & according to the power of Justice for Justice cannot be denied th◊t ye must go away into that lake of fire & brimstone whose flames are unquenchible & whose smoke ascendeth up forever & ever which lake of fire & brimstone is endless torment O then my beloved Brethren repent ye & enter ye in at the strait gate & continue in the way which is n◊rrow untill ye shall obtain eternal life O be wise what can I say more finely I bid you farewell untill I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread & fear—— Amen——

Jacob, Chapter 5 [Jacob 7]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass that some years had passed away there came a man among the People of Nephi whose name was Sherem & it came to pass that he began to preach among the People & to declare unto them that there should be no Christ & he preached many things which were flattering unto the People & this he done that he might overthrew the doctrine of Christ & he laboured diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the People insomuch that he did lead away many hearts & he knowing that I Jacob had faith in Christ which should come wherefore he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me & he was learned that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the People wherefore he could use much flatterry & much power of speach according to the power of the Devil & he had hope to shake me from the faith notwithstanding the many revelations & the many things which I had seen concerning these things for I truly had seen Angels & they had ministered unto me & also I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in verry word from time to time wherefore I could not be shaken & it came to pass that he came unto me & on this wise did he speak unto me saying Brother Jacob I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you for I have heard & also know that thou goest about much preaching that which ye call the Gospel or the doctrine of Christ & ye have lead away much of this People that they pervert the right way of God & keep not the law of Moses which is the right way & convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence & now behold I Sherem declare unto you that this is blasphemy for no man knoweth of such things for he cannot tell of things to come & after this manner did Sherem contend against me but behold the Lord God poured in his spirit into my soul insomuch that I did confound him in all his words & I sayeth unto him denyest thou the Christ which should come & he sayeth if there should be a Christ I would not deny him but I know that there is no Christ neither hath been nor never[265](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1757620607946333099" \o "Note) will be & I sayest sayeh unto him believest thou the Scriptures & he sayeth yea & I sayeth unto him then ye do not understand them for they truly testify of Christ behold I say unto you that none of [p. 108] the Prophets have written nor prophesied save they have spoken concerning this Christ & this is not all it hathbeen made manifest unto me for I have heard & seen & it also hath been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost wherefore I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost & it came to pass that he sayeth unto me shew me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost in the which ye know so much & I said wa◊ <​what​> am I that I should tempt God to shew unto thee a sign in the things which thou knowest to be true yet thou wilt deny it because thou art of the Devil nevertheless not my will be done but if God shall smite thee let that be a sign unto thee that he hath power both in heaven & in earth & also that Christ shall come & thy will O Lord be done & not mine & it came to pass that when I Jacob had spoken these words the power of the Lord came upon him insomuch that he fell to the earth & it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days & it came to pass that he sayeth unto the People gather together on the morrow for I shall die wherefore I desire to speak unto the People before that I shall die & it came to pass that on the morrow that the multitude were gathered together & he speak plainly unto them & denied the things which he had taught them & confessed the Christ & the Power of the Holy Ghost & the ministering of Angels & he speak plainly unto them that he had been deceived by the power of the Devil & he spake of hell & of eternity & of eternal punishment & he sayeth I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin for I have lied unto God for I denyed the Christ & said that I believed the Scriptures & they truly testify of him & because that I have this <​thus​> lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful but I confess unto God & it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more & he gave up the ghost & when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost they were astonished excedingly insomuch that the power of God came down upon them & they were overcome that they fell to the earth now this thing was pleasing unto me Jacob for I had requested it of my Father which was in heaven for he had heard my cry & answered my prayers & it came to pass that peace & the love of God was restored again among the People & they searched the Scriptures & hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man & it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim & restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth but it all were vain for they delighted in wars & bloodsheds & they had an eternal hatred against us their Brethren & they sought by the power of their arms[266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16141331161620589940" \o "Note) to destroy us continually wherefore the People of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms[267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6355147932820467135" \o "Note) & with all their might trusting in the God & the Rock of their Salvation wherefore they became as yet conquerers of their enemies & it came to pass that I Jacob began to be Old & the record of this People being kept on the other plates of Nephi [p. 109] wherefore I conclude this record declareing that I have written according to the best of my knowledge by saying that the time passed away with us & also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream we being a lonesome & a sollum People wanderers cast out fron Jerusalem born in tribulation in a wild[268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6969614452064748247" \o "Note) wilderness & hated of our Brethren which caused wars & contensions wherefore we did mourn out our days & I Jacob saw that I must soon go down to my grave wherefore I said unto my Son Enos take these plates & I told him the things which my Brother Nephi had commanded me & he promised obediance unto the commands & I make an <​end​> of my writing upon these plates which writing hath been small & to the reader I bid farewell hopeing that many of my Brethren may read my words Brethren adieu——[269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1291453885617719146" \o "Note)

Enos, Chapter 1 [Enos 1]

The Book of Enos Chapter ft[270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8345738633794730229" \o "Note) [blank]

Behold it came to pass that I Enos knowing my father that he was a just man for he taught me in his language & also in the nurture & admonition of the Lord & blessed be the name of my God for it & I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God before that I received a remission of my sins behold I went to hunt beasts in the forest & the words[271](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6769634088142330348" \o "Note) which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life & the joy of the saints &[272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8439280431162000961" \o "Note) the words of my father sunk deep into my heart & my soul hungered & I kneeled down before my maker & I cried unto him in mighty prayer & supplication for mine own soul & all the day long did I cry unto him yea & when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens & there came a voice unto me saying Enos thy Sins are forgiven thee & thou shalt be blessed & I Enos knew that God could not lie wherefore my guilt was swept away & I sayeth Lord how is it done & he sayeth unto me because of thy faith in Christ whom thou hast not heard nor seen & many years passeth away before that he shall manifest himself in <​the​>[273](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14838670534037395012" \o "Note) flesh wherefore go to it thy faith hath made thee whole[274](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16583748942930617816" \o "Note) now it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the wellfare of my Brethren the Nephites wherefore I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them & while I was this thus struggleing in the spirit behold the voice of the Lord came into my mind again saying I will visit thy Brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments,[275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10923469333685214091" \o "Note) I have given unto them this land & it is a holy land & I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity wherefore I will visit thy Brethren according as I have said & their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their <​own​> heads & after that I Enos had heard these words my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord & I prayed unto him with many long struggleings for my Brethren the[276](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2120821361985275218" \o "Note) Lamanites & it came to pass that after I had prayed & laboured with all diligence the Lord said unto me I will grant unto thee according to thy desires because of thy faith & now behold this was the desire which I desired of him that if it should so be that my People the Nephites should fall into transgression & by any means be destro [p. 110]id & the Lamanites should not be destroid that the Lord God would preserve a record of my People the Nephites even if it so be by the power of his holy arm that it might be brought forth some future day unto the Lamanites that perhaps they might be brought unto salvation[277](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1783780568405825927" \o "Note) for at the presant our struggleings[278](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "614659273956716764" \o "Note) were vain in restoreing them to the true faith & they swore in their wrath that if it were possible they would destroy our records & us & also all the traditions of our fathers wherefore I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records I cried unto him continually for he had said unto me whatsoever thing <​thing​> ye shall ask in faith believeing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ ye shall receive it & I had faith & I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records & he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time & I Enos knew that it would be according to the covenant which he had made wherefore my Soul did rest & the Lord said unto me thy fathers have also required of me this thing & it shall be done unto them according to their faith for their faith was like unto thine &[279](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2805201406270128765" \o "Note) now it came to pass that I Enos went about among the People of Nephi prophesying of things to come & testifying of the things which I had heard & seen & I bear[280](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10903409650288296791" \o "Note) record that the People of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God but our labours were vain their hatred was fixed & they were lead by their evil nature that they became wild & ferocious & a bloodthirsty People full of idolitry & filthiness feading upon beasts of pray dwelling in tents & wandering about in the wilderness with a[281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13662824367880477497" \o "Note) short skin girted[282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5466702999676328771" \o "Note) about their loins & their heads shaven & their skill was in the bow & the Simeter & the Axe & may of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat & they were continually seeking to destroy us & it came to pass that the People of Nephi did till the land & raise all manner of grain & of fruit & flocks of herds & flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind & goats & wild goats & also much horses & there were exceding many prophets among us & the People were a stiff necked People hard to understand & there was nothing save it was exceding harshness preaching & prophesying of wars & contentions & destructions & continually reminding them of death & of the duration of eternity & the Judgments & the power of God & all these things stiring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord I say there was nothing short of these things & exceding great plainness of speach would keep them from going down speedily to destruction & after this manner do I write concerning them & I saw wars between the Nephites & the Lamanites in the course of my days & it came to pass that I began to be old & an handred & seventy & nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem & as I saw[283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10310942294893095129" \o "Note) that I must soon go down to my grave haveing been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach & prophesy unto this People & declare the word according to the truth which is in christ & I have declared it in all my days & have rejoiced in it above that of the world & I soon go to the place of my rest which is with [p. 111] my redeemer for I know that in him I shall rest & I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality & shall stand before him then shall I see his face with pleasure & he will say unto me come unto me ye blessed there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen——[284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14090234324473798640" \o "Note)

Jarom, Chapter 1 [Jarom 1]

The Book of Jarom Chapter first

Now Behold I Jarom write a few words according to the commandment of my father Enos that our genealogy may be kept & as these plates are small & as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our Brethren the Lamanites wherefore it must needs be that I write a little but I shall not write the things of my prophesying nor of my revelations for what could I write more then my fathers have written for have not they revealed the plan of salvation I say unto you yea & this suffiseth me behold it is expediant that much should be done among this People because of the hardness of their hearts & the deafness of their ears & the blindness of their minds & the stiffness of their necks nevertheless God is exceding merciful unto them & hath not as yet swept them off from the face of the land & there are many among us which have many revelations for they are not all stiffnecked & as many as are not stiffnecked & have faith have communion with the Holy spirit which maketh manifest unto the children of men according to their faith & now behold two hundred years had passed away & the People of Nephi had waxed strong in the land they had observed to keep the law of Moses & the sabbath day Holy unto the Lord & they profaned not neither did they blaspheme & the laws of the land were exceding strict & they were scattered upon much of the face of the land & the Lamanites also & they were exceding more numerous then were they of the Nephites & the loved murder & would drink the blood of beasts & it came to pass that they came many times against us the Nephites to battle but our Kings & our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord & they taught the People the ways of the Lord wherefore we withstood the Lamanites & swept them away out of our lands & began to fortify our cities or whatsoever place of our inheritance & we multiplied excedingly & spread upon the face of the land & became exceding rich in gold & in silver & in precious things & in fine workmanship of wood in buildings & in mashinery & also in iron & copper & brass & steel making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground & weopons of war yea the sharp pointed arrow & the quiver & the dart & the Javlin & all preperation<​s​>[285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5873706129912544279" \o "Note) for war & thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites they did not prosper against us but the word of the Lord was verrified which he spake unto our fathers saying that inas much as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land & it came to pass that the Prophets of the Lord did threaten the People of Nephi according to the word of the Lord God that if they did not keep the commandments but should fall into transgression they should be destroid from off the face of the land wherefore the Prophets & the Priests & the teachers did labour diligently exhorting with all long suffering the People to diligence teaching the law of Moses [p. 112] & the intent for which it was given persuadeing them to look forward unto the messiah & believe in him to come as tho he already was & after this manner did they teach them & it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroid upon the face of the land for they did prick their hearts with the word continually stiring them up unto repentance & it came to pass that two hundred & thirty & eight years had passed away after the manner of wars & contentions & dissensions for the space of much of the time & I Joram do not write more for the plates are small but behold my Brethren ye can go to the other plates of Nephi for behold upon them the record of our wars are engraven according to the writings of the Kings or that which they caused to be written & I deliver these plates into the hands of my Son Omni that they may be kept according <​to​> the commandments of my fathers The Book of Omni

Omni, Chapter 1 [Omni 1]

The Book of Omni Chapter first—— Behold it came to pass that I Omni being commanded by my father Jarom that I should write somewhat upon these plates to preserve our genealogy wherefore in my days I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my People the Nephites from falling into the hands of their enemies the Lamanites but behold I of myself am a wicked man & I have not kept the statutes & the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have h◊d done & it came to pass that two hundred & seventy & six years had passed away & we had many seasons of peace & we had many seasons of serious war & bloodshed yea & in fine two hundred & eighty & two years had passed away & I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers & I confered them upon my Son Amaron & I make an end. And now I Amaron write the things whatsoever I write which are few in the Book of my father behold it came to pass that three hundred & twenty years had passed away & the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroid for the Lord would not suffer after he had lead them out of the land of Jerusalem & kept & preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies yea he would not suffer that the words which he spake unto our fathers saying inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land wherefore the Lord did visit them in great Judgment nevertheless he did spare the righteous that they should not perish but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies & it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my Brother Chemish Now I Chemish write what few things I write in the same Book with my Brother for behold I saw the last which he wrote that he wrote it with his own hand & he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me & after this manner we keep the records for it is according to the commandments of our fathers & I make an end Behold I Abinadom I am the Son of Chemish behold it came to pass that I saw much war & contention between my People the Nephites & the Lamanites & I with mine own sword have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my Brethren & behold the record of this People is engraven upon plates which is had by the Kings accoding to the generations & I know [p. 113] of no revelation save that which has been written neither prophesy wherefore that which is sufficient is written & I make an end Behold I am Amaleki the Son of Abinadom behold I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah which was made King over the land of Zarahemla for behold he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi & as many as would harken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him into the wilderness & it came to pass that he did <​according​> as the Lord <​had​> commanded him & they departed out of the land into the wilderness as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord & they were lead by many preachings & prophesyings & they were admonished continually by the word of God & they were lead by the power of his arm through the wilderness untill they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla & they discovered a People which was called a the People of Zarahemla now there was great rejoiceing among the People of Zarahemla & also Zarahemla did rejoice excedingly because th◊t the Lord had sent the People of Mosiah with the plates of Brass which contained the record of the Jews behold it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the People of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah King of Judah was carried away captive into Babylon & they journied in the wilderness & was brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters into the land where Mosiah discovered them & they had dwelt there from that time forth & at the time that Mosiah discovered them they had became exceding numerous nevertheless they had had[286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3405490938203800692" \o "Note) wars & serious contentions & had fallen by the sword from time to time & their language had become corrupted & they had brought no records with them & they denied the being of their Creator[287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16476893455394933555" \o "Note) Mosiah nor the People of Mosiah could n◊t understand them but it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language & it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers according to his memory & they are written but not in these plates & it came to pass that the People of Zarahemla & of Mosiah did unite together & Mosiah was appointed to be their king & it came to pass in the days of Mosah there was a large stone brought unto him with engraveings on it & he did interpret the engravings by the gift & power of God & they gave an account of one Coriantumr & the slain of his People & Coriantumr was discovered by the People of Zarahemla & he dwelt with them for the space of nine Moons it as <​also​> spake a few[288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2425401977486379887" \o "Note) words concerning his fathers & his first parents came out from the tower at the time the Lord confounded the language of the People & the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his Judgments which is Just & their bones lay scattered in the land Northward behold I Ameleki was born in the days of Mosiah & I have lieved & Benjamin his Son reigneth in his stead & behold I have seen in the days of King Benjamin a serious [p. 114] war & much bloodshed between the Nephites & the Lamanites but behold the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them yea insomuch that King Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla & it came to pass that I began to be old & haveing no seed & knoing King Benjamin to be a Just man before the Lord wherefore I shall deliver up these plates unto him exhorting all men to come unto God the Holy one of Israel & believe in prophesying & in revelations & in the ministering of Angels & in the gift of speaking with tongues & in the gift of interpreting languages & in all things which is good for there is nothing which is good save it comes from God the Lord & that which is evil cometh from the Devil & now my beloved Brethren I would that ye should come unto Christ which is the Holy one of Israel & partake of his salvation & the power of his redemption yea come unto him & offer your whole souls as an offering unto him & continue in fasting & proping & endure to the end & as the Lord liveth ye will be saved & now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number which went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi for there was a large number which were desireous to possess the land of their inheritance wherefore they went up into the wilderness & their leader being a strong & a mighty man & a stiffnecked man wherefore he caused a contension among them & they were all slain save fifty in the wilderness & they returned again to the land of Zarahemla &[289](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3128894020391452165" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number & took their journey again into the wilderness & I Amaleki had a Brother which also went with them & I have not since known concerning them & I am about to lay down in my grave & these plates are full & I make an end of my speaking——

Words of Mormon, Chapter 1 [Words of Mormon 1]

The words of Mormon <​Chapter 2.d​> And now I Mormon being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my Son Moroni behold I have witnessed allmost all the destruction of my People the Nephites & it is many hundred years after the comeing of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my Son & it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my People but may God grant that he may survive them that he may write somewhat concerning them & somewhat concerning Christ that perhaps some day it may profit them & now I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written for after that I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi down to the reign of this King Benjamin of which Amaleki spake I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands & I found these plates which contained this small account of the Prophets from Jacob down to the reign of this King Benjamin & also many of the words of Nephi & the things which are upon these plates pleasing me because of the Prophesies of the comeing of Christ & my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfiled & yea & I also know that as many things <​as​> have been prophesied Concerning [p. 115] us down to this day has been fulfiled & as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass wherefore I chose these things to finish my record upon them which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi & I cannot write a hundredth part of the things of my People but behold I shall take these plates which contain these prophesyings & revelations & put them with the remainder of my record for they are choice unto me & I know they will be choice unto my Brethren & I do this for a wise purpose for thus is it whispereth me according to the workings of the spirit of the Lord which is in me & now I do not know all things but the Lord knoweth all things which is to come wherefore he worketh in me to do according to his will & my prayer to God is concerning my Brethren that they may once again come to the knowledge of God yea the redemption of Christ that they may once again be a delightsome People & now I Mormon procede to finish out my record which I take from the plates of Nephi & I make it according to the knowledge & the understanding which God hath given me wherefore it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of King Benjamin he took them & put them with the other plates which contained records which had been handed down by the Kings from Generation to Generation untill the days of King Benjamin & they were handed down from King Benjamin from generation to generation untill they have fallen into my hands & I Mormon pray to God that they may be preserved from this time hence forth & I know that they will be preserved for there are great things written upon them out of which my People & their Brethren shall be Judged at the great & last day according to the word of God which is written & now concerning this King Benjamin he had somewhat contentions among his own People & it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi to battle against his People but behold King Benjamin gathered together his armies & he did stand against them & he did fight with the strength of his own arm with the sword of Laban & in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies untill they had slain many thousand[290](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8541905602619722008" \o "Note) of the Lamanites & it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites untill they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance & it came to pass that after there had been fals Christs & their mouths had been shut & they punished according to their crimes & after their had been fals prophets & fals preachers & teachers among the People & all these haveing been punished according to their crimes & after there haveing been much contensions & many dissensions away unto the Lamanites behold it came to pass that King Benjamin with the assistance of the holy Prophets which were among his People for behold King Benjamin was a holy man & he did reign over his People in righteousness & there were many holy men in the land & they did speak the word of God with power & with authority & they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the People wherefore with the [p. 116] help of these King Benjamin by labouring with all the might of his body & the faculty of his whole soul & also the Prophets wherefore they did once more establish peace in the land——

Mosiah, Chapter 1 [Mosiah 1–3]

<​the Book of Mosiah​>[291](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5902742525275103616" \o "Note) Chapter [blank]—— And now there was no more contension in all the land of Zarahemla among all the People which belonged to King Benjamin so that King Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days & it came to pass that he had three Sons & he called their names Mosiah & Helorum & Helaman & he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers that thereby they might become men of understanding & that they might know concerning the prophesies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers which was delivered them by the hand of the Lord & he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass saying my Sons I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates which contain these records & these commandments we must have suffered in ignorance even at this presant time not knowing the mysteries of God for it were not possible that our father Lehi could have remembered all these things to have taught them to his children except it were for the help of these plates for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings & teach them to his children that thereby they could teach them to their children & so fulfiling the commandments of the L◊rd <​God​> even down to this presant time I say unto you my Sons were it not for these things which have been kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord <​God​> that we might read & understand of his mysteries & have his commandments always before our eyes that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief & we should have been like unto our Brethren the Lamanites which know nothing concerning these things or even do not believe them when they are taught them because of the tradition[292](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16255564742168168191" \o "Note) of their fathers which are not correct O my Sons I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true & also that these records are true & behold also the plates of Nephi which contain the records & the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem untill now & they are true & we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes & now my Sons I would that ye should remember to search them diligently that ye may profit thereby & I would that ye should keep the commandments of God that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers & many more things did King Benjamin teach his Sons which are not written in this Book & it came to pass that after King Benjamin had made an end of teaching his Sons that he waxed old & he saw that he must verry soon go the way of all the earth therefore he thought it expediant that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his Sons therefore he had Mosiah brought before him & these are the words which he spake unto him saying my Son I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this People [p. 117] or the People of Zarahemla & the People of Mosiah which dwell in this land[293](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15050373126914910370" \o "Note) that thereby they may be gathered togther for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto them this my People out of mine own mouth that thou art a King & a ruler over this People which the Lord our God hath given us & moreover I shall give this People a name that thereby they may be distuinguished above all the People which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem & this I do because they have been a diligent People in keeping the commandments of the Lord & I give unto them a name that never shall be bloted out except it be through transgression yea & moreover I say unto you that if this highly favoured People of the Lord should fall into transgression & become a wicked & an adulterous People that the Lord will deliver them up that thereby they become weak like unto their Brethren & he will no more preserve them by his matchless & marvelous power as he hath hitherto preserved our fathers for I say unto <​you​> that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites & become victims to their hatred & it came to pass that after King Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his Son that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the Kingdom & moreover he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass & also the plates of Nephi & also the sword of Laban & the ball or director which lead our fathers through the wlderness which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be lead every one according to the heed & diligence which they gave unto him therefore as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey but were driven back & incured the displeasure of God upon them & therefore they were smitten with famine & sore afflictions to stir them up in rememberance of their duty & now it came to pass that Mosiah went & did as his father had commanded him & proclaimed unto all the People which were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them & it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him & had made a proclamation throughout all the land that the People gathered themselves together throughout all the land that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which King Benjamin should speak unto them & there were a great number even so many that they did not number them for they had multiplied excedingly & waxed great in the land & they also took of the firstlings of their flocks that they might offer sacrifice & burnt offerings according to the law of Moses & also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem & who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & had appointed just men to be their teachers & also a just man to be their King who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla & who had taught them to keep the commandments of God that [p. 118] thereby[294](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14424532263466382689" \o "Note) they might rejoice & be filled with love towards God & all men & it came to pass that when they came up to the temple they pitched their tents round about every man according to his family consisting of his wife & his Sons & his daughters & their Sons & their daughters from the eldest down to the youngest every family haveing <​being​> separate one from another & they pitched their tents round about the temple every man haveing his tent with the door thereof towards the temple that thereby they might remain in their tents & hear the words which King Benjamin should speak unto them f◊r for the multitude being so great that King Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple therefore he caused a tower to be erected that thereby his People might hear the words which he should speak unto them & it came to pass that he began to speak to his People from the tower & they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written & sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice that they might also receive his words & these are the words which he spake & caused to be written saying—— My Brethren all ye that have assembled yourselves to gether you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak but that you should hearken unto you & open your ears that ye may hear & your hearts that ye may understand & your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man but I am like as yourselves subject to all manner of infirmities in body & mind yet as I have been chosen by this People & was consecrated by my father & was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler & a king over this People & have been kept & preserved by his matchless power to serve thee with all the might mind & strength which the Lord hath granted unto me I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service even up to this time & have not sought gold nor silver nor no manner of riches of you neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons nor that ye should make slaves one with[295](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18075278837531944804" \o "Note) another or that ye should murder or plunder or steel or commit adultry or even I have not suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness & have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord in all things which he hath commanded you & even I myself have laboured with mine own <​own​> hands that I might serve you & that ye should not be laden with taxes & that there should nothing come upon you which was grievious to[296](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4911164414556817750" \o "Note) bourne & of all these things which I have spoken ye yourselves are witnesses this day yet my Brethren I have not done these things that I might boast neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse ye you but I tell you these things that ye may know [p. 119] that I <​can​> answer a clear clean[297](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13011700556247391229" \o "Note) conscience before God this day behold I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service I do not desire to boast for I have only been in the service of God & behold I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God behold ye have called me your king & if I whom ye call your king do labour to serve you then had not ye ought to labour to serve one another & behold also if I who ye call your king who has spent his days in your service & yet hath been in the service of God doth merit any thanks from you O how had you ought to thank your heavenly King I say unto you my Brethren that if you should render all the thanks & praise which your whole souls hath power to possess to that God who hath created you & hath kept & preserved you & hath caused that ye should rejoice & hath granted that ye should live in peace one with another I say unto you that if ye should serve him who hath created you from the beginning & art preserveing you from day to day by lending you breath that ye may live & move & do according to your own will & even supporting you from one moment to another I say if ye should serve him with all your whole soul & yet ye would be unprofitable servants & behold all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments & he hath promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land & he never doth vary from that which he hath said therefore if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you & prosper you[298](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5390693112640182446" \o "Note) & now in the first place he hath created you & granted unto you your lives for which ye are in debted unto him & secondly he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you for which if ye do he doth immediately bless you & therefore he hath paid you & ye are still in debted unto him & are & will be forever & ever therefore of what have ye to boast & now I ask can ye say ought of yourselves[299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14277565730002634524" \o "Note) I answer you nay ye cannot say that thou art even as mutch as the dust of the earth yet thou wast created of the dust of the earth but behold it belongeth[300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7282089543560949843" \o "Note) to him who created it you & I even I whom ye call your king am no better then ye yourselves are for I am also of the dust & thou beholdest that I am old & am about to yield up this mortal frame to its Mother earth therefore as I said unto you that I had served you walking with a clear conscience before God even so I at this time <​have​> caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might be found blameless & that your blood should not come up on me when I shall stand to be Judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave that I might go down in peace & my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a Just God & moreover I say unto you that I have caused that ye [p. 120] should assemble yourselves together that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher nor your king for even at this time my whole frame doth tremble excedingly while attempting to speak unto you but the Lord God doth support me & hath suffered me that I should speak unto me <​you​> & hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day that my Son Mosiah as <​is​> a king & a ruler over you[301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6945862517910369169" \o "Note) & now my Brethren I would that ye should do as ye hath hitherto done[302](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18399775091715641067" \o "Note) as ye have kept my commandments & also the commandments of my father & have prospered & have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my Son or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto him <​you​> by you <​him​> ye shall prosper in the land & your enemies shall have no power over you but O my People beware lest there shall arise contentions among you & ye list to obey the evil spirit which was spoken by my father Mosiah for behold there is a wo promised pronounced upon him that listeth to obey that Spirit for if he listeth to obey him & remaineth & dieth in his <​his​> sins the same drinketh damnation to his own soul for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment having transgressed the law of God conterary to his own knowledge I say unto you that there are not one among you except it be your little Children that have not been taught concerning these things but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father to render to him all that you have & are & also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophesies which hath been spoken by the holy Prophets even down to the time our father Lehi left Jerusalem & also all that hath been spoken by our fathers untill now & behold also they spoke <​spake​> that which was commanded them of the Lord therefore they are Just & true & now I say unto you my Brethren that after ye have known & have been taught all these things if ye should transgress & go conterary to that which hath been spoken that ye do with draw yourselves from the spirit of the Lord that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdoms paths that ye may be blessed prospered & preserved I say unto you that the man that doeth these <​this​> things the same cometh out in open rebellion against God therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit & becometh an enemy to all righteousness therefore the Lord hath no place in him for he dwelleth not in unholy temples therefore if that man repent<​eth​> not & remaineth & dieth an enemy to God the demands of divine Justice doth awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt which doth cause him to shrink from the presance of the Lord & doth fill his breast with guilt & pain & anguish which is like an unquenchable fire whose flames ascendeth up forever & ever & now I say unto you that mercy hath no claim on that man therefore his final doom is to endure a never ending torment O all ye old men & also ye young men & you little children which can understand my words for I have spoken plain unto you that ye might understand I p[ray][303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12589548729396491049" \o "Note) that ye should[304](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11137677029854153252" \o "Note) [p. 121] awake to a rememberance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression & moreover I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed blessed & hapy state of those that keep the commandments of God for behold they are blessed in all things both temporal & spiritual & if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into the k heaven that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of neverending happiness O remember remember that these things are true for the Lord God hath spoken it &[305](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2593016001921602665" \o "Note) again my Brethren I would call your attension for I have somewhat more to speak unto you for behold I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come & the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an Angel from God & he said unto me awake & I awoke & behold he stood before me & he said unto me awake & hear the words which I shall tell thee for behold I am come to declare unto thee glad tidings of great Joy for the Lord hath heard thy prayers & hath Judged of thy righteousness & hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice & that thou mayest declare unto thy People that they also may <​also​> be filled with Joy for behold the time cometh & is not far distant that with power the Lord omnipotant who reigneth which was & is from all eternity to all eternity shall com down from heaven among the children of men & shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay & shall go forth amongst men working mighty miracles such as healing the sick raising the dead causing the lame to walk the blind to receive their sight & the deaf to hear & cureing all manner of deseases & he shall cast out Devils or the evil spirits which dwelleth in the hearts of the children of men & lo he shall suffer temptations & pain of body hungar thirst & fateague even more then man can suffer except it be unto death for behold blood cometh from every pore so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness & <​the​> abominations of his People & he shall be called Jesus Christ the Son of God the Father of heaven & of earth the creator of all things from the beginning & his Mother shall be called Mary & lo he cometh unto his own that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name & even after all this they shall consider him as[306](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17882301163081674810" \o "Note) a man & say that he hath a Devil & shall scourge him & shall crucify him & he shall rise the third day from the dead & behold he standeth to Judge the world & behold all these things are done that a righteous Judgment might come upon the chdilren of men for behold & also his blood atoneth for the Sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam who hath died not knowing the will of God concerning them & who have ignorently sined but wo wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God for salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance & faith on the Lord Jesus Christ & the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men to declare these things to every <​Kindred​> Nation & Kindred <​&​> tongue that ther[e]by whosoever should believe that Chri[st shou]ld come the same might receive remission of their sins & rejoice [p. 122] with exceding great Joy even as tho he had allready come among them yet the Lord God saw that his People were a stiffnecked People & he appointed unto them a law even the law of Moses & many signs & wonders & types & shadows shewed he unto them concerning his coming & also holy prophets spake unto them concrning his coming & yet they hardoned their hearts & understood not that the Law of Moses availeth nothing excep it were through the atonement of his blood & even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved but I say unto you they are blessed for behold as in Adam or by nature they fall even so the blood of christ atoneth for their sins & moreover I say unto you that there shall be no other name given nor no other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men only in & through the name of Christ the Lord omnipotant for behold he Judgeth & his Judgment is just & the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy but men drinketh damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves & become as little children & believeth that salvation was & is & is to come in & through the atoneing blood of Christ the Lord omnipotant for the natural man is an enemy to God & has been from the fall of Adam & will be forever & ever but if he yieldeth to the enticeings of the holy spirit & puteth off the natural man & he becometh a Saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord & becometh as a child submissive meek humble patient full of love willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him even as a child doth submit to his father & moreover I say unto you that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Saviour shall spread throughout every Nation kindred tongue & People & behold when that time cometh none shall be found blameless before God except it be little children only through repentance & faith on the name of the Lord God omnipotant & even at this time when thou shalt have taught thy People the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee & now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me & this thus saith the Lord they shall stand as a bright testimony against this People at the Judgment day whereof they shall be Judged every man according to his works whether they be good or whether they be evil & if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt & abominations which doth cause them to shrink from the presance of the Lord into a state of miseary & endless torment from whence they can no more returns therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls therefore they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God which Justice could no more deny unto them then it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partakeing of the forbidden fruit therefore mercy could have claim on them no more forever & their torment is as a lake of fire & brimstone whose flames are unquenchable & whose smoke ascendeth up forever & ever thus hath the Lord commanded me—— Amen.

Mosiah, Chapter 2 [Mosiah 4]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass that when King Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words <​words​> [p. 123] which had been delivered unto him by the Angel of the Lord that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude & behold they had fell to the earth for the fear of the Lord had come upon them & they had viewed themselves in their own carnal states even less then the dust of the earth & they all cried aloud with one voice saying O have mercy & apply the atoneing blood that we Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our Sins & our hearts may be purified for we believe in Jesus Christ the Son of God who created heaven & earth & all things who shall come down among the children of men & it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the spirit of the Lord came upon them & they were filled with Joy haveing received a remission of their sins & having peace of conscience because of the exceding faith which they had in Jesus Christ which should come according to the words which King Benjamin had spoken unto them & King Benjanim again opened his mouth & began to speak unto them saying my friends & my Brethren my kindred & my People I would again call your attention that ye may hear & understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you for behold that if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time hath awakened you to a sense of your nothingness & your worthlessn◊◊s[307](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16483562928019196055" \o "Note) & fallen state I say unto you that if ye have come to a knowedge <​a knowledge​> of the goodness of God & his matchless power & his wisdom & his patience & his glory long suffering towards the children of men & also the atonement which hath[308](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9045653596437116351" \o "Note) been prophesied from prepared from the foundation of the world that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord & should be diligent in keeping his commandments & continue in the faith even unto the end of his life I mean the life of the mortal body I say that this is the man that receiveth Salvation through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind which ever was ever since the fall of Adam or which is or which ever shall be even unto the end of the world & this is the means whereby salvation cometh & there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of neither is there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you believe in believe that he is & that he created all things both in heaven & in earth believe that he hath all wisdom & all power both in heaven & in earth believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend & again believe that ye must repent of your sins & forsake them & humble yourselves before God & ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you & now if you believe <​all​> these things see that ye do them[309](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5508437753956747873" \o "Note) & again I <​say​> unto you as I have said before that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God or if ye have known of his goodness & have tasted of his love & have received a remission of your Sins which causeth such exceding Jreat Joy in your souls even so I would that ye should remember & always retain in rememberance the greatness of God & your own nothingness & [p. 124] his goodness & long suffering towards you unworthy cretures & humble yourselves even in the debths of humititly <​humility​> calling on the name of the Lord daily & standing stedfastly in the faith of that which is to come which was spoken by the mouth of the Angel & behold I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice & be filled with the love of God & always retain a remission of your sins & ye shall grow in the knowledge <​of the glory​> of him who created you or in the knowledge of that which is Just & true & ye will not have a mind to injure one another but to live peacibly & to render to every man according to that which is his due & ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry or naked neither will yo suffer that they transgress the laws of God & fight & querrel one with another & save the Devil which is the master of sin or which is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers he being an enemy to all righteousness but ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth & soberness ye will teach them to love one another & to serve one another & also ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need & ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain & turn him out to perish perhaps thou shalt say the man hath brought upon himself his miseary therefore I will stay my hand & will not give unto him of my food nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer for his punishments are just but I say unto you O man whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent & except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever & hath no interest in the kingdom of God for behold are we not all beggars do we not all depend upon the same being even God for all the substance which we have for both food & rament & for gold & for silver & for all the riches which we have of every kind & behold even at this time ye have been calling on his name & beging for a remission of your sins & hath he suffered that ye have beged in vain nay he hath poured out his spirit upon you & <​hath​> caused that your hearts should be filled with joy & hath caused that your mouths should be stoped that ye could not find utterance so exceding great was your joy & now if God who hath created you on whom you are dependant for your lives & for all that ye have & are doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right in faith believeing that ye shall receive O then how had ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another & if ye Judge the man who puteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not & condemn him how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance which doth not belong to you but to God to whom also your life belongeth & yet ye put up no petition or repenteth not of the thing which thou hast done I say unto you wo be unto that man for his substance shall perish with him & now I say these things unto those which are rich as pertaining to the things of this world & again I say unto the poor ye that have[310](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3935315947694885062" \o "Note) <​have​> not & yet hath sufficient that ye remain from day to day I mean all you that deny the beggar because ye have [p. 125] not I would that ye say in your hearts that I give not becase I have not but if I had I would give & now if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless otherwise ye are condemned & your condemnation is just for ye covet that which he <​ye​> have not received & now for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you that is for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day that ye may walk guiltless before God I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor every man according to that which he hath such as feeding the hungry clothing the naked visiting the sick & administering to their relief both spiritually & temporally according to their wants & see that all these things are done in wisdom & order for it is not requisite that a man should run faster then what he hath strength & again it is expediant that he should be diligent that thereby be might win the prise therefore all things must be done in order & I would that ye should remember that whosoever among you that borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth according as he doth agree or else thou shalt commit sin & perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbour to commit sin also & finally I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin for there are divers ways & means even so many that I cannot number them but this much I can tell you that if ye do not watch yourselves & your thoughts & your words & your deeds & observe to keep[311](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7657660872248707353" \o "Note) the commandments of God & continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord even unto the end of your lives ye must perish & now re[312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18345818993090714202" \o "Note) <​O​> man remember & perish not——

Mosiah, Chapter 3 [Mosiah 5]

Chapter [313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15099007600171682631" \o "Note)—— And now it came to pass that when King Benjamin had thus spoken to his People he sent among them desireing to know of his People if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them & they all cried with one voice saying yea we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us & also we know of their surety & truth because of the spirit of the Lord omnipotant which hath wrought a mighty chance in us or in our hearts that we have no more disposition to do evil but to do good continually & we ourselves also Know through the infinite goodness of God & the manifestations of his spirit have great views of that which is to come & were it expediant we could prophesy of all things & it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king hath spoken unto us & hath brought us to this great knowledge whereby we do rejoice with such exceding <​great​> joy & we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will & to be obediant to his commandments in all things that he shall command us all the remainder of our days that we may not bring upon ourselves a neverending torment as has been spoken by the Angel that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God & now these are the words which King Benjamin desired of them & therefore he said unto them ye have spoken the words <​that​> which I desired & the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant & [p. 126] now because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of christ his Sons & his daughters for behold this day he hath spiritually begotton you for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name therefore ye are born of him & have become his Sons & his daughters & under this head ye are made free & there is no other head whereby ye can be made free there is no other name given whereby salvation cometh therefore I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obediant unto the end of your lives & it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God for he shall know the name by which he is called for he shall be called by the name of Christ & now it shall come to pass that whosoever shall not take upon them the name of Christ must be called by some other name therefore he findeth himself on the left hand of God & I would that ye should remember also that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be bloted out except[314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1395377280919244277" \o "Note) it be through transgression therefore take heed that ye do not transgress that the name be not bloted out of your hearts I say unto you I would that ye should remember to retain the name within written always in your hearts that ye are not found on the left hand of God but that ye hear & know the voice by which ye shall be called & also the name by which he shall call you for how knoweth a man the master which he hath not served & which is a stranger unto him & is far from the thoughts & intents of his heart & again doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor & keep him I say unto you <​you​> nay he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks but will drive him away & cast him out I say unto you that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called therefore I would that ye should be steadfast & immovable always abounding in good works that Christ the Lord God omnipotant may Seal you his that you may be brought to heaven that ye may have everlasting salvation & eternal life through the wisdom & power & Justice & mercy of him who created all things in heaven & in earth who is God above all Amen.

Mosiah, Chapter 4 [Mosiah 6]

Chapter [blank]—— And now king Benjamin thought it was expediant after haveing finished speaking to the People that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covnant with God to keep his commandments & it came to pass that there was not one soul save[315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8956199463885289020" \o "Note) it were little children but what had entered into the covenant & had taken upon them the name of Christ & again it came to pass that when King Benjamin had made an end of all these sayings <​things​> & had concecrated his Son Mosiah to be a ruler & a king over his People & had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom & also had appointed Priests to teach the People that thereby they might hear & know the commandments of God & to stir them up in rememberance of the oath which they had made he dismissed the multitude & they returned every [p. 127] one according to their families to their own houses & Mosiah began to reign in his fathers stead & he began to reign in the thirtyeth year of his age makeing in the whole about four hundred & seventy six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem & King Benjamin lived three[316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6521768482004883801" \o "Note) years & he died & it came to pass that King Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord & did observe his Judgments & his statutes & did keep his[317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15876641471514770207" \o "Note) commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him & King Mosiah did cause his People that they should till the earth & he also himself did till the earth that thereby he might not become burthensome to his People that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things & there was no contention among all his People for the space of three years

Mosiah, Chapter 5 [Mosiah 7–8]

Chapter [blank]—— [318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9356576147008031512" \o "Note)And now it came to pass that after King Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years he was desireous to know concerning the People which went up to dwell in the land of LehiNephi or in the city of LehiNephi for his People had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla therefore they <​wearied​> wearyied him with their teasings & it came to pass that King Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of LehiNephi to enquire concerning their Brethren & it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up haveing with them one Ammon he being a strong & mighty man & a decendant of Zarahemla & he was also their leader & now they knew not the cours they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of LehiNephi therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness even forty days did they wander & when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill which is North of the land of Shilom & their they pitched their tents & Ammon took three of his Brethren & their names were Amaleki Helem & Hem & they went down into the land of Nephi & behold they met the king of the People which was in the land of Nephi & in the land of Shilom & they were surrounded by the kings guard & was taken & was bound & was commited to prison & it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king & their bands were loosed & they stood before the king & was permited or rather commanded that they should answer the questions which he should ask them & he sayeth unto them behold I am Limhi the Son of Noah which was the Son of Zeniff which came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land which was the land of their fathers which was made a king by the voice of the People & now I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city when I myself was with my guards without the gate & now for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved that I might enquire of you or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death ye are permited to speak[319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4116603961837011625" \o "Note) & now when Ammon saw that he was permited to speak he went forth & bowed himself before the king & riseing again he said O king I am verry thankful before God this day [p. 128] that I am yet alive & am permited to speak & I will endeavor to speak with boldness for I am asured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have wore these bands for I am Ammon & am a decendant of Zarahemla & have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to enquire concerning our Brethren wh◊ch Zeniff brought up out of that land & now it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon he was exceding glad & said now I know of a surety that my Brethren which was in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive & now I will rejoice & on the morrow I will cause that my People shall rejoice also for behold we are in bondage to the Lamanites & are taxed with a tax which is grievious to be bourn & now behold our Brethren will deliver us out of our bondage or out of the hands of the Lamanites & we will be their slaves for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites then to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites [320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5339053790617509474" \o "Note)& now King Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his Brethren but caused that they should go to the hill which was North of the Shilom & bring their Brethren into the city that thereby they might eat & dring & rest themselves from the labours of their journey for they had suffered many things they had suffered hungar thirst & fateague [321](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17343169846302064251" \o "Note)& now it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his People that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them & it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise saying O <​ye​> my People lift up your heads & be comforted for behold the time is at hand or is not far distant when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies notwithstanding our many struggl <​struglings​> which have been in vain yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made therefore lift up your heads & rejoice & put your trust in God in that God who was the God of Abraham & Isaac & Jacob & also that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt & caused that they should walk through the red Sea on dry ground & fed them with Manna that they might not perish in the wilderness & many more things did he do for them & again that same God hath brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & hath kept & preserved his People even untill now & behold it is because of our iniquities & abominations that has brought us into bondage & ye all are witnesses this day that Zenith who was made king over this People he being over zealous to inherit the land of his fathers therefore being deceived by the cunning & craftiness of King Laman who having entered into a treaty with King Zeniff & haveing yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land or even the city of LehiNephi & the city of Shilom & the land round about & all this he done for the sole purpose of bringing this People into subjection or into bondage & behold we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites to the amount of one half of our corn & our barly & even all our grain of every kind & one half of the increase of our flocks & our herds & even one half of all we have or [p. 129] possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us or our lives & now is not this grievious to be bourn is not this our afflictions great now behold how great reason have we to Mourn yea I say unto you great are the reasons which we have to mourn for behold how mang of our Brethren have been slain & their blood hath been spilt in vain & all all because of iniquity for if this People had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them but behold they would not hearken unto his words but there arose contentions among them even so much that they did shed blood among themselves & a Prophet of the Lord have they slain yea a chosen man of God who told them of their wickedneess & abominations & prophesied of many things which is to come yea even the coming of Christ & because he sayeth unto them that Christ was the God the Father of all things & sayeth that he should take upon him the image of man & it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning or in other words he said that man was created after the image of God & that God should come down among the children of men & take upon him flesh & blood & go forth upon the face of the earth & now because he said this they did put him to death & many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them therefore who wondereth that they are in bondage & that they are smitten with sore afflictions for behold the Lord hath said I will not succor my People in the day of their transgression but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not & their doings shall be as a stumbleing block before them & again he sayeth if my People shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirl wind & the effects thereof is poison & again he sayeth if my People shall sow filthiness they shall reap the[322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3416910525416459894" \o "Note) east wind which bringeth immediate destruction & now behold the promise of the Lord is fulfiled & ye are smitten & afflicted but if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart & put your trust in him & serve him with all diligence of mind & if ye do this he will according to his own word <​will​> & pleasure deliver you out of bondage [323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11196780199671456663" \o "Note)& it came to pass that after King Limhi had made an en of speaking to his People for he spake many things unto them & only a few of them have I written in this Book he told his People all the things concerning their Brethren which were in the land of Zarahemla & he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude & rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their Brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even untill <​the​> time that he himself came up out of the land & he also rehearsed unto them the last words which King Benjamin had taught them & explained them to the People of King Limhi so that they might understand all the words which he spake & it came to pass that after he had done all this that King Limhi dismised the multitude & caused that they should return every one unto his own house [324](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15301029736299228030" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his People from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla should be brought before Ammon that he might read them [p. 130] now as soon as Ammon had read the record the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languagees & Ammon told him that he could not & the king sayeth unto him I being grieved for the afflictions of my People I caused that forty & three of my People should take a journey into the wilderness that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla that we might appeal unto our Brethren to deliver us out of bondage & they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days yet they were diligent & found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land haveing traveled in a land among many waters having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men & of beasts .&C. & was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind having discovered a land which had been Peopled with a People which were a numerous as the hosts of Israel & for a testimony that the things that they had <​h◊ve​> said were <​is​> true they have brought twenty four plates which are filled with engraveings & they are of pure Gold & behold also they have brought breast plates which are large & they are of Brass & of copper & are perfectly sound & again they have brought swords the hilts thereof hath perished & the blades thereof were cankered with rust & there is no one <​in the land​> that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates therefore I said unto the<​e​> canst thou translate & I say unto thee again knowest thou of any one that can translate for I am desireable <​desireous​> that these records should be translated into our language for perhaps they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the People which have been destroid from whence these records came or perhaps they will give us a knowledge of this verry People which hath been destroid & I am desireous to know the cause of their destruction [325](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14958277778015112752" \o "Note)now Ammon <​saith​> unto him I can assuredly tell thee O king of a man that can translate the records for <​he​> hath wherewith that he can look & translate all records that are of antient date & it is a gift from God & the things are called interpreters & no man can look in them except he be commanded lest he should look for that he had not ought & he should perish & whosoever is commanded to look in them the same is called seer & behold the king of the People which is in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things & which hath this high gift from God [326](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "336319378537112054" \o "Note)& the king saith that a seer is greater then a Prop <​Prophet​> & Ammon saith that a seer is a revelator & a prophet also & a gift which is greater can no man have except he should possess the power of God but a seer can know of things which has past & also of things which is to come & by them shall all things be revealed or rather shall secret things be made manifest & hiden things shall come to light & things which which as <​is​> not known shall be made known by them & also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known thus God hath provided a means that man through faith might work mighty miracles therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings [327](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8595488704384868266" \o "Note)& now when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced excedingly & gave thanks to God saying doubtless a great mystery is conta [p. 131]ined within these plates & th & these interpreters was doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men O how marvelous are the works of Lord & how long doth he suffer with his People yea & how blind & impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men for they will not seek wisdom neither do they desire that she should rule over them yea they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd & scattereth & are driven & are devoured by the beasts of the forest

Mosiah, Chapter 6 [Mosiah 9–10]

Chapter [blank]—— The record of Zeniff

An account of his People from the time they left the land of Zarahemla untill the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites——

I Zeniff having[328](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17401633105478234069" \o "Note) taught in all the language of the Nephites & having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi or of the land of our fathers first inheritance & I having been sent as a spie among the Lamanites that I might spie out their forces that our army might come upon them & destroy them but when I saw that which was good among them I was desireous that they should not be destroid therefore I contended with my Brethren in the wilderness for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them but he being an austere & a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should be slain but I was rescued by the sheding of much blood for father faaght against father & brother against brother untill the greatest number of our army was slain destroid in the wilderness & we returned those of us that were spared to the land of Zarahemla to that tale to their wives & their children & yet I being overzealous to inherit the land of our fathers first collected as many as were desireous to go up to <​possess​> the land & started again on our journy into the wilderness to go up to the land but we were smitten with famine & sore affliction for we were slow to remember the Lord our God nevertheless after many days wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place called <​where​> our brethren were slain which was near to the land of our fathers [329](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16353274490669305766" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city in unto the king that I might know of the disposition of the king & that I might know if I might go in with my People & possess the land in peace & I went in unto the king & he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of LehiNephi & the land of Shilom & he also commanded that his People should depart out of that land & I & my People went into the land that we might possess it & we began to build buildings & to repair the walls of the City yea even the walls of the City of LihiNephi & the City of Shilom & we began to till the ground yea even with all manner of seeds with seeds of corn & of wheat & of barly & with neas & with Sheum & with seeds of all manner of fruits & we did begin to multiply & prosper in the land now it was the cunning & the craftiness of King Laman to bring my People into bondage that he yiended up the land that we might possess it [330](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11000854314704311447" \o "Note)therefore it came to [p. 132] pass that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy lest by any means my People should wax strong in the land & that they could not overpower us <​them​> & bring them into bondage now they were & an lazy & an Idoletrous People therefore they were desireous to bring us into bondage that they might glut themselves with the labours of our hands yea that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields [331](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15395052636714627112" \o "Note)therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his People that they should contend with my People therefore there began to be wars & contentions in the land for in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi away on the South of the land of Shilom when my People were watering & feading their flocks & tilling their lands a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them & began to slay them & to take of[332](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12640593681256889698" \o "Note) their flocks & the corn of their fields [333](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2115345892131683574" \o "Note)yea & it came to pass that they fled all that were not overtaken even into the City of Nephi & did call upon me for protection [334](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4616675514868282033" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I did arm them with bows & with arrows with swords & with simetres & with clubs & with slings & with all manner of weopons of war <​which​> we could invent & I & my People did go forth against the Lamanites to battle yea in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites for I & my People did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies for we were awakened to a rememberance of the deliverance of our fathers & God did hear our cries & did answer our prayers & we did go forth in his might yea we did go forth against the Lamanites & in one day & a night we did slay three thousand & forty three we did slay them even untill we had driven them out of our land & I myself with mine own hands did help bury their dead & behold to our great sorrow & lamentation two hundred & seventy nine of our brethren were slain [335](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11327923487134119333" \o "Note)& it came to pass that we again began to establish the Kingdom & we again began to possess the land in peace & I caused that there should be weopons of war made of every kind that thereby I might have weopons for my People against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my People & I sat guards round about the land that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares & destroy us & thus I did guard my People & my flocks & keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies [336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4039212635244929710" \o "Note)& it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years yea for the space of twenty & two years & I did cause that the men should till the ground & raise all manner of grain & all manner of fruit of every kind & I did cause that the women should spin & toil & work & work[337](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1058789225474111665" \o "Note) all manner of fine linnen yea & cloth of every kind that we might cloath our nakedness & thus we did prosper in the land thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty & two years [338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16856212324119451748" \o "Note)& it came to pass that King Laman died & his Son began to reign in his stead & he began to stir his People up in rebellion against my People [339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6766646706215453097" \o "Note)therefore they began to prepare for war [p. 133] & to come up to battle against my People but I having sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon that I might discover their preperations that I might guard against them that they might not come upon my People & destroy them [340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11883299210974748424" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they came up upon the North of the land of Shilom with their numerous hosts men armed with bows & with arrows & with swords & with simitres & with stones & with slings & they had their heads sheaved[341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17879641740689339102" \o "Note) that they were naked & they were girted about with a lethern girdle about their loins [342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14386301923186195544" \o "Note)& it came to pass that I caused that the women & Children of my People should be hid in the wilderness & I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms & also all my young men that were able to bear arms should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites & I did place them in their ranks every man according to his age [343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12190957749354241630" \o "Note)& it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites & I even I in my old age did go up to battle against the Lamanites & it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle [344](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1013406484583786548" \o "Note)now the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord nor the strength of the Lord therefore they depended upon their <​own​> strength yet they[345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13602033107136931126" \o "Note) were a strong People as to the strength of men they were a wild & ferocious & a bloodthirsty People believing in the tradition of their fathers which is this believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers & that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren & they were also wronged while crossing the Sea & again that they were wronged <​while​> in the land of the<​ir​> first inheritance after they had crossed the Sea[346](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10760436218931026142" \o "Note) & all this because that Nephi[347](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1602131899802250088" \o "Note) was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord therefore he was favored of the Lord for the Lord heard his prayers & answered them & he took the lead of their journy in the wilderness & his brethren was wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord they was also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord & again they were wrath with him when they had ariven to the promised land because they said that he had taken the ruleing of the People out of their hands & they sought to kill him & again they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him & took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass for they said that he robed them & thus they have taught their Children that they should hate them & that they should murder them & that they should rob & plunder them & do all they could to destroy them [348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2510811609368568594" \o "Note)therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi for this verry cause hath king Laman by his cunning <​&​> lying craftinenss & his fair promises hath deceived me that I have brought this my People up into this land that they may destroy them yea & we have suffered this many years in the land [349](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1669863332084017345" \o "Note)& now I Zeniff after having told all these things unto my People concerning the Lamanites I did stimulate them to go to battle with their mights might putting their trust in the Lord therefore we did contend with them face to face & it came to pass [p. 134] that we did drive them again out of our land & we slew them with a great slaughter even so many that we did not number them [350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8642937932408542322" \o "Note)& it came to pass that we returned again to our own land & my People began to tend their flocks & to till their ground [351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7331624757180924791" \o "Note)& now I being old did confer the kingdom upon one of my Sons therefore I say no more & m◊y may the Lord bless my People Amen——

Mosiah, Chapter 7 [Mosiah 11–13:24]

Chapter [blank]——

And now it came to pass that Zeniff confered the kingdom upon Noah one of his Sons therefore Noah began to reign in his stead & he did not walk in the ways of his father for behold he did not keep the commandments of God but he did walk after the desires of his own heart & he had many wives & concubines & he did cause his People to commit sin & do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord yea & they did commit whoredoms & all manner of wickedness & he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed & a fifth part of their gold & of their silver & a fifth part of their Ziff & of their copper & of their brass & their iron & a fifth part of their fatlings & also a fifth part of all their grain & all this did he take to support himself & his wives & his concubines & also his priests & their wives & their concubines thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom for he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father & concecrated new ones in their stead such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea & thus were they supported in their laziness & in their Idoletry & in their whoredoms by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his People thus did the People labour excedingly to support iniquity yea & they also became idoletrous because they were deceived by the vain & flattering words of the king & priests for they did speak flattering things unto them [352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15991593036029957667" \o "Note)& it came to pass that King Noah built many elegant & spacious buildings & he ornamented them with fine work of wood & of all manner of prcious things of gold & of silver & of iron & of brass & of Ziff & of copper & he also built him a spacious palace & a throne in the midst midst thereof all of which was of fine wood & was ornamented with gold & silver & with precious things & he also caused that his workman should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple of fine wood & of copper & of brass & the seats <​which​> was sat apart for the high priests which was above all the other seats he did ornament with fine gold & he caused a breastwork to be built before them that they might rest their bodies & their arms upon while they should speak lying & vain words to his People [353](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7189180248400414301" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple yea a verry high tower even[354](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8035432825163156969" \o "Note) so high that he could stand upon the top thereof & overlook the land of Shilom & also the land of Shemlon which was possessed by the Lamanites & he could even look over all the land round about [355](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18187877050120505783" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shemlon <​Shilom​> & he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land & thus he did do with the riches which he obtained [p. 135] by the taxation of his People [356](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "978912796690307927" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches & he spent his time in riotous living with his wives & his concubines & so did also his priests spend their time with harlots [357](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12473608525541365125" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he planted a vineyards round about in the land & he built wine presses & made wine in abundance & therefore he became a wine biber & also his People [358](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10082579015982197321" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his People upon small numbers & to slay them in their fields & wile they were tending their flocks & King Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off but he did not send a sufficient number & the Lamanites come upon them & killed them & drove many of their flocks out of the land thus the Lamanites began to destroy them & to exercise their hatred upon them [359](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1440539982747651548" \o "Note)& it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them & they were driven back or they drive them back for a time therefore they returned rejoicing in their spoil & now because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts they did boast in their own strength saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites & thus they did boast & did delight in blood & the sheding of the blood of their brethren & this because of the wickedness of their king & priests [360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1092145884767784213" \o "Note)& it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi & he went forth among them & began to prophesy saying behold thus saith the Lord & thus hath he commanded me saying go forth & say unto this People thus saith the Lord wo be unto this People for I have seen their abominations & their wickedness & their whoredoms & except they repent I will visit them in mine anger & except they repent & turn to the Lord their God behold I will deliver them in the hands of their enemies yea & they shall be brought into bondage & they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies & it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God & am a jealous God visiting the iniquities of my People & it shall come to pass that except this People repent & turn[361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15993979724376189566" \o "Note) the Lord their God they shall be brought into bondage & none shall deliver them except it be the Lord the Almighty God yea & it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries yea & I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies & except they repent in sackcloth & ashes & cry mightily to the Lord their God I will not hear their prayers neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions & thus saith the Lord & thus hath he commanded me [362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11915209024254832295" \o "Note)mow it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoke these words unto them they were wroth with him & sought to take away his life but the Lord delivered him out of their hands now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spake unto the People he was also wroth & saith who is Abinadi that I & my People should be Judged of him or who is the Lord that shall bring upon my[363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15724113621414934890" \o "Note) People such great affliction I command you to bring Abinadi hither that I may slay him for he hath said these things that he might stir up my People to anger one with another & to raise contentions among my People therefore I will slay he◊ him [p. 136] [364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9417767396520796693" \o "Note)now the eyes of the People were blinded therefore they hardoned their hearts against the words of Abinadi & they sought from that time forward to take him & king Noah hardoned his heart against the word of the Lord & he did not repent of his evil doings [365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12548262063741849469" \o "Note)& it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise that they knew him not & began again[366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17485513605466400414" \o "Note) to prophesy among them saying thus hath the Lord commanded me saying Abinadi go & prophesy unto this my People for they have hardoned their hearts against my words they have repented not of their evil doings therefore I will visit them in my anger yea in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities & abominations yea wo be unto this generation [367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15813213814218699173" \o "Note)& the Lord said unto me streach forth thy hand & prophesying saying thus siaith <​saith​> the Lord[368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18381233521634444719" \o "Note) it shall come to pass that this generation because of their iniquities shall be brought into bondage & shall be smitten on the cheek yea & shall be driven by men & shall be slain & the vulters of the air & the dogs yea & the wild beasts shall devour their flesh & it shall come to pass that the life of King Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace for he shall know that I am the Lord & it shall come to pass that I will smite this my People with sore afflictions yea with famine & with pestilence & I will cause that they shall howl all the day long yea & I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs & they shall be driven before like a dumb ass [369](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13767020641255274132" \o "Note)& it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them & it shall smite them & they shall also be smitten with the east wind & insects shall pester their land also & devour their grain & they shall be smitten with a great pestilence & all this will I do because of their iniquities & abominations & it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth yet they shall leave a record behind them & I will preserve them for other Nations which shall possess the land yea even this will[370](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13172590798364419972" \o "Note) I do that I may discover the abominations of this People to other Nations & many things did Abinadi prophesy against this People [371](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11927780005873988509" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they were angery with him & they took him & carried him bound before the King & saith unto the king behold we have brought a man before thee which has prophesied evil concerning thy People & saith[372](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12688293352663844388" \o "Note) that God will destroy them & he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life & & saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire & again he saith that thou shall be as a stalk even as a dry stalk of the field which is ran over by the beasts & troden under foot & again he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle which when it is fully ripe if the wind bloweth it is driven forth upon the face of the land & he pretendeth the Lord hath sent him <​spoken​> it & he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent & this because of thine iniquities [373](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14701796010123090592" \o "Note)& now O king what great evil hast thou done or what great sins has thy People commited that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man & now O king behold we are guiltless & thou O king hast not sined therefore this ma◊ hast lied concerning you & he hath prophesied in vain & behold we are strong we shall not come into bondage or be taken captive by our enemies yea & thou hast prospered in the land [p. 137] & thou shalt also prosper behold here is the man we deliver him into thy hands thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good [374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5477620122134881363" \o "Note)& it came to pass that King Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison & he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him [375](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12134317544525636545" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they sayeth unto the King bring him hither that we may question him & the king commanded that he should be brought before them & they began to question him that they might cross him that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him but he answered them boldly & withstood all their questions yea to their astonishment for he did withstand them in all their questions & did confound them in all their words [376](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12811839930034962888" \o "Note)& it came to pass that one of them sayeth unto him what meaneth the words which are written & which have been taught by our fathers saying how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings that publisheth peace that bringeth good tidings of good that publisheth salvation that sayeth unto Zion thy God reigneth thy watchmen shall lift up the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion break forth into Joy sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Lord hath comforted his People he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the Nations & all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God [377](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18265642816058301496" \o "Note)& now Abinadi saith unto them are you Priests & pretend to teach this People & to understand the spirit of prophesying & yet desireth to know of me what these things mean I say unto you wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord for if ye understand these things ye have not taught them therefore ye have perverted the ways of the Lord ye have not applied your hearts to understanding therefore ye have not been wise therefore what teachest th◊◊ this People & they said we teach the law of Moses [378](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5461522757367635268" \o "Note)& again he sayeth unto them if ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it why do ye set your hearts upon riches why do ye commit whoredoms & spend your strength with harlots yea & cause this People to commit sin that the Lord hath sent me to prophesy against this People yea even a great evil against this People knowest thou not that I speak the truth yea thou knowest that I speak the truth & you had ought to tremble before God & it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for thine iniquities for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses & what knowest thou concerning the law of Moses doth[379](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5111100059507103636" \o "Note) salvation come by the law of Moses what sayest thou & they answered & said that salvation did come by the law of Moses [380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10193594331003014338" \o "Note)& Abinadi saith unto them I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved yea if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai saying I am the Lord thy God which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt out of the house of bondage thou shalt have no other God before me thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image or any likeness of any thing in the heaven above or things which is in the earth beneath [381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8542891131065980954" \o "Note)now Abinadi saith unto them have ye done all this I say unto you nay [p. 138] ye have not & have ye taught this People that they should do all these things I say unto you nay ye have not[382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15826156312095902159" \o "Note) [383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3142902431278761924" \o "Note)& now when the king had heard these words he said unto his priests away with this fellow & slay him for what have we to do with him for he is mad & they stood forth & attempted to lay their hands on him but he withstood them & said unto them touch me not for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell therefore God will not suffer that I shall be destroid at this time but I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God hath commanded me & because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me & again because I have spoken the word of God ye have Judged me that I am mad[384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7413038385787700937" \o "Note) [385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16678123137910018607" \o "Note)now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the People of King Noah dearst not lay their hands on him for the spirit of the Lord was upon him & his face shone with exceding luster even as Moses[386](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "628355474388492359" \o "Note) did while in the Mount of Sinai while speaking with the Lord & he spake with power & authority from God & he continued his words saying ye see that ye have not power to slay me therefore I finish my message yea & I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities yea & my words fill you with wonder & amazement & with anger but I finish my message & then it mattereth not whither I go if it so be that I am saved but this much I tell you what you do with me[387](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8766398926900119857" \o "Note) after this shall be as a type & a shadow of things which is to come & now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts I perceive that ye have studied & taught iniquity the most part of your lives [388](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16721104577080535468" \o "Note)& now ye remember that I said unto you thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image or any likeness of things which is in heaven above or which is in the earth beneath or which is in the water under the earth & again thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them nor serve them for I the Lord thy God am a Jealous God visiting the iniquities of the Fathers upon the children unto the third & fourth generation of them that hate me & shewing & mercy unto thousands of them that love me & keep my commandments[389](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "955796419718259242" \o "Note) thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain remember the sabbath day to keep it holy six days shalt thou labour & do all thy work but the seventh day the sabbath of the Lord thy God thou shalt not do any work thou nor thy Son nor thy Daughter thy man serven <​servant​> nor thy maidservant nor thy cattle nor thy stranger that is within thy gates for in Six days the Lord made heaven & earth & the Sea & all that in them is wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day & hallowed it[390](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8697141832090886213" \o "Note) honour thy father & thy Mother that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee thou shalt not kill thou shalt not commit adultery thou shalt not steal thou shalt not bare fals witness against thy neighbor thou shalt not covet thy neighbors house thou shalt not covet thy neighbors wife nor his man servant nor his maidservant [p. 139] nor his Ox nor his ass nor any thing that is thy neighbors

Mosiah, Chapter 8 [Mosiah 13:25–16:15]

Chapter [blank][391](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "951815099958580675" \o "Note)— And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these things sayings that he said unto them have ye taught this People that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments I say unto you nay for if ye had the Lord would not have caused me to come forth & to prophesy evil concerning this People & now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses I say unto you that it is expediant that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet but I say unto you that the time shall come when it shall no more be expediant to keep the law of Moses & moreover I say unto you that salvation doth not come by the law of alone & were it not for the atonement which God himself shall make for the Sins & iniquities of his People that they must unavoidably perish notwithstanding the law of Moses & now I say unto you that it was expediant that there should be a law given to the children of Israel yea even a verry strict law for they were a stiffnecked People quick to do iniquity & slow to remember the Lord their God therefore[392](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5921578884013721672" \o "Note) there was a law given them yea a law of performances & of ordinances a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day to keep them in rememberance of God & their duty towards him but behold I say unto you that all these things were types of things to come & now did they understand the law I say unto you nay they did not all understand the law & this because of the hardness of their hearts for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redeemer <​redemption​> of God for behold did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah & that God should redeem his People yea & even all the prophets which have prophesied even since the world began have they not spoken more or less concerning these things have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men & take upon him the form of man & go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth yea & have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead & that he himself should be oppressed & afflicted yea even doth not Isaiah say who hath believed our report & to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed for he shall grow up before him as a tender plant & as a root out of dry ground he hath no form nor comlinesss & when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him he is despised & rejected of men a man of sorrows & acquainted with grief & we hid as it were our faces from him he was despised & we esteemed him not surely he hath bourn our griefs & carried our sorrows yet we did esteem him stricken smitten of God & afflicted but he was wound<​ed​> for our transgressions he was bruised for our iniquities the chastisement of our peace was upon him & with his stripis we are healed all we like sheep have gone astray we have turned every one to his own way & the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all he was oppressed & he was afflicted yet he opened not his mouth he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter & as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth he was taken from prison & [p. 140] &[393](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8451772742944267980" \o "Note) from Judgment & who shall declare his generation for he was cut off out of the land of the living for the transgressions of my People was he stricken & he made his grave with the wicked & with the rich in his death because he had done no evil neither was any deceit in his mouth yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him he hath put him to grief when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed he shall prolong his days & the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand he shall see of the travel of his Soul & shall be satisfied by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many for he shall bear their iniquities therefore will I divide him a portion with the great & he shall divide the spoil with the strong because he hath poured out his soul unto death & he was numbered with the transgressors & he bear the sins of many & made intercession for the transgressors [394](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9676857618803505177" \o "Note)& now Abinadi saith unto them I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men & shall redeem his People & because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God & having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father being the Father & the Son the Father because he was conceived by the power of God & the Son because of the flesh thus becoming the Father & Son & they are one God yea the verry eternal Father of Heaven & of Earth & thus the flesh becoming subject to the spirit or the Son to the Father being one God suffereth temptation & yieldeth not to the temptation but suffereth himself to be mocked & scorged & cast out & disowned by his People & after all this & after working many mighty miracels among the children of men he shall be lead yea even as Isaiah said as a sheep before the shearer is dumb so he opened not his mouth yea even so he shall be lead crucified & slain the flesh becoming subject even unto death the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father & thus God breaketh the bands of death haing gaind the victory over death giving the Son power to make interses <​intersession​> for the children of men having ascended into heaven having the bowels of mercy being filled with compassion toward the children of men standing betwixt them & Justice having broken the bands of death taken upon himself their iniquities iniquity & their transgressions having redeemed them & sanctified <​satisfied​> the demands of Justice & now I say unto you who shall declare his generation behold I say unto you that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed & now what say ye & who shall be his seed behold I say unto you that whosoever hath heard the words of the Prophets yea all the holy Prophets which have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord I say unto you that all those who hath hearkened unto their words & believed that the Lord would redeem his People & have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins I say unto you that these are his seed or they are heirs of the Kingdom of God for these are they whose sins he hath bourn these are they for whom he hath died to redeem them from their transgressions & now are they not his seed [395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4060513222967255161" \o "Note)yea & are not the Prophets every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy that has not fallen into transgression I mean all the holy [p. 141] prophets ever since the world began I say unto you that they are his seed & these are they which hath published peace that hath brought good tidings of good that hath published salvation that sayeth unto Zion thy God reigneth & O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet & again how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that art[396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11997767417747375652" \o "Note) still publishing peace & again how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace yea from this time henceforth & forever I & behold I say unto you this is not all for O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings that is the founder of peace yea even the Lord who hath redeemed his People yea him who hath granted salvation unto his People for were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his People which was prepared from the foundation of the world I say unto you were it not for this that all mankind must have perished but behold the bands of death shall be broken & the Son reigneth & hath power over the dead therefore he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead & there cometh a resurrection even a first resurrection yea even a resurrection of those that have been & which are & which shall be even untill the resurrection of Christ for so shall he be called & now the resurrection of all the Prophets & all those that have believed in their words or all those that have kept the commandments of God these shall come forth in the first resurrection therefore they are the first resurrection they are raised to dwell with God who hath redeemed them thus they have eternal life through Christ who hath broken the bands of death & there[397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4170425994084747965" \o "Note) are those who have part in the first resurrection & these are they that have died before Christ came in their ignorance not having salvation declared unto them & thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these & they have a part in the first resurrection or hath eternal life being redeemed by the Lord & little Children also hath eternal life [398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12738603333529367624" \o "Note)but behold & fear & tremble before God for ye had ought to tremble for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebeleth against him & dieth in their sins yea even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began that have willfully rebelled against God that have known the commandments of God & would not keep them these are they that have no part in the first resurrection therefore had ye not ought to tremble for salvation cometh to none such for the Lord hath redeemed none such yea neither can the Lord redeem such for he cannot deny himself for he cannot deny Justice when it hath its claim [399](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6912201830538870703" \o "Note)& now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every Nation Kindred Tongue & People yea Lord thy watchmen shall lift up their voice with the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion break forth into Joy sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Lord hath comforted his People he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the Nations & all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God [400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12422971640690734492" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he streached forth his hands & said the time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord when every Nation kindred [p. 142] tongue & people shall see eye to eye & shall confess before God that his Judgments are Just & then shall the wicked be cast out & they shall have cause to howl & weep & wail & gnash their teeth & this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd <​Lord​> therefore the Lord redeemeth them not for they are carnal & devilish & the Devil hath power over them yea even that old Serpant that did beguile our first parents which was the cause of their fall which was the cause of all mankinds becoming carnal sensual devilish knowing evil from good subjecting themselves to the Devil thus all mankind were lost & behold they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his People from their lost & fallen state but remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature & goes on in the ways of sin & rebellion against God he remaineth in his fallen state & the Devil hath all power over him therefore he as is as tho there was no redemption made being an enemy to God & also is the Devil an eneny to God [401](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6767371205134286223" \o "Note)& now if Christ had not come into the world speaking of things to come as tho they had already come there could have been no redemption & if Christ had not risen from the dead or broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory & that death should[402](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7441411849774639337" \o "Note) have no sting there could have been no resurrection but there a resurrection therefore the grave hath no victory & the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ he is the light & the life of the world yea a light that is endless that can never be darkened yea & also a life which is endless that there can be no mor death even this mortal shall put on immortality & this corruption shall put on incoruption & shall be brought to stand before the bar of God to be Judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil if they be good to the resurrection of endless life & happiness & if they be evil to resurrection of endless damnation being delivered up to the Devil who hath suby subjected them which is damnation having[403](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "605468952591581541" \o "Note) gone according to their own carnal wills & desires having never called up the Lord while the arms of mercy was extended towards them for the arms of mercy was extended towards them & they would not they being warned of their iniquities & yet they would not repent depart from them & they were commanded to repent & yet they would not repent & now had ye not ought to tremble & repent of your sins & remember only in & through Christ ye can be saved therefore if ye teach the law of Moses also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord which is the verry eternal Father— Amen——

Mosiah, Chapter 9 [Mosiah 17–21]

—— Chapter [blank]—— And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings that the King commanded that the Priests should take him & cause that he should be put to death but there was one among them whose name was Alma Alma & he believed the words <​words​>[404](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7809571745378549238" \o "Note) which Abinadi had spoken for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had spoken testified against them therefore he began to plead with the King that he would not be angry with Abinadi but suffer that he might depart in peace but the King was more wroth & caused that Alma should be cast out from among them & sent[405](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1027705937841904678" \o "Note) his servants after him that they might slay him but he fled [p. 143] from before them & hid himself that they found him not & he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken [406](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5066557255573567986" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the King caused that his guards should surround Abinadi & take him & they bound him & cast him into prison & after three days having counciled with his Priests he caused that he should again be brought before him & he said unto him Abinadi we have found an acquisition[407](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8291612083386841210" \o "Note) against thee & thou art worthy of death for thou hast said that God himself should come down among the Children of men & now for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt <​recall​> all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me & my People <​now​> Abinadi saith unto him I say unto you I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this People for they are true & that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen unto your hands yea &[408](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8429084751168091667" \o "Note) will suffer even untill death & I will not recall mords & they shall stand as a testimony against you & if ye slay me ye will shed inocent blood & this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day [409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5764584966825529429" \o "Note)& now king Noah was about to release him for he feared his word for he feared that the Judgments of God would come upon him but the Priests lifted up their voices against him & began to accuse him saying he hath reviled the king therefore the king was stired up in anger against him & he delivered him up that he might be slain [410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2021793440155990046" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they took him & bound him[411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "977692682651914551" \o "Note) & scourged his skin with faggots yea even unto death & now when the flames began to scorch him he cried unto them saying behold even as ye have done unto me so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer[412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5955017861724752684" \o "Note) even the pains of death by fire & this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God & it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of deseases because of your iniquities yea & ye shall be smitten on every hand & shall be driven & scattered to & fro even as a wild flock is driven by wild & ferocious beasts & in that day ye shall be hunted & ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies & then ye shall suffer as I suffer the pains of death by fire thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his People O God receive my soul & now when Abinadi had said these words he fell having suffered death by fire yea having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God having sealed the truth of his words by death [413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12312383270630361301" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that Alma who had fled from the servants of King Noah repented of his Sins & iniquities & went about privately among the People & began to teach the words of Abinadi yea concerning that which was to come & also concerning the resurrection of the dead & the redemption of the People which was to be brought to pass through the power & sufferings & death of Christ & his resurrection & assension into heaven & as many as would hear his word he did teach & he taught them privately that it might not come to the knowledge of the King & many did believe his words [414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17026700635415055304" \o "Note)& it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon having[415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5842269278331818070" \o "Note) received its name from [p. 144] the King being in the borders of the land having been infested by times or at seasons by wild beasts now there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water & Alma resorted thither there being near the water a thicket of small trees where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the King [416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9211492644108118935" \o "Note)& it came to pass that as many as believed him went forth thither to hear his words & it came to pass after many day there were a goodly number gathered together to the place of Mormon to hear the words of Alma yea all were gathered together that believed on on his word to hear him & he did teach them & did preach unto them repentance & redemption & faith on the Lord [417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3410063660527987376" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he said unto them behold here is the water of Mormon for thus were they called & now as ye are desireous to come into the fold of God & to be called his People & are willing to bear one anothers burdens that they may be light yea & are willing to mourn with those that mourn yea & comfort those that stand in need of comfort & to stand as witnesses of God at all times & in all things & in all places that ye may be in even untill death that ye may be redeemed of God & be numbered with those of the first resurrection that ye may have eternal life now I say unto you if this be the desire of your hearts what have you against being Baptised in the name of the Lord as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him that ye will serve him & keep his commandments that he may pour out his spirit more abundantly upon you & now when the People had heard these words they claped their hands for Joy & exclaimed this is the desires of our hearts [418](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4380260005530622182" \o "Note) & now it came to pass that Alma took Helaman he being one of the first & went & stood forth in the water & cried saying O Lord pour out thy spirit upon thy servant that he may do this work with holiness of heart & when he had said these words the spirit of the Lord was upon him & he said Helaman I baptise the<​e​> having from the Almighty God as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him untill you are dead as to the Mortal body & may the spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you & may he grant unto you eternal life throug the redemption of Christ which he hath prepared from the foundation of the world & after Alma had said these words both Alma & Helaman was buried in the water & they arose & came forth out of the water rejoiceing being filled with the spirit & again Alma took another & went forth a second time into the water & baptised him according to the first only he did not bury himself again in the water & after this manner he did baptise every one that went forth to the place of Mormon & they were in number about two hundred & four souls & they were baptised in the waters of Mormon & were filled with the grace of God & they were filled called the church of God or the church of Christ from that time forward & it came to pass that who soever was baptised by the power & authority of God they was add <​aded​> to his church[419](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1749170188411371230" \o "Note) [420](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4128361801786160220" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Alma having authority from God ordained Priests <​even one priest​> to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them & to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the Kingdom of God & he [421](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2657938989567798223" \o "Note)com [p. 145]manded[422](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1081716113794905180" \o "Note) them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught & which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy Prophets yea even he commanded them that they should Preach nothing save it were repentance & faith on the Lord who hath redeemed his People & he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another but that they should look forward with one eye having one faith & one baptism having their hearts knit together in unity & in love one towards another & thus he commandeth them to preach & thus they became the children of God & he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day & keep it holy & also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God & he also commanded them that the Priests which he had ordained should labour with their own hands for their support & there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the People & to worship the Lord their God & also as often as it was in their power to assemble themselves together & the Priests was not to depend upon the People for their support but for their labour they were to receive the grace of God that they might wax strong in the spirit having the knowledge of God that they might teach with power & authority from God & again Alma commanded that the People of the Church should impart of their substance every one according to that which he hath if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly & he that hath but little but little should be required & to him that hath not should be given & thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will & good desires towards God & this he said unto them having been commanded of God & they did walk uprightly before God imparting to one another both temporally & spiritually according to their needs & their wants [423](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8726294586259185434" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon yea by the waters of Mormon in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon yea the place of Mormon the waters of Mormon the forest of Mormon how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their redeemer yea & how blessed are they for they shall sing to his pa praise forever & these things were done in the borders of the land that they might not come to the knowledge of the king but behold it came to pass that the king discovered a movement among the People sent his servants to watch them therefore on the day that they were assembleing themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discoveres <​discovered​> unto the King & now the king saith that Alma was a stiring up the People to a[424](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17465075438513911752" \o "Note) rebellion against him therefore he sent his army to destroy them And it came to pass that Alma & the People of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the Kings army therefore they took their tents & their families & departed into the wilderness <​& they were in number about four hundred & fifty souls​> [425](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12968848186300780147" \o "Note)And it came to pass that the Kings army of the King returned having searched in vain for the People of the Lord And now behold the forces of the King were small having been reduced & there began & there began to be a division among the remainder of the People & the lesser part began to breath out threatning against [p. 146] the king & there began to be a great contention among them And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon & he being a strong man & an enemy to the king therefore he drew his sword & swore in his wrath that he would slay the king And now it came to pass that he faught with the king & when the king saw that he was about to over him he fled & ran & got upon the tower which was near the temple And Gideon persued after him & was about to get upon the tower to slay the King & the King cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon & behold the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land And now the King cried out in the anguish of his Soul saying Gideon spare me for the Lamanites are upon us & they will destroy them yea they will destroy my People And now the King was not so much concearned about his people as he was about his own life nevertheless[426](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7882959467348847284" \o "Note) Gideon did spare his f[427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16379988193932962603" \o "Note) life And the King commanded the people that they should flee into <​before​> the Lamanites & he himself did go before them & they did flee into the wilderness with their women & their children And it came to pass that the Lamanites did persue them & did overtake them & began to slay them [428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10808884836721555358" \o "Note)now it came to pass that the King commanded them that all the men should leave their wives & their children & flee before the Lamanites now there were many that would not leave them but had rather stay & perish with them & the rest left their wives & their children & fled & it came to pass that those that tarried with their wives & their children caused that their fair daughters should stand[429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13210147967818566900" \o "Note) forth & plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them & it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them for they were charmed with the beauty of their women therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives & took them captives & carried them back to the land of Nephi & granted unto them that they might possess the land under the condition<​s​> that they would deliver up the[430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14974792685842027384" \o "Note) King Noah into the hands of the Lamanites & deliver up their property even one half of all they possessed one half of their gold & their silver & all their precious things & thus they should pay tribuate to the King of the Lamanites from year to year & now there was one of the Sons of the King among those that was taken captive whose name was Limhi & now Limhi[431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1024508435908239445" \o "Note) was desireous that his father should not be destroid nevertheless Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father he himself being a just man [432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9878125267343884740" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly to search for the king & those that was with him & it came to pass that they met the People in the wilderness all save the king & his Priests now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi & if their wives & their children were slain & also those that had tarried with them that they would seek revenge & also perish with them & the King commanded them that they should not return & they were angry with the King & caused that he should suffer even unto death by fire & they were about to take the priests also to put them to death & they fled before them[433](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16642908169573596914" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi & they met the men [p. 147] of Gideon & the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives & their children & that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed & the People told the men of Gideon that they had slain the King & his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness & it came to pass that after they had ended the cerimony that they returned to the land of Nephi rejoicing because their wives & their children were not destroid <​slain​> & they told Gideon what they had done to the king & it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them that his People should not slay them & also Limhi being the Son of the king having the kingdom confered upon him by the People made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him even one half of all they possessed & it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom & to establish peace among his people & the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land that he might keep the People of Limhi in the land that they might not depart into the wilderness & he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites & now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together for to sing & to dance & to make themselves merry & it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing & to dance & now the priests of king Noah Noah being ashamed to return to the City of Nephi yea & also fearing that the people would slay them therefore they durst not return to their wives & their children & having tarried in the wilderness & having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites they laid & watched them & when there ware but few of them gathered together to dance they came forth out of their secret places & took them & carried them into the wilderness yea twenty & four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness & it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing they were angry with the People of Limhi for they thought it was the people of Limhi therefore they sent their armies forth yea even the king himself went before his People & they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the People of Limhi & now Limhi had discovered them from the tower even all their preperations for war did he discover therefore he gathered his people together & laid wait for them in the fields & in the forests & it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places & began to slay them & it came to pass that the battle became exceding sore for they faught like lions for their prey & it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites but they faught for their lives & for their wives & for their children [p. 148] therefore they exerted themselves & like dragons did they fight & it came to pass that they found the King of the Lamanites among the number of their dead yet he was not dead having been wounded & left upon the ground so speedy was the flight of his People & they took him & bound up his wounds & brought him before Limhi & said behold here is the king of the Lamanites he having received a wound hath fallen among their dead & they have left him & behold we have brought him before you & now let us slay him but Limhi saith unto them ye shall not slay him but bring him hither that I may see him & they brought him & Limhi saith unto him what cause have ye to come up to war against my people behold my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you therefore why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people & now the king said I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people therefore in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against my <​thy​> people now Limhi had no heard nothing concerning this matter therefore he saith I will search among my people & whosoever hath done this thing shall perish therefore he caused a search to be made among his people now when Gideon had heard these things he being the kings Captain he went forth & said unto the king I pray thee forbear & do not search this people & lay not this thing to their charge for do ye not remember the priests of thy father which this people sought to destroy & are they not in the wilderness & is it not they which have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites & now behold & tell the king of these things that he may tell his people that they may be pursuaded <​passified​> towards us for behold they are allready prepareing to come against us & behold also there are but few of us & behold they come with their numerous hosts & except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish for are not the words of Abinadi fulfiled which he prophesied against us & all this because we would not hearken unto the word of the Lord & turn from our iniquities & now let us pacify the king & we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him for it is better that we should be in bondage then that we should loose our lives therefore let us put a stop to so much <​the​> shedding of <​so much​> blood & now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father & the priests that had fled into the wilderness & attriib attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them & it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people & he said unto them let us go forth to meet my people without arms & I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy thy people & it came to pass that they followed the king & went forth without arm<​s​> to meet the Lamanites & it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites & the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them & did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi & when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi that they were without arms that[434](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4393031883110243433" \o "Note) they [p. 149] had compassion on them & were pacified towards them & returned with their king in peace to their own land & it came to pass that Limhi & his people returned to the city of Nephi & began to dwell in the land again in peace & it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stired up in anger against the Nephites & they began to come into the borders of the land round about now they derst not slay them because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi but they would smite them on their cheeks & exercise authority over them & began to put heavy burdens upon them <​their​> backs & drive them as they would a dumb ass yea all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfiled & now the afflictions of the Nephites was great & there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side & it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions & they began to be desireous to go against them to battle & they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires & they gathered themselves together again & put on their armour & went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land & it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them & drive them back & slay many of them & now there was a great mourning & lamentation among the people of Limhi the widow a mourning for her husband the Son & the daughter amourning for their father & the brothers for their brethren now there were a great many widows in the land & they did cry mightily from day to day for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them & it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites & they went again to battle but they were driven back again suffering much loss yea they went again even the third time & suffered in the like manner & those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi & they did humble themselves even to thes <​the​> dust subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage submitting themselves to be smitten & to be driven to & fro & burdened according to the desires of their enemies & they did humble themselves even in the debths of humility & they did cry mightily to God yea even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions & now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries & began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage & it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land & began to raise grain more abundantly & flocks & herds that they did not suffer with hunger now there was a great number of women more then there was of men therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows & their children that they [p. 150] might not perish with hunger & this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible & secure their grain & their flocks & the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the City unless he took his guards with him fearing that <​he might​> by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites & he caused that his people should watch the land round about that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness which had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites & that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them for they were desireous to take them that they might punish them for they had come into the land of Nephi by night & carried off of[435](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17509411275047203387" \o "Note) their grain & many of their precious things therefore they laid wait for them & it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites & the people of Limhi even untill the time that Ammon & his Brethren came into the land & the king haveing been without the gates of the City with his guard he discovered Ammon & his Brethren & supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken & bound & cast into prison & had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death but when he found that they were not but that they were his brethren & had come from the land of Zarahemla he was filled with exceding great joy now king Limhi had sent previous to the coming of Ammon a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla but they could not find it & they were lost in the wilderness nevertheless they did find a land which had been peopled yea a land which was covered with dry bones yea a land which had been peopled & which had been destroid & they having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla returned to the land of Nephi having arived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon & they brought a record with them even a record of the people bones they had found & they were engraven on plates of ore & now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Benjamin[436](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "200623717905569028" \o "Note) had a gift from God whereby he could interpret such engravings yea & Ammon also did rejoice yet Ammon & his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of ◊◊◊[437](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14405335500598834317" \o "Note) brethren had been slain & also that king Noah & his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins & iniquities against God & they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi & also for the departure of Alma & the people that went with him who had formed a church of God through the strength & power of God & faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi yea they did mourn for their departure for they knew not whither they had fled now they would have gladly joined with them for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him & keep his commandments & now since the coming of Ammon king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God & also many of his People to serve him [p. 151] & keep his commandments & it came to pass that king Limhi & many of his people was desireous to be baptised but there was none in the land that had authority from God & Ammon declined doing this thing considering himself an unworthy servant therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church waiting upon the spirit of the Lord now they were desireous to become even as Alma & his brethren which had fled into the wilderness they were desireous to be baptised as a witness & a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts nevertheless they did prolong the time & an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter & now all the study of Ammon & his people & king Limhi & his People was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites & from bondage

Mosiah, Chapter 10 [Mosiah 22]

Chapter [blank][438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "70577150653363761" \o "Note)

And now it came to pass that Ammon & king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage & even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together & this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter & it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage excpt it were to take their women & children & their flocks & their herds & their tents & depart into the wilderness for the Lamanites being so numerous that it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword[439](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6748134971460808461" \o "Note) now it came to pass that Gideon went forth & stood before the king & said unto him now O king thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our <​our​> our brethren the Lamanites & now O king if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant or if thou hast hitherto listened to my word[440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16540263316950207173" \o "Note) in any degree & they have been of service to thee even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time & I will be thy servant & deliver this people out of bondage & the king granted unto him that he m◊g[441](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11431935909577412679" \o "Note) <​might​> speak & Gideon saith unto him behold the back pass through the back wall on the back side of the city the Lamanites or the guards of the Lamanites by night are drunken therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks & herds that they may drive them into the wilderness by night & I will go according to thy command & pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites & they will be drunken & we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their[442](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5361363126101056859" \o "Note) camp when they are drunken & asleep & <​thus​> we will depart with our women & our children our flocks & our herds into the wilderness & we will travel around the land of Shilom & it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon & it ◊◊me to pass that King Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together & he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites & he also sent more wine as a presant unto them & they did drink freely of the wime which king Limhi did send unto them &[443](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8667590352849255660" \o "Note) it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with [p. 152] their flocks & their herds & they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness & bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla being led by Ammon & his brethren & they had taken all their gold & silver & their precious things which they could carry & also their provisions with them unto into the wilderness & they persued their journey & after being many days in the wilderness they arived in the land of Zarahemla & joined his people & became his subjects & it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy & he also received their records & also the records which had been found by the People of Limhi & now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night <​night​> that they sent an army into the wilderness to persue them & after they had persued them two days they could no longer follow their tracks therefore they were lost in the wilderness

Mosiah, Chapter 11 [Mosiah 23–27]

Chapter [blank] An account of Alma & the people of the Lord which was driven into the wilderness by the people of king Noah—— Now Alma having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them & had made it known to his people therefore they gathered together their flocks & too took of their grain & departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah & the Lord did strengthen them that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them & it came to pass that they fled eight days journey into the wilderness & they came to a land yea even a verry[444](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13281388846956856338" \o "Note) beautiful & pleasant land a land of pure water & it came to pass that they pitched their tents & began to till the ground & began to build buildings .&C. yea they were industrious & did labour excedingly & it came to pass that the people were desireous that Alma should be their king for he was beloved by his people but he saith unto them behold it is not expediant that we should have a king for thus saith the Lord ye shall not esteem one flesh above another or one man shall not think himself above another therefore I say unto you it is not expediant that ye should have a king nevertheless if it were possible that ye could always have a just man to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king but remember the iniquity of king Noah & his priests & I myself was caught in a snare & did many things which was abominable in the sight of God the Lord which caused me sore repentance nevertheless after much tribulation the Lord did hear my cries & did answer my prayres & hath made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth nevertheless in this I do not glory for I am unworthy to glory of myself & now I say unto you as you have been opposed oppressed by king Noah & have been in bondage to him & his priests & have been brought into iniquity by them therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity & now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds yea out of the hands of king Noah & his people & also from the bonds of iniquity even so I desire that ye [p. 153] should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free & that ye trust no man to be a king over you & also trusting no one to be your teachers nor your ministers except he be a man of God walking in his ways & keeping his commandments thus did Alma teach his people that every man should love his neighbor as himself that there should be no contention among them & now Alma was their high Priest he being the founder of their church & it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God therefore he consecrated all their priests & all their teachers & none were consecrated except it were just men therefore they did watch over their people & did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness & it came to pass that they began to prosper excedingly in the land & they called the land Helaman & it came to pass that they did multiply & prosper excedingly excedingly in the land of Helaman & they built a city which they called the city of Helaman[445](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3815998680486106152" \o "Note) nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people yea he tryeth their patience & their faith nevertheless whosoever patteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day yea & thus it was with this people for behold I will shew unto you that they were brought into bondage & none could deliver them but the Lord their God yea even the God of Abraham & of Isaac & of Jacob & it came to pass that he did deliver them & he did shew forth his mighty power unto them & great was their rejoiceings for behold it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helaman yea in the city of Helaman while tilling the land round about behold an army of the Lamanites were in the borders of the land now it came to pass that the Brethren of Alma fled from their fields & gathered themselves together into the city of Helaman & they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites but Alma went forth & stood among them & exhorted them that they should not be frightened but that they should remember the Lord their God[446](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6164043655495544124" \o "Note) & he would deliver them therefore they hushed their fears & began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they would spare them & their wives & children & it came to pass that the Lord did soften[447](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "416510479293086364" \o "Note) the hearts of the Lamanites<​.​> & Alma & his brethren went forth & delivered themselves up into their hands & the Lamanites took possession of the Land of Helaman now the armies of the Lamanites which had followed after the people of king Limhi had been lost in the wilderness for many days & behold they had found those priests of king Noah in a place which they called Amulon & they had began to posess the land of Amulon & had began to till the ground now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon & it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites & he also sent forth their wives which was the daughters of the Lamanites to plead with their brethren that they should not destroy their husbands & it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon & his brethren & did not destroy them [p. 154] because of their wives & Amulon & his brethren did join them Lamanites & they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helaman which was posessed by Alma & his brethren & it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma & his brethren that if they would shew them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives & their liberty but it came to pass that after Alma had shewn them the way that lead to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise but they set guards round about the land of Helaman over Alma & his brethren & the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi & a part of them returned to the land of Helaman & also brought with them the wives & the children of the guards which had been left in the land & the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king & a ruler over his people which was in the land of Helaman nevertheless he should have no power to do any thing conterary to the will of the king of the Lamanites & it came to pass that Amulon did gain favour in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites therefore the king of the Lamanites granted unto him & his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people yea even over the people which was in the land of Shemlon & the land of Shilom & in the land of Amulon for the Lamanites had taken posession[448](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8026841453771199382" \o "Note) of all these lands therefore the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands & now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman being called after the name of his father & therefore he was called king Laman & he was king over a numerous people & he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon[449](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11810261362291529845" \o "Note) in every land which was possessed by his people & thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites & they were a people friendly one with another nevertheless they knew not God neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them any thing concerning the Lord their God neither the law of Moses nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi but they taught them that they should keep their record & that they might write one to another & thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches & began to trade one with an other & wax great & began to be a cunning & a wise people as to the wisdon of the world yea a verry cunning people delighting in all manner <​manner​> of wickedness & plunder except it were among their own brethren [450](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8184134783155827188" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma & his brethren & began to persecute him & cause that his children should persecute their children for Amulon knew Alma that he had been one of the kings priests & that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi & was driven out before the king & therefore he was wroth with him for he was subject to king Laman yet he exercised authority over them & put tasks upon them & put tasks masters over them & it came to pass that so great was their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God & it came to pass that Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries &[451](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16535270248755135443" \o "Note) put guards over them that <​to​> watch them that whosoever should be found calling upon God [p. 155] should be put to death & it came to pass that Alma & his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God but did pour out their hearts to him & he did know the thoughts of their hearts & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions saying lift up your heads & be of good comfort for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me & I will covenant with this[452](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "993429782040409848" \o "Note) my people & deliver them out of bondage & I will also ease their burdens which is put upon your shoulders that even you cannot feel them upon your backs[453](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3124561324320421220" \o "Note) even while you are in bondage & this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter & that ye may know of a surety that I the Lord God do visit <​my​> people in their afflictions & now it came to pass that the burdens which was laid upon Alma & his brethren were made light yea the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease & they did submit cheerfully & with patience to all the will of the Lord & it came to pass that so great was their faith & their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again saying be of good comfort for on the morrow I will deliver thee out of bondage & he saith unto Alma thou shalt go before this people & I will go with thee & deliver this people out of bondage [454](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7078436908594182641" \o "Note)now it came to pass that Alma & his people in the night time gathered their flocks together & also of their grain yea even all the night time were they gathering their flocks together<​.​> & in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites yea & all their task masters were in a profound sleep & it came to pass that Alma & his people departed into the wilderness & when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a vally & they called the name of[455](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7526090027423323779" \o "Note) the vally Alma because he lead their way in the wilderness yea & in[456](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8560956589117832152" \o "Note) the vally of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them & eased their burdens & had delivered them out of bondage for they were in bondage & none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God & they gave thanks to God yea all their men & all their women & all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God [457](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16362502636237724230" \o "Note)& now the Lord said unto Alma haste thee & get thou & this people out of this land for the Lamanites have awoke & doth pursue thee therefore get thee out of this land & I will stop the Lamanites in this vally that they come no further in pursuit of this people & it came to pass that they departed out of the vally & took their journey into the wilderness[458](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12206170674286565684" \o "Note) & it came to pass that after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arived to the land of Zarahemla & king Mosiah did also receive them with joy & now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together now there were not so many of the children of Nephi or so many of those which were desendants of Nephi as there were of the people of Zarahemla which was a decendant of Muloch[459](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1527460300339724264" \o "Note) & those which came with him into the wilderness & there were not so many of the people of Nephi & of the people of Zarahemla as there was of the Lamanites yea they were not half so numerous & [p. 156] now all the people of Nephi was assembled together & also all the people of Zarahemla & they were gathered together in two bodies & it came to pass that Mosiah did read & caused to be read the records of Zeniff to his people yea he read the records of the people of Zeniff from the time they left the land of Zarahemla untill the time[460](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2343855087313160950" \o "Note) they returned again & he also read the account of Alma & his brethren & all their afflictions from the time they left the land of Zarahemla untill the time they returned again & now when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records his people which tarried in the land were struck with wonder & amazement for they knew not what to think for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceding great joy & again when they thought of their brethren which had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow & even shed many[461](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "715577864030937801" \o "Note) tears of sorrow & again when they thought of the immediate goodness of God & his power in delivering Alma & his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites & of bondage they did raise their voices & gave thanks to God & again when they thought upon the Lamanites which was their brethren of their sinful & poluted state they were filled with pain & anguish for the wellfare of their Souls [462](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9894732592450247993" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when those which were the children of Amulon & his brethren which had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites they were displeased with the conduct of their fathers & they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi that they might be called the children of Nephi & be numbered among those which were called Nephites & now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites & this because the kingdom had been confered upon none but those which were decendants of Nephi [463](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12576897874251363488" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that when Mosiah [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#10096527888893145736)had <​◊ade​> an end of speaking and reading to the people he desired that Alma should also speak to the people and it came to pass that Alma did speak unto them when they were assembled together in large bodies and he went from one body to another preaching[464](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15415730226394072003" \o "Note) unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord and he did exort the people of Limhi and his brethren all those that had been delivered out of bondage that should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them and it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things and had made an end of speaking to them that King Limhi was desirous that he might be baptised and all his people were desirous that they might be baptised also before therefore Alma did go forth into the water and did baptise thim yea he did baptise them after the manner he did his brethren in the watirs of Mormon yea and is as many as he did baptise did blong to the church of God and this bcause of their belief on the words of Alma and it came to pass that [p. 157] King Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches through out all the land of Zarahemla and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church now this was done because there was so many people that they could not be all govoned by one teacher neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies being called churches every church having their priests and their teachers and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma and thus notwithstanding there being many churches they all one church yea even the church of God for[465](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13570459107103595563" \o "Note) there was nothing preached in all the churches in the land of Zarahemla -es except it were repentance and faith in God and now there was Seven churches in the land of Zarahemla and it came to pass that whosoever was desirous to take upon them the name of Christ <​or​> of God they did join the churches of God and they were called the people of God and the Lord did pour out his spirit upon them and they were blest and pospered in the land now it came to pass that there was many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of King Benjamin being little children at the time he spake unto his people and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers they did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ and now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God and their hearts were hardened and they would not be baptised neither would they join the church and they were a seperate people as to their faith and remained so ever after even in their carnal and sinful State for they would not call upon the Lord their God and now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God but because of the desintions among the brethren they bcame more numrous for it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flatering words which were in the church & did cause them to commit many sins therefore it became expedient that those who commited Sin that was in the church should be admonished by the church,[466](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "719474254472556688" \o "Note) and it came to pass that they were brought before the priests & delivered up unto the priests by the teachers & the priests brought them before Alma which and the priests brought was the high priest Now King Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church and it came to pass that Alma did know concerning them for there were many witnesses [p. 158] against them yea the people stood & testified of their iniquity in abundance now there had not any such thing happened before in the church therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit & he caused that they should be brought before the King & he saith unto the King behold here are many which we have brought before thee which are accused of their brethren yea & they have been taken in divers iniquities and they do not repent of their iniquities therefore we have brought them before thee that thou may judge them according to their crimes but, King Mosiah saith unto Alma behold I judge them not therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged and now the spirit of Alma was again troubled and he went & enquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God & it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole Soul to God the voice of the Lord came to him saying blessed art thou Alma & blessed are they which were baptised in the waters of Mormon thou art in blesed because of thy exceding faith in the words alone of my servant Aminadi Abinadi and blesed are they because of their Exceding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them & bessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people & they shall be established & they shall be my people, yea blessed is this people which is willing to bear my name for in my shall they called & they are mine & because thou hast enquired of me concerning the transgressor[467](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15180855086321804626" \o "Note) thou art blessed thou art my servant and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life and thou shalt serve me & go forth in my name & shall gather togather my sheep & he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep & him shall ye receive into the church & him will I also recive for behold this is my church whosoever that is baptised shall be baptised unto repentance & whosoever ye receive shall believe in my name & him will I freely forgive for it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world for it is I that hath created them & it is I that granteth unto him that believeth in[468](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4968516861073098715" \o "Note) the end a place at my right hand for behold in my name are they called & if they know me they shall come forth and shall have a place eternally at my right hand and it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth & shall stand before me & then shall they know that I am the Lord their God that I am their redeemer but they would not be redeemed & thin will I confess into unto them that I never knew them & [p. 159] they shall depart unto into everlasting fire prepared for the devil & his angels therefore I say unto you that he that will not hear my voice the same shall ye not receive into my church for him I will not receive at the last day therefore I say unto you go and whosoever transgresset against me him shall ye judge according to the sins which he hath committed & if he confess his sins before thee and me and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart him shall ye forgive & I will forgive him also yea & as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespass<​es​> against me & ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses for verily I say unto you he that forgiveth not his neighbors trespasses when he sayeth that he repenteth the <​same​> hath brought himself under condemnation, now I say unto you go & whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people and this shall be observed from this time forward. And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them & that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God, and it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity according to the word of the Lord and whosoever repented of their Sins & did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church & them that would not confess their sins & repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church & their names were bloted out. And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church & they began again to have peace & to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church walking circumspectly before God receiving many & baptising many & now all these things did Alma and his fellow labourers do, which were over the church walking in all diligence teaching the word of God in all things sufferings all manner of afflictions being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God & di◊[469](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14392647404371237898" \o "Note) they did admonish their brethren, & they were also admonished every one by the word of God according to his sins or to the sins which he had committed. Being commaded of God to pray without ceaseing <​&​> to give thanks in all things, And now it came to pass that the persecutions which was inflicted on the church by the unblievers became so great that the church began murmer & complain to their leaders concerning the matter and they did complain to Alma & Alma laid the case before their King Mosiah and Mosiah consulted with his priests, and it came to pass that King Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the [470](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7583149823109765457" \o "Note) [p. 160] land round about, that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those which belonged to the church of God, & there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them that there should be an equality among all men that they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself. labouring with their own hand<​s​> for their support yea and all their priests & teachers should labour with their own hands for their support in all cases save it were in sickness or in much want & doing these things they did abound in the grace of God and there began to be much peace again in the land and the people began to be very numerous and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth yea on the north & on the South on the east & on the west building large cities and vilages in all quarters of the land & the Lord did visit them and prosper them & they became a large & a wealthy people. Now the Sons of Mosiah was numbered among the unbelievers & also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them he being called Alma after his Father nevertheless he became a very wicked & an Idolitrous man & he was a man of many words & did speak much flattery to the people therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities & he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God stealing away the hearts of the people causing much discention[471](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2203007446666140758" \o "Note) among the people giving a chance for the enemy of God exercise his power over them & now of God to exercise his power)[472](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "596920912793641662" \o "Note) it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church & to lead astray the people of the Lord contrary to the commandments of God or even the King & as I said unto you as they were going about rebeling against God behold the angel of the Lord appeared unto them & he descended as is it wre in a cloud & he spake as it were with a voice of thunder which caused the earth shake upon which they stood, & so great was their astonishment that they fell to the earth & understood not the words which he spake unto them nevertheless he cryed again saying Alma arise & stand forth for why persecuteth thou the church of God for the Lord hath said this is my church & I will establish it & nothing shall overthrow it save it is the transgressions of my people & again the angel sayeth behold the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people & also the prayers[473](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10227229708562431142" \o "Note) of his servant Alma which is thy Father for he hath prayed with much faith [p. 161] concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth threrefore for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power & authority of God that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to thier faith. & now behold can ye dispute the power of God for behold doth not my voice shake the earth & can ye not also behold me before you & I am sent from God. now I say unto thee go, & remember the captivity of thy Fathers in the land of Helem & in the land of Nephi & remember how great things he hath done for them for they were in bondage & he hath delivered them & now I say unto thee Alma go thy way & seek to destroy the church no more that their prayers may understood answered & this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off, & now it came to pass that these were the lost words which the angel spake unto Alma & he departed & now Alma & those that were with him fell again to the earth for great was their astonishment for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord & his voice was as thunder which shook the earth & they knew <​that​> there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth & cause it to tremble as though it wouldd part asunder & now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb that he could not open his mouuth yea & he bcame weak even that he could not move his hands therefore he was taken by those that were with him & carried helpless even until was laid before his Father & they rehearst unto his Father all that had happened unto them & his Father rejoiced for he knew that it was the power of God & he caused that a multitude should be gathered togather that they might witniss what the Lord had done for his son & also for those that were With him & he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together & they began to fast & to pray to their Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma that he might speak & also that his limbs might[474](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8736001427978023205" \o "Note) receive their strength that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness & glory of God, & it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights the limbs of Alma received their strength & he stood up & began to speak unto them bidding them to be of good comfort for said he I have repented of my sins & have been redeemed of the Lord, behold I am born of the spirit & the Lord unto me marvel not that all makind yea men & women all nations kindreds tongues & people must be born again yea born of God changed of their carnal & fallen state to a state of righteousness being redeemed of God becoming his sons & daughters & thus they become new creatures & unless they do this they can [p. 162] in nowise inherit the kingdom of God, I say unto you unless this be the case they must be cast off. and this I know bcause I was like to be cast off. never theless after wadeing[475](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4788808671602151532" \o "Note) through much tribulation repenting nigh unto death the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning & I am born of God my soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness & bonds of iniquity I was in the darkest abyss but now I behold the marvilous light of God my soul was wrecked with Eternal torment but I am snatched & my soul is pained no more I rejected my redeemer & denied that which had been spoken of by our Fathers but now that they may foresee that[476](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17277082337423111645" \o "Note) he will come & that he remembereth every creature of his creating & he will make himself manifest unto all, yea every knee shall bow & every tongue confess before him yea even at the last day when all men shall stand to be Judged of him then shall they confess that he is God then shall they confess who live without God in the world that the Judgment of an everlasting punishment is Just upon them & they shall quake & tremble & shrink bneath the glance of his allsearching eye, & now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people & those that which were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them traveling round about through all the land publishing to all the people the things which they had heard & seen & preaching the word of God in much tribulation being greatly persecuted by those which were unbeleivers being smitten by many of them but notwthstanding all this they did impart much consolation to the church confirming their faith & exhorting them with long suffering and much travel to keep the commandments of God, And of them were the Sons of Mosiah & their names were Ammon and Aaron and Omner and Himni these were the names of the Sons of Mosiah & after they had traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla & among all the people which was under the reign of King Mosiah Zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church conffessing all their Sins & publishing all the things which they had seen, & explaining the Prophesies & the sctrip scriptures to all who desired to hear them & thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth. yea to the knowledge of their redeemer & how blessed are they for they did publish peace they did publish good tidings of good and they did deliver declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth E[477](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15595279578140559602" \o "Note)

Mosiah, Chapter 12 [Mosiah 28:1–19]

Chapter 13[478](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16399762788302708856" \o "Note) [p. 163]

[](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#2794183685733715005)Now it came to pass that after the Sons of Mosiah had Done all these things they took a small number with them and returned to their farther the King and Desireed of him that he would grant unto them that they might with those whom they had Selected to go up to the land of Nephi that they might preaeach preach the gospel things which they had heard and that they Might impart the word of god to their Bretheren the Lamonites [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#1031217075407023844)that they perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God and convince them of the iniquity of their Fathers & that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites that they might also be brought to rejoice in their Lord their God. that they might become friendly to on another & that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God hath given them. now they were desirous that Salvation should be declared to every creature for they could not bare that any human soul should perish, yea even the very thoughts that any <​soul​> should endure endless torment did cause them to quake & tremble & thus did the spirit of the Lord work upon them for they were the very vilest of sinners & the Lord saw fit in his Infinite mercy to spare them nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities & suffering much fearing that they should be cast off forever. And it came to pass that they did plead with their Father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi, And it came to pass that King Mosiah went & enquired of the Lord if he should let his Sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word & the Lord said unto Mosiah let them go up for many shall beleive on their words & they shall have Eternal life, and I will deliver thy Sons out of the hands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go & do according to their request & they took their Journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites. And I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter. Now King Mosiah had no one to confer the Kingdom upon for there was not any of his Sons which would accept of the Kingdom therefore he took the reckords which were engraven upon the plates of Brass & also the plates of Nephi & all the things which he had kept & preserved according to the commandments of God & after having Translated & caused to be written the Reckords which were on the plates of Gold which had been found by the people of Limhi which was delivered to him by the hand of Limhi and this he done [p. 164] because of the great anxiety of his people for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people which had been destroyed & now he translated them by the means of those two stones which was fastened into the two Rims of a bow, now these things was prepared from the beginning & was handed down from Generation to Generation for the purpose of interpreting Languages & they have been kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord that he should discover to every— creature which should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people & whosoever has the things is called Seer after the manner of old times, Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records bohold it gave an account of the people which was destroyed from the time that they were Destroyed back to the building of the great Tower at the time the Lord confounded the Languages of the people & they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the Earth yea & even from that time until the creation of Adam, now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly yea they were filled with sorrow nevertheless it gave them much knowledge in the which they did rejoice & this account shall be written hereafter, for behold it is expedient that all people should know the things which ore written in this account

Mosiah, Chapter 13 [Mosiah 28:20–29:47]

[](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#8432346591443236685)Capter– 14th.

And now as I Said unto you that after King Mosiah had Done these things he took the plates of Brass and all the things which he had cept and conferd[479](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1260127967962966787" \o "Note) them upon Alma which was the Son of Alma yea all the reccords and allso the interpiters[480](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2864699810801627135" \o "Note) and conferd them upon him and Commanding him that[481](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3088323209490158274" \o "Note) he Should keep and preserve them and also keep A reccord of the people handing them Down from one generatiion to another even as they had Been handed Down from the times that Lehi Left Jeruselem now when Mosiah had Done this he sent out through[482](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1043731590363369849" \o "Note) all the land among all the people Desireing them to know their will concerning who Should be their King and it came pass that the voice of the people came Saying wee are Desireous that Aaron thy Son Should Be our king and our ruler[483](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11084492598182485442" \o "Note) now Aaron had gone up to the land of nephi therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him neither was any of the Sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom therefore king Mosiah Sent again among the people yea even a wrting written word Sent he a Among the people and these were the words that were w[r]itten [p. 165] Saying Behold O ye my people or my Bretheren for I esteem you as such for I Desire that ye Should considder the cause which yea are called to considder for ye ar Desireous to have a king now I Declair unto you that he to whoom that the kingdom Doth wrightly Belong hath Declared And will not take upon him the kingdom and now if their should Be another appointed I in his stead Behold I fear their would rise comtentions Among the your and who knoweth But what my Sons to whoom the kingdom Doth Belong Should t◊ turn to Be <​angry​> And Draw a way a part of this people after him which will cause wars & contentions among your which would Be the cause of sheding mutch Blood And perverting the way of the Lord yea and Destroy the Souls of mtch people Now I Say unto you let us be wise and considder these things for wee have no wright to Destroy my Son neither Should wee have any wright to Destroy an other if he Should Be appointed in his Stead and if <​my​> Son Should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had Said and claim his right to the kingdom which would cause him and also this to comit people to commit much Sin and now let us Be wise and look forward to these things and Doo that which will make for the peace of this people therefore I will Be your king the remainder of my Days nevertheless let us acquaint Appoint Judges to Judge this people according to our law and wee will newly[484](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1023265766460675700" \o "Note) arange the affairs of this people for we will appoint wise men to Be Judges that will Judge this people according to the commandments of the Lord god now it is Better that a man Should Be Judged of god than of man for the Judgements of god are allways Just but the Judgements of ◊◊e not man are not allways Just therefore if it was possible that ye Could have Just men to be your Judges kings which would establish the laws of god and Judge this people accordeng <​to​> his commandments yea if ye could have men for your kings which[485](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13325960617874993129" \o "Note) would Do even as my father Benjamin Did for this people I say unto you if this could allway Be the Case then it would Be expedient that ye sould allway<​s​> have kings to rule over you and Even I my self have laboured with all the power and facul of [p. 166] facualties which I have posessed to teach you the Commandments of god and to Establish peace through out the land that their Should Be no wars nor Contentions no Stealling nor plundering nor murdering nor no manner of anniqity and whosoever hath Committid aniqity him have I punished according to the Crime which he hath Committed[486](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16190648284801538665" \o "Note) according to the law which hath been given to us by our farthers now I say unto you that because all men are not Just it is not Expedient that ye Should have a king or king<​s​> to rule over you for behold how muthch iniqity Doth one wicked king Case to be Committed yea and what greate Destruction yea remmbering Noah his wickedness and his abominations and also the wickedness and abomimations of his people behold what greate Distruction Did Come upon them and also bcause of their Eniquiities they were braught into bondage and were it not for the iterposition of they their allwise Creator and this because of their Cinsere ripentance thou they must [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#7129111897379228030)unavoidably remain in bondage ultil now, but behold he did deliver them bcause they diid did humble themself themselves before him & they cryed mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage & thus doth the Lord work with his Power in all cases among the children of men extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him, & behold, now I say unto you yea cannot death[487](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14201858895531647911" \o "Note) remove an iniquitous King save it be through much contention & the sheding of much blood, for bhold he hath his friends in iniquity & he keepeth his guards about him and he teareth up the Laws of those which have reigned in righteousness before him & he trampleeth under his feet the commandments of God & he enacteth Laws & sendeth them forth among his people, yea Laws after <​the​> manner of his own wickedness & whosoever doth not obey his Laws he causeth to be destroyed & whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war & if he can he will destroy them & thus an unrighteous King doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.[488](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9933921562339062738" \o "Note) And now behold I say unto you it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you therefore choose you by the voice of the people Judges that ye may be Judged according to the Laws which hath been given you by our Fathers which are correct & which was given them by the hand of the Lord, now it is not common that the voice of the poeple desireth any thing contrary to that which is right but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right, therefore this shall ye observe & make it your law to do your business by the voice of the people & if the [p. 167] time comeeth that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity then is the time that the Judgments of God will come upon you yea then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he hath hitherto visited this land and now if ye have Judges & they do not Judge you according to the law which has been given ye can cause that he may be Judged of a higher Judge [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#13332452224038584083)if your hier Judges Doth not Judge righteous Judgements yea Shall cause that a Small number of your lower Judgees Should be gethered to gether and they Sholl Juddge hie your hier Judgees according to the voice of the people & I Commanded[489](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1154675308114196111" \o "Note) you to Do these thing in the fear of the lord & I Commanded you to Do these things & that ye have no king that if these people Commit Sins and iniquity iniquities they Shall be answered upon thier own heads for behold I Say unto you the Sins of many poople have been Causd[490](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7869558510640086376" \o "Note) by the Eniquities of their king<​s​> therefore their their Eniquities are answered up on the heads of their kings and now I desire that this people unequaility Should be no more is in this land Espesally among this my people but I Desire that this land be a land of liberty and Every man may Enjoy his wrights and priveleiges alike so long as the lord Seas fit that we may live and iherit the land yea Even as long as any of our posterity remaineth upon the face of the land and many more things Did king Mosiah wrte unt them unfolding unto them all the treyals and troubals a rightoous king yea all the travels of Soul for their people and also all the murmerings of the people to their king and he Explained it all unto them and he told them that these things had not ought to be but that the burden Should Come upon all the people that Every man might bear his part and he also unfolded unto them [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#3577052775171645811)all the disdvantages they should laboured under by having an unrighteous King to rule over them yea all his iniquities & abominations and all the wars and Contentions and blood shed and the stealing and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms and all manner of iniquities which cannot be innumerated telling them that these things aught not to be that they was expressly repugnant to the commandments of God. And now it came to pass aftir King Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people the were convinced of the truth of his words therefore they relinquished their desires for a King and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land yea & every man exprest a willingness to answer for his own sins, therefore it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land to cast in their voices concerning [p. 168] who should be their Judges to Judge them according to the Law which had been given them & they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them & they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah yea they did esteem him more than any other man for they did not look upon him as a Tyrant who was seeking for gain yea for that luker which doth corrupt the Soul for he had not exacted Riches of them neither had he delighted in sheding of blood but he had established Peace in the land & he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage. therefore they did esteem him yea exceedingly beyond measure. And it came to pass that they did appoint Judges to rule over them or to Judges them according to the law & this they done throughout all the land. And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the Chief Judge[491](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7742103859235149807" \o "Note) he being also the High Priest his Father having confered the office upon him & had given him the charge concerning all the offairs of the church, and now it came to pass that that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord & he did keep his commandments & he did Judge righteous Judgments & there was continual Peace through the land & thus commenced the Reign of the Judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla among all the people which was called the Nephites, And Alma was the first & Chief Judge. And now it came to pass that his Father Died being Eighty and two years old having lived to fulfill the commandments of God. And It came to pass that that Mosiah died also in the thirty & third year of his Reign being sixty and three years,[492](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "341826910490152140" \o "Note) making in the whole Five Hundred & Nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem, And thus Ended the Reign of the Kings over the people of Nephi, and this thus ended the days of Alma who was the founder of their Church[493](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6220046706155884556" \o "Note)

Alma, Chapter 1 [Alma 1–3]

Chapter[494](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13451358625162333725" \o "Note) 1st

The account of Alma who was the Son of Alma the First and Chief Judge over the people of Nephi & also the high Priest over the Church. an account of the Reign of the Judges and the wars & contentions among the people, And also an account of a war between the Nephites & the Lamanites According to the Record of Alma the first and Chief Judge—— Now It came to pass that in the first Year of the Reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi from this time forward, King Mosiah having gone the way of all the Earth haveing warred a good warfare walking uprightly before God, leaveing no one to Reign in his stead nevertheless he established Laws & they were acknowledged before the people[495](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14902491746222898608" \o "Note) [p. 169] therefore they were obleiged to abide by the Laws which he had made. And It came to pass that in the first Year of the Reign of Alma in the Judgment seat, there was as man brought before him to be Judged a man which was large & was noted for his much strength & he had gone about among the people Preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the Enem Church declareing unto the people that every Priest & teacher had aught to become popular & they aught not to labar with their own hands but that they had aught to be supported by the people And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day & that they need not fear nor tremble but that they might lift up their heads & rejoice for the Lord had created all men & had also redeemed all men & in the end all men should have Eternal Life, And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words even so many that they began to support him & give him Money & he began to be lifted up in the pride of of his heart & to wear very Costly Apparel Yea & even began to establish a Church after the manner of his Preaching. And it came to pass as he was going to preach to those who believeed on his word he met a man which belonged to the Church of God, Yea even one of their teachers & he began to contend with him sharply that he might lead away the people of the Church, but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words[496](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15620205168125770434" \o "Note) of God. Now the name of the man was Gideon & it was him that was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage now because Gideon withstood him with the words of God, he was wroth with Gideon & drew his sword & began to smite him, now Gideon being stricken with many Years therefore he was not Able to withstand his blows therefore he was Slain by the sword & the man who slew him was taken by the people of the Church & was brought before Alma to be Judged according to the crime which he had committed, & it came to pass that he stood before Alma & pled for himself with much boldness, but Alma said unto him behold this is the first time that Priestcraft has been Introduced among this people & behold thou art not only guilty of Priestcraft but Endeavered to enforce it by the sword & were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction, and thou hast shed the blood of a Righteous man Yea a man which has done much good among this people & were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for Vengonce, therefore thou art condemned to die acc [p. 170]ording to the Law which has been given us by Mosiah our last King & they have been acknowledged by this people therefore this people must abide by the Law, [497](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12367279581703001076" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they took him, & his name was Nehor & they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti & there he was caused or rather did Acknowledge between the Heavens & the Earth that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God & there he suffered an ignominious Death, Nevertheless this did not put an end to the spreading of Priestcraft through the land for there we◊e was[498](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4531574363960746817" \o "Note) many wh◊ch loved the vain things of the world & they went forth preaching false Doctrines & this they did for the sake of riches & honor Nevertheless they durst not lie if it were known for fear of the Law, for Lyars were punished, therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief & they now the Law could have no power on any man for their belief & they durst not steal for fear of the Law for such were punished neither durst they Rob nor murder for he that Murdereth[499](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4679148072658835088" \o "Note) was punished unto death, [500](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15246434860651035486" \o "Note)But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the Church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God & had taken upon them the name of Christ yea they did persecute them & afflict them with all manner of words & this because of their humility because they were not proud in their own eyes & because they did impart the word of God one with another without Money & without price. Now there was a strict Law among the people of the church that there should not any man belonging to the Church arise & persecute those that did not belong to the Church & that there should be no persecution among themselves, Neverless there were many among them who began to be proud And began to contend warmly with their adversaries even unto blows Yea they would smite one another with their fists, now this was in the second Year of the Reign of Alma & it was a cause of much affliction to the Church Yea it was the cause of much trial with the Church for the hearts of many were hardened & their names were blotted out that they were remembered no more among the people of God, and also many withdrew themselves from among them, now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the in the faith, Nevertheless the were stedfast & immovable in keeping the commandments of God & they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them & when their Priests left their labour to impart the word of God unto the people the people also left their labours[501](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4519633487281917998" \o "Note) to hear the word of God & when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors & the priest not esteeming himself above [p. 171] his hearers for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the Teacher Any better than the learner & thus they were all Equal, & they did all labour every man according to his strength & they did impart of their substance every man according to that which he had to the poor & the needy & the sick & the Afflicted & they did not wear Costly apparel yet they were neat & comely And this thus they did establish the affairs of the Church & thus they began to have continual peace again. notwithstanding all their persecutions, & now because of the steeadiness of the Church they began to exceeding rich having Abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need, Abundance of Flocks & herds & fatlings of every kind & also abundance of Grain & of gold & of Silver & of precious things & abundance Silk & fine twined linen & all manner of good homely cloth, & thus in their prosperous[502](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7183409348548504593" \o "Note) circumstances they did not Send away which was naked[503](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5025435140595192362" \o "Note) that was hungry or that was athirst or that was sick or that had not been nourished & they did not set their hearts upon riches, therefore they were liberal to all both old & young both bond & free both Male & female whether out of the Church or in the Church having no respects to persons, as to those who stood in need and thus they did prosper & become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their Church, for those who did not belong to their Church did Indulge themselves in sorceries & in Idolitry or Idleness & in bablings and in envyings & strife And wearing costly apparel being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes persecuting[504](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15633077784281940831" \o "Note) lying thieving robing commiting whoredoms & murdering &[505](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3757214528147241465" \o "Note) all mnner of wickedness. Nevertheless the Law was put in force upon all those who did transgress It in as much as it were possible, And it came to pass that by thus thus exercising the Law upon them every man suffering according to that which he had done they became[506](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10223694470946087581" \o "Note) more still & durst not commit any wickedness if it were Known therefore there was much Peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the Reign of the Judges, And it came to pass in the Commencement of the fifth Year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people for a certain man being Called Amlici he being a very Cunning man Yea a wise man as to the wisdom of the world he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by[507](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10321611826863642087" \o "Note) the sword who was executed according to the Law, Now this Amlici had by his Cunning drawn away much people after him even so much that they began to be very powerful & they began to endeavor Amlici to establish Amlici to be a King[508](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15578360190248483530" \o "Note) over the people now this was this alarming to the people of the Church and also to all those who [p. 172] had not been drawn away after the perswasions of Amlici for they knew that according to their Law that such things must be established by the Voice of the people therefore if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people he being a wicked man would deprive them of their rights & privileges of the Church &c. for it was his intent to destroy the Church of God, [509](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14584995246179475501" \o "Note)And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it w◊re for ar against Amlici in separate bodies haveing much dispute and wonderful Contentions one with another & thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices Concerning the matter and they were laid before the Judges, And it came to pass that the Voice of the people came against Amlici that he was not made King over the people now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those which were against him but Amlici did stir up those which were in his favor to anger against those which were not in his favor, And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together & did Consecrate Amlici to be their King, now when Amlici was made King over them he Commanded them that they should take up Armes against their Brethren & this he done that he might subject them to him, now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici being Called Amlikites & the remainder were Called Nephites or the people of God therefore the people of the Nephites was aware of the intent of the Amlikites & therefore they did prepare for to meet them yea they did arm themselves with swords & with simiters & With bows & with arrows & with stones & with slings & with all manner of weapons of war of every kind & thus they were prepaired to meet <​t​>he Amlicites at the time of their Comeing, & there was appointed Captains & higher Captains & Chief Captains according to their numbers, [510](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6461650294371996925" \o "Note)And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind & he also appointed rulers & leaders over his people to lead them to war gainst their Brethren, & it came to pass that the Amlicites came up[511](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "573477615937478356" \o "Note) upon the hill Amnihu which was East of the River Sidon which ran by the land of Zarahemla & there they began to make war with the Nepites, Now Alma he being the Chief Judge & the Governor of the people of Nephi therefore he went up with his people, Yea with his Captains & Chief Captains Yea at the heads of his Armies against the Amlicites to Battle & they bgan to Slay the Amlicites upon the hill East of Sidon & the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength in somuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites, Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the [p. 173] Nepites that they Slew the Amlicites with a great slaughter that they bgan to flee before them, And it came to pass that the Nephites did persue the Amlicites all that day & did Slay them with much slaughter in somuch that there was Slain of the Amlicites twelve Thousand five hundred thirty & two Souls. And there was slain of the Nephites Six Thousand five hundred sixty & two Souls. And it came to pass that when Alma could peursue the Amlicites no longer he Caused that his people should pitch their tents in the Valley of Gideon the valley being Called after that Gideon which was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword & in this valley the Nepites did pitch their tents for the night, & Alma sent spies to follow them remnant of the Amlicites that he might know of their plans & their plots whereby he might guard himself against <​them​> that he might preserve his People from being destroyed, now those which he had sent out to watch the Camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram & Amnor & Manti & Limher these were they which went out with their men to watch camp of the Amlicites, & it came to pass thot on the morrow they returned into <​the​> Camp of the Nephites in great haste being greatly astonished & struck with much fear, Saying Behold we followed the Camp of the Amlicites & to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon above the land of Zarahemla in the Course of the land of Nephi we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites, And behold the Amlicites have joined them and they are upon our Brethren in that Land & they are fleeing before them with their Flocks and their wives & their children towards our City & except we make haste they obtain possession of our City & our Fathers & our wives and our Children be slain, And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents & departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their City which was the City of Zarahemla, and behold as they were Crossing the River Sidon the Lamanites & the Amlicites being as numerous almost as it were as the Sands of the Sea comeing upon them to destroy them, Nevertheless the Nephites being strengthened by the hond of the Lord having Prayed mightily to Him <​that​> he would deliver them out of the hands of their Enemies therefore the Lord did hear their Cries & did strengthen them & the Lamanites & the Amlicites did fall before them, And it came to pass that Alma faught with Amlici with the Sword face to face & they did Contend mightily one with another. and it came to pass that Alma he being a man of God being exercised with much faith & he Cried saying O Lord have mercy & spare my life that [p. 174] I may be an instrument in the <​thy​> hands to save and protect[512](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9501508535163042118" \o "Note) this people, now when Alma had said these words he contended again Amlici & he was strengthnd in somuch the slew that he slew Amlici with the sword, and he also contended with the King of the Lamanites but the King of the Lamanites fled back from bfore Alma and sent his guards to Contend with Alma but Alma with his guards Contended with the guards of the King of the Lamanites until he slew & drave them back & thus he Cleared the ground or rather the bank which was on the west of the River Sidon throwing the bodies of the Lamanites which had been slain, into the waters of the river[513](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "702831705403056817" \o "Note) Sidon that thereby his people might have room to Cross & Contend with the Lamanites & the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon & it came to pass that when they had all Crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites & the Amlicites began to flee before them notwithstanding they were so numerous that they Could not be numbered & they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west & North away byond the borders of the land and the Nephites did pursue them with their might & did slay them Yea they were met on every hond and slain & driven until they were scattered on the west & on the North until they had reached the wilderness which was Called Hermounts & it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild beasts and ravenous beasts & it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds & were devoured by those beasts & also the Vultures of the Air [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#16853362105533001574)and their bones have been found & have been heaped up on the Earth & it came to pass that the Nephites which were not Slain [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#16820304620974187728)by the weapons of war after having buried those which had been slain. now the number Number[514](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8457247986458770978" \o "Note) of the slain were not numbered because of the greatness of their number &[515](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3880050617473481769" \o "Note) after they had finished burying their they all returned to their lands and to their houses & their wives & their Children, Now many women & Children had been slain with the sword, & also many of their flocks & their herds & also many of their feilds of Grain were destroyed for they were troden down by the hosts of men & now as many of the Lamanites & the Amlicites which had been slain upon the bank of the River Sidon were Cast into the waters of Sidon, And bhold their bones are in the debths of the Sea & they are many & the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites, now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn & they were Naked save it were skin which was girted about their loins & also their armour which was girted about them & their bows & their arrows & their Stones & their slings &c. and the skins of the Lamanites [p. 175] were dark according to the mark which was set upon their Fathers which was a curse upon them because of their transgressions & their rebellion against their brethren, which Consisted of Nephi Jacob & Joseph & Sam which were just & holy men & their brethren saught to destroy them therefore they Cursed & the Lord God set a mark upon them yea upon Laman & Lemuel and also the Sons of Ishmael & the Ishmaelitish women & this the◊ Was done that their seed might be destinguished from the seed of their brethren that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people that they might not mix & believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction. And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same Curse upon his seed therefore whomsoever suffered himself to be led away <​by​> the Lamanites were Called under that head & there was a mark set upon him. And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites but believed those Records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem & also in the tradition of their Fathers which were correct which believed in the commandments of God & kept them were called the Nephites or the people of Nephi from that time forth & it is they which have kept the Records which are true of their People & also of the people of the Lamanites. Now we will return again to the Amlicites for they also they had a mark set upon them yea they set the mark upon themselves yea over a mark of red upon their foreheads thus I The word of God is fulfiled <​for​> these are the words which he saith to Nephi. Behold the Lamanites have I Cursed & I will set a mark upon them that they & their seed may be separated from thee & thy seed from this time henceforth and for ever except they repent of their wickedness & turn to me that I may have mercy upon them, And again I will set a mark upon him that mingleeth his seed with thy Brethren they that they may be Cursed also, and again will I set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed & again I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be Called thy seed, and I will bless the &c. and whomsoever shall be Called thy seed henceforth and for ever, And these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed. Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfiling the words of God when they bgan to mark themselves in their foreheads nevertheless as they had come out in open rebelling rebellinon against God therefore it was expedient that the curse should foll upon them, now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the Curse & even so doeth every man that is Cursed bringeth upon himself his own Condemnation [p. 176] Now it came to pass that not many days after the Battle which was faught in the land of Zarahemla by the Lamanites & the Amlicites, that there was another Army of the Lamanites Lamanites Came in upon the People of Nephi in the same place where the first Army met the Amlicites. And it came to pass that there was an Army sent to drive them out of their land, Now Alma himself, being Afflicted with a wound did not go up to Battle at this time against the Lamanites but he sent up a nunerous Army against them & they went up & slew many of the Lamanites & drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land & then they returned gain & began to establish peace in the land being troubled no more for a time with their Enemies now all these things were done yea all those wars & Contentions was Commenced & ended in the fifth year of the Reign of the Judges & in one year was Thousands & tens of Thousands of souls were[516](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8973614435207026725" \o "Note) sent to the Eternal world that they might reap their rewards according to their works whether they were good or whether they were bad. to reap Eternal happiness or Eternal misery according to the spirit which he listed to Obey whether it be a good spirit or a bad one for every man receiveth wages of him who he listeth to obey & this according to the words of the spirit of Prophecy. therefore let it be according to the truth, And thus ended[517](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10932507676042911337" \o "Note) the fifth year of the Reign of the Judges

Alma, Chapter 2 [Alma 4]

Chapter 2nd.

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the Reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi there was no Contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla & the people being afflicted yea greatly afflicted for the loss of their Brethren & also for the loss <​of​> their flocks & herds & also for the Loss of their fields of Grain which was troden under foot & destroyed by the Lamanites & so great was their affliction that every soul had cause to moun & they believed that it was the Judgments of of[518](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11882922666873342472" \o "Note) God sent upon them because of their wickedness & their Abominations therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty. And they began to establish the Church more fully. yea & many were Baptised in the waters of Sidon & were joined to the Church of God. yea they were Baptised by the hand of Alma who had been Consecrated the High Priest over the People of the Church, by the hand of his Father Alma. And it came to pass in the seventh year of the Reign of the Judges there was about three Thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the Church of God & were Baptised. And thus ended[519](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15785677425454383079" \o "Note) the seventh year of the Reign of the Judges over the People of Nephi & there was Continual Peace in all the land <​that​> time. And it came to pass in the Eighth year of the Reign of the Judges that the People of the Church began to wax Proud [p. 177] because of their exceeding Riches, & their fine silks & their fine twined linnen, & because of their many flocks & herds & their Gold & their Silver & all manner of precious things which they had obtained by their Industry & in all these things were they lifted up in the Pride of their eyes for they began to wear very Costly Apparel. now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma yea And to many of the People which Alma had consecrated to be teachers & Priests And Elders over the church. yea many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their People for they saw & beheld with great sorrow that the People of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their Eyes & to set their hearts upon riches & upon the vain things of the world that they began to be scornful one towards another & they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will And pleasure. & thus in this Eighth Year of the Reign of the Judges there began to be great Contentions among the <​People of the​> church, yea there was envyings & strifes & malice And Persecutions & pride even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the Church of God, and thus ended the Eighth year of the Reign of the Judges, and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling block to those who did not belong to the church, & thus the church began to fail in its progress, And it came to pass in the commencement of the Ninth Year Alma seeing the wickedness of the church. & also that the Example of the Church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another thus bringing on the destruction of the People yea seeing great unequality among the People, some lifting themselves up with their pride dispising others turning their backs upon the needy & th naked & those which[520](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7885764993128652638" \o "Note) were hungry & those which were athirst & those which were sick & afflicted, now this was a great cause for lamentations among the People while others were abaseing themselves succoring those who stood in need of their succor such as imparting their substance to the poor & the needy feeding the hungry & suffering all manner of afflictions for Christs sake which should come according to the spirit of Prophecy looking forward to that day thus retaineing a remission of their sins being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead according to the will & power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the pains of death. And now it come to pass that Alma having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God. & the persecutions which was heaped upon them by the remainder of his People & seeing all their unequality h◊ began to be very sorrowful Nevertheless the spirit of the Lord did not fail him and he selected a wise man which was among the Elder of the Church and gave him power according to the voice of the people that he might [p. 178] have power to enact Laws according to the Laws which had been given & to put them in force according to the wickedness & the crimes of the people— Now this mans name was Nephiah & he was appointed Chief Judge & he sat upon in the Judgment seat to Judge & to govern the people, now Alma did not grant unto him the Office of High priest over the church but the retained the Office of high Priest unto himself, but he delivered the Judgment Seat unto Nephiah & this he did that he himself might go forth among his people or among the people of Nephi that he might Preach the word of God unto them to stir them up in remembrance of their duty & that he might pull down by the word of God all the pride & craftiness & all the contentions which was among his people seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them. And thus in the ninth◊ commencement of the ninth year of the Judges over the people of Nephi Alma delivered up the Judgment Seat to Nephiah & confined himself wholly to the High Priesthood of the holy Order of God to the testimony of <​the​> word according to the spirit of revelation and Prophesy—

Alma, Chapter 3 [Alma 5]

Chapter 3rd.

[](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#18368319632638391466)The words which Alma the high priest according to the holy order of god delivered to the people in their Citties & viliges through out[521](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6961955114525429269" \o "Note) the land [522](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14540037335620940913" \o "Note)Now[523](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1135017823248396403" \o "Note) it Came to pass that Alma began to declair[524](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15289018708827500631" \o "Note) the word of God unto the People first in the land of Zarahemla & from thence [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#10119969595335892636)throght all the land & these are the words which he spake to the People in the church which was established in the City of Zarahemla according to his own Record, Saying I Alma having been Consecrated by own Father Alma to be a High Priest over the church of God, he having Power and authority from to do these things, Behold I say unto you that he began to establish church in the land which[525](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1675865667080892363" \o "Note) was in the Borders of Nephi yea the land was Called the land of Mormon yea & he did Baptise his Brethren in the waters of Mormon & Behold I say unto you they were dlivered out of the hand of the people of King Noah by the mercy & power of God and Behold after that they were brought into Bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness yea I say unto you they were in captivity & again the Lord did deliver them out of Bondage by the power of his word & we were brought into this land, & here we began to Establish the Church of God throughout this land also, And <​now​> Behold I say unto you my Brethren you you that belong to this Church have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the Captivity of your Fathers Yea & have you[526](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5309562670991300049" \o "Note) sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy & long suffering towards them & more over have ye sufficiently retained in remembrancce [p. 179] that he hath delivered their Souls from Hell. Behold he changed their hearts yea he awaked them out of a deep sleep & they awake unto God. Behold they were in the midst of darkness, nevertheless their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word yea they were encircled about by the bands of Death & the chains of Hell & an everlasting destruction did await them. And now I ask of you my Brethren were they destroyed, Behold I say unto you nay they were not, & again I ask was the Bands of death broken & the chains of hell which encircled them about were they loosed. I say unto you yea they were loosed & their souls did expand & they did sing redeeming love, & I say unto you that they are saved, & now I ask of you on what Conditions are they saved yea what grounds had they to hope for salvation what is the cause of there being loosed from the bands of death, yea & also the chains of Hell, Behold I can tell you, did not my Father Alma believed[527](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3369113859251740260" \o "Note) in the words which was delivered by the mouth of Abinedi & was he not a holy Prophet did he not speak the word of God, and my Father Alma believed them & according to his spirit faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true, & Behold he preached the word unto your Fathers & a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts & they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true & living God, & behold they were faithful until the end, therefore they were saved, & now behold I ask of you my Brethren of the church have y◊u ye spiritually been born of God. have ye received his Image in your own countenances have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you do you look forward with an Eye of faith & view this mortal Body raised in Immortality & this corruption raised in Incorruption to stand before God to be Judged according to the deeds which hath been done in the Mortal Body. I say unto you can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord saying unto you in that day come unto me ye blessed for your Behold your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth Or do y◊u ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord at that day & I say Lord our works have been righteous works upon the face of the Earth[528](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12628433394110206064" \o "Note) & that he will save you or otherwise can ye Imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt & remorse having a remembrance of all your Guilt yea a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness yea Remembrance that ye have set at naught defiance the commandments of God, I say unto you can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands, I say unto you can you look up having the image of God [p. 180] engraven upon your countenances. I say unto you can ye look think of bing saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the Devil, I say unto you ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved for there can no man be saved except his garment<​s​> is cleansed from all stain through are washed white yea his garments must be purified[529](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6499795974712745736" \o "Note) until it is cleansed from all stain through the Blood of him of whom it hath been spoken by our Fathers which should come to redeem his people from their sins & now I ask of you my Brethren how will any of you feel if ye shall stand before the Bar of God having your garments stained with Blood & all manner of filthiness Behold what will these things testify against you Behold will they not testify that ye are Murderers yea & also that ye are guilty of all monner of wickedness Bohold my Brethren do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the Kingdom of God with Abraham with Isaac & with Jacob & also all the Holy Prophets whose garments are cleansed and are spotless pure & white. I say unto you nay except ye make[530](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18431457736443451415" \o "Note) our Lord Creator a liar from the begining or suppose that he is a liar from the bgining or also ye cannot suppose that such an one can have place in the Kingdom of Heaven but they shall be cast out for[531](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15911658187643657242" \o "Note) they are the children of the Kingdom of the Devil And now Behold I say unto you my Brethren if ye have experienced a change of heart & if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask can ye feel so now have ye walked keeping yourselves blameless before God, could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves that ye have been sufficiently humble that your garments have been cleansed & made white through the Blood of Christ which will Come to redeem his people from their sins, Behold are ye stripped of Pride, I say unto you if ye[532](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13091474250703994617" \o "Note) are not prepared to meet God, Behold ye must prepare quickly for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand and such an one hath not Eternal life, behold I say unto is there one among you who is not striped of envy I say unto you that such an one is not prepared & I would that he should prepare quickly for the hour is close at hand & he knoweth not when the time shall come for such an one is not found[533](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16065796487400992656" \o "Note) guiltless, & again I say unto you is there one among you that doth make a mock of his Brother or that heapeth upon him persecutions wo<​e​> unto such an one for he is not prepared & the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved yea even woe unto all ye workers of iniquity repent, repent for the Lord God hath spoken it behold he sendeth an Invitation unto all men for the arms of mercy is extended towards them & he sayeth repent & I will receive you yea he sayeth come unto me & ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life yea, ye shall Eat & drink of the bread & the waters of life freely. yea come unto me & bring forth works of [p. 181] righteousness & ye shall not be put[534](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2765880181720610052" \o "Note) down & cast into the fire for behold the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness the same hath cause to wail & mourn. O ye workers of iniquity ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the wourld ye that have proffessed to have known the ways of righteousness, nevertheless y[535](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5115614416163583571" \o "Note) have gone astray as sheep having no shepherd, ntwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you & art still calling ofter you but ye will not hearken unto his voice Behold I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call you, yea & in his own name he doth call you which is the name of Christ & if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd to the name by which ye are called Behold ye are not the sheep of the good Shepherd And now if ye are not the sheep[536](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5403097999942943259" \o "Note) of the good Shepherd of what fold are ye— Behold I say unto you that the Devil is your shepherd & ye are of his fold & now who can deny this. Behold I say unto you whosoever denyeth this is a liar & a child of the Devil for I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God.[537](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6224952828336848266" \o "Note) & whatsoever is evil cometh from the Devil therefore if a man bringeth forth good works harkeneth unto the voice of the good Shepherd and he doth follow him but whosoever bringeth forth evil works the same becometh a child of the devil for he harkeneth unto his voice & doth follow him & whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him therefore for his wages he receiveth Death as to things pertaining unto righteousness being dead unto all good works,[538](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7969411187222036978" \o "Note) And now my Brethren, I say unto you would that ye should hear me for I speak in the energy of my soul for behold I have spoken unto you plain that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God for I am called to speak after this manner according to the Holy Order of God which is in Christ Jesus yea I am commanded to stand & testify unto this People the things which have been spoken by our Fathers concerning the things which is to come & this is not all. do ye suppose that I know not of these things myself. Behold I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken ore true & how do ye suppose that I know of their surety Behold I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy spirit of God. Behold[539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4091238179519149599" \o "Note) I have fasted & prayed many days that I might know these things of myself & now I do know of myself that they ore true for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit & this is the spirit of revelation which is in me & moreover I say unto you that as it has thus been revealed unto me that the words which have been spoken by our Fathers are true even so according to the spirit of Prophecy which is in me which is also by the manifestations of the spirit of God I say unto you that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you concerning that which is to come is true & I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ [p. 182] shall come yea the son of the only bgotten of the Father full of grace & mercy and truth & behold it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world yea the sins of every man which stedfastly believeth on his name [540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14401655251597613977" \o "Note)& now I say unto you that this is the order ofter which I am called yea to speak unto my beloved Brethren yea & every one that dwelleth in the land yea to preach unto all both old & young both bond and free yea I say unto you the aged & also the young mddle aged & the rising Generation yea to cry unto them that they must repent & be born again yea thus sayeth the spirit repent all the Ye ends of the Earth for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand yea the Son of God comes cometh in his Glory in his might magisty Power & dominion yea my beloved Brethren I say unto you that the spirit saith behold the Glory of the King of all[541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7599028624483247751" \o "Note) the Earth & also the King of Heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men & also the spirit saith unto me yea crieth unto me with a mighty voice saying go forth & say unto this people repent for except ye repent ye[542](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14608661857930985171" \o "Note) can in no wise inherit the Kingdom of Heaven & again I say unto you the spirit saith behold the axe is laid at the root of the tree therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down & cast into the fire yea a fire which cannot be consumed even an unquenchable fire. Behold & remember the holy one hath spoken It & now my bloved Brethren I say unto you can ye withstand these sayings yea can ye lay aside these things & trample the Holy one under your feet yea can ye be puffed up in the[543](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6402977687575667232" \o "Note) pride of your hearts yea will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel & setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world upon your riches yea will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another yea will ye persist in the persecutions of your Brethren who humble themselves & do walk after the holy order of God wherewith they have been brought into this Church having been sanctified by the holy spirit & they do bring forth works which is meet for repentance yea & will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor & the Needy & withholding your substance from them & finally all ye that will persist in your wickedness I say you unto you that these are they which shall be hewn down & cast into the fire except they speedily[544](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6848325440390362627" \o "Note) repent and now I say unto you all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd come ye out from the wicked and be ye separate and touch not their unclean things and their names shall be blotted out that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous that the word of God may be fulfiled which sayeth the names of the wicked shall not be numbered mingled with the names of my People for the names of the righteous whall be written in the Book of life and to them will I grant an inheritance at my [p. 183] right hand & now my Brethren what have ye to say against this I say unto you if ye speak against it, it matters not for the word of God must be fulfilled for what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them that the wolves enter not and devour his flock and behold if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out yea & at the last if he can he will destroy him and now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you & if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold and ye are his Sheep and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you that ye may not be destroyed, and now I Alma do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you I speak by way of Command unto you that belong to the Church & Unto those which do not belong to the Church— & ◊◊to those who do not belong to the Church I speak by way of Invitation saying come and Baptised unto repentance that ye also may be partakers of the spirit of the tree[545](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9286934338337209085" \o "Note) of life——

Alma, Chapter 4 [Alma 6]

Chapter 4th.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church which was establisthed in the City of Zarahemla he ordained Priests & elders by laying on his hands according to the Order of God preside and watch over the church & it came to pass that whomsoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins was Baptised unto repentance and was received into the church & it also came to pass that womsoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God I mean those which were lifted up in the pride of their hearts the same were rejected and their names were blotted out that their names were not numbred among those of the righteous & thus they began to establish the order of the church in the City of Zarahemla now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that no one was deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft & join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the[546](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14849335246585833685" \o "Note) welfare of the Souls of those who knew not God & now It came to pass— that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them yea from the church which was in the City of Zarahemla & went over upon the east of the river Sidon into the valley of Gideon. there having been a City built which was Called the City of Gideon which was in the valley that was Called Gideon being Called after the man which was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword and Alma went and bgan to dclare the word [p. 184] of God unto the Church which was established in the valley of Gideon according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spake by his Fathers & according to the spirit of Prophecy which was in him according to the testimony of Jesus Christ the Son of God which should come for to redeem his people from <​their​> sins and the holy order by which he was called, and this thus it is written Amen——

Alma, Chapter 5 [Alma 7]

Chapter 5th.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the People in Gideon according to his own Reccord.— Behold my beloved Brethren seeing that I have been permited to come unto you therefore I attempt to address you in my language yea by my own mouth seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth I having been wholely confined to the Judgment seat having <​had​> much business that I could not come unto you and even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the Judgment seat hath been given to another to Reign in my stead and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you, and behold I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbleed yourselves before God and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace that I should find that ye were blameless before him that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our Brethren were in at Zarahemla but blessed be the name of God that he hath given unto me to know yea hath given unto me the exceeding great Joy of Knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness and I trust according to the spirit of God which is in me that I shall also have joy over you, nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the Brethren at Zarahemla for behold my joy cometh over them after wadeing through much afflictions and sorrow, but behold I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your Brethren[547](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8940694428454164414" \o "Note) I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts yea I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches & the vain things of the world yea I trust that you do not worship Idols but that ye do worship the true and the living God and that ye look forward for the remission of your Sins with an everlasting faith which is to come for behold I say unto you there be many things to come and behold there is one thing which is of more importance than they all for behold the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among His people Behold I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle for behold the spirit hath not said unto me this that this should be the case now as to this thing I do not know, but this much I d know that the Lord God hath power to do all things which is according to his word, but behold the spirit hath said this much [p. 185] unto me saying cry unto this people saying Repent ye, repent ye[548](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6424341583437392711" \o "Note) and prepare the way of the Lord and walk in his paths which are strait, for behold the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the Earth and behold he shall be born of Mary at Jerusalem which is the land of our fore Fathers She being a virgin a precious and Chosen Vessel who shall be over shadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost and bring forth a Son yea even the Son of God and he shall go forth suffering pain and affliction and temptation of every Kind and this this that the word might be fulfiled which sayith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people and he will take upon him Death that he may loose the bands of Death which bind his people[549](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13263668434002903049" \o "Note) and he will take upon him their infirmities that his bowels may be filled with mercy According to the flesh that he may know according to the flesh how to suffer[550](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8145847357040016305" \o "Note) his people according to their infermities, now the spirit knoweth all things nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people that he might blot out their transgresseons[551](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4950812148585619706" \o "Note) according to the power of his deliverance, and now behold this is the testimony which is in me, now I say unto you that ye must repent and and be born again for the spirit sayeth if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the Kingdom of Heaven therefore come and be Baptised unto repentance that ye may be washed from your sins that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God which taketh away the sins of the world which is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness[552](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "680208416031500987" \o "Note) yea I say unto you come and fear not and lay aside every Sin which easily doth beset you which doth bind you down to destruction yea come and go forth and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of Baptism and whosoever doeth this and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth the same will remember that I say unto him yea he will remember that I have said unto him he shall have eternal life according to the testimony of the holy spirit which testifieth in me, and now my beloved Brethren do you believe these things, behold I say unto you yea I know that you believe them and the way I That I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the spirit which is in me and now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea concerning the things which I have spoken great is my joy. for as I said unto you from the begining that I had much desire that ye wa◊ not in the state of dilemma like your Brethren even so I have found that my desires have been gratified for I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness I perceive that ye are in the paths which to leads to the Kingdom of God yea I perceive that ye are making his paths strait I perceive that it hath been made known unto you [p. 186] by the testimony of his word that he cannot walk in crooked paths neither doth he vary from that which he thah hath said neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left or from that which is right to that which is wrong therefore his coures is one Eternal round. he doth not dwell in unholy temples neither can filthiness or any thing which is unclean be received into the Kingdom of God therefore I say unto you the time shall come yea and it shall be at the last day that he whi◊h is filthy shall remain in his filthiness and now my beloved Brethren I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God that ye may walk blameless before him that ye may walk afher the holy <​order​> of God after which ye have been received and now I would that ye should be humble and be submissive and gentle easy to be entreated full of patience and long suffering being temperate in all things, being diligent in keeping the commadments of God at all times asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need both spiritual and temporal always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive and see that ye have faith hope and charity and then ye will always abound in good works, and may the Lord bless you and keep your garments spotless that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham Isaac and Jacob and the holy Prophets which have been ever since the wourld began having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless in the Kingdom of Heaven, to go no more out, and now my beloved Brethren I have spoken these unto you according to the spirit which testifieth in me and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word and now may the peace of God rest upon you and upon your houses and lands and upon your flocks and herds and all that you possess your women and your Children according to your and good works[553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2971535209205373855" \o "Note) from this time hense forth and forever & thus I have spoken Amen

Alma, Chapter 6 [Alma 8]

Chapter 3 6th.

And it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written having established the order of the church according is as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla yea he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed[554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10599634165379869940" \o "Note) and thus ended the ninth year of the Reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi, and it came to pass in the Commencement of the tenth year of the Reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek on the west of the river Sidon on the west by the borders of the wilderness and he began to preach teach the people in the land of Melek according [p. 187] to the holy order of God by which he had been called and he bgan to teach people throughout all the land of Melek and it came to pass that the people came to him all the borders of the land which was by the wildrness side and it came to pass that they were Baptised, throughout all the land so that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence & traveled three days journey on the north of the land of Melek and he came to a City which was called Ammonidah, now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their Lands and their Cities and their viliages yea even all their small viliages after the name of him who first possesed them and thus it was with the land of Ammonidah and it came to pass that when Alma had came to the City of Ammonidah he began to peach the word of God unto them, now satan had got great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonidah therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit wrestling with God in mighty power prayer that he would pour out his spirit upon the people which was in the city that he would also grant that he might Baptise them unto repentance nevertheless they hardened their hearts saying unto him behold we know that thou art Alma and we know that thou <​art​> high Preist over the Church which thou hast established in many parts of the land according to your tradition and we are not of thy Church we know that thou hast no power over us and we do not believe in such foolish traditions and now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us and thou hast delivered up the Judgment seat unto Nephiah therefore thou art not the Chief Judge over us now When the people had said this and had withstood all his words and reviled him & spit upon him and cursed that he should be cast of out of their City and he departed thence and took his journey towards the City which was Called Aaron, and it came to pass that while he was journeying thither being weighed down with sorrow wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul because of the wickedness of the people wh◊◊h was in the City of Ammonidah and it came to pass that while Alma was thus wighed down with sorrow Behold an Angel of the Lord appeared unto him saying Blessed art thou Alma therefore lift up thy head and rejoice for thou hast great cause to rejoice for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou received thy first message from him behold I am he that delivered it unto thee and behold I am sent to command thee that thou return to the City of Ammonidah and preach again unto the people of the City yea preach unto them yea[555](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9548392206157560386" \o "Note) [p. 188] say unto them except they repent the Lord God will destroy them for behold they do studdy at this time that they may dstroy the liberty of the thy People for thus saith the Lord[556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13557918178474322440" \o "Note) which is contrary to the statutes and Judgments and commandments which he hath given unto his People, now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the Angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah, and it came to pass that he entered the City by another way yea by the way which was on the South of the City Ammonihah, and It came to pass that as he entered the City he was an hungered and he saith to a man[557](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17923086208333447353" \o "Note) will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat and the man saith unto him I am a Nephite and I know that thou art a holy Prophet of God for thou art the man which an Angel saith in a vision thou shalt receive therefore go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my favor and I know that thou will be a blessing unto me and my house And it came to pass that the man received him into his house and the man was Called Amulek and he brought Bread and meat and sat before Alma and it came to pass that Alma ate Bread and was filled and he blessd Amulek and his house and he gave thanks unto God, And after he had eat and was filled he saith unto Amulek, I am Alma and am the high Priest over the churches[558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4941375522702711625" \o "Note) of God throughout the land, And behold I have been called to Preach the word of God among all this People according to the spirit of revelation and Prophecy. and I was in this land and they would not receive me but they Cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever, but behold I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophe◊y unto this people yea and to testify against them concerning their iniquities & now Amulek because thou hast fed me and took me in, thou art blessed for I was an hungered for I had fasted many days, And it came to pass that Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people,[559](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8044840566753021204" \o "Note) and it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities, and the word came to Alma saying go and also say unto my servant Amulek[560](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9551880630521433537" \o "Note) go forth prophesy unto this people saying repent ye for thus saith the Lord except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger yea & I will not turn my fierce anger away and it came to pass that Alma went forth and also Amulek among the people to declare the words of God unto them and they were filled with the holy Ghost and they had power given unto them in so much that they Could not be confined in dungeons neither were it possible that any man could slay them nevertheless they did not exercise their power untill they were bound in bands and cast into prison now this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them and it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them——[561](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11687160925470744406" \o "Note) [p. 189]

Alma, Chapter 7 [Alma 9]

Chapter 7th.

The words of Alma and also the words of Amulek which was declared unto the people which was in the land of Amonihah and also they ore cast into prison and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them according to the Reccord of Alma— And again I Alma having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek & go forth & preach again unto this people or the people which was in the city of Amonihah and it came to pass as I began to preach unto them they began to contend with me saying, who art thou suppose ye that we shall believe the Testimony of one man although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away now they understood not the words which they spake for they knew not thot the earth should pass away and they sayeth also we will not believe thy words if thou shouldst Prophecy that this great city should be destroyed in one day now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works for they were a hard hearted & a stiffnecked peopls & they sayeth who is God that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people to dclare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things and they stood forth to lay their hands on me but Behold they did not, and I stood with Boldness to declare unto them yea I did boldly testify unto them saying Behold O ye wiked and perverse Generation how have ye forgotten the tradition of your Fathers yea how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God do ye not remember that our Father Lehi was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God do ye not remember that they wre all led by him through the wilderness and have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our Fathers out of the hands of their Enemies and preserved them from being destroyed even by the hands of their own Brethren yea & if it had not been for his matchless power and his mercy and his long suffering towards us we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe, Behold now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent and except ye repent ye can not in no wise inherit the Kingdom of God but Behold this is not all he hath Commanded you to repent or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth yea he will visit you in his anger. and in his fierce anger, he will not turn away behold do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi saying that in as much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land and again it is said that in as much as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the prese presance of the Lord now I would that ye should remember that in as much as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments [p. 190] of Gode they have been cut off from the presance of the Lord now we see that the word of the Lord hath been verrified in this thing and the Lamanites have been Cut off from his presence from the begining of their transgressions in the Lord Land nevertheless I say unto you that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of Judgment than for you if ye remain in your sins yea and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you except ye repent for there are many promises which is extended to the Lamanites for it is because of the traditions of their Fathers that causes them to remain in their state of ignorance therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existance in the land and at some periad of time they will be brought to believe in his work word and to know of the incorrectness of the tradtions of their Fathers and many of them will be saved for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name, but Behold I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not and ye shall be visited with utter destruction and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord for he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities to destroy his people, I unto you nay he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all this people which is called the People of Nephi if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of their Lord their God yea after having been such a highly favoured People of the Lord yea after having been favored above every others Nation Kindred tongue or people after having[562](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16581218228061606329" \o "Note) had all things made known unto them according to their desires and their faith and prayers of that which has been and which is and which is to come having been visited by the spirit of God having conversed with Angels and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord and having the spirit of prophesy and the spirit of revelation and also many gifts the gift of speaking with tongues and the gift of preaching and the gift of the holy Ghost and the gift of translation yea and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem by the hand of the Lord having been saved from famine and from sicknesses and all manner of diseases of every kind and they having been waxed strong in battle that they might not be destroyed having been brought out of bondage time after time and having been kept and preserved until now, and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things. And now behold I say unto you that if this People who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have I say unto you thot if this be the case thot if they should fall into transgressions[563](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12276838438329984717" \o "Note) thot it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them, for behold the promises [p. 191] of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites but they are not unto you if ye transgress for hath not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed that if ye will rebell against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth and now for this this cause that ye may not be destroyed the Lord hath sent his Angel to visit many of his people dclareing unto them thot they must go forth and cry mightily unto this People saying repent ye repent ye[564](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13570802358327474712" \o "Note) for the Kingdom of Heaven is nigh at hand and not many days hence the son of God shall come in his Glory and his Glory shall be the Glory of the only begoten of the Father full of Grace equity and truth full of patience mercy and long suffering quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their payers and behold he cometh to redeem those who will be Baptised unto Repentance through faith on his name therefore prepare ye the way of the Lord for the time is at hand that every man shall reap a reward of their[565](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4396159289610983124" \o "Note) works according <​to​> that which they have been if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls according to the power and Captivation of the Devil now Behold this is the voice of the Angel Crying unto the people and now my beloved Brethren for ye are my Brethren and ye had aught to be bloved and ye had aught to bring forth works which is mete for repentance seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the[566](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17272229748063557987" \o "Note) word of God and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people, now it came to pass that when I Alma had spoken these words Behold the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they was a hard hearted and a stiffnecked People and also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they was angry with me and saught to lay <​their​> hands upon that they might cast me into Prison but it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time & cast me into prison and it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth and began to preach unto them also and now the words of Amulek are not all written nevertheless a part of his words are written in this Book——[567](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1565600928444358382" \o "Note)

Alma, Chapter 8 [Alma 10–11]

Chapter 8th. Now these ore the words which Amulek preached unto the people which was in the land of Amonihah saying. I am Amulek I am the son of Gidanah[568](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "27697882612226260" \o "Note) who was the son of Ishmael who was a descendant of Aminadi and it was that same Aminadi which interprted the writing which was upon the wall of the Temple which was written by the finger of God and Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi who came out of the land of Jerusalem who was a descendant Manassah who was the son [p. 192] of Joseph which was sold into Egypt by the hands of his Brethren, and behold I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know[569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8930775030383793317" \o "Note) me yea and behold I have many kindred and friends and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my Industry nevertheless after all this I never have known much of the ways of the Lord and his mysteries and marvelous power, I said I never had known much of these things but Behold I mistake for I have seen much of his mysteries and his myraculous[570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7457668817144219099" \o "Note) power yea even in the preservation of the lives of this people nevertheless I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear, therefore knew concerning these things, yet I would not know therefore I went on rebelling against God in the wickedness of my heart even until the fourth day of this seventh month which is in the tenth year of the Reign of our[571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15238301797450205001" \o "Note) Judges. as I was a Journeying to see a very near Kindred Behold an Angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said Amulek return to thine own house for thou shalt feed a Prophet of the Lord yea a holy man which art a chosen man of God for he hath fasted many dyse becauese of the sins of this people and he is an hungered and thou shall receive him into thy house and feed him and he shall bless thee and thy house, [572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11398922893305646156" \o "Note)and it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the Angel and returned towards my house and as I was a going thither I found the man which the Angel said unto me thou shalt receive into thy house, and behold it was this same man which hath been speaking unto you concerning the things of God[573](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9268448920885432515" \o "Note) & the angel said into unto me he is a holy man wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an Angel of God, and again I know that the things wereof he hath testified are true for <​bhold​> I say unto you that as the Lord[574](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4131589901802475713" \o "Note) liveth, even so he hath sent his Angel to make these things manifest unto me and this he hath done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house, for behold he hath Blessed mine house, he hath blessed me & my women and my Children and my Father and my kinsfolks yea even all my kindred hath he blessed and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake [575](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15554955086012747479" \o "Note)& now when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished seeing there was more than one witness which testified of the things whereof they were accused and also of the things which was to come according to the spirit of prophesy which was in them nevertheless there were some among them which thought to question them that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words that they might find witness against them that they might deliver them to the Judges that they might be Judged according to the Law and that they might be slain or cast into Prison according to the crime which they could make appear on witness against them now it was those men which [p. 193] sought to destroy them which were Lawrers which were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the Judges, now these Lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people and this was to enable them that they might be skillful in their profession, And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek that thereby they might make him cross his words or contradict the words which he should speak now they knew not that Amulek could know of their design, but it came to pass as they began to question him he perceived their thoughts and he saith unto them, O. ye wicked and perverse Generation ye lawyers and hypocrites for ye are laying the foundations of the Devil for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy wones of God ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads even to the utter destruction of this people, yea well did Mosiah say who was our last King when he was about to deliver up the Kingdom having no one to confer it upon causing that this people should be governed by their own voices yea well did[576](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6799103551953669689" \o "Note) he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should cause iniquity that is if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression they would be ripe for destruction and now I say unto you that well doth the Lord Judge of your iniquities well doth he cry unto this people by the voice of his Angels repent ye repent ye for the Kingdom of heaven is at hand yea well doth he cry by the voice of his Angels that I will come down among my people with equity and Justice in my hands yea and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous which are now in the land that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction yet it would not be by flood as were the people in the days of Noah but it would be by famine and by pestilence and the sword but it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared now therefore if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand but in his fierce anger he will come out against you then ye shall be smitten by famine and by pestilence and by the sword and the time is soon at hand except ye repent. [577](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5375473277198824157" \o "Note)And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek and they cried out saying this man doth revile against our laws which are just and our wise Lawyers which we have selected but Amulek streached forth his hand and cried the mightier unto them saying O ye wicked and perverse Generation why has hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he[578](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5247021286541077484" \o "Note) may have power [p. 194] over you to blind your eyes that ye will not understand words which are spoken according their truth, for Behold have I testified against your law ye do not uderstond ye say that I have spoken against your law, but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law to your condemnation and now Behold I say unto you that the foundation of the destruction of this people is ◊[579](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "47136548479482609" \o "Note) begining to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your Judges and now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him [580](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5828311112461672153" \o "Note)now we know that this man is a child of the Devil for he hath hath <​lieed​> unto us for he hath spoken against our Law and now he[581](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1121982079798236520" \o "Note) saith that he hath not spoken it and again he hath reviled against our Lawyers and our Judges &c. and it come to pass that the Lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him and it came to pass that there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom now he being the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma he being one of the most expert among them having[582](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11925789901615574099" \o "Note) much business to do among the people now the object of these Lawyers were to get gain and they got gain according to their employ now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man which was a Judge of the Law or which was appointed to be Judges should receive wages according to the time which they Labored to judge those which were brought before them to be Judged, now if a man oweth another and he would not pay that which he did owe he was complained of to the Judge and the Judge executed authority and send sent forth Officers that the[583](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8990037521191329838" \o "Note) man should be brought before him and Judgeth the man according to the law and the witnesses which are brought against him and thus the man is compelled to pay that which he oweth or be striped[584](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15132650120371815829" \o "Note) or be cast is out from among the people as a thief and a robber and the Judge receiveth for his wages according to his time a senire of Gold for a day or a senum of silver which is equal to a senine of Gold and this is according to the Law which was given, now these are the names of the different pieces of their Gold and of their silver according to their value and the names are given by the[585](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11655561124078675819" \o "Note) Nephites for they did not reckon ofter the manner of the Jews which were at Jerusalem neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews but they altered their reckoning and their measure according to the minds and the circumstances of the people in every Generation until the reign of the Judges they having been established by King Mosiah now the reckoning is thus a senine of Gold a sean of Gold a shum of Gold and a limnah of Gold A senum of silver an amnor of silver an ezrum[586](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12760602758752555275" \o "Note) of silver and an onthi of silver a senum of silver was equal to a senine of Gold an either for a measure of barley and also for a measure of every kind of grain now the amount of a sean of Gold was twice the value of a senine and a shum of Gold was [p. 195] twice the value of a sean. and a limnah[587](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1679303177776627087" \o "Note) of Gold was the value of them all, and an amnor of silver was as great as two senums, and an ezrum of silver was as great as four senums, and anti was as great as them all, now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning, a shiblon is half of a senum therefore a shiblon for[588](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12450682140731910994" \o "Note) half a measure of Barley and a shilum[589](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6163287091884575259" \o "Note) is a half of a shiblon and a leah is the half of the shilum now an antion of Gold is equal to three shiblons[590](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4548953873809930029" \o "Note) now this is their number according to their reckoning. [591](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17669489180352971695" \o "Note)now it was for the sole purpose for to get gain because they received their wages according to their employ therefore they did stir up the people to riotings and all manner of disturbances and wickedness that they might have more employ that they might get money according to the suits which was brought[592](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11757935264328403670" \o "Note) before them therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek. and this Zeezrom began to question Amulek saying will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you now Zeezrom was a man which was expert in the devices of the Devil thot he might destroy that which was good therefore he saith unto Amulek will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you and Amulek saith unto him yea I will[593](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6562140596898575384" \o "Note) if it be according to the spirit of the Lord which is in me for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the spirit of the Lord and Zeezrom saith unto him behold here is six anties of silver and all these will I give unto thee if thou wilt deny the existance of a supreme being. Now Amulek saith O, thou child of Hell why tempt ye me knoweth thou that[594](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3634411750032709104" \o "Note) the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations believest thou that there is no God, I say unto you nay thou knowest thot there is a God but thou lovest that lucre more than him and now thou hast lied before God unto me for thou saidest unto me behold these six onties which are of great worth I will give unto thee when thou had it in thy heart to retain them from me and it was only thy desires that I should deny the true and living God that thou mightest have cause to destroy me and behold for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward and Zeezrom saith unto him<​,​> thou sayest there is a true and a living God and Amulek sait◊ yea there is a true and a living God now Zeezrom saith is there more than one God and he answereth no now Zeezrom saith [595](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1542410914046206" \o "Note)unto him again how knowest thou these things and he saith an Angel hath made them known unto me and Zeezrom saith again who is he thot shall come is it the son of God; and he said unto him yea, and Zeezrom saith gain[596](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14154485917180217250" \o "Note) shall he save his people in their sins and Amulek answered and said unto him I say unto you he shall not for it is impossble for him to deny his word [597](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10393040948375437407" \o "Note)now Zeezrom saith unto the people see that ye remembr these things for he sait◊ there is but one God yet he saith that the son of God shall come but he shall not save his people as though he had authority to command God, now Amulek said again unto him behold thou hast lied for thou sayest that I spake[598](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1101278122416963442" \o "Note) as though I had authority to com [p. 196]mand God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins and I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins for I cannot deny his word and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the Kingdom of Heaven therefore how can ye be saved except ye inherit the Kingdom of Heaven therefore ye cannot be saved in your sins now Zeezrom saith again unto him is it the s◊n of God the very eternal Father and Amulek saith unto him yea he is the very Eternal Father of Heaven and earth and all things which in them is he is the begining and the end the first and the last and he shall come into the world to redeem his people and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name and these are they that shall have eternal[599](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17440190071469849651" \o "Note) life and salvation cometh to none else therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redmption made except it be the looseing of the bands of death, for Behold the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead <​&​> stand before God and be judged according to his works. now there is a death which is called temporal death, and the death of Christ, shall loose the bands of this temporal death that all shall be raised from this temporal death the spirit and the body shall be re united again in its perfect form both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame even as we now are at this time and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now and have a bright reccollection of all our guilt, now this restoration shall come to all both Old[600](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7939827975017617360" \o "Note) and young both bond and free both male and female both the wicked and the righteous and there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost but all things shall be restored to its perfect frame as it is now on and in the body and shall be brought & be reigned[601](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5574197880174761666" \o "Note) before the bar of Christ the son and God the Father and the Holy spirit which[602](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4975343121988273989" \o "Note) one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil [603](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9953971752202730197" \o "Note)now behold I have spoken <​unto​> to you concerning the death of the mortal body and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body that is from death even from the first death unto life that they can die no more their spirits uniting with their bodies never to be divided thus the whole becomeing spiritual and immortal that they can no more see corruption now when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished and also Zeezrom began to tremble and thus ended the words of Amulek or this is all that I have written

Alma, Chapter 9 [Alma 12–13:9]

Chapter 9th.

Now Alma seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lieings and deceivings to destroy him and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him and to establish the words of Amulek and to explain thing beyond or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom was heard by the people round about, for the [p. 197] multitude was great and he spake on this wise. now Zeezrom seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lieings and Craftiness[604](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8359136924010950858" \o "Note) for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God for behold he knows all thy thoughts and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by this spirit and thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan as to the subtlety of the Devil for to lie and to deceive this people thou that thou mightest set them against us to revile us and to Cast us out now this was a plan of thine adversary and he hath exercised his power in thee now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all and behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary which he hath laid to catch this people that he might bring you into subjection unto him that he might encircle you about with his Chains that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction according to the power of his captivity. Now when Alma had spoken these words Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly for he was convinced more and more of the power of God, and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his hearts[605](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12456052132841887673" \o "Note) for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophesy[606](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18441433576693785951" \o "Note) Zeezrom began to enquire of them diligently that he might know more concerning the Kingdom of God and he sait◊ unto Alma what does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead that all shall rise from the dead both the just and the unjust and are brought to stand before God to be Judged according to their works and now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying it is given unto many to know the mysteries of God nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men according to the heed an<​d​> diligence which they give unto him therefore he that will harden his heart the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word and he that will not harden his heart to him is given the greater portion of the word until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God intil they knew them in full and he that will harden his heart to him is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing Concerning his mysteries and then they are taken captive by the Devil and led by the chains of Hell and Amulek his will down to destruction, now this is what is ment by the chains of Hell and Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality and being brought before the bar of God to be judged according to are our works then if our hearts have been hardened yea if we have hardened our hearts against the word insomuch that it hath not been found in us then will our state be awful for then we shall be condemned for our work◊ words will condemn us yea all our work[607](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3586073485811659437" \o "Note) will condemn us we shall not be found spotless and our thoughts will also condemn us and in this awful state we shall not dearst look up to our God and would fane be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence but this cannot be we must come forth and stand before him in his glory [p. 198] and in his power and in his might magesty and dominion and acknowledge to their everlasting shame that all his judgments are just that he is just in all his works and that he is merciful unto the children of men and that he hath all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit mete for repentance, and now behold I say unto you then cometh a death even a second death which is a spiritual death then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins as to the temporal death shall also die a spiritual death, yea he shall die, as to things pertaining unto righteousness then is the time when their torment◊ shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone whose flames asscendeth up forever and forever[608](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15994780655762824669" \o "Note) and then is the time thot thy shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction according to the power and captivity of Satan having subjected them according to his will then I say unto you they shall be as though there had been no redemption made for they cannot be redeemed according to Gods justice and they cannot die seeing there is no more corruption.[609](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16841097022504175131" \o "Note) [610](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10137660027720490334" \o "Note)Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words the people began to be more astonished but there was one Antionah who was a chief Ruler among them came forth and said unto him what is this that thou hast said that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state that the soul can never die. what does this scripture mean which saith that God placed Cherabs Cherabim◊ and a flameing sword on the East of the Garden of Eden lest our first Parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life and live forever and thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever, now Alma saith unto him this is the thing which I[611](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2214751684841105323" \o "Note) was about to explain now we see that Adam did fall by partakeing of the forbidden fruit according to the word of God and thus we see that by his fall that all mankind became a lost and a fallen people and now behold I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam for to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time that there would have been no death and the word would have been void makeing God a liar for he said if thou eat thereof[612](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6164705160640549100" \o "Note) thou shalt surely die and we see that death comes upon mankind yea the death which has been spoken of by Amulek which is the temporal death nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent therefore this life became a probationary state a time to prepare to meet God a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us which is after the resurrection of the dead now if it had not been for the plan of redemption which was laid from the foundation of the world there could have been no resurrection of the dead but there was a plan of redemption laid which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead of which has been spoken. and now behold if it were possible that our first Parents could have went forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable having no preparatory state and thus the plan of redemption would [p. 199] have been frustrated and the word of God would have been void taking none effect but behold behold it was not so but it was appointed unto man they that they must die and after death they must come to judgment even that same judgment of which we have spoken which is the end and affter God had appointed that these should come unto man behold then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them therefore he sent Angels to converce with them which caused men to Behold of[613](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6551653495152383486" \o "Note) his Glory and they began from that time forth to call on his name therefore God conversed with men and make made known unto them the plan of redemption which had been prepared from the foundation of the world and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works wherefore he gove commandments unto men they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal and becoming as Gods knowing good from evil placing themselves in a state to act or being placed in a state to act according to their will<​s​> and pleasure<​s​> whether to do good evil or to do good therefore God gave unto them commandments after having made known unto them the plan of redemption that they should not do evil the penalty thereof being a second death which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness for on such the plan of redemption could have no power for the works of justice could not be destroyed according to the supreme goodness of God but God did call on men in the name of his Son this being the plan of redemption which was laid saying if ye will repent and harden not your hearts then will I have mercy upon you through mine only begotten Son therefore whosoever repenteth and hardeneth not his heart he shall have claim on mercy through mine only begotten Son unto a remission of their sins and these shall enter into my rest and shosoever will harder his heart and will do iniquity Behold I swear in my wrath that they shall not enter into my rest and now my Brethren behold I say unto you that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation yea according to his word in the last provocation as well as in the first to the everlasting destruction of your souls therefore according to his word until the last death as well as the first, and now my Brethren seeing we know these things and they are true let us repent and not hardenharden not our hearts that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he hath given unto us but let us enter into the rest of God which is prepaired according to his word. and again my Brethren I would Cite your minds forwards to the time which the Lord God gave these commandments unto his Children and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordined Priests after his holy order which[614](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2820214995911240689" \o "Note) was after the order of his Son to teach these things unto the people and those Priests [p. 200] were ordained after the order of his son in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption and this is the manner after which they were ordained being Called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the fore knowledge of God on account of their exceeding faith and good works in the first place being left to Choose good or evil therefore they having chosen good exercising exceeding great faith are called with a holy calling yea with that holy calling which was prepared with[615](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17154555450348777625" \o "Note) and according to a preparatory redemption for such and thus they having been called to this holy Calling on account of their faith while others would ◊[616](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6597219457299935774" \o "Note) reject the spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds while if it had not been for this they might had as great privilege as their Brethren or in fine in the first place they were on the same standing with their Brethren thus this holy calling Being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts being in & through the atonement of the only begotten Son which was prepared and thus being Called by this holy Calling and ordained unto the high Priesthood of the holy order of God to teach his Commandments unto the children of men that they also might enter into his rest this highpriesthood being after the order of his son which order was from the foundation of the world or in other words being without begining of days or end of years being prepared from eternity to all eternity according to his foreknowledge of all things now they were ordained after this manner being Called with a holy Calling and ordained with a holy ordinance and takeing upon themselves the high Priesthood of the holy order which calling and ordinance and high Priesthood is without beginning or end thus they become high Priests forever after the order of the son of the only begotten of the Father which is without begining of days or end of years which is full of Grace equity and truth and thus it is Amen——

Alma, Chapter 10 [Alma 13:10–15:19]

Chapter 10th.

Now as I said concerning the holy Order or[617](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4621055464349888860" \o "Note) this High Priesthood there were many which were Ordained and became high Priests of God and it was on account of the exceding faith and repentance and their righteousness before God they chooseing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish therefore they were Called after this holy order and were sanctified and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb now they after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost having their garments made white being pure and spotless before God could not look upon sin save it were with abhorence and there were many, an[618](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4835590007943028452" \o "Note) exceeding great many which were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God, and now my Brethren I would that ye should humble yourselves before God and bring forth fruit Mete for repentance that ye may also enter into that rest yea [p. 201] humlle yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchezidek who was also a high Priest after this same Order which I have spoken who also took upon him the high Priesthood forever. and it was this same Melchezidek to whom Abraham paid tithes yea even our Father Abraham paid tithes of one tenth part of all he possessed. now their[619](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17618384859886109822" \o "Note) ordinances were given after this manner that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God it being a type of his Order or it being his Order and this that they might look forward to Him for a remission of their sins that they might enter into their rest of the Lord, Now this Melchesidek was a King over the land of Salem and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abominations yea they had all gone astray they were full of all manner of wickedness but Melchesidek having exercised mighty faith and received the office of the high Priesthood according to the holy order of God did preach repentance unto his people, and behold they did repent and Melchesidek did establish Peace in the Land in his days, therefore he was Called the Prince of Peace for he was the King of Salem and he did Reign under his Father. now there were many before him and also there were many afterwards but none were greater therefore of him they have more particularly made mention, now I need not rehearse the matter what I have said may suffise behold the scriptures are before you if ye will [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#13398400482747735321)arest them it shall be to your own destruction & now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them he streached forth his hand unto them & cried with a mighty voice saying now is the time to repent for the day of salvation draweth nigh yea & the voice of the Lord by the mouth of Angels doth declare it unto all nations yea doth declare it that they may have glad tidings of great joy <​yea​> & he doth sound these glad tidings among all his People yea even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth wherefore they have come unto us & they are made known unto us in plain terms that we may understand that we cannot err & this because of our being wanderers in a strange land therefore we are thus highly favoured for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard for behold algels are declareing it [620](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1435536382172850560" \o "Note)unto many at this time in our land & this is for the purpose of prepareing the hearts of the children of men f◊r to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory & now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels of his coming for the time cometh we know not how soon would to God that it might be in my day but let it be sooner or later in it I will rejoice [p. 202] & it shall be <​made​> known unto just & holy men by the mouth of angels at the time of his coming that the words of our fathers might be fulfiled according to that which they have spoken concerning him which was according to the spirit of prophesy which was in them & now my brethren I wish from the inmost part of my heart yea with great anxniety even unto pain that ye would hearken unto my words & cast off your sins & not procrastinate the day of your repentance but that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord & call on his holy name & watch & pray continually that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear & thus be lead by the holy spirit becoming humble meek submissive patient full of love & all long suffering having faith on the Lord having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life having the love of God always in your hearts that ye may be lifted up at the last day & enter into his rest & may the Lord grant unto you repentance that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell that ye may not suffer the second death & it came to pass that Alma spake many more words unto the People which are not written in this Book & it came to pass that after he had made an end of speaking unto the People many of them did believe on his words & began to repent & to search the scriptures but the more part of them were desireous that they might destroy Alma & Amulek for they were angry with Alma because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom & they also said that Amulek had lied unto them & had reviled against their law & also against their lawyers & Judges & they were also angry with Alma & Amulek because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness they sought to put them away privelly but it came to pass that they did not but they took them & bound them with strong cords & took them before the chief Judge of the land & the People went forth & witnessed against them testifying that they had reviled against their[621](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1535069032049786367" \o "Note) law & their lawyers & Judges of the land & also all the people that were in the land & also testified that there was but one God & that he should send his Son among the People but he should not save them & many such things did the People testify against Alma & Amulek & it came to pass that it was done before the Chief [p. 203] Judge of the land & it also came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken & he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds which he had caused among the People by his lieing words & his soul began to be harrowed up under a conciousness of his own guilt yea he began be[622](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15828352682874861738" \o "Note) be enserceled about by the pains of hell & it came to pass that he began to cry unto the People saying behold I am guilty & these men are spotless before God & it came to pass that he began to plead for them from from that time forth but they reviled him saying art thou also possessed with the devil & it came to pass that they spit upon him & cast him out from among them & also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma & Amulek & they cast them out & sent men to cast stones at them & they brought their wives & children together & whosoever had[623](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2890381396706410313" \o "Note) believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire & they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures & cast them into the fire also that they might be burned & destroyed by fire & it came to pass that they took Alma & Amulek & carried them forth to the place of marterdom that they might witness the destruction of those which were consumed by fire & it came to pass that when Amulek saw the pains of the women & children which were consumeing in the fire he was also pained & he saith unto Alma how can we witness this awful seen therefore let us streach forth our hands & exercise the power of God which is in us & save them from the flames but Alma saith unto him the spirit constraineth me that I must not streach forth mine hand for behold the Lord receiveth them up <​un​>to himself in glory & he doth suffer that they may do this thing or that the people may do this thing unto them according to the hardness of their hearts that the Judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just & the blood of the inocent shall stand as a witness against them yea & cry mightily against them at the last day now Amulek saith unto Alma behold perhaps they will burn us also & Alma saith be it according to the will of God <​the​> Lord but behold our work is not finished therefore they burn us not now it came to pass that when the bodies of those which had been cast into the fire were consumed & also the records which were cast in with them the chief Judge of the land came & stood before Alma & Amulek as they were bound & he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks & saith unto them after [p. 204] what ye have seen will ye preach again unto this people that they shall be cast into a lake of fire & brimstone beholold ye see that ye had not power to save them which had been cast into the fire neither hath God saved them because they were of thy faith & the Judge smote them again upon their cheeks & asked what say ye for yourselves now this Judge was after the order & faith of Nehor which slew Gideon & it came to pass that Alma & Amulek answered him nothing & he smote them again & delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison & it came to pass that when they had been cast into prison three days there came many lawyers & Judges & Priests & teachers which were of the profession of Nehor & they came in unto the prison to see them & they questioned them about many words & <​but​> they answered them nothing & it came to pass that the Judge stood before them & sayeth why do ye not answer the words of this people know ye not that I have power to deliver ye up unto the flames & he commanded them to speak but they answered nothing & it came to pass that they departed & went their ways but came again on the morrow & the Judge also smote them again on their cheeks & many came forth also & smote them saying will ye stand again & Judge this People & condemn our law if ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves & many such things did they say unto them gnashing their teeth upon them & spitting upon them & saying how shall we look when we are damned & many such things yea all manner of such things did they say unto them & thus they did mock them for many days & they did withhold food from them that they might hunger & water that they might thirst & they also did take from them their cloths that they were naked & thus they were bound with strong cords & confined in prison & it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many[624](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16891384048096283991" \o "Note) days & it was on the twelvth day in the tenth month in the tenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi that the chief Judge over the land of Amonihah & many of their teachers & their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma & Amulek was bound with cords & the chief Judge stood before them & smote them again & saith unto them if ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands & then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this People according to your words & it came to pass that they all went forth & smote them saying the same words even until the last & when [p. 205] the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma & Amulek & they arose & stood upon their feet & Alma creied saying how long shall we suffer these great afflictions O Lord O Lord give us strength according to our faith which is in christ even unto deliverance & they brake the cords with which they were bound & when the people saw this they began to flee for the fear of destruction had come upon them & it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth & did not obtain the outer door of the prison & the earth shook mightily & the walls of the prison were wrent in twain so that they fell to the earth & the chief Judge & the lawyers <​& priests​> & teachers which smote upon Alma & Amulek were slain by the fall thereof & Alma & Amulek came forth out of the prison & they were not hurt for the Lord had granted unto them power according to their faith which was in christ & they straitway came forth out of the prison & they were loosed from their bands & the prison had fallen to the earth & every soul which was within the walls thereof save it were Alma & Amulek were slain & they <​straitway​> came forth into the city now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it & when they saw Alma & Amulek coming forth out of the prison & the walls thereof had fallen to the earth they were struck with great fear & fled from the presance of Alma & Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions & thus they did flee from the presance of Alma & Amulek & it came to pass that Alma & Amulek were commanded to depart out of the <​that​> land <​city​> & they departed & came out even into the land of Sidom & behold there they found all the people which had departed out of the land of Amonihah who had been cast out & stoned because they believed in the words of Alma & they related unto them all that had hapened unto their wives & children & also concerning themselves & of their power of deliverance & also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom with a burning fever which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness for he supposed that Alma & Amulek was no more & he supposed that they had been slain by the cause of his iniquity & by this great sin & his many other sins did harrow [p. 206] up his mind until it did become exceding sore having no deliverance therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat now when he heard that Alma & Amulek was in the land of Sidom his heart began to take courage & he sent a message immediately unto them desireing them to come unto him & it came to pass that they went immediately obeying the message which he had sent unto them & they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom & they found him upon his bed sick being verry low with a burning fever & his mind also was exceding sore because of his iniquities & when he saw them he streached forth his hand & besaught them that they would heal him & it came to pass that Alma said unto him taking him by the hand believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation & he answered & said yea I believe all the words that thou hast taught & Alma saith if thou believest in the redemption of christ thou canst believe <​be healed​> & he saith yea I believe according to thy words & then Alma cried unto the Lord saying O Lord our God have mercy on this man & heal him according to his faith which is in christ & it came to pass th◊t when Alma had said these words <​that​> Zeezrom leaped upon his feet & began to walk & this was done to the great astonishment of all the people & the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom & Alma baptised Zeezrom unto the Lord & he began from that time forth to preach unto the people & Alma established a church in the land of Sidom & consecrated Priests & teachers in the land to baptise unto the Lord whosoever were desireous to be baptised & it came to pass that they were many for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom & were baptised but as to the people that were in the land of Amonihah they yet remained a hardhearted & a stiffnecked people & they repented not of their sins ascribing all the power of Alma & Amulek to the Devil for they were of the profession of Nehor & did not believe in the repentance of their sins & it came to pass that Alma & Amulek Amulek having forsaken all his gold & his silver & his precious things which was in the land of Amonihah for the word of God [p. 207] he being rejected by those which were once his friends & also by his father & his kindred therefore after Alma having established the church at Sidom seeing a great check yea seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts & began to humble themselves before God & began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar watching & praying continually that they might be delivered from Satan & from death & from destruction now as I said Alma having seen all these things therefore he took Amulek & came over to the land of Zarahemla & took him to his own house & did administer unto him in his tribulations & strengthened him in the Lord & thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi——[625](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3536106718007230547" \o "Note)

Alma, Chapter 11 [Alma 16]

Chapter [blank]——

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi on the fifth day of the second month there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla <​there​> having been no wars nor contensions for a certain number of years even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year there was a cry of war heard through<​out​> the land for behold the armies of the Lamanites had come in on the wilderness side into the borders of the[626](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7728094461118076187" \o "Note) land even into the city of Amonihah & began to slay the people & to destroy the city [627](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7233505758995114651" \o "Note)& now it came to pass before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land they had destroyed the people which were in the city of Amonihah & also some around the borders of Noah & taking others captive into the wilderness [628](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11041685680869813147" \o "Note)now it came to pass that the Nephites were desireous to obtain those which had been carried away captive into the wilderness therefore <​he​> that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites & his name was Zoram & he had two Sons Lehi & Aha now Zoram & his two Sons knowing that Alma was high priest over the church[629](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10532050935095889418" \o "Note) & having heard that he had the spirit of Prophesy therefore they went unto him & desired of him to know[630](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13705796684196933547" \o "Note) wheher they the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites [631](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9925946377960721133" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Alma enquired of the Lord concerning the matter & Alma returned & said unto them behold the Lamanites will cross the River Sidon in the South [p. 208] wilderness away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti & behold & beh <​there​> shall ye meet them on the east of the river Sidon & there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren which have been taken captive by the Lamanites [632](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17152202917706037880" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Zoram & his Sons crossed over[633](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14394737900547769500" \o "Note) the river Sidon with their armies & marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the South wilderness which was on the east side of the river Sidon & they came upon the armies of the Lamanites & the Lamanites were scattered & driven into the wilderness & they took their brethren which had been taken captive by the Lamanites◊ & there was not one soul of them which had been lost that were taken captive & they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands & thus ended the eleventh year of the Judges the Lamanites having been driven out of the land & the people of Amonihah were destroyed yea every living soul of the Amonihahites were destroyed & also their great city which they said God could not destroy because of its greatness but behold in one day it was left desolate & their carcases were mangeled by dogs & by wild beasts of the wilderness nevertheless after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth & they were covered[634](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5537695581562870061" \o "Note) with a shallow covering & now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Amonihah for many days <​years​> & it was called desolation of Nehors for they were of the profession of Nehor which were slain & their lands remained desolate & it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the People of Nephi & thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land & Alma & Amulek went forth preaching repentance unto the <​People​> in their Tempels & in their sanctuaries & also in their Synagogues which was built after the manner of the Jews & as many as would hear their words unto them they did impart the word of God without any respects of persons continually & thus did Alma & Amulek go forth & also many more which had been chosen for the work to preach the word throughout all the land & the establishment of the church became General throughout the land in all the region round about among all the people of the Nephites & there was no unequality among them for the Lord did pour out his spirit on all the face of the land for to prepare the minds of the Children of men [p. 209] or to prepare their hearts to[635](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16702033180180748770" \o "Note) receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming that they might not be hardoned against the <​word​> that they might not be unbeliever unbelieving & go on to destruction but that they might receive the word with Joy & as a branch be grafted into the true vine that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God now those priests which did go forth among the people did preach against all lieings & deceivings & envyings & strifes & malice & revilings & stealing robing plundering murdering committing adutery & all manner of lasiveousness crying that these things ought not so to be holding forth things which must shortly come yea holding forth the coming of the Son of God his sufferings & death &[636](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5707881268190136989" \o "Note) the resurrection of the dead & many of the People did enquire conserning the place where the Son of God should come & they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection & this the people did hear with great joy & gladness & now after the church having been established throughout all the land having got the victory over the Devil & the[637](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16954424641694704838" \o "Note) word of God being preached in its purity in all the land & the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people & thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi——[638](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "792735555569540594" \o "Note)

Alma, Chapter 12 [Alma 17–20]

Chapter [blank]——

An account of the Sons of Mosiah which rejected their rights to the Kingdom for the word of God & went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites— Their sufferings & deliverance according to the record of Alma—

[639](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8804437437739166313" \o "Note)And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward away to the land of Manti behold to his astonishment he met the[640](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11200874133891586745" \o "Note) Sons of Mosiah ajourneying[641](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2645131444482261556" \o "Note) towards the land of Zarahemla now these Sons of Mosiah were with Alma when <​at the time​> the Angel first appeared unto him therefore Alma did rejoice excedingly to see his brethren & what added more to his joy they were still his brethren in the Lord yea & they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth for they were men of a sound understanding & they had searched the scriptures diligently that they might know the word of God but this is not all they had given themselves to much prayer & fasting therefore they had the spirit of Prophesy & the spirit of revelation & when they taught they taught with power & authority even as with the [p. 210] power & authority of God & they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years[642](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17905789646128694901" \o "Note) among the Lamanites having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth yea by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God to call on his name & confess their sins before him now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings for they had many afflictions they did suffer much <​both​> in body & in mind such as hunger thurst & fateague & also much labour in the spirit now these were their journeyings having taken leave of their father Mosiah in the first year of the reign of the Judges having refused the Kingdom which their father was desireous to confer upon them & also this was the minds of the people nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla & took their swords & their[643](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13113716569651668181" \o "Note) spears & their bows & their arrows & their slings & this they done that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness & thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected to go up to the land of Nephi to preach the word unto the Lamanites [644](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8530178108060290171" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the[645](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9836526876834245400" \o "Note) wilderness & they fasted much & prayed much[646](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14272023192811433042" \o "Note) that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his spirit to go with them & abide with them that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring if it were possible their brethren the Lamanites to the knowelde of the truth to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers which[647](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12917156871944311300" \o "Note) were not correct [648](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11564481364116131007" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his spirit & said unto them be comforted & they were comforted & the Lord said unto them also go forth among the Lamanites thy brethren & establish my word yet ye shall be patient in long suffering & afflictions that ye may shew forth good exampels unto them in me & I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls [649](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3794296544643215955" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the hearts of the Sons of Mosiah & also those which were with them took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word <​of God​> & it came to pass when they had arived in the borders[650](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2996334947424702660" \o "Note) of the land of the Lamanites that they seperated themselves & departed one from another trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest for they supposed that great was they work which they had undertaken & assuredly it was great for they had undertaken to[651](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4879873004611220264" \o "Note) preach the [p. 211] word of God to a wild & a hardoned & a ferocious people a people which delighted in the murdering the Nephites & robing & plundering them & their hearts were set upon riches or upon gold & silver & precious stones yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering & plundering that they might not labour for them with their own hands thus they were a verry indolent people many of whom did worship Idols & the curse of God had fell upon them because of the traditions of their fathers notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance therefore this was the cause for which the Sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work that perhaps[652](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16002932903311640349" \o "Note) they might bring them unto repentance that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption therefore they seperated themselves one from another & went forth among them every man alone according to the word & power of God which was given unto him now Ammon being the chief among them or rather he did minister[653](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12251840239638908181" \o "Note) unto them he departed from them after having blessed them according to their several stations having imparted the word of God unto them or administered unto them before his departure & thus they took their several journeys throughout the land & Ammon went to the land of Ishmael the land being called after the Sons of Ishmael which[654](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12753532451279679569" \o "Note) also became Lamanites & as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael[655](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5398362155220483568" \o "Note) the Lamanites took him & bound him as was their custom to bind all the Nephites which fell into their hands & carry them before the king & thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them or to retain them in captivity or to cast them into prison or to cast them out of his land according to his will & pleasure & thus Ammon was carried before the king which was over the[656](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4395343510555415825" \o "Note) land of Ishmael & his name was Lamoni & he was a desendant of Ishmael & the king enquired of Ammon if it were his desires to dwell in the land among the Lamanites or among his people & Ammon said unto him yea I desire to dwell among this people for a time yea & perhaps until the day of <​I​> die & it came to pass that King Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon & caused that his bands should be loosed & he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife but Ammon saith unto him nay but I will be thy servant therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni & it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni according to the custom of the Lamanites & it came to pass that after he had been in the service of the king three days that as he was with the Lamanitish servants agoing forth with their flocks [p. 212] to the place of water which was called the water of Sebus & all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither that they might have water therefore <​as​> Ammon & the servants of the king were driving forth there flocks to this place of water behold a certain number of the Lamanites who had been with their flocks to water stood & scattered the flock of Ammon & the servants of the king & they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways now the servants of the king began to murmur saying now the king will slay us as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men & they began to weep excedingly saying behold our flocks are scattered alreaddy now they wept because of the fear of being slain now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy for said he I will shew forth my power unto these my fellow servants or the power which is in me in restoreing these flocks unto the king that I may win the hearts of these my fellow servants that I may lead them to believe in my words now these were the thoughts of Ammon when he saw the affliction of those which he termed to be his brethren [657](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7619756428303579442" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he flattered them by his words saying my brethren be of good cheer & let us go in search of the flocks & we will gather them together & bring them back unto the place of water & thus we will reserve the flocks unto the king & he will not slay us [658](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10184162658685034678" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks & they did follow Ammon & they rushed forth with much swiftness & did head the flocks of the king & did gather them together again to the place of water & those men again stood to scatter their flocks but Ammon saith unto his brethren ensercle the flocks round about that they flee not & I go & contend with these men which do scatter our flocks therefore they did as Ammon had commanded them &[659](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15760549621733479198" \o "Note) he went forth & stood to contend with those which stood by the waters of Sebus & they were not in number a ver◊y few therefore they did not fear Ammon for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah[660](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12512779009492770966" \o "Note) [p. 213] that he would deliver his Sons out of their hands neither did they know any thing concerning the Lord therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren & for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king but Ammon stood forth & began to cast stones at them with his sling yea with mighty power he did sling stones amongnst them & thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power nevertheless[661](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2205659638857346849" \o "Note) they was <​were​> angery because of the slain of their brethren & they were determined that he should fall therefore seeing that they could not hit him with their stones they came forth with clubs to slay him but behold every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon he smote off their arms with his sword for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms [662](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17855299383576265327" \o "Note)with the edge of his sword insomuch that they began to be astonished & began to flee before him yea & they were not few in number & he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm now six of them had fallen by the sling but he slew none save it were their leader &[663](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10968388992395766875" \o "Note) he smote off as many[664](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4409598867116833123" \o "Note) of their arms as was lifted against him & they were not a few & when they <​he​> had driven them afar off he returned & they watered their flocks & returned them to the pastures[665](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4292101698943733238" \o "Note) of the king & then went in unto the king bearing the arms which had been smote off by the sword of Ammon of those who sought to slay him & they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done & it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth & testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter & when they had all testified to the things which they had seen &[666](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "814330528240005017" \o "Note) had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks & also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him he was astonished excedingly & saith surely this is more then a man behold is not this the great spirit which doth send such great punishments upon this people because of their murders & they answered the king & said whether he be the great spirit or a man we know not but this mutch <​much​> we do know that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king neither can they scatter the kings flocks when he is with us because of his expertness & great strength therefore we know [p. 214] that he is a friend to the king & now O king we do not believe that a man hath such great power for we know that he cannot be slain & now when the king heard these words he said unto them now I know that it is the great spirit & he hath come down at this time to preserve your lives that I might not slay you as I did your brethren now this is the great spirit of which our fathers have spoken now this was the tradition of Lamoni which he had received from his father that there was a great spirit not withstanding they believed in a great spirit they supposed that whatsoever they did was right nevertheless Lamoni began to fear excedingly with fear least he had done wrong in slaying his servants for he had slew many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water & thus because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain now it was the practice of the<​se​> Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to <​scatter​> the flocks of the people that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land it being a practice of plunder among them & it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants saying where is this man that hath such great power & they sayeth unto him behold he is <​◊​>feeding thy horses now the king had commanded his servants previous to the time of the watering of their flocks that they should prepare his horses & his charriots & conduct him forth to the land of Nephi for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi by the father of Lamoni who was king over all the land now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was prepareing his horses & his charriots he was more astonished because of the faithfulness of Ammon saying surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man fore even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them now I surely know that is the great spirit & I would desire him that he come in unto thee <​me​> but I dearst not & it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the <​horses & the​> charriots for the king & his servants he went in unto the king & he saw that the countenance of the King had <​was​> changed therefore he was about to return out of his presance & one of the kings servants said unto him rabbanah which is being interpreted powerful or great king considering their kings to be powerful & thus he said unto him rabbanah the king desireth thee to stay therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king & saith unto him what wilt thou that I should [p. 215] do for thee O king & the king answered him not for the space of an hour according to their time for he knew not what he should say unto him & it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again what desirest thou of me but the king answered him not & it came to pass that Ammon being filled with the spirit of God therefore he perseived the thoughts of the king & he saith unto him is it because th◊t thou hast heard that I defended thy servants & thy flocks & slew seven of their brethren with the sling & with the sword & smote off the arms of others in order to defend thy flocks & thy servants behold is it this that causeth thy marvelings I say unto you what is it that thy marvelings are so great behold I am a man & am thy servant therefore whatsoever thou desirest Which is right that I do now when the king had heard these words he marveled again for he beheld that Ammon could desern his thoughts but notwithstanding this King Lamoni did open his mouth & said unto him who art thou art thou that great spirit which knows all things Ammon answered & said unto him I am not & the king saith how knowest thou the thoughts of my heart thou mayest speak boldly & tell me concerning these things & also tell me by what power ye slew & smote off the arms of my brethren that scatered my flocks & now if thou wilt tell me concerning these things whatsoever thou desirest I will[667](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15398635771510103399" \o "Note) give unto thee & if it were needed I would guard thee with my armies but I know that thou art more powerful than all they nevertheless whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee now Ammon being wise yet harmless he saith unto Lamoni wilt thou hearken unto my words if I tell thee by what power I do these things & this is the thing that I desire of thee & the king answered him & said yea I will believe all thy words & thus he was caught with guile & Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness & said unto him believest thou that there is a God & he answered unto[668](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10799128041947381849" \o "Note) him I do not know what that meaneth & then Ammon saith believest thou that there is a great spirit & he sait◊ yea & Ammon saith this is God & Ammon saith unto him again believest thou that this great spirit which is God created all things which is in heaven & in the earth & he saith yea I believe that he created all things which is in the earth but I do not know the heavens & Ammon saith unto him the heavens is a place where God dwells & all his holy angels & king Lamoni saith is it above the earth & Ammon saith yea & he looketh down upon all the children of men & he knows all the thoughts & intents of the heart for by his hand [p. 216] were they all created from the beginning & king Lamoni saith I believe all these things which thou hast spoken art thou sent from God Ammon saith unto him I am a man & man in the beginning was created after the image of God & I am called by his holy spirit to teach these things unto this people that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just & true & a portion of that spirit dwelleth in me which gieveth me knowledge & also power according to my faith & desires which is in God now when Ammon had said these words he began to the creation of the world & also to the creation of Adam & told him all the things concerning the fall of man & rehearsed & laid before him the records of the holy scriptures of the people & which had been spoken by the prophets even down to the time that Lehi left Jerusalem & he also rehearsed unto them for it was unto the king & to his servants all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness & all their sufferings with hunger & thurst & their travel .&C & he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman & Lemuel & the Sons of Ishmael yea all their rebellions did he relate unto them & he expounded unto them all the records & scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the presant time but this is not all for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption which was prepared from the foundation of the world <​world​> & he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ & all the works of the Lord did he maks known unto them & it came to pass that after he had said all these things & expounded them to the king that the king believed all his words & he began to cry unto the Lord saying O Lord have mercy according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi have upon me & my people & now when he had said this he fell unto the earth as if he were dead & it came to pass that his servants took him & carried him in unto his wife & laid him upon a bed & he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days & two nights & his wife & his Sons & his daughters mourned over him after the manner of the Lamanites greatly lamenting his loss <​loss​> & it came to pass that after two days & two nights they were about to [p. 217] take his body & lay it in <​to​>[669](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8752937332584989318" \o "Note) a sepulcher which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead now the Queen having heard of the fame of Ammon therefore she sent & desired that he should come in unto her & it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded & went in unto the Queen & desired to know what she would that he should do & she saith unto him the servants of my ser <​husband​> have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God & that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name therefore if this is the case I would that ye should go in & see my husband for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days & two nights & some that he is not dead but others say that he is dead & that he stinketh & that he ought to be plased in the sepulcher but as for myself to me he doth not stink now this was what Ammon desired for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God he knew that the dark veil of unbelief being cast away from his mind & the light which did light up his mind which was the light of the glory of God which was a marvelous light of his goodness yea this light had infused such[670](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2919290613980601351" \o "Note) joy into his soul the cloud of darkness having been dispeled & the light of everlasting light[671](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7082981156851940664" \o "Note) was lit up in his soul yea he knew that this had overcome his natural frame & he was carried away in God therefore what the Queen desired of him was his only desire therefore he went in to see the king according as the Queen had desired him & he saw the king & he knew that he was not dead & he saith unto the Queen hee <​he​> is not dead but he sleepeth in God & on the morrow he shall rise again therefore bury him not & Ammon saith unto her believest thou this & she said I have had no witness save thy word & the word of our servants nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said & Ammon said unto her blessed art thou because of thy exceding I say unto thee woman there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites & it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise & it came to pass that he arose according to the words of Ammon & as he arose he streached forth his hand unto the woman & said blessed be the name of God for as sure as thou lievest behold I have sn my redeemer & he shall come forth & be born of a woman & he shall believe all mankind who believe on his name now when he had said these words his heart was swollen within him & [p. 218] he sunk again with joy & the Queen also sunk down being overpowered by the spirit now Ammon seeing the spirit of God <​the Lord​> poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites his brethren which had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites or among all the people of God because of their iniquities & their tradition<​s​> & Ammon fell upon his knees & began to pour out his soul in prayer & thanks giving to God for what he had done for his brethren & he also was overpowered with joy & thus they all three had sunk to the earth now when the servants of the king had saw that they had fallen they also began to cry unto God for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also for it was they which had stood before the king & testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon & it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord in their might even untill they had all fallen to the earth save it were one of the Lamanitish women whose name was Abish she having been converted unto the Lord for many years on account of a remarkable vision of her fathers thus having been converted to the Lord never had made it known therefore when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth & also her mistress the Queen & the King & Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth she knew that it was the power of God & supposing that this opportunity by making known unto the people what had hapened among them that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God therefore she ran forth from house to house making it known unto the people & they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king & there came a multitude & to their astonishment they beheld the king & the Queen & their servants prostrate upon the eath & they all lay there as though they were dead & they also saw Ammon & behold he was a Nephite & now the people began to murmur among themselves some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them or upon the king & his house because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land but others rebuked them saying the king hath brought this evil upon his house because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus & they were also rebuked by those men which had stood at the waters of Sebus & scattered the flocks which belonged to the king for they were angry with Ammon [p. 219] because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus while defending the flocks of the king now one of them whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon being exceding angry with Ammon drew his sword & went forth that he might leet <​let​> it fall upon Ammon to slay him & as he lifted the sword to smite him behold he fell dead now we see that Ammon could not be slain for the Lord had said unto Mosiah his father I will spare him & it shall be unto him according to thy faith therefore Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord & it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fe◊l dead who lifted the sword to slay Ammon fear came upon them all & they dearst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those which had fallen & they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power or what all these things could mean & it came to pass that there was many among them who said that Ammon was the great <​spirit​> spir but others rebuked them all saying that he was a monster which hath been sent from the Nephites to torment us & there were some which said that Ammon was sent by the great spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities & that it was the great spirit that had always attended the Nephites which had ever delivered them out of their hands & they said that it was this great spirit which had destroyed so many of their brethren the Lamanites & thus the contension began to be exceding sharp among them & while they were thus contending the woman servant which had caused the multitude to be gathered together came & when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceding sorrowful even unto tears & it came to pass that she went & took the Queen by the hand that perhaps she might raise her from the ground & as soon as she touched her hand she arose & stood upon her feet & cried with a loud voice saying O blessed Jesus who has saved me from an awful hell O blessed God have mercy on this people & when she had said this she claped[672](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16569405395891538354" \o "Note) her hands being filled with joy speaking many words which were not understood & when she had done this she took the king Lamoni by the hand & behold he arose & stood upon his feet & he immediately seeing the contention among <​among​> [p. 220] his people went forth & began to rebuke them & to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon & as many as heard his words believed & were converted unto the Lord but there was many among them who would not hear his words therefore they went their way & it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also ald <​administered​> unto them & also did all the servants of Lamoni & they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing that their hearts had been changed that they had no more desire to do evil & behold many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels & had conversed with them & thus they had told them things of God & of his righteousness & it came to pass that there was many that did believe in their words & as many as did believe were baptised & they became a righteous people & they did establish a church[673](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2555830890391535306" \o "Note) among them & thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites thus the Lord did begin to pour out his spirit upon them & we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent & believe on his name & it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land that King Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi that he might shew him unto his father & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi for behold the king will seek thy life but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni for behold thy brother Aaron & also Muloki & Ammah are in prison now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this he sayeth unto Lamoni behold my brother & brethren are in prison at Middoni & I go that I may deliver them now Lamoni sayeth unto Ammon I know in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things but behold I will go with thee to the land of Middoni for the king of the land of Middoni whose name is Antiomno is a friend unto me therefore I go to the land of Middoni that I may flatter the king of the land & he will cast thy brethren out of prison now Lamoni sayeth unto him who told thee thy that thy[674](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "161538362099803791" \o "Note) brethren were in prison & Ammon sayeth unto him no one hath told me save it be God & he said unto me go & deliver thy brethren for they are in prison in the land of Middoni now when Lamoni had heared <​heard​> this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses & his charriots & he sayeth unto Ammon come I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni [p. 221] & there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison & it came to pass that as Ammon was a journeying thither that they met the father of Lamoni who was king over all the land & behold the father of Lamoni sayeth unto him why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my Sons & unto my people & he also sayeth whither art thou going wh <​with​> this Nephite which is one of the Sons <​children​> of a liar & it came to pass that Lamoni rehearst unto him whither he was going for he feared to offend him & he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared & now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things behold to his astonishment his father was angry with him & sayeth Lamoni thou art going to deliver these Nephites which are Sons of liar behold he robed our fathers & now his children also are come among<​st​> us that they may by their cunning & their lyings deceive <​us​> thy that they again may rob us of our property now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword & he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni but that he should return With him to the land of Ishmael but Lamoni sayeth unto him I will not slay Ammon neither will I return to the land of Ishmael but I go to the land of Middoni that I may releas the brethren of Ammon for I know that they are just men & holy prophets of the true God now when his father heard these words he was angry with him & he drew his sword <​sword​> that he might smite him to the earth but Ammon stood forth & sayeth unto him behold thou shalt not slay thy Son nevertheless it were better that he should fall than thee for behold he hath repented of his sins but if thou shouldst fall at this time in thine anger thy soul could not be saved & again it is expediant that thou shouldst forbear for if thou shouldst slay thy Son he being an inocent man his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God for vengance to come upon thee & perhaps thou wouldst lose thy Soul now when Ammon had said these words unto him he answered him saying I know that if I should slay my son that I should shed inocent blood for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him & he streached forth his hand to slay Ammon [p. 222] but Ammon withstood his blows & also smote his arm that he could not use it now when the King saw that Ammon could slay him he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life but Ammon raised his sword & said unto him behold I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison now the king fearing that he should lose his life said if thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask even to the half of the Kingdom[675](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5698984405419360003" \o "Note) [676](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11458323061306352000" \o "Note)now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire he sayeth unto him if thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison & also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom & that ye be not displesed with him but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh & then will I spare thee otherwise I will smite thee to the earth now when Ammon had said these[677](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4768188787816661938" \o "Note) words the king began to rejoice because of his life & when[678](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3846746558700735107" \o "Note) he saw that Ammon had no desire<​s​> to destroy him & when he also saw the great love he had for his Son Lamoni he was astonished excedeingly & sayeth because this is all that thou hast desired that I would release thy brethren & suffer that my Son Lamoni sould[679](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1974591424526886806" \o "Note) retain his kingdom behold I will grant unto you that my Son may retain his kingdom from this time & forever & I will govern him no more & I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison & thou & thy brethren may come unto me in my kingdom for I shall greatly desire to see thee for the king was greatly astonished[680](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17238456672779403581" \o "Note) at the words which he had spoken & also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni therefore he was desireous to learn them

And it came to pass that Ammon & Lamoni proseded on their journey towards the land of Middoni & it came to pass that Lamoni found favour in the eyes of the king of the land therefore the brethren of Ammon was brought <​forth​> out of prison & when Ammon did meet them he was exceding [p. 223] sorrowful for behold they were naked & their skins were worn excedingly because of being bound with strong cords & they also had suffered hunger thurst & all kind of affliction nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings & as it happened it was their lot to have fallen[681](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11860586759577316258" \o "Note) into the hands of a more hardened & a more stiffnecked people therefore they would not hearken unto their words & they had cast them out & had smote them & had driven them from house to house & from place to place even until they had ariven to the land of Middoni & their they were taken & cast into prison & bound with strong cords & kept in prison for many days & were delivered by Lamoni & Ammon——

Alma, Chapter 13 [Alma 21–22]

—— Chapter [blank] An account of the preaching of Aaron & Muloki & their brethren to the Lamanites

Now when Ammon & his brethren separated themselves in the <​borders of the​> land of the Lamanites behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites Jerusalem calling it after the land of their fathers nativity & it was away joining the borders of Mormon[682](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6433132649694839382" \o "Note) now the Lamanites & the Amalekites[683](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4623844811778404524" \o "Note) & the people of Amulon had built a great[684](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15800117480574343823" \o "Note) city which was called Jerusalem now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardoned but the Amalekites & the Amulonites were still harder therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts that they should wax stronger[685](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18406906452294921198" \o "Note) in wickedness<​,​> & their abominations[686](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13177329817101105284" \o "Note) [687](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18376037074210715034" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem & firstly began to preach <​to the Amalekites​> & <​he​> began to preach to them in their Synagogues for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors for many of the Amalekites & the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors therefore as Aaron entered into one of them there Synagogues[688](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3488762406876606666" \o "Note) to preach unto the people & as he was speaking unto them behold there arose an Amalekites & began to contend with him saying what is that that thou hast testified hast thou seen an Angel why do not Angels appear unto us behold are not this people as good as thy people thou also sayest except we repent we shall perish how knowest thou the thought & intent of our heart how knowest thou that we have cause to repent how knowest thou that we are not a righteous people behold we have built sanctuaries & we do assemble ourselves together to worshep God we do believe that God will save all men [689](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8116039382014888501" \o "Note)now Aaron said unto him believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind [p. 224] from their sins & the[690](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11134819197345508291" \o "Note) man sayeth unto him we do not believe that thou knowest any such thing we do not believe in these foolish traditions we do not believe that thou knowest of things to come neither do we believe that thy fathers & also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake of that which is to come [691](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "991157575825370935" \o "Note)now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ & also concerning the resurrection of the dead & that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death & sufferings of Christ & the atonement of his blood & it came to pass that as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him & began to mock him & they would not[692](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5611052676035958427" \o "Note) hear the words which he spake therefore when he saw that they would not hear his words he departed out of the Synagogue & came over to a vilage which was called Anianti Ani Anti & there he found Muloki a preaching the word unto them & also Ammah & his brethren & they contended with many about the word & it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts therefore they departed & came over into the land of Middoni & they did preach the word unto many[693](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6183115459836485587" \o "Note) & few believed on the words which they taught nevertheless Aaron & a certain number of his brethren were taken & cast into prison & the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about & those whichh were cast into prison[694](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "893954261916514543" \o "Note) suffered many things & they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni & Ammon & they were fed & clothed & they went forth again to declare the word & thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison & thus they had suffered & they went forth whithersoever they were led by the spirit of the Lord preaching the word of God in[695](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12094485924908873307" \o "Note) every Synagogue of the Amalekites or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admited [696](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8195367410050373588" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them in their <​somuch​> that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth yea they did convince many of their sins & of the tradition of their fathers which were not correct [697](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6747622890044492368" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Ammon & Lamoni returned to <​from​>[698](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "421532903158850287" \o "Note) the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael which was the land of their inheritance & King Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him or be his servant but he caused that there should be Synagogues built in the land of Ishmael & he caused that his people or the people which was under his reign should assemble themselves together & he did rejoice [p. 225] over them & he did teach them many things & he did also declare unto them that they were a people which was under him & that they were a free people that they were free from the oppressions of the king his father for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people which were in the land of Ishmael & in all the land round about & he also declared unto them that they[699](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "118883375462157133" \o "Note) might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires in whatsoever place they were in if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni [700](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1545380531496920134" \o "Note)& Ammon did preach unto the people of King Lamoni [701](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9651731623928127181" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness & he did exhort them daily with all diligence & they gave heed unto his word & they were Zealous for keeping the commandments of God now as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually we will return to the account of Aaron & his other[702](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7442490484166981914" \o "Note) brethren for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was lead by the spirit to the[703](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6983540507744984831" \o "Note) land of Nephi even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it[704](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9048448633054304362" \o "Note) were the land of Ishmael & he was the father of Lamoni [705](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16689136876383686706" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he went in unto him into the kings palace with his brethren & bowed himself before the king & said unto him behold O King we are the brethren of Ammon whome thou hast delivered out of prison & now O king if thou wilt spare our lives we will be thy servants & the King sayeth unto them arise for I will grant unto you your lives & I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me for I have been some what troubled in mind because of the generosity & the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon & I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee & & Aaron sayeth unto the king behold the[706](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3400038081785036283" \o "Note) spirit of the Lord hath called him another way he hath gone to the land of Ishmael to teach the people of Lamoni now the king sayeth unto them what is this that ye have said concerning [p. 226] the spirit of the Lord behold this is the thing which doth trouble me & also what is this that Ammon said if ye will repent ye shall be saved & if ye will not repent ye shall be cast off at the last day & Aaron answered him & said unto him believest thou that there is a God & the king sayeth I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God & I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries that they might assemble themselves together to worship him & if now thou sayest there is a God behold I will believe [707](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14334250453792399590" \o "Note)& now when Aaron heard this his heart began to rejoice & he sayeth behold assuredly as thou livest O King there is a God & the king sayeth is God that great spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & Aaron said unto him yea he is that great spirit & he created all things both in heaven & in earth believest thou this & he sayeth yea I believe that the great spirit created all things & I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things &[708](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15789536304273141760" \o "Note) I will believe thy words [709](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11431114771976507739" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words he began from the creation of Adam reading the scriptures unto the king how God created man after his own image & that God gave <​him​> commandments[710](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1807069639340451008" \o "Note) & that because of transgression man had fallen & Aaron did expound unto him the Scriptures from the creation of Adam laying the fall of man before him & their carnal state & also the plan of redemption which was prepared from the foundation of the world through Christ for all whosoever would believe on his name & since man had fallen he could not merit any thing of himself but the suffering<​s​> & death of Christ atoneth for their Sins through faith & repentance .&C. & that he breaketh the bands of death that the grave shall have no victory & that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory & Aaron did expound all these things unto the king & it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him the[711](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14346769206281459512" \o "Note) King say◊th what shall I do that I may have this Eternal life of which thou hast spoken yea what shall I do that I may be born of God having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast [p. 227] & receive his spirit that I may be filled with joy that I may not be cast off at the last day behold sayeth he I will give up all that I possess yea I will forsake my kingdom that I may receive this great joy but Aaron sayeth unto him if thou desirest this thing if thou will bow down before God yea if thou repent of all thy sins & <​will​> bow down before God & call on his name in faith believing that ye shall receive then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest [712](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10822562957576703398" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words the king did bow down before the Lord upon his knees yea[713](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15416839912463800718" \o "Note) even he did prostrate himself upon the earth & cried mightily saying O God Aaron hath said <​told​> me that there is a God & if there is a God & if thou art God wilt thou make thyself known unto me & I will give away all my sins to know thee & that I may be raised from the dead & be saved at the last day & now when the king had said these words he was struck as if he were dead [714](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17163078961056161260" \o "Note)& it came to pass that his servants ran & told the Queen all that had happened unto the king & she[715](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13384926726354325903" \o "Note) came in unto the king & when she saw him lay as if he were dead & also Aaron & his brethren standing as tho they had been the cause of his fall she was angry with them & commanded that her servants or the servants of the king should[716](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13855078327828490834" \o "Note) take them & slay them now the servants had seen the cause of the king,s fall therefore they dearst not lay their hands on Aaron & his brethren & they fled with the Queen saying why commandest thou that we should slay these men when behold one of them is mightier than us all therefore we shall fall before them now when the Queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear excedingly lest there should some evil come upon her & she commanded her servants that they should go & call the people that they might slay Aaron & his brethren now when Aaron saw the determination of the Queen & he also knowing the heardness of the hearts of the people feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together & there should be a[717](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1053270124076171609" \o "Note) great contention & a disterbance among them therefore he put forth his hand & raised the king from [p. 228] the earth & said unto him stand & he stood upon his feet receiving his strength now this was done in the presance of the Queen & many of his[718](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4305950490636671360" \o "Note) servants & when they saw it they greatly marveled & began to fear & the king stood forth & began to minister unto them & he did minister unto them insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the Queen & there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron & his brethren but the king stood forth among them & administered unto them & it came to pass that they were pasified towards[719](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6181834468026551254" \o "Note) Aaron & his brethren <​those​> which were with him & it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified he caused that Aaron & his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude & that they should preach the word unto them & it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation through out all the land among all his people which was in all his land which was in all the regions[720](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11570712431080910611" \o "Note) round about which was bordering even to the Sea on the east & on the west & which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness which ran from the sea east even to the sea west & round about on the borders of the Sea shore & the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla through[721](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10866680555029892677" \o "Note) the borders of Manti by the head of the river Sidon running from the east towards the west & thus were the Lamanites & the Nephites divided now the more part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness & lived[722](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2312878879261267268" \o "Note) in tents & they were spread through the wilderness on the west in the land of Nephi yea & also on the west of the land of Zarahemla in the borders by the Sea shore & on the west in the land of Nephi in the place of their fathers first inheritance & thus bordering along by the Sea shore & also there w◊s many Lamanites on the east by the Sea shore whither the Nephites had driven them & thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northren parts of the land bordering [723](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10277302700156736881" \o "Note)on the wilderness at the head of the River Sidon from the east to the west [p. 229] round about on the wilderness sides on the North even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful & it bored upon the land which they called desolation it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled & had been destroid[724](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15217987124396418560" \o "Note) of whose bones we have spoken which was destroid <​discovered​> by the people of Zarahemla it being the place of their first landing & they came from there up into the south wilderness thus the land on the northward was called desolation & the land on the southward was called bountiful it being the wilderness which was filled with all kind <​manner​> of wild animels of every king kind a part of which had come from the land northward for[725](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "273664071794635807" \o "Note) food & now it was only the distance of a day & a half’s Journey for a Nephites on the line bountiful & the land desolation from the east to the west Sea & thus the land of Nephi & the land of Zarahemla was nearly surrounded by water there being a small neck of land between the land Northward & the land southward[726](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8611289278448828814" \o "Note) [727](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18098330191876379884" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land bountiful even from the east unto the west Sea & thus the Nephites in their wisdom with their guards & their armies had hemed in the Lamanites on the South that thereby they should have no more possession on the north that they might not overrun the land northward therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of [728](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16919868989624638611" \o "Note)Nephi & the wilderness round about now this was wisdom in the Nephites as the Lamanites were an enemy to them they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand & also that they might have a country whither they might flee according to their desires & now I after having said this[729](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5222379545160571848" \o "Note) return again to the account of Aaron Omner & Himni & their brethren— ——

Alma, Chapter 14 [Alma 23–26]

Chapter [blank]

Behold now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites[730](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14505271241892982576" \o "Note) sent a proclamation among all his people that they should not lay their hands on Ammon <​or​> Aaron <​or​> Omner or Himni nor neither of their brethren which should go forth preaching the word of God in whatsoever place they should be in any part of their land yea he sent a decree amomg them that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them [p. 230] or to cast them into prison neither should they spit upon them nor smite them nor cast them out of their synagogues nor scourge them neither should they cast stones at them but that they should have free access to their houses & also their tempels & their sanctuaries & thus they might go forth & preach the word according to their desires for the king had been converted unto the Lord & all his household therefore he sent this proclamation through out the land unto his people that the word of God might have no obstruction but that it might go forth throughout all his <​the​> land that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers & that they might be convinced that they were all brethren & that they had not ought to murder nor to plunder nor to steel nor to commit adultry nor to commit any manner of wickedness And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation that Aaron & his brethren went forth from city to city & from one house of worship to another establishing churches & consecrating Priests & teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites to preach & to teach the word of God among them & thus they began to have great success & thousands were born borught to the knowledge of the Lord yea thousands were brought to believe in the tradtions of the Nephites & they were taught the records & the prophecies which were handed down even to the presant time & as sure as the Lord liveth so sure as many as believed or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth through the preaching of Ammon & his brethren according to the spirit of revelation & of prophecy & the power of God working miracels in them yea I say unto you as the Lord liveth as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching & were converted unto the Lord never did fall away for they became a righteous people they did lay down their weopons of their rebellion that they did not fight against God no more neither against any of their brethren now these are they which were converted unto the Lord the people of the Lamanites which were in the land of Ishmael & also of the people of the Lamanites which were in the land of Middoni & also of the people of the Lamanites which[731](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5242968548214772853" \o "Note) were in the city of Nephi & also of the people of the Lamanites which were in the land of Shilom & which were in the land of Shemlon & in the city of Lemuel & in the City of Shimnilom & these are the names of the Citties of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord & these are they that [p. 231] laid down the weopons of their rebellion yea all their weopons of war & they were all Lamanits & the Amalekites[732](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3741443401626107525" \o "Note) were not converted save only one neither was any of Amulonites but they did hardon their hearts & also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land whithersoever they dwelt yea & all their viliges & all their Citties therefore we have named all the citties of the Lamanites in Which they did repent & come to the knowledge of the truth & were converted & now it came to pass that the king & those people which were converted[733](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5644122752904083328" \o "Note) were desireous that they might have a name that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren therefore the king consulted with Aaron & many of their priests concerning the name that they should take upon them that they might be distinguished & it came to pass that they called their name AntiNephiLehies & they were called by this name & were no more called Lamanites & they began to be a verry industrious people yea & they were friendly with the Nepites therefore they did open a corrispondance with them & the curse of God did no more follow them & it came to pass that the Amalekites[734](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6032797190321148427" \o "Note) & the Amulonites & the Lamanites which were in the land of Amulon & also in the land of Helem[735](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10362400475926214640" \o "Note) & which was in the land of Jerusalem & in fine in all the land round about which had not been converted & had not taken upon them the name of AntiNephi Lehi were stired up by the Amalekites & <​by​> the Amulonites to anger against their brethren & their hatred became exceding sore against them even insomuch that they began to rebell against their king insomuch that they would not that he should be their king therefore they took up arms against the people of AntiNephiLehi now the king confered the kingdom upon his Son & he called his name AntiNephiLehi & the king died in that selfe same year that the Lamanites began to make preperations for war against the people of God now when Ammon & his brethren & all those which had come up with him saw the preperations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren they came forth to the land of Midian[736](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13259807237302848321" \o "Note) & there Ammon met all his brethren & from thence they [p. 232] came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni & also with his brother AntiNephiLehi what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites now there was not one Soul among all the people which had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren nay they would not even make any preperations for war yea & also their king commanded them that they should not now these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter I thank my God my beloved brethren <​People​> that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren the Nephites to us to preach unto us & to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers & behold I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his spirit to soften our hearts that we have opened a corrispondance with these brethren the Nephites & behold I also thank my God that by opening this corrispondance we have been convinced of our Sins & of the many murders which we have committed & I also thank my God yea my great God that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things & also that he hath forgiven us of these our many sins & murders which we have committed & took away the guilt from our hearts through the merits of his Son & now behold my brethren since it has been all that we could do as we were the most lost of all mankind to repent of all our sins the many murders which we have committed & to get God to take them away from our hearts for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain now my best beloved brethren since God hath taken away our stains & our swords have become bright then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren behold I say unto you nay let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren for perhaps if we should stain our swords again they can no more be[737](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5632474540624601150" \o "Note) washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God which shall be shed for the atonement of our Sins & the great God has had mercy on us & made these things known unto us that we might not perish yea & he hath made these things known unto us beforehand because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children therefore in his mercy he doth visit us by his Angels that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future Generations O how merciful is our God & now behold since it has been as much [p. 233] as we could do to get our stains taken away from us & our swords are made bright let us hade them away that they may be kept as bright as a testimony to our God at the last day or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us & has made us clean thereby & now my brethren if our brethren seek to destroy us behold we will hide away our swords yea even we will bury them deep in the earth that they may be kept bright as a testimony that we have never used them at the last day & if our brethren destroy us behold we shall go to our God & shall be saved & now it came to pass that wen the king had made an end of these sayings & all the people were assembeled together they took their swords & all the weopons which were shed for the sheding of <​mans​> blood & they did bury them up deep in the earth & this they did it being in their view a testimony to God & also to men that they never use weopons again for the shedding of mans blood & this they did vouching & covenanting with God that rather then to shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives & rather then to take away from a brother they would give unto him & rather than t◊ spend their days in idleness they would labour abundantly with their hands & thus we see that when these Lamanites were brought to believe & to know the truth that they were firm & would suffer even unto death rather then to commit sin & thus we see that they buryed the weopons of peace or they buryed the weopons of war for peace & it came to pass that their brethrren the Lamanites made preperations for war & came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king & to place another in his stead & also of destroying the people of AntiNephiLehi out of the land & it came to pass that when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them & prostrated themselves before them to the earth & began to call on the name of the Lord & thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them & began to slay them with the sword & thus without meeting any resistance they did slay a thousand & five of theme & we know that they are blessed for they have gone to dwell with their [p. 234] God now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left but that they would lay down & perish & praised God even in the verry act of perishing under the sword now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them & there were many which <​whose​> hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword for they repented of the thing which they had done & it came to pass that they threw down their weopons of war & they would not take them again for they were stung for the murders which they had committed & they came down even as their brethren relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them & it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more then the number which had been slain & those which had been slain were righteous people therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they are saved & there was not a wicked man slain among them but there were more then a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites which slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites & Amulonites the greatest nunber of whom were after the order of the Nehors now among those which joined the people of the Lord there were none which were Amalekites or Amulonites or which were of the order of Nehor but they were actual decendants of Laman & Lemuel & thus we can plainly desern that after a people h◊s been once enlightened by the spirit of God & hath had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness & then have fallen away into sin & transgression they become more hardoned & thus their state becometh worse then as tho they had never known these things & behold now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren therefore they swore vengance upon the Nephites & they did no more attempt to slay the people of AntiNephiLehi at that time but they took their armies & went over into the borders of the [p. 235] land of Zarahemla & fell upon the people which were in the land of Ammonihah & destroyed them & after that they had many battles with the Nephites inthewhich they were driven & slain & among the Lamanites which were slain were amost all the seed of Amulon & his brethren which were the priests of Noah & they were slain by the hands of the Nephites & the remainder having fled into the east wilderness & having usurped the power & authority over the Lamanites caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief for many of them after having suffered to much loss & so many afflictions they began to be stired up in rememberance of the words which Aaron & his brethren had preached to them in their land therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers & to believe in the Lord & that he gave great power unto the Nephites & thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness & it came to pass that those rulers which were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death yea all those that believed in these things now this marterdom caused that many of their brethren should be stired up to anger & there began to be contention in the wilderness & the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon & his brethren & began to slay them & they fled into the east wilderness & behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites thus the word of Abinadi was brought to pass which he said concerning the seed of the priests which caused that he should suffer death by fire for he said unto them what ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come & now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God now this is what he meant that many should suffer death by fire according as he had suffered & he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death in the like manner as he was & that they should be scattered abroad & slain even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven & slain by wild beasts & now behold these words were verrified for they were driven by the [p. 236] Lamanites & they were hunted & they were smitten & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower them Nephites they returned again to their own land & many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael & the land of Nephi & did join themselves to the people of God which was the people of AntiNephiLehi & they did also bury their weapons of war according as their brethren had & they began to be a righteous people & they did walk in the ways of the Lord & did observe to keep his commandments & his statutes yea & they did keep the law of Moses for it was expediant that they should keep the law of Moses as yet for it was not all fulfilled but notwithstanding the law of Moses they did look forward to the coming of Christ considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming & believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ & thus they did retain a hope through faith unto eternal salvation relying upon the spirit of prophecy which spake of those things to come & now behold Ammon & Aaron & Omner & Himni & their brethren did rejoice excedingly for the success which they had had among the Lamanites seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according[738](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2045550847401494122" \o "Note) to their prayers & that he had also verrified his word unto them in every particular And now these are the words of Ammon to his brethren which sayeth thus my brothers & my brethren behold I say unto you how great reason have we to rejoice for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings & now I ask what great blessings hath he bestowed upon us can ye tell behold I answer for you for our brethren[739](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13906816943748068609" \o "Note) the Lamanites were in darkness yea even in the darkest abyss but behold how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God & this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work behold thousands of them do rejoice & have been brought into the fold of God behold the field is ripe & blessed are ye for ye did thrust in the sickle & did reap with your mights yea all the day long did ye labour & behold the number of your shieves & they shall be gathered into the garners that they are not wasted yea they[740](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13250764828883270176" \o "Note) shall not be beaten down that <​by​> the storm at the last day yea neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirl winds but[741](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12532755951312590098" \o "Note) [p. 237] when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place that the storm cannot penetrate to them yea neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them but behold they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest & they are his & he will raise them up at the last day blessed be the name of our God let us sing to his praise yea let us give thanks to his holy name for he doth work righteousness forever for if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla these our dearly beloved brethren which have so dearly beloved us would still have been racked with hatred against us yea & they would also have been strangers to God & it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words his brother Aaron rebuked him saying Ammon I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting but Ammon sayeth unto him I do not boast in my own strength[742](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6783402972838864242" \o "Note) or in my own wisdom but behold my joy is full yea my heart is brim with joy & I will rejoice in my God yea I know that I am nothing as to my strength I am weak therefore I will not boast of my self but I will boast of my God for in his strength I can do all things yea behold many mighty miracels we have wrought in this land for which we will praise his name forever behold how many thousands of our brethren tha <​hath​> he loosed from the pains of hell & they are brought to sing redeeming[743](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16927062098238479691" \o "Note) love & this because of the power of his word which is in us therefore have we not great reason to rejoice yea we have reason to praise him forever for he is the most high God & has loosed[744](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6050959410783118972" \o "Note) our brethren from the chains of hell yea they were ensirceled about with everlasting darkness & destruction but behold he hath brought them into his everlasting light yea into everlasting salvation & they are ensircled about with the matchless bounty of his love yea & we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great & marvelous work therefore let us glory yea we will glory in the Lord yea we will rejoice for our joy is full yea we will praise our God forever behold who can glory to much in the Lord yea who can say to much of his great power & of his mercy of his long suffering towards the children of men behold I say unto you I cannot say the smallest part which I feel who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful sinful & polluted state behold we went forth even in wrath with mighty threatnings to destroy his church O then why did he not consign us to an awful destruction yea why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us & doom us to eternal dispair O my soul alsmost as it were fleeth at the thought behold he [p. 238] did not exercise his justice upon us but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death & miseary even to the salvation of our souls & now behold my brethren what natural man is there that knoweth these things I say unto you there is none that knoweth these things save it be the penitant yea he that repenteth & exerciseth faith & bringeth forth good works & prayeth continually without ceaseing unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God yea unto such it shall be given to reveal things which have never have been revealed yea & it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance even as it hath been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance now do ye remember my brethren that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla we go up to the land of Nephi to preach unto our brethren the Lamanites & they laughed us to scorn for they said unto us do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers as stiffnecked a people as they are whose hearts delighteth in the shedding of blood whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning now my brethren ye remember that this was their language & moreover they did say let us take up arms against them that we destroy them & their iniquity out of the land lest they overrun us & destroy us but behold[745](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4058469551444681477" \o "Note) my <​beloved​> brethren we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their <​souls​> sou now when our hearts were depressed & we were about to turn back behold the Lord comforted us & said go amongst thy brethren the Lamanites & bear with patience thine afflictions & I will give unto thee success & mow behold we have come & been forth amongst them & we have been patient in our sufferings & we have suffered every privation yea we have traveled from house to house relying upon the mercies of the world not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God & we have entered into their houses & taught them & we have taught them in their streets yea & we have taught them upon their hills & we have also entered into their tempels & their Synagogues & taught them & we have been cast out & mocked & spit upon & smote upon our cheeks & we have been stoned & taken & bound with strong cords & cast into prison & through & the power & wisdom of God we have been delivered again & we have suffered all manner of afflictions & all this that perhaps we might be the means of saveing some soul & we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some now behold we can look forth & see the fruits of our labours & are they few I say unto you nay they are many yea & we can [p. 239] witness of their sincerity because of their love towards their brethren & also towards us for behold they had rather sacrifise their lives than even to take the life of their enemy & they have buried their weopons of war deep in the earth because of their love towards their brethren & now behold I say unto you has their ther <​been​> so great love in all the land behold I say unto you nay there has not even among the Nephites for behold they would take up arms against their brethren they would not suffer themselves to be slain but behold how many of these have laid down their lives & we know & they have gone to their God because of their love & of their hatred to sin now have we not reason to rejoice yea I say unto you there never was men that had so great reason to rejoice as we since the world began yea & my joy is carried away even unto boasting in my God for he has all power all wisdom & all understanding he comprehendeth all things & he is a merciful being even unto salvation to those who will repent & believe on his name now if this is boasting even so will I boast for this is my life & my light my joy & my salvation & my redemption from everlasting wo yea blessed is the mame of my God who hath been mindful of this people which are a branch of the tree of Israel & hath been lost from its body in a strange land yea I say blessed be the name of my God who hath been mindful of us wanderers in a strange land now my brethren we see that God is mindful of every people in whatsoever land they may be in yea he numbereth his people & his bowels of mercy is over all the earth now this is my joy & my great thanks giving yea & I will give thanks unto my God forever Amen——

Alma, Chapter 15 [Alma 27–29]

Chapter [blank][746](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11373970582737276898" \o "Note) Now it came to pass that when the Lamanites which had[747](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "764867939323299933" \o "Note) gone to war against the Nephites had found after their many struggles <​for​> to destroy them that it was in vain to seek their destruction they returned again to the land of Nephi & it came to pass that the Amalekites because of their loss were exceding angry & when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren the people of AntiNephiLehi[748](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17366369248354528622" \o "Note) therefore they began again to destroy them now this people again refused to take their arms & they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies now when Ammon & his brethren saw this work of destruction among those who they so dearly beloved & among those who had so dearly beloved them for they were treated as tho they were the <​Angels​> sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction therefore when Ammon & his brethren saw this great work of destruction they were moved with compassion & they said unto the king let us gather together this people of the Lord & let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites & flee out of the hands of our enemies that we be not destroyed but the king sayeth unto them behold the Nephites will destroy us because of the many murders & sins we have com [p. 240]mitted against them & Ammon sayeth I will go & enquire of the Lord & if he sayeth unto us go down unto our brethren will ye go & the king sayeth unto him yea if the Lord sayeth unto us go we will go down unto our brethren & we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders & sins which we have committed against them but Ammon sayeth unto him it is against the law of our brethren which was established by my father that there should be any slaves among them therefore let us go down & rely upon the mercies of our brethren but the king saith unto him inquire of the Lord & if he sayeth unto us go we will go otherwise we will perish in the land [749](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8860670660246675802" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Ammon went & inquired of the Lord & the Lord said unto him let get this people out of this land that they perish not for satan hath great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites which do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them therefore get thee out of this land & blessed art this people in this generation for I will preserve them [750](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4807687568933373871" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that Ammon went & told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him & it came to pass that they gathered together all their people yea all the people of the Lord & did gather together all their flocks & herds & departed out of the land & it came to pass <​into[751](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5156072033312300743" \o "Note) the​> wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla & came over near the borders of the land [752](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4684501765981406639" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Ammon sayeth unto them behold I & my brethren will go forth into the land of <​of Zarahemla &​> ye shall remain here until we return & we will try the hearts of our brethren whether they will <​that ye shall​> come into their land [753](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13305111701635731376" \o "Note)& it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land that he & his brethren met Alma over in the place of which has been spoken & behold this was a joyful meeting now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full yea he was swallowed up in the joy of his God even to the exhausting of his strength & he fell again to the earth[754](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2326638684920547152" \o "Note) now was not this exceding joy behold this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitant & humble seeker of happiness now the <​joy​> of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great & also the joy of Aaron of Omner & Himni but behold their joy was not that to excede their strength [755](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12065406690898228708" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla even to his own house & it came to pass that they went & told the chief Judge all the things which had happened unto them in the land of Nephi among their brethren the Lamanites & it came to pass that the chief Judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land desireing the voice of the people[756](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4368005069804239773" \o "Note) concerning the admitting their brethren which were the people of AntiNephiLehi & it came to pass that the people came saying behold we will give up the land of Jershon which is on the east by the Sea which joins the land bountiful which is on the South of the land bountiful & this land Jershon is the land which we will give <​unto​> our brethren for an inheritance & [p. 241] behold we will set our armies between the land Jershon & the land Nephi that we may protect our brethren in the land <​of​> Jershon & this we do for our brethren on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin & this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had on account of the many murders & their awful wickedness. & now behold this will we do unto our brethren that they may inherit the land Jershon & we will guard them from their enemies by[757](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7114438284792408372" \o "Note) our armies on conditions that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies[758](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10028967914364524984" \o "Note) [759](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5580565548049173985" \o "Note)now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this he returned to the people of AntiNephiLehi & also Alma with him into the wilderness where[760](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9709374967478941321" \o "Note) they had pitched their tents & made known unto them all these things & Alma also related unto them his conversion with Ammon & Aaron & his brethren & it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them & it came to pass that they went down into the land of Jershon & & took possession of the land of Jershon[761](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8985854415802581019" \o "Note) & they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon therefore they were distinguished by that name everafter & they were among[762](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5129666244545795752" \o "Note) the people of Nephi & also numbered among the people which were of the church of God & they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God & also towards men for they were perfectly honest & upright in all things & they were firm in the faith of Christ even unto the end & they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with <​the greatest​> abhorance & they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren & they never did look upon death with any degree of terror for their hope & views of Christ & the resurrection therefore death was swallowed up to them by the victory of christ over it therefore they would suffer death in the most agravating & distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren before they would take the sword or the Symatre to smite them & thus they were a zealous & beloved people a highly favoured people of the Lord [763](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7824782962245586993" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jeshon & a church also established in the land of Jershon[764](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "23404257480923384" \o "Note) & the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon yea in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness & thus a tremendious battle yea even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem yea & tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain & scattered abroad yea & also there was a tremendious slaughter among the people of Nephi nevertheless the Lamanites were driven & scattered & the people of Nephi returned again to their land & now this was a time that there was a great mourning & lamentation heard throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi yea the cry of widows mourning for their husbands & also of fathers mourning for their Sons & the daughter for the brother yea [p. 242] the brother for the father & thus the cry of mourning was heard among every one of them <​a​> mourning for their kindred which had been slain & now sureful this was a sorrowful day yea a time of solemnity & a time of much fasting & prayer & thus ended[765](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "557270259358573744" \o "Note) the fifteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & this is the account of Ammon & his brethren their journeyings into[766](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7536332111060280828" \o "Note) the land of Nephi their sufferings in the land their sorrows & afflictions & their incomprehensible joy & the reception & safty of the brethren in the land of Jershon & now may the Lord the redeemer of all men bless their souls forever & this is the account of the wars & contentions among the Nephites & also the wars between the Nephites & the Lamanites & the fifteenth year of the reign of the Judges is ended & from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives yea it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed & the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth while the bodies of many thousands are moulder<​ing​> in heaps upon the face of the earth yea & many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred because they have reason to fear according to the promises of the Lord that they are consigned to a state of endless wo while many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred yet they rejoice & exult in the hope yea & even know according to the promises of the Lord that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God in a state of never ending happiness & thus we see how great the unequality of man is because of sin & transgression & the power of the devil which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of[767](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5412228776463938699" \o "Note) men & thus we see the great call of the diligence of men to labour in the vineyards of the Lord & thus we see the great reason of sorrow & also of rejoicing sorrow because of death & destruction among men & joy because of the light of Christ unto life O that I were an angel & could have the wish of mine heart that I might go forth & speak with the trump of God with a voice to shake the earth & cry repentance unto every people yea I would declare unto every soul as with the voice of thunder repentance & the plan of redemption that they should repent & come unto our God that there might be no[768](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7528653176215610088" \o "Note) more sorrow upon all the face of the earth but behold I am a man & do sin in my wish for I had ought to be content with the things which the Lord[769](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10647394208818804731" \o "Note) hath allotted unto me I had not ought to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desires whither[770](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1708639391720589210" \o "Note) it be unto death or unto life yea I know that he allotteth unto man <​men​> yea decreeth unto them decrees which are undlterable <​unalterable​>[771](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14084077299886511739" \o "Note) according to their wills whether it be unto salvation or unto destruction yea & I know that good & evil hath come before all men or he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless but he that knoweth good & evil to him it is given according to his desires whether he desireth [p. 243] good or evil life or death joy or sorrow <​remorse​> of conscience now seeing that I know these things why should I desire more th◊n to perform the work to which I have been called why should I desire that I was[772](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12158976875606960676" \o "Note) an angel that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth for behold the Lord doth grant unto all Nations of their own Nation & tongue to teach his word yea in wisdom all that he seeth fit that they should have therefore we see that the Lord doth council in[773](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6476279819685410762" \o "Note) wisdom according to that which is just & true I know that which the Lord hath commanded me & I glory in it I do not glory of myself but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me yea & this is my glory that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance & thus this is my joy & behold when I see many of my brethren truly penitent & coming to the Lord their God then is my soul filled with joy then do I remember what the Lord has done for me yea even that[774](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16748931163338065913" \o "Note) he hath heard my prayer yea then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me yea & I also remember the captivity of my fathers for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage & by this[775](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8353733761907796885" \o "Note) did establish his church yea the Lord God the God of Abraham the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob did deliver them out of bondage yea I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers & that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage yea & that same God did establish his church among them yea & that same God hath called me by a holy calling to preach the word unto this people & hath given me much success inthewhich my joy is full but I do not goy in my own succss alone but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren which have been up to the land of Nephi behold they have laboured excedingly & have brought forth much fruit & how great shall be their reward now when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away even to the separation of it from the body as it were so great is my joy & now may God grant unto these my brethren that they may sit down in the kingdom of God yea & also all those wh◊ch are the fruit of their labours that they may go no more out but that they may praise him forever & may God grant that it may be done according to my words even as I have spoken Amen

Alma, Chapter 16 [Alma 30–35]

—— Chapter [blank]—— Behold now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon yea & also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land & their dead were buried by the people of the land now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered but it came to pass that after they had buried their & also after the days of fasting & mourning & prayer & it was in the sixteenth <​year​> of the reign of the Judges over the peop <​the people​> [p. 244] of Nephi there began to be continual peace throughout all the land yea & the people did observe to keep the commandments of God <​the​> Lord & they were strict in observing the ordinance<​s​> of God according to the law of Moses for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled & thus the people did have no disterbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi [776](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5019996807308531748" \o "Note)& it came to pass in the seventeenth year[777](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16827025294509333549" \o "Note) of the reign of the Judges there was continual peace but it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year there came a man into the land of Zarahemla & he was Anti Christ for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets concerning the coming of Christ now there was no law against a mans belief for it was strictly conterary to the commands[778](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10140412765548778311" \o "Note) of God that there should <​be a law​> bring men on to unequal grounds for thus saith the scripture chose ye this day whom ye will serve now if a man desired to serve God it was his privilege or rather if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him but if he murdered he was punished unto death & if he robed he was also punished & if he stole he was also punished & if he committed adultry he was also punished yea for all this wickedness they were punished for there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes nevertheless there was no law against a mans belief therefore a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done therefore all men were on equal grounds & this Anti Christ whose name was Korihor & the law could have no hold upon him &[779](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10037379843848661709" \o "Note) he began to preach unto the people that there should be no christ & after this manner did he preach saying O ye that are bound down under a foolish & a vain hope why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things why do ye look for a christ for no man can know of any thing which is to come behold these things which ye call prophecies which ye say are handed down by holy prophets behold they are foolish traditions of your fathers how do ye know of their surety behold ye cannot know of things that <​which​> ye do not see therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a christ ye look forward & say that ye see a remission of your sins but behold it is the effects of a phrenzied mind & this derangement of your minds comes because of the tradition of your fathers which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so & many more such things did he say unto them telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of the world but every man faired in this life according to the management of the creture therefore every man prospered according to his genius & that every man conquered according to his strength & whatsoever a man did was no crime & thus he did preach unto them leading away the hearts of many caasing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness yea leading away man <​many​> [p. 245] women & also men to commit whoredoms telling them that when a man was dead that was the end thereof now thiis man went over to the land of Jershon also to preach these things among the people of Ammon which were once the people of the Lamanites but behold they were more wise then many of the Nephites for they took him & bound him & carried him before Ammon which was a high priest over that people & it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land & it came to pass that he came over into the land of Gideon & began to preach unto them also & here he did not have much success for he was taken & bound & carried before the high priest & also over <​the​> chief Judge over the land & it came to pass that the high priest sayeth unto him why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord why do ye teach this people that there shall be no christ to interrupt their rejoiceing<​s​> why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets now the high priests name was Giddonah & Korihor sayeth unto him because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers & because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordernances & performances which are laid down by ancient priests to usurp power & authority over them to keep them in ignorance that they may not lift up their heads but brought down according to thy words ye say that this people is a free people behold I say there they[780](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15296068802869521941" \o "Note) are in bondage ye say that those ancint prophecies are true behold I say that ye do not know that they are true ye say that this people is a guilty & a fallen people because of the transgression of a parent behold I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents & ye also say that Christ shall come but behold I say that ye do not know that there shall be a christ & ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world & thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers & according to your own desires & ye keep them down even as it were in bondage that ye may glut yourselves with the labours of their hands that they dearst not look up with boldness & that they derst not enjoy their rights & privileges yea they derst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests which do yoke them according to their desires & hath brought them to believe by their traditions & their dreams & their whims <​& their visions​> & their pretended mysteries that they should if they did not do according to their words offend some unknown being which they say is God a being which never hath been seen nor known which never was nor never will be now when the high priest & the chief Judge saw the hardness of his heart yea when they saw that he would revile even against God they would not make any reply to his words but they caused that he should be bound & they delivered him up into the hands of the officers & sent him to the land of Zarahemla [p. 246] that he might be brought before Alma & the chief Judges Judge which was governor over all the land & it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma & the chief Judge that he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon yea he went on to blasphemy[781](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13655830689590682020" \o "Note) & he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma & did revile against the Priests & teachers acuseing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers for the sake of glutting in[782](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17949282031032873468" \o "Note) the labours of the people now Alma sayeth unto him thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labours of this people for behold I have laboured even from the commencement of the reign of the Judges until now with mine own hands for my support notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people & notwithstanding the many labours which I have performed in the church I have never received so much as even one Senine for my labour neither hath any of my brethren save it were in the Judgmentseat & then we have received only according to law for our time & now if we do not receive any thing for our labour in the church what doth it profit us to labour in the church save it were to declare the truth that we may have rejoiceings in the joy of our brethren then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain when thou of thyself knowest that we receive no gain & now believest thou that we deceive this people[783](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13765905634851611173" \o "Note) that causeth such joy in their hearts & Korihor answered him yea & then Alma saith unto him believest thou that there is a God & he answered nay now Alma sayeth unto him if ye deny again that there is a God & also deny the christ for behold I say unto you I know there is a God & also that christ shall come & now what evidence have ye that there is no God or that Christ cometh not I say unto you that ye have none save it be your word only but behold I have all things as a testimony that these things are true & ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true & will ye deny them believest thou that these things are true behold I know that thou believest but thou art posessed with a lieing spirit & ye have put off the spirit of God that it may have no place in you but the devil hath power over you & he doth carry you about working devises that he may destroy the people <​children​> of God & now Korihor sayeth unto Alma if thou wilt shew me a sign that I may be convinced that there is a God yea shew unto me that he hath power & then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words but Alma saye◊h unto him thou hast had signs enough will ye tempt your God will ye say shew unto me a sign when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren & also all the holy prophets the scriptures are laid before thee yea & all things denote [p. 247] there is a God yea even the earth & all things that is upon the face of it yea & its motion yea & also all the planits which move in their regalar form doth witness that there is a supreme creator & yet do ye go about leading away the hearts of this people testifying unto them there is no God & yet will ye deny against all these witnesses & he said yea I will deny except ye shall shew me a sign & now it came to pass that Alma said unto him behold I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart yea that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth that thy soul may be destroyed but behold it is better that they <​thy​> soul should be lost th◊n that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction by thy lieing & by thy flattering words therefore if thou shalt deny again behold God shall smites thee that thou shalt become domb that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more that thou shalt not deceive this people any more now Korihor sayeth unto him I do not deny the existance of a God but I do not believe that there is a God & I say also that ye do not know that there is a God & except ye shew me a sign I will not believe now Alma sayeth unto him this will I give unto thee for a sign that thou shalt be struck domb according to my words & I say that in the name of God that ye shall be struck domb that ye shall no more have utterance now when Alma had said these words Korihor was struck domb that he could not have utterance according to the words of Alma & now when the chief Judge this he put forth his hand & wrote unto Korihor saying art thou convinsed of the power of a God[784](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3128132472507088658" \o "Note) in whom did ye desire that Alma should shew forth his sign would ye that he should afflict others to shew unto thee a sign would he hath shewed unto you a sign & now will ye dispute more & Korihor put forth his hand wrote saying I know that I am domb for I cannot speak & I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me yea & I also[785](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14336287529447194706" \o "Note) knew that there was a God but behold the devil hath deceived me for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel & said unto me go & reclaim this people for they have all gone astray after an unknown God & he sayeth unto me there is no God yea & he taught me that which I should say & I have taught his words & I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind & I taught them even until I had much success insomuch that I verily believed that they were true & for this cause I withstood the truth even until I have brought this great curse upon me now when he had said this he besought that Alma should pray un <​unto​> God that the curse might be taken from him but Alma said unto him if this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people therefore it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will & it came [p. 248] to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor but he was cast out & went about from house to house a beging for his food now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land yea the proclamation was sent forth by the chief Judge to all the people in the land declareing unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent lest the same Judgments would come unto them & it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord & thus this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor & Korihor did go about from house to house a beging food for his support & it came to pass that as he went forth among the people yea among a people which had separated themselves from the Nephites & called themselves Zoramites being lead by a man whose name was Zoram & as he went forth amongst them behold he was ran upon & trodden down even until he was dead & thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord & thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day but doth speedily drag them down to hell now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord & that Zoram which was their leader was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to domb Idols .&C. his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people for it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people therefore his heart was exceding sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum which was east of the land of Zarahemla which lay nearly bordering upon the sea shore which was South of the land Jershon which also bordered upon the wilderness South which wilderness was full of the Lamanites now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a corrispondance with the Lamanites & that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites & now as the preaching of the word had had a greater[786](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17072084451031520735" \o "Note) tendency to lead the people to do that which was just yea it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword or any thing else which had happened unto them therefore Alma thought it was expediant that they should try the virtue of the word of God therefore he took Ammon & Aaron & Omner & Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla but the former three he took with him & also Amulek & Zeezrom which were at Melek & he also took two of his Sons now the eldest of his Sons he took not with <​him​> & his name [p. 249] was Helaman but the names of those which he took with him were Shiblon & Corianton & these are the names of those which went with him among the Zoramites to preach unto them the word now the Zoramites were desenters from the Nephites therefore they had the word of God preached unto them but they had fell into great errors for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God & his statutes according to the law of Moses neither would <​they​> observe the performances of the church to continue in prayer & supplication to God daily that they might not enter into temptation yea in fine they did pervert the ways of the Lord in verry many <​every verry many​> instances therefore for this cause Alma & his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them now when they had come into the land behold to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built Synagogues & that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week which day they did call the day of the Lord & they did worship after a manner which Alma & his brethren had never beheld for they had a place built up in the sentre of their Synagogue a place of[787](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14515121333858725343" \o "Note) standing which was high above the head of <​&​> the top there<​of​> would only admit one person therefore ◊hosoever desired to worship must go forth & stand upon the top thereof & streach forth his hands towards Heaven & cry with a loud voice saying holy holy God we believe that thou art God & we believe that thou art holy & that thou wast a spirit & that thou art a spirit & that thou wilt be a spirit forever holy God we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren & we do not believe in the traditions[788](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1751391938001837073" \o "Note) of our brethren which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children & also thou hast made it known unto us that the there shall be no christ but thou art the same yesterday today & forever & thou hast hast elected us that we shall be saved whilst all around us are elected to[789](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10690407248507432830" \o "Note) be cast by thy wrath down to hell for the which holyness O God we thank thee & we also thank thee that thou hast elected us that we may not be lead away after the foolish traditions of our brethren which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee our God & again we thank thee O our God that we are a chosen <​& a holy​> people Amen[790](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7983569880328110937" \o "Note) now it came to pass that after Alma & his brethren & his Sons had heard these prayers they were astonished beyond all measure for behold every man did go forth & offer up these same prayers now the place was called by them Rameumptom which being interpreted is the holy stand now from this stand they did offer up every man the selfsame prayer unto God thanking their God that they were chosen of him & that he [p. 250] did not lead[791](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13520141945257528586" \o "Note) them away after the tradition of their brethren & that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come which they knew nothing about[792](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11480101593431357940" \o "Note) now after[793](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6625632550075279846" \o "Note) the people had all offered up thanks after their[794](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3090309217052699265" \o "Note) manner they returned to their homes never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand to offer up thanks after their manner now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved for he saw that they were a wicked & a perverse people yea he saw that their hearts were set upon gold & upon silver & upon all manner of fine goods yea & he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting in their pride & he lifted up his voice to Heaven & cried saying O how long O Lord wilt thou suffer that they thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh to behold such gross wickedness among[795](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6111543795353553460" \o "Note) the children of men behold O God they cry unto thee & yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride behold O God they cry unto thee with their mouths while they are puffed up even to greatness with the vain things of the world behold O my God their costly apparrel & their ringlets & their bracelets & their ornaments of gold & all their precious things which they are ornamented with & behold their hearts are set upon them & yet they cry unto thee & say we thank thee O God for we are a chosen people unto thee while others shall perish yea & they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall[796](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11627287139416652019" \o "Note) be no christ O Lord God how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness[797](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6857397106782353017" \o "Note) & iniquity[798](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14253651281768190468" \o "Note) shall be among this people O Lord wilt thou give me strength that I may bear with mine infermaties for I am inferm & such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul O Lord my heart is exceding sorrowful wilt thou comfort my soul in christ O Lord wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me because of the iniquity of this people O Lord wilt thou comfort my soul & give unto me success & also my fellow labourers which are with me yea Ammon & Aaron & Omner & also Amulek & Zeezrom & also my two sons yea even all these wilt thou comfort O Lord yea wilt thou comfort[799](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13522378971569858645" \o "Note) their souls in christ wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon[800](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10313794968648115384" \o "Note) them because of the iniquities of this people O Lord wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ behold O Lord their souls are precious & many of them are our near[801](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14616272377011732470" \o "Note) brethren therefore give unto us O Lord power & wisdom that we may bring these our brethren again unto thee [802](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14504219383093217465" \o "Note)now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words that he claped his hands upon all they which were with him & behold as he claped his hands upon them they were filled with the holy spirit & after that they did separate [p. 251] themselves one from another taking no thought for themselves what they should eat or what they should drink or what they should put on & the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not neither should they thirst yea & he also gave them strength that they should suffer no manner of afflictions save it were swallowed up in the joys of Christ now this was according to the prayer of Alma & this because he prayed in faith [803](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3633825257781698450" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they did go forth & began to preach the word of God unto the people entering into their Synagogues & into their houses yea & even they did preach the word in their streets & it came to pass that[804](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9578419706423916428" \o "Note) after much labour among them they began to have success among the poor class of people[805](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11243994342707631204" \o "Note) for behold they were cast out of the Synagogues because of the coarsness of their apparrel therefore they were not permitted to enter into their Synagogues to worship God being esteemed as filthiness therefore they were poor yea they were esteemed by their priests <​brethren​> as dross therefore they were poor as to things of the world & also they were poor in heart [806](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10982522692993351716" \o "Note)now as Alma was teaching & speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah there came a great multitude unto him which were those of which have been spoken <​speaking of​> which were poor in heart because of their poverty as to things of[807](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3553408225306205183" \o "Note) the world & they came unto Alma & the one which wa[s] the most foremost among them sayeth unto him behold what shall these my brethren[808](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3935052787332942495" \o "Note) do for they are despised of all men because of their poverty yea & more especially by our priests for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have laboured abundantly to build with our own hands & they have cast us out because of this[809](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4864793481418136544" \o "Note) our exceding poverty that we have no place to worship our God & behold what shall we do & now when Alma heard this he turned him about his face immediately towards him & he beheld with great joy <​joy​> for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them & that they were in a preperation[810](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3844156511810494108" \o "Note) to hear the word therefore he did say no more to the other multitude but he streached forth his hand & cried unto those which he beheld which were truly penitent & sayeth unto them I behold that ye are lowly in heart & if so blessed are ye behold thy brother hath said what shall we do for we are cast out of our synagogues that we cannot worship our God behold I say unto you do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your Synagogues only & moreover I would ask do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week[811](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17947702902726204597" \o "Note) I say unto you it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues that ye may be humble & that ye may learn wisdom for it is nessa necessary that ye should learn wisdom for it is because that ye are cast out[812](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2454769935139095492" \o "Note) that <​that​> ye are dispised of your brethren because of your exceding poverty that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart for ye are necessarily brought to be humble & now because ye are compelled to be [p. 252] humble blessed are ye for a man sometimes if he is compelled to be humble seeketh repentance & now surely whosoever repenteth shall find mercy & he that findeth mercy & endureth to the end the same shall be saved & now as I said unto you that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word yea he that truly humbleth himself & repenteth of his sins & endureth to the[813](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8717074064572802262" \o "Note) end the same shall be saved <​blessed​> yea much more blessed th◊n they who art compelled to be humble because of their exceding poverity therefore blessed are they who humbleth themselves without being compelled to be humble or rather in other words blessed is he that believeth in the word of God & is baptised without stuberness of heart yea without being brought to know the word or even compelled to know before they will believe yea there are many which do say if thou wilt show unto us a sign from Heaven then we shall know of a surety then we shall believe now I ask is this faith behold I say unto you nay for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe for he knoweth it & now how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God & doeth it not then he that only believeth or only hath cause to believe & falleth in[814](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1410313600923091640" \o "Note) to[815](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3950013228087563105" \o "Note) transgression now of this thing ye must Judge behold I say unto you that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other & it shall be unto every man according to his work[816](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14835136680380562745" \o "Note) & now as I said concerning faith faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which is not seen <​seen​> which are true & now behold I say unto you & I would that ye should remember that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name therefore he desireth in the first place that ye should believe yea even on his word & now he imparteth his word by angels unto men yea not only men but women also now this is not all little children doth have words given unto them many times which ◊◊th confound the wise & the learned[817](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10134117089955138414" \o "Note) & now my beloved brethren as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted & cast out now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I <​I​> mean to judge you only according to that which is true for I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves for I verily believe there are some among you which would humble themselves let them be in whatsoever circumstances he[818](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6416735286278947616" \o "Note) might now as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge even so it is with my words ye cannot know of their surety at first unto perfection any more then faith is a perfect knowledge but behold if ye will awake & arouse your faculties even to an experiment upon my words & exercise a partacle of faith yea even if ye can no[819](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10140407223188038464" \o "Note) more then desire to believe let [p. 253] this desire work in you even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words now we will compare the word unto a seed now if ye give place that a seed may be planted in your heart behold if it be a true seed or a good seed if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief that ye will resist the spirit of the Lord behold it will begin to swell within your breasts & when you feel these swellings motions ye will begin to say within yourselves it must needs be that this is a good seed or that the word is good for it begineth to enlarge my soul yea it begineth to enlighten my understanding yea & it begineth <​to​> be delicious to me now behold would not this increase your faith I say unto you yea nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge but behold as the seed swelleth & sprouteth & begineth to grow & then ye must needs say that the seed is good for behold it swelleth & sprouteth & begineth to grow & now behold will not this strengthen your faith yea it will strengthen your faith for ye will say I know that this is a good seed for behold it sprouteth & begineth to grow[820](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14576130817491608263" \o "Note) & now behold are ye sure that this is a good seed I say unto you yea for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness therefore if a seed groweth it is good but if it groweth not behold it is not good therefore it is cast away & now behold because ye have tried the experiment & planted[821](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3717364718142210938" \o "Note) the seed & it swelled & sprouteth & begineth & to grow ye must needs know that the seed is good & now behold is your knowledge perfect yea your knowledge is perfect in that thing & your faith is dormant & this because you[822](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16300355830593894758" \o "Note) know <​for ye know​> that the word hath swelled your souls & ye also know that it hath sprouted up that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened & your mind doth begin to expand O then is not this real I say unto you yea because it is light & whatsoever is light is good because it is desernable therefore ye must know that it is good & now behold after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect behold I say unto you nay neither must ye lay aside your faith for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed were <​was​> good & behold as the tree begineth to grow ye will say let us nourish it with great care that it may get root that it may grow up & bring forth fruit unto us & now behold if ye nourish it with much care it will get root & grow up & bring forth fruit but if ye neglect the tree & take no thought for its nourishment behold it will not get any root & when the heat of the Sun cometh & scorcheth it & because it hath no root it withereth away & ye pluck it up & cast it away <​out​> now this is not because the seed was not good neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desireable but it is because your ground is barron & ye will not nourish the tree therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof & thus it is[823](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6791775244786356690" \o "Note) if ye will not nourish the [p. 254] word looking forward w◊th an eye of faith to the fruit thereof ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life but if ye will nourish the word yea nourish the tree as it begineth to grow by[824](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11657679874302169267" \o "Note) your faith with great diligence & with patience looking forward to the fruit thereof & it shall take root & behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life & because of your diligence & your faith & your patience with the word in nourishing it that it may take root in you behold by & by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof which is most precious which is sweet above all that is sweet & which is white above all that is whites yea & pure above all that is pure & ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled that ye hunger not neither shall ye thirst then my brethren ye shall reap the rewards of your faith & your diligence & patience & long suffering waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you [825](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12639913082572276508" \o "Note)now after Alma had spoken these words they sent forth unto him desireing to know whether they should believe in one God that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken or how they should pluck plant the seed or the word of which he had spoken which he said must be planted in their hearts or in what manner they should begin to execise their faith & Alma sayeth unto them behold ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye[826](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9206546304791483027" \o "Note) are cast out of your Synagogues but behold I say unto you if say <​suppose​> that ye cannot worship your[827](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17730347890844091064" \o "Note) God ye do greatly err & ye had ought to search the scriptures for if ye suppose that they have taught you this ye do not understand them do ye suppose <​remember​> to have read what Zenos the prophet of old hath said concerning[828](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4903205042267448855" \o "Note) prayer or worship for he sayeth thou art merciful O God for thou hast heard my prayer even when I was in the wilderness yea thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those which were mine enemies & thou didst turn them to me yea O God & thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field when I did cry unto thee in my prayer & thou didst hear me & again O God when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer & when I did turn unto my closet O Lord & prayed unto thee they thou didst hear me yea thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee to be heard of thee & not of men & thou wilt hear them yea O God thou hast been merciful unto me & heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations[829](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12295796801788636053" \o "Note) yea & thou also hast heard me when I have been cast out & have been despised by mine enemies yea thou didst hear my cries & wast angry with mine enemies & thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction & thou didst hear me because <​of​> mine afflictions & my sincerity & it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me therefore I will cry unto thee in [p. 255] all mine afflictions for in thee is my joy for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me because of thy Son [830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7111626613987664304" \o "Note)& now Alma sayeth unto them do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old behold if ye do ye must believe what Zenos sayeth for behold he sayeth thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son[831](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11254162585060017483" \o "Note) now behold my brethren I would ask if ye have read these scriptures how can how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God for it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things but Zenock[832](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9857319254327466138" \o "Note) also spake of these things for behold he sayeth thou art angry O Lor[d] with this people because they will not understand of thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son & now my brethren ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God & because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death but behold this is not all these are not the only ones which have spoken concerning the Son[833](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7936758844816525870" \o "Note) of God behold he was spoken of by Moses yea & behold a type was raised up in the wilderness that whosoever[834](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2357905314174504985" \o "Note) would look upon it might live & many did look & live but few understood the meaning of those things & this because of the hardness of their hearts but there were many which were so hardened that they would not look therefore they perished now the reason that they would not[835](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7248812232315953437" \o "Note) look is because they did not believe that it would heal them O my brethren if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed[836](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1089860801745069113" \o "Note) would ye not behold quickly or would ye rather harden your hearts in unblief & be slothful that ye would not cast about your eyes that ye might perish if so wo shall come upon you but if not so then cast about your eyes & begin to believe in the Son of God that he will come to redeem his people & that he shall suffer & die to atone for their sins & that he shall rise again from[837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9113801605571249440" \o "Note) the dead which shall bring to pass the resurrection that all men shall stand before him be to be judged at the last & judgment day according to their works & now my brethren I desire that ye should plant this word in your hearts & as it begineth to swell even so nourish it by your faith & behold it will become a tree springing up in you unto everlasting life & then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light through the joy of his Son & even all this can ye do if ye will Aamen. <​Amen.​> [838](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16737108448327554942" \o "Note)And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground & Amulek arose & began to teach them saying my brethren I think that is it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things[839](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16049886895021545592" \o "Note) which have been spoken concerning the comeing of Christ who is taught by us to be the Son of God yea I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your desension from among us & as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should [p. 256] make known unto you what ye should do because of your afflictions & he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds yea & he hath exhorted you unto faith & to patience yea even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your heart that ye may try the experiment of its goodness & we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God or whether there shall be no christ & ye also beheld[840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8780230520388583848" \o "Note) that my brother hath proven[841](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2243154886722518846" \o "Note) unto you in many instances that the word is in christ unto salvation my brother hath called upon the words of Zenos that redemption cometh through the Son of God & also upon the words of Zenock & also he hath appealed unto Moses to prove that these things are true & now behold I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true behold I say unto you that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men to take upon him the transgressions of his people & that he shall atone for the sins of the world for the Lord God hath spoken it for it is expediant that an atonement should be made for according to the great plan[842](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14831859275551139493" \o "Note) of the eternal God there must be an atonement made or else all mankind must unavoidably perish yea all are hardened[843](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17149527309812177319" \o "Note) yea all are fallen & are lost & must perish except it be through the atonement which[844](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18151697775548250406" \o "Note) it is expediant should be made for it is expediant that there should be a great & last sacrament made <​sacrifice yea not​> a sacrifice of man neither of beast neither of any manner of fowl for it shall not be a human sacrifice but it must be an enfinite & an eternal sacrifice now there is not any man that can sacrifise his own blood which will atone for the sins of another now if a man murdereth behold will our law which is just tak the life of his brother I say unto you nay but the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered therefore there is <​can​>[845](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10283445234726194703" \o "Note) nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffise for the sins of the world therefore it is expediant that there should be a great & last sacrifice & then shall there be or it is expediant there should be a stop to the shedding of blood then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled yea it shall all be fulfiled every jot & tittle & none shall have passed away & behold this is the whole meaning of the law every whit a pointing to that great & last sacrifice & that great & last sacrifice will be the Son of God yea infinite & eternal & thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name this being the intent of this last sacrifice to bring about the bowels of mercy which overpowereth justice & bringeth about means unto man men that they may have faith unto repentance & thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice & insercles them in the arms safty while he that exerciseth[846](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15337995293326109482" \o "Note) no faith is left <​unto​> repentance is exposed to the [p. 257] deman <​whole​> law of <​the​> demands of justice therefore only unto him that hath faith unto repentance is brought about the great & eternal plan of redemption therefore may God grant unto you my brethren that ye might begin to exercise <​exercise​> your faith unto repentance that ye begin to call upon his holy name that he would have mercy upon you yea cry unto him for mercy for he is mighty to save yea humble yourselves & continue in prayer unto him cry unto him when ye are in your fields yea over all your flocks cry unto him in your houses yea over all your household both morning midday & evening yea cry unto him against the power of your enemies yea cry unto him against the devil which is an enemy to all righteousness[847](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15362845548557020193" \o "Note) cry unto him over the crops of your fields that ye may prosper in them cry over the flocks of your fields that they may increas but this is not all ye must pour out your souls in your closits & your secret places & in your wilderness yea & when you do not cry unto the Lord let your hearts be full drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your wellfare & also for the wellfare of those that <​which​> are around you & now behold my brethren[848](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18437941295896552959" \o "Note) I say unto you do not suppose that this is all for after ye have done all these things if ye turn away the needy & the naked & visit not the[849](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8963867057258938717" \o "Note) sick & afflicted & impart of your substance if ye have to those which stand in need I say unto you if ye do not any of these things behold you<​r​> <​prayer​> is vain & availeth you nothing & ye are as hypocrites which do deny the faith therefore if ye do not remember to be charitable ye are as dross which the refiners do cast out it being of no worth & is trodden underfoot of men & now my brethren I would that after ye have received so many witnesses seeing that the holy Scriptures testifies[850](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15555963262955249226" \o "Note) of these things come forth & bring fruit unto repentance yea I would that ye would come forth & harden not your hearts any longer for behold now is the time & the day of your salvation & therefore if ye will repent & harden not your hearts immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you for behold this life is the time <​for[851](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1279277592051512574" \o "Note) men​> to prepare to meet God yea behold the day of this life is the day for men to perforn their labours & now as I said unto you before as ye have had so many witnesses therefore I beseach of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end for after this day of life which is given us to prepare for eternity be behold if we do not improve our time while in this life then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labour performed ye cannot say when ye are brought to that awful crisis that I will repent that I will return to my God nay ye cannot say this for that same spirit which doth [p. 258] possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world for behold if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death behold ye have <​be​>come short <​subjected​> to the spirit of the devil & he doth seal you his therefore the spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you & hath no place in you & the devil hath all power over you & this is the final state of the wicked & this I know because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy tempels but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell yea & he hath also said that the righteous should sit down in his kingdom to go no more out but their garments should be made whites through the blood of the Lamb & now my beloved brethren I desire that ye should remember these things & that ye should work out you<​r​> salvation with fear before God & that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ that ye contend no more against the holy Ghost but that ye receive <​it​> & take upon you the name of Christ that[852](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18027437457950393850" \o "Note) ye humble yourselves even to the dust & worship God in whatsoever place ye may be in in spirit & in truth & that ye live in thanks giving daily for the many mercies & blessings which he doth bestow upon you yea & I also exhort you my brethren that ye be watchful unto prayer continually that ye may[853](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "563888483325828069" \o "Note) not be lead <​led​> away by the temptations of the devil that he may not overpower you that ye may not become his subjects at the last day for behold he rewardeth you no good thing & now my beloved brethren I would exhort you to have patience & that ye bear with all manner of afflictions that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceding poverity lest ye become sinners like unto them but that ye have patience & bear with those afflictions with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words they withdrew themselves from the multitude & came over into the land of Jershon yea & the rest of the brethren after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites also came over into the land of Jershon & it came to pass that after the more popular part[854](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4877951032176737767" \o "Note) of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them they were angry because of the word for it did destroy their craft therefore they would not hearken unto the words & they sent & gathered together throughout all the land all the people & consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken now their rulers & their priests & their teachers did not let the people know conserning their desires therefore they found out privally the minds of all the people & it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people those which were in favor of the words which had [p. 259] been spoken by Alma & his brethren were cast out of the land & they were many & they came over also into the land of Jershon [855](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15867154030532405166" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Alma & his brethren did minister unto them now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon which were in Jershon & the <​chief​> ruler of the Zoramites being a verry wicked man sent over unto the people of Ammon desireing them that they should cast <​out​> of their land all those which came over from them into their land & he breathed out many threatnings against them & now the people of Ammon did not fear their words therefore they did not cast them out but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them & they did nourish them & did clothe them & did give unto them lands for their inheritance & they did administer unto them according to their wants now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon & they began to mix with the Lamanites & to stir them up also to anger against them & thus the Zoramites & the Lamanites began to make preperations for[856](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "891843983049459731" \o "Note) war against the people of Ammon & also against the Nephites & this thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi[857](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1348137747638415696" \o "Note) & the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon & came over into the land of Melek & gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites that they might contend[858](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15861520452848296424" \o "Note) with the armies of the Lamanites & the armies of the Zoramites & thus commenced a war between betwixt the Lamanites & the Nephites in the eighteeth year of the reign of the Judges & an account shall be given hereafter of their wars hereafter & Alma & Ammon & their brethren & also the two Sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance & as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon & they have taken up arms to defend themselves & their wives & their children & their lands now Alma being grieved for the iniquity of his people yea for the wars & the bloodsheds & the contentions which were among them & having been to declare the word or sent to declare the word among all the people in every City & seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard & that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word his heart was exceding sorrowful therefore he caused that his sons should be gathered together that he might give unto them every one his charge separately concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. & we have an accoun account of his commandments which he gave unto them according to his own record [p. 260]

Alma, Chapter 17 [Alma 36–37]

Chapter [blank]——

—— The Commandment of Alma to his Son Helaman—

My Son give ear to my words for I swear unto you that inasmuch as ye shall keep the Commandment<​s​> of God ye shall prosper in the land I would that ye should do as I have done in remembering the captivity of our fathers for they were in bondage & none could deliver them except it were the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob & he surely did deliver them in their afflictions & now O my Son Helaman behold thou art in thy youth & therefore I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words & learn of me for I do know that whomsoever shall put his trust in God shall be supported in their trials & their troubles & their afflictions & shall be lifted up at the last day & I would not that ye think that I know of myself not of the temporal but of the spiritual not of the carnal mind but of God now behold I say unto you if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things but God hath by the mouth of his holy angel made these things known unto me not of any worthiness of myself for I went about with the Sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church of God but behold God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way & behold he spake unto us as it were the voice of thunder & the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet & we all fell to the earth for the fear of the Lord came upon us but behold the voice said unto me arise & I arose & stood up & beheld the angel & he said unto me if thou wilt of thyself be destroyed seek no more to destroy the church of God & it came to pass that I fell to the earth & it was for the space of three days & nights that I could not open my mouth neither had I the use of my limbs[859](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15294941893739235026" \o "Note) the angel spake more things unto me which were heard by my brethren but I did not hear them for when I heard the words if thou wilt be destroyed of thyself seek no more to destroy the church of God I was struck with such great fear & amazement lest perhaps th◊t I should be destroyed that I fell to the earth & I did hear no more but I was racked with eternal torment for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree & racked with all my sins yea I did remember all my sins & iniquities for which I was tormented with the pains of hell yea I saw that I had rebelled against my God & that I had not kept his holy commandments yea & I had murdered many of his children or rather led them away unto destruction yea & in fine so great had been my iniquities that the verry thoughts of coming into the presance of my God did rack my Soul with inexpressible horror O thought I that I could be banished & become extinct both soul & body that I might not be brought to stand in the presance of my God to be judged of my deed[s][860](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2022007101108955525" \o "Note) [p. 261] <​&​> now for three days & for three nights was I racked even with the pains of a damned soul & it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins behold I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesu Christ a Son of God to atone for the Sins of the world now as my mind caught hold upon this thought I cried within my heart O Jesus thou Son of God have mercy on me who art in the gall of bitterness & art insercled about by the everlasting chanes of death & now behold when I thought this I could remember my pains no more yea I was harrowed up by the memmory of my sins no more & O what joy & what marvelous light I did behold yea my soul was filled with joy as exceding as was my pain yea I say unto you my Son that there could be nothing so exquisit & so bitter as was my pains yea & again I say unto you my Son that on the other hand there can be nothing so exquisit & sweet as was my joy <​joy​> yea & me thought I saw even as our father Lehi saw God sitting upon his throne surrounded with numberless concorses of angels in the attitude of singing & praising their God yea & my soul did long to be there but behold my limbs did receive their strength again & I stood upon <​my​> feet & did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God yea & from that time even until now I have laboured without ceasing that I might bring souls unto repentance that I might bring them to taste of the exceding joy of which I did taste that they might also be born of God & be filled with the holy Ghost yea & now behold O my Son the Lord doth give me exceding great joy in the fruit of my labour<​s​> for because of the word which he hath imparted unto me behold many hath been born of God & hath tasted as I have tasted & hath seen eye to eye as I have seen therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken as I do know & the knowledge which I have is of God & I have been supported under trials & troubles of every kind yea & in all manner of afflictions yea God hath delivered me from prisons[861](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11296867081871413293" \o "Note) & from bonds & from death yea & I do put my trust in him & he will still deliver me & I know that he will raise me up at the last day to dwell with him in glory yea & I will praise him forever for he hath brought our fathers out of Egypt & he hath swallowed up the Egyptians in the red Sea & he led them by his power into the promised land yea & he hath delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time to time yea & he hath also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & he hath also by his everlasting power delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time to time even down to the presant day & I have always retained in rememberance their captivity yea & ye also h◊d ought to retain in rememberance as I have done thei[r] [p. 262] captivity but behold my Son this is not all for ye h◊d ought to know as I do know that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land & ye had ought to know also that in as much as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presance now this is according to his word & now my Son Helaman I command you that ye take the records which have been intrusted with me & I also command you that ye shall keep a record of this people according as I have done upon the plates of Nephi & keep all these things sacred which I have kept even as I have kept them for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept & these plates of brass which contain these engraveings which have the records of the holy Scriptures upon them which have the genealogy of our forefathers even from the beginning[862](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14274764022577526875" \o "Note) & behold it hath been prophesied by our fathers that they should be kept & handed down from one generation to another & be kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord until they shall <​should​> go forth unto every Nation Kindred Toungue & people that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon & now behold if they are kept they must retain their brightness yea & they will retain their brightness yea & also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me but behold I say unto you that by small & simple things are great things brought to pass & small means in many instances doth confound the wise & the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great & eternal purposses & by verry small means the Lord doth confound the wise & bringeth about the salvation of many souls & now it hath hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved for behold they have enlarged the memmory of this people yea & convinced many of the error of their ways & brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls yea I say unto you were it not for these plates <​things​> that these records do contain which are on these plates Ammon & his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers yea these records & their words brought them unto repentance that is they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God & to rejoice in Jesus Christ their redeemer & who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them yea & also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren the Nephites which are now hardening their hearts in sins[863](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3268055796393318502" \o "Note) & iniquities to the knowledge of their Redeemer now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me therefore I shall forbare & it may suffise if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose which purpose is known unto God for he doth counsel in wisdom over all [p. 263] his works & his paths are strait & his course is one eternal round O remember remember my son Helaman how strict is <​are​> the commandments of God & he sayeth if ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presance & now remember my son that God hath entrusted you with these things which are sacred which he hath kept sacred & also which he will keep & preserve for a wise purpose in him that he may shew forth his power unto future generations & now behold I tell you by the spirit of prophesy that if ye transgress the commandments of God behold these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God & ye shall be delivered up unto Satan that he may sift you as chaff before the wind but if ye keep the commandments of God & do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them behold no power of earth of or hell can take them from you for God is powerful to the fulfiling of all his words for he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you for he hath fulfiled his promise which he hath made unto our fathers for he promised unto them that he would reserve[864](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12504677134081903779" \o "Note) these things for a wise purpose in him that he might shew forth his power unto future generations & now behold one purpose hath he fulfiled even to the restoration of many of ◊ thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth & he hath shewn forth his power in them & he will also still shew forth his power in them unto future generations therefore they shall be preserved therefore I command you my son Helaman the ye be diligent in fulfiling all my words & that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written & now I will speak unto you concerning those twenty four plates that ye keep them that the mysteries & the works of darkness & their secret works or the secret works of those people which have been destroyed may be made manifest unto this people yea all their murders & robings & their plunderings & all their wickedness & abominations may be made manifest unto this people yea & that ye preserve these directors for behold the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness yea work secret murders & abominations therefore the Lord said if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth & the Lord said I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem a stone which shall shine forth in darkness unto light that I may discover unto my people which serve me that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren yea their secret works their works of darkness & their wickedness & abominations & now my Son these directors were [p. 264] prepared that the word of the Lo◊d <​God​> might be fulfiled which he spake saying I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works & their abominations & except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth & I will bring to light all their secrets & abominations unto every Nation that shall hereafter possess the land & now my Son <​Son​> we see that they did not repent therefore they have been destroyed & thus far the word of God hath been fulfiled yea their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness & made known unto us & now my Son I command you that ye retain all their oaths & their covenants & their agreements in their secret abominations yea & all their signs & their wonders ye shall retain from this people that they know them not lest paradventure they should fall into darkness also & be destroyed for behold there is a curse upon all this land that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness according to the power of God when they are fully ripe therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths & their covenants from this people & only their wickedness & their murders & their abominations shall ye make known unto them & ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness & abominations & murders & ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness & abominations & their murders for behold they murdered all the prophets of the Lord which came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities & the blood of those which they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengance upon those which were their murderers & thus the Judgments of God did come upon them workers of darkness & secret combinations yea & cursed be the land forever & ever unto those workers of darkness & secret combinations even unto destruction except they repent before they are fully ripe & now my Son remember the words which I have spoken unto you trust not those secret plans unto this people but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin & iniquity preach unto them repentance & faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to humble themselves & to be meek & lowly in heart teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to never be weary of good works but to be meek & lowly in heart for shuch shall find rest to their souls O remember my Son & learn wisdom in thy youth yea learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God yea & cry unto God for all thy support yea let all thy doings be unto the Lord & whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord <​Lord​> yea let[865](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9115259983459869490" \o "Note) thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord yea let the affections of thy heart be plased upon the Lord forever council the Lord in all thy doings & he will direct thee for good yea when thou lyest down at night lye down unto the Lord that he may watch over you in your sleep & when thou risest in the morning let th[y] [p. 265] heart be full of thanks unto God & if ye always[866](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2662899277111161470" \o "Note) do these things ye shall be lifted up at the last day & now my Son I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball or director or our father called it Liahona which is being interpreted a compass & the Lord prepared it & behold there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship & behold it was prepared to shew unto our fathers the course of <​which​> they should travail in the wilderness & it did work for them according to their faith in God therefore if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindels should point the way they should go behold it was done therefore they had this miracle & also many other miracels wrought by the power of God day by day nevertheless because those miracels were worked by small means nevertheless it did shew unto them marvelous works they were slothful & forgat to execise their faith & diligence & then those marvelous works ceased & they did not progress in their journey therefore they tarried in the wilderness or did not travail a direct course & were afflicted with hunger & thirst because of their transgressions & now my Son I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass now these things were temporal[867](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9878016675934986781" \o "Note) they did not prosper even so it is with things which are spiritual for behold it is <​as​> easy to give heed to the word of Christ which will point to you a strait course to eternal bliss as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass which would point unto them a strait course to the promised land & now I say is there not a type in this thing for just as suredly[868](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17046648161035592420" \o "Note) as this director did bring our fathers by following its course to the promised land shall the word of Christ if we follow ◊t◊ course carry us beyond this vale of tears into a far better land of promise O my Son do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way for so was it with our fathers for so was it prepared for them that if they would look they might live even so it is with us the way is prepared & if we will look we may live forever & now my Son see that ye take care of these sacred things yea see that ye look to God & live go unto this people & declare the word & be sober my Son farewell—

Alma, Chapter 18 [Alma 38]

Chapter [blank][869](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17306769232871697146" \o "Note)

The Commandments of Alma to his Son Shiblon

My Son give ear to my words for I say unto you even as I said unto Helaman that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land & in as much as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut[870](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10904417439537729506" \o "Note) off from his presance & now my Son I trust that I shall have great joy in you [p. 266] because of your stediness & your faithfulness unto God for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments for blessed is he that endureth to the end I say unto you my Son that I have had great joy in thee already because of thy faithfulness & thy diligence & thy patience & thy long suffering among the people of the Zoramites for I knew[871](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8347105170374341475" \o "Note) that thou wast in bonds yea & I also knew that thou wast stoned for the words sake & thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee & now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee[872](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2402300774292359441" \o "Note) & now my Son Shiblon I would that ye should remember that as much as ye shall put your trust in God ye <​even​> so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials & your troubels & your afflictions & ye shall be lifted up as at the last day now my Son I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself but it is the spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things but behold the Lord in his great mercy send <​sent​> his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people yea & I have seen a angel face to face & he spake with me & his voice was as thunder & it shook the whole earth & it <​came​> to pass that I was three days & three nights in the most bitter pain & anguish of Soul & never untill I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy did I receive a remission of my sins but behold I did cry unto him & I did find peace to my soul & now my Son I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom that ye may learn of me that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved only in & through Christ behold he is the life & the light of the world behold he is the word of truth & righteousness & now as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach & I would that ye would be diligent & temperate in all things see that ye are not lifted up unto pride yea see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom nor of your much strenght use boldness but not overbareance & also see that ye bridle all your passions that ye may be filled with love see that ye refrain from idleness do not pray as the Zoramites do for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men & to be praised for their wisdom do not say O God I thank thee that we are better then our brethren but rather say O Lord forgive my unworthiness & remember my brethren in mercy yea acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times & may the Lord bless your soul & receive you at the last day into his Kingdom to sit down in peace now go my Son <​&​> teach the word unto this people be sober my son farewell——

Alma, Chapter 19 [Alma 39–42]

Chapter [blank]

The Commandments of Alma to his Son Corianton [p. 267]

And now my Son I have somewhat more to say unto thee then what I said unto thy brother for behold have ye not observed the stediness of thy brother his faithfulness & his diligence in keeping the commandments of God behold has he no not set a good example for thee for thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother among the people of the Zoramites now this is what I have against thee thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength & thy wisdom & this is not all my Son thou didst do that which was grievious unto me for thou didst forsake the ministry & did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites after the Harlot Isabel yea she did steal away the hearts of many but this was no excuse for thee my Son thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted know ye not my Son that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord yea most abominable above all sins save it be the sheding of inocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost for behold if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it one hath hath had place in you & ye know that ye deny it behold this is a Sin which is unpardonable yea & whosoever murdereth against the light & knowledge of God it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness yea I say unto you my Son that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness & now my Son I would that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime I would not dwell upon your crimes to harrow up your soul if it were not for your good but behold ye cannot hide your crimes from God & except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day now my Son I would that ye should repent & forsake your sins & go no more after the lusts of your eyes but cro ss <​cross​> yourself in all these things for except ye do this ye can in no wise inherit the Kingdom of God O remember & take it upon you & cross yourself in these things & I command you to <​take it upon you to​> counsel your elder brothers in your undertakeings for behold thou art in thy youth & ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers & give heed to their counsel suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing suffer not that the devil lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots behold O my Son how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites for when they <​saw​> your conduct they would not believe in my words & now the spirit of the Lord doth say unto me command thy children to do good lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction therefore I command you my Son in the fear of God that ye refrain from <​your​> iniquity iniquities that ye turn to the Lord with all your mind might & strength that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly but rather return unto them & acknowledge your faults & retain[873](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1323146536062866378" \o "Note) that wrong which ye have done seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world for behold you cannot carry them with you & [p. 268] now my Son I would say some what unto you concerning the coming of Christ behold I say unto you that it is him that surely shall come to take away the Sins of the world yea he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people & now my Son this was the ministry unto which ye were called to declare these glad tidings unto this people to prepare their minds or rather that salvation might come unto them that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming & now I will ease your mind some what on this subject behold you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand behold I say unto you is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare those glad tidings unto us as unto our children or as after the time of his coming now my Son here is somewhat more I would say unto you <​thee​> for I perseve that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead behold I say unto you that there is no resurrection or I would say in other words that this mortal does not put on immortality this corruption does not put on incorruption until after the coming of Christ behold he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead but behold my Son the resurrection is not yet <​now​> I unfold unto you a mystery nevertheless there are many mysteries which are kept that no one knoweth them save God himself but I shew unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know that is concerning the resurrection behold there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead now when this time cometh no one knows but God knoweth the time which is appointed now whether there shall be one time or a second time or a third time that men shall come forth from the dead it mattereth not for God knoweth all these things & it sufficeth <​me​> to know that this is the case that there is a time appointed that[874](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6379970766721364160" \o "Note) all shall rise from the dead now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death & the time of the resurrection & now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from the time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection now whether there is more then[875](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15677515059930660950" \o "Note) one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not for all do not die at once & this mattereth not all is as one day with God & time only is measured unto man therefore there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead & there is a spase between the time of death & the resurrection & now concerning this spase of time what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired <​diligently​> of the Lord to know & this is the thing of which I do know & when the time cometh when all shall rise then is the tite shall they [p. 269] know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man now concerning the state of the Soul between death & the resurrection behold it hath been made known unto me by an angel that the spirits of all men as soon as they are departed from this mortal body yea the spirits of all men whether they be good or evil are taken home to that God who gave them life & then shall it come to pass that the spirits of those which are righteous are received into a state of happiness which is called paradise a state of rest a state of peace where they shall rest from all their troubles & from all care & sorrow .&C. & then shall it come to pass that the spirits of the wicked yea which are evil for behold they have no part nor portion of the spirit of the Lord for behold they chose[876](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9654156644206000653" \o "Note) evil work<​s​> rather than good therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them & take possession of their house & these shall be cast out into outer darkness there shall be weeping & wailing & gnashing of teeth & this because of their own iniquity being led captive by the will of the devil now this is the state of the souls of the wicked yea in darkness & a state of awful fearful looking for of the firey indignation of the wrath of God upon them thus they reman in this state as well as the righteous in paradise until the time of their resurrection now there are some that have understood that this state of happiness & this state of miseary of the soul before the resurrection was a first resurrection yea I admit it may be termed a resurrection the raising the spirit or the soul & their consignation of to happiness or miseary according to the words which have been spoken & behold again it hath been spoken that there is a first resurrection a resurrection of all those which have been or which are or which shall be be down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead now we do not suppose that this first resurrection which has been <​is​> spoken of in this manner can be the resurrection of the souls & their consignation to happiness or miseary ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth behold I say unto you nay but it meaneth the resurrection <​reuniting​> of the soul with the body of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of christ now whether the souls & the bodies of those <​of​> which have been spoken shall all be reunited at once the wcked as well as the righteous I do not say let it suffise that I say that they all come forth or in other words their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those which die after the resurrection of christ now my Son I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ but behold I give it as my opinion that the souls & the bodies are reunited of the righteous at the resurrection of Christ & his assension [p. 270] into Heaven but whether it be at at[877](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2559830158472190605" \o "Note) his resurrection or after I do not say but this much I say that there is a space betwixt between death & the resurrection of the body & a state of the soul in happiness or in miseary until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth & be reunited both soul & body & be brought to stand before God & be judged according to their works yea this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which have been spoken by the mouths of the prophets the soul shall be restored to the body & the body to the soul yea & every limb & joint shall be restored to its body yea even a hair of their heads[878](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10092406105303952082" \o "Note) shall not be lost but all things shall be restored to its proper & perfect frame & now my Son this is the restoration <​of​> which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets & then shall the righteous shine forth in the Kingdom of God but behold an awful death cometh upon the wicked for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness for they are unclean & no unclean thing can inherit the Kingdom of God but they are cast out & consigned to partake of the fruits of their labours or their works which have been evil & they drink the drugs[879](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12527322601918020061" \o "Note) of a bitter cup & now my Son I have some what to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken for behold some have arested the Scriptures & have gone far astray because of this thing & I perceive that thy mind hath been worried also conserning this thing but behold I will explain it unto thee I say unto the my Son that the plan of restoration is requisites with the justice of God for it is requisite that all things should be restored to <​their​> proper order behold it is requisite & just according to the power & resurrection of Christ that the soul of man should be restored to its body &[880](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9422130370474589831" \o "Note) that every part of the body should be restored to itself & it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works & if their works were good in this life & the desires of their hearts were good that they should also at the last day be restored unto that <​which​> is good & if their works are evil they shall be restored unto him for evil therefore all things shall be restored to their proper order every thing to its natural frame mortality raised to immortality corruption to incorruption raised to endless happiness to inherit the Kingdom of God or to endless miseary to inherit the kingdom of the devil the one on one hand the other on the other the one raised[881](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8194660988576917352" \o "Note) to happiness according to his desires of happiness or good according to his desires of good & the other to evil according to his desires of evil for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh & so it is on the other hand if he hath repented of his sins & desired righteousness until the end of his days [p. 271] even so shall he be rewarded unto righteousness these are they that are redeemed of the Lord yea these are they that are taken out that are delivered from that endless night of darkness & thus they stand or fall for behold they are their own judges whether to do good or do evil[882](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1253326666233488237" \o "Note) now the decrees of God are unalterable therefore the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein & be saved & now behold my Son do not risk one more offence against your God upon those points of doctrine which ye hath hitherto risked to commit sin do not suppose because it hath been spoken conserning restoration that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness behold I say unto you wickedness never was happiness & now my Son all men that are in a state of nature or I would say in a carnal state are in the gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity they are without God in the world & they have gone conterary to the nature of God therefore they are in a state conterary to the nature of happiness & now behold is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state & place it in an unmatural state or to place it in a state opposite to its nature O my Son this is not the case but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil or carnal for carnal or devilish for devilish good for that which is good righteous for that which is righteous just for that which is just merciful for that which is merciful therefore my Son see that ye are merciful unto your brethren deal justly judge righteously & do good continually & if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward yea ye shall have mercy restored unto you again ye shall have justice restored unto you again ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again & ye shall have good rewarded unto you again for that which ye doth send out shall return unto you again & be restored therefore the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner & justifieth him not at all & now my Son I perseve there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind which ye cannot understand which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of miseary now behold my Son I will explain this thing unto thee for behold after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden to till the ground from whence he was taken yea he drew[883](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11400960069665201716" \o "Note) out the man & he plased at the east end of the garden of Eden Cherubims & flaming sword which turned every way to keep the tree of life now we see that the man had became as God knowing good & evil & lest he should put forth his hand & take also of the tree of life <​& eat​> & live forever that the Lord God placed Cherubim & the flaming sword that he should not partake of the fruit & thus we see that there was a time granted unto man to repent yea probationary time a time to repent & serve God for behold if Adam had put [p. 272] forth his hand immediately & partook of the tree of life he would have lived forever according to the word of God haveing no space for repentance yea & also the word of God would have been void & the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated[884](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8085500291109258773" \o "Note) but behold it was appointed unto man to die therefore as they were cut off from the tree of life therefore they should be cut off from the face of the earth & man became lost forever yea they became fallen man & now we see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally & spiritually from the presance of the Lord & thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will now behold it was not expediant that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death for that would destroy the great plan of happiness therefore as the soul could never die & the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal that is they were cut off from the presance of the Lord therefore it was[885](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10971960350394904100" \o "Note) expediant that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death therefore as they had become carnal sensual & devilish by nature this probationary state became a state for them to prepare it became a probationary[886](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3187797254606656204" \o "Note) state & now remember my Son if it were not for the plan of redemption laying it a side as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable being cut off from the presance of the Lord & now there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobediance therefore according to justice the plan of redemption could not be brought about only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state <​yea this probationary state preparatory[887](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5919537625680985928" \o "Note) state​> for except it were for these conditions mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice now the work of justice could not be destroyed if so God would cease to be God & thus we see that all mankind were fallen & they were in the grasp of justice yea the justice of God which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presance & now the plan of mercy could[888](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10731103285313983361" \o "Note) not be brought about except an atonement should be made therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world to bring about the plan of mercy to appeas the demands of justice that God might be a perfect just God & a merciful God also now repentance could not come unto men except[889](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6051383315228850600" \o "Note) there were a punishment which also was as eternal as the life of the Soul should be affixed opposite to the plan of happiness which was as eternal also as the life of the soul now <​how​> could a man repent except he should sin how could he sin if there was no law how could there be a[890](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15982805174989526747" \o "Note) law save there was a punishment now there was a punishment affixed & a just law given which brought remorse of conscience unto man now if there was no law given if a man murdered he should [p. 273] die would he be afraid he should die if he should murder & also if there was no law given against sin men would not be afrade to sin & if there was no law given <​if men​> sined what could justice do or[891](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11221083527968545752" \o "Note) mercy eather <​either​> for they would have no claim upon the creture but there is a law given[892](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16956026381752722995" \o "Note) & a punishment affixed & repentance granted which repentance mercy claimeth otherwise justice claimeth the creture & executeth the law & the law inflicteth the punishment if not so the works of justice would be destroyed & God woud <​would​> cease to be God but God ceaseth not to be God & mercy claimeth the penitant & mercy cometh because of the atonement & the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead <​& the resurrection​> of the dead bringing[893](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10977066926630448875" \o "Note) back men into the presance of God & thus they are restored into his presance to be judged according to their works according to the law &[894](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10038406756352623972" \o "Note) justice for behold justice exerciseth all his demands & also mercy claimeth all which is her own & thus none but the truly penitent are saved what do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice I say unto you nay not one whit if so God would cease to be God & thus God bringeth about his great & eternal purposses which was prepared from the foundation of the world & thus cometh about the salvation <​&​> the redemption of men & also their destruction & miseary therefore O my Son whosoever will come may <​may​> come & partake of the waters of life freely & whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to[895](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14015463028588371331" \o "Note) his deeds if he hath desired to do evil & hath not repented in his days behold evil shall be done unto him according to the restoration of God & now my Son I desire <​that​> ye should let these things trouble you no more & only led <​let​> your sins trouble you with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance O my Son I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins by denying the justice of God but do you let the justice of God & his mercy & his long suffering have full sway in your heart but let it bring you down to the dust in humility & now my Son ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people[896](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5737704529799504796" \o "Note) & now my Son go thy way declare the word with truth & soberness that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them & may God grant unto you even according to my word. Amen——

Alma, Chapter 20 [Alma 43–44]

Chapter [blank][897](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12093286792016679036" \o "Note)——

And[898](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10069199019217148332" \o "Note) now it came to pass that the Sons of Alma did go forth among the people to declare the word unto them & Alma also himself[899](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12339779414655310418" \o "Note) could not rest & he also went forth now we shall say no more concerning their preaching [p. 274] except that they preached the <​word​> & the truth according to the spirit of prophecy & revelation & they preached after the Holy order of God by which they were called [900](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15170042830480702758" \o "Note)& now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites & the Lamanites in the eighteenth year of the reign of the Judges for behold it came that the Zoramites became Lamanites therefore in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw[901](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17821242887684585251" \o "Note) that the Lamanites were coming upon them therefore they made preperations for war yea they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon & it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands & they came into the land of Antionam which was the land of the Zoramites & a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader & now as the Amalekites were of a more wicked & a murderous disposition than the Lamanites were in & of themselves therefore Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites & they were all the Amalekites & the Zoramites now this he do◊e that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites that he might bring them into[902](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13097731209027560475" \o "Note) subjection to the accomplishment of his designs for behold his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nepites & this he don◊ that he might usep <​usurp​> great power over them & also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage .&c. & now the design of the Nephites were to support their lands & their houses & their wives & their children that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies & also that they might preserve their rights & their privileges yea & also their liberty that they might worship God according to their desires for they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites that whosoever should worship God[903](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17252065390342132914" \o "Note) in spirit & in truth the true & the living God the Lamanites would destroy yea & they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren which were the people of AntiNephiLehi which were called the people of Ammon & they would not take up arms yea they had entered into a covenant & they <​would not​> brake it therefore if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed & the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance & the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies & thus the Nephites were compelled alone[904](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16974455176050635944" \o "Note) to withstand against the Lamanites which were a compound of Laman & Lemuel & the Sons of Ishmael & all those which had desented from the Nephites which were Amalekites & Zoramites & the desendants of the priests of Noah now those desendants[905](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9021785199039536442" \o "Note) were as numerous <​nearly​> as were the Nephetes & thus the Nephites were oblidged to contend with their brethren even unto blood shed [906](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13459701733032508341" \o "Note)& it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum behold the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon now the leader of the Nephites or the man which had [p. 275] been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites[907](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15644235529511418289" \o "Note) now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites & his name was Moroni & Moroni took all the comnand & the goverments of their wars & he was only twenty & five years old when he was appointed chief captain[908](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16746327301820855363" \o "Note) over the armies of the Nephites [909](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16420555772224842359" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon & his people were armed with swords & with simeters & all manner of weapons of war & it came to p◊ss that when the armies of the Lamanites saw that[910](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3168718091192645677" \o "Note) the people of Nephi or that Moroni had prepared his people with breastplates & with arm shields yea & also shields to defend their heads & also they were dressed with thick clothing now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing they had <​only​> their swords & their simeters their bows & their arrows their stones & their slings but they were naked save it were a skin which was girted about their loins yea all were naked save it were the Zoramites & the Amalekites but they were not armed with breastplates nor shields therefore they were exceding fraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armour notwithstanding their number being so much greater[911](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9758790104327914799" \o "Note) than the Nephites behold now it came to pass that they dearst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness & took their journey round about in the wilderness away by the head of the River Sidon that they might come into the land of Manti & take possession of the land for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone but it came to pass as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent <​sent​> spies into the wilderness to watch their camp & Moroni also knowing of the prophecies of Alma sent sertain men unto him that[912](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10536766447647677250" \o "Note) he should[913](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17992654614318515780" \o "Note) inquire of the Lord whither[914](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11519238748749749648" \o "Note) the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanitess & it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma & Alma informed the messengers of Moroni that the armies of the Lamanitess were marching round about in the wilderness that they might come over into the land of Manti that they might commence an attack upon the more weak part of the people & those messengers went & delivered the message unto Moroni [915](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1720998113799004260" \o "Note)now Moroni leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land & take possession of the city & Moroni took[916](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17249313437344426676" \o "Note) the remainder part of his army & marched over into the land of Manti & he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves <​together to battle​> to battle against the Lamanites to defend their lands & their country their rights & their liberties therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites & it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the vally which was near the bank of the River Sidon which was on the west of the River Sidon in the wilderness & Moroni plased spies round about that he might[917](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6752406829251449562" \o "Note) know when the camp of [p. 276] the Lamanites should come[918](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15497307730129183059" \o "Note) & now as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites that it was their intent <​intention​> to destroy their brethren or to subject them & bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land & he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands their liberty & their church therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratigem therefore he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take therefore he divided his army & brought a part over into the vally & consealed them on the east & on the South of the hill Riplah & the remainder he consealed in the west vally on the west of the River Sidon & so down into the borders of the land Manti & thus having plased his army according to his desire he was prepared to meet them & it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill where a part of the army of Moroni was consealed & it came to pass that as the Lamanites had <​had​> had passed the hill Riplah & came into the vally & began to cross the River Sidon the army which was consealed on the south of the hill who was led by a man whose name was Lehi[919](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6464662914686552461" \o "Note) & he led his army forth & insercled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear & it came to pass that the Lamanites when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear turned them about & began to[920](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2703597340843255409" \o "Note) contend with the army of Lehi & the work of death commenced on both sides but it was more dredful on the part of the Lamanites for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Lamanites <​Nephites​> with their swords & their simeters which brought death almost at every stroke while on the other hand there was now & then a man of fell among the Nephites by their swords[921](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11640926144705914900" \o "Note) & the loss of blood they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body <​or the more vital parts of the body​> being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites by their breastplates & their arm shields & their head plates & thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites & it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened because of the great destruction among them even until they began to flee towards the River Sidon & they were persued by Lehi & his men & they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon & they crossed the waters of Sidon & Lehi retained his armies upon the banks of the River Sidon that they should not cross & it came to pass that Moroni & his army met the Lamamits[922](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16318017558679232250" \o "Note) in the vally on the other side of the River Sidon & it came to pass that Moroni & his army began to fall upon them & to slay they them[923](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1871878994583062600" \o "Note) & it came to pass that the Lamanites did flee again before them toward<​s​> the land of Manti & they were met again by the armies of Moroni now in this case the Lamanites did fight excedingly yea never had the Lamanites been known to have fought with such[924](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8193114790151891179" \o "Note) exceding <​great​> strength & courage <​no not even​> from the beginning & they were inspired by the Zoramites & the Amalekites which were their chief captains & leaders & by Zerahemnah who was their chief captain or their chief leader & commander [p. 277] yea they did fight like dragons & many of the Nephites were slain <​by​> their hand you for they did smite in two many of their headplates & they did pierce many of their breastplates & they did smite off many of their arms & thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger nevertheless the Nephites were inspired by a better cause for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes & their liberties their wives & their children & their all yea for their rites of worship & their church & they were doing that which they felt it was the duty which they owed to their God for the Lord had said unto them & also unto their fathers that inasmach as ye are not guilty of the first offence neither the second ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies & again the Lord h◊◊◊[925](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12631007502802120116" \o "Note) said that ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed therefore for this cause was <​were​> the Nephites contending with the Lamanites to defend themselves & their families & their lands their country & their rites rights & their religion & it came to pass that <​when​> the men of Moroni saw the fierceness & the anger of the Lamanites they were about to shrink & flee from them & Moroni perseiving their intent sent forth & inspired their hearts with these thoughts yea the thoughts of their lands their liberty yea their freedom from bondage & it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanitess & they cried[926](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7349763268922439669" \o "Note) with one voice unto the Lord their God for their liberty & their freedom from bondage & they began to stand against the Lamanites with power & in the selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom the Lamanites began to flee before them & they fed even to the waters of Sidon now the Lamanites were more numerous yea by more than double the number of the Nephites nevertheless they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the vally upon the bank by the River Sidon therefore the armies of Moroni enserceled them about yea even <​even​> on both sides of the River for behold on the east were the men of Lehi therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the River Sidon & the armies of Moroni on the west of the River Sidon that they were enserceled about by the Nephites they were struck with[927](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13901576580577568268" \o "Note) terror now Moroni when he saw their terror he commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood & it came to pass that they did stop & withdrew a pace from them & Moroni said unto Zerahemnah be <​behold​> Zerahemnah that we do not desire to be men of blood ye know that ye are in our hands yet we do not desire to[928](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5147580669826767574" \o "Note) slay you behold we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power neither do we desire to bring anyone to the yoke of bondage but this is the verry cause for which ye have come against us yea & ye are angry with us because of our religion but now ye behold that the Lord is with us & ye behold that he hath delivered you into our hands & now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion & our faith in Christ [p. 278] & now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith now ye see that this is the true faith of God yea ye see that God will support & keep & preserve us so long as we are faithful unto him & unto our faith & our religion & never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression & deny our faith & now Zerahemnah I command you in the name of that all powerful God who hath strengthened our arms that we have gained power over <​you​> by our faith by our religion & by our rites of worship & by our church & by the sacred support which we owe to our wives & our children by that liberty which binds us to our lands & our country yea & also by the maintainance of the sacred word of God to which we owe all our happiness & by all that is most dear unto us yea & this is not all I command you ◊◊ [by][929](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16130053136748279901" \o "Note) all the desires which ye have for life that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us & we will seek not your blood but we will spare your lives if ye will go your <​way​> & come not again to war against us & now if ye do not this behold ye are in our hands & I will command my men that they shall fall upon you & inflict the wounds of death in your bodies that ye may become extinct & then we will see who shall have power over this people yea we will see who shall be brought into bondage & now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah heard these sayings he came forth & delivered up his sword & his simetre & his bow into the hands of Moroni & saye◊◊[930](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13268436825990982046" \o "Note) unto him behold here is our weapons of war we will deliver them up unto you & we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you which we know that we shall brake & also our children but take our weapons of war & suffer that we[931](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10022969638134298531" \o "Note) may depart into the wilderness otherwise we will retain our swords & we will perish or conquer behold we are not of your faith we do not believe that it is God that hath delivered us into your hands but we believe it is your cunning that hath preserved you from our swords behold it is your breastplates & your shields that hath preserved you & now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words Moroni returned the sword & the weapons of war which he had received unto Zerahemnah saying behold we will end the conflict now I cannot retain the words which I have spoken therefore as the Lord lieveth ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground or ye shall submit to the conditions to which I have proposed & now when Moroni had said these words Zerahemnah retained his sword & he was angry with Moroni & he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni but as he raised his sword behold one of Moronis Soldiers smote it even to the earth & [932](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12982316652021601549" \o "Note) it brake by the hilt & he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp & it fell to the earth & Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his Soldiers & it came to pass that the Soldier which stood by which smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair & laid it upon the point of his sword [p. 279] & streached it forth towards <​unto them​> saying unto them with a loud voice saying even as this scalp hath fallen to the earth which is the scalp of your chief so shall ye fall to the earth except ye <​will​> deliver up your swords <​weapons​> of war & depart with a covenant of peace now there were many when they saw <​heard​> these words & saw the scalp which was upon the sword they were struck with fear & many came forth & threw down their weopon of war at the feet of Moroni & entered into a covenant of peace & as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness[933](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16823874283466458408" \o "Note) now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceding wroth & he did stir up the remainder of his Souldiers to anger to contend more powerfully against the Nephites & now Moroni was angry b◊cause of the stuborness of the Lamanitess therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them & slay them & it came to pass that they began to slay them yea & the Lamanites did contend with their swords & their mights but behold their naked skins & their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites yea behold they were pierced & smitten yea & did fall exceding fast before the swords of the Nephites & they began to be swept down even as the Souldier of Moroni had prophesied now Zerahemnah when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed ◊◊ cried mightily unto Moroni promiseing that he would covenant & also his people with them if they would spare the remainder of their lives <​that​> they never would come to war again against them & it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people & it c◊me to pass that he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites & after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness now the number of their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of the number yea the number of their dead were exceding great on both on the Nephites & on the Lamanites & it came to pass that they <​did​> cast their dead into the waters of Sidon & they have gone forth & are buried in the debths of the Sea & the armies of the Nephites or of Moroni returned & came to their houses & their lands & thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended the record of Alma which was wrote upon the plates of Nephi——

Alma, Chapter 21 [Alma 45–49]

Chapter [blank][934](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8041695411648203484" \o "Note)——

[935](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14219965038041296997" \o "Note)The account of the people of Nephi— & their wars & dissensions in the days of Helaman according to the record of Helaman which he kept in his days—— Behold now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were excedingly rejoiced because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God yea & they did fast much & pray much & they did worship God with exceding great joy & it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi that Alma came unto his Son Helaman & sayeth unto him believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning these [p. 280] reckords which have been kept & Helaman sayeth unto him yea I believe & Alma sayeth again believest thou in Jesus Christ whi◊h shall come & he sayeth yea I believe all the words which thou hast spoken & Alma sayeth unto him again will ye keep my commandments & he sayeth yea I will keep thy commandments with all my heart then Alma sayeth unto him blessed art thou Lord shall prosper thee in this land but behold I have some what to prophesy unto thee but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known yea what I prophesy <​unto​> you <​thee​> shall not be made known <​even​> until the prophecy is fulfilled therefore write the words which I shall say & these are the words Behold I perseive that this verry people the Nephites according to the spirit of revalation which is in me in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them shall dwindle in unbelief yea & then shall they see wars & pestilences yea famines & bloodsheds even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct yea & this because they shall dwindle in unbelief & fall into the works of darkness & lasciviousness & all manner of iniquities yea I say unto you that because they shall sin against so great light & knowledge yea I say unto you that from that day even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come & when that great <​day​> cometh behold the time verry soon cometh that those wh◊◊h are now or the seed of those which are now numbered among <​the people of​> the Nephites shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi but whosoever remaineth & is not destroyed in that great & dreadful day shall be numbered among the Lamanites & shall become like unto them all save it be a few which shall be called the Desipels of the Lord & them shall the Lamanites persue even until they shall become extinct & now because of iniquity this prophecy shall be fulfilled & now it came to pass that after Alma had said these words <​things​> unto Helaman he blessed him & also hisother Sons & he also blessed the earth for the righteous sake & he said thus saith the Lord God cursed shall be the land <​yea this land​> unto every Nation Kindred Toungue & People unto destruction which do wickedly when they are fully ripe & as I have said so shall it be for this is the cursing & the blessing of God upon the land for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance & now when Alma had said these words he blessed the church yea all those which should stand fast in the faith from that time henseforth & when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla as if to go into the land of Melek & it came to pass that he was never heard of more as to his death or his buriel we know not of behold this we know that he was a righteous man & the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the spirit or buried by the hand of the Lord even as Moses but behold the Scripture sayeth the Lord took [p. 281] Moses unto himself & we suppose that he hath also received Alma in the spirit unto himself therefore for this cause we know nothing conserning his death & buriel & now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them for behold because of their wars with the Lamanites & the many little desensions & disturbances which had been among the people it became expediant that the word of God should be declared among them yea & that a regulation should be made throughout the church therefore Helaman & his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land yea in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi & it came to pass that they did appoint priests & teachers throughout all the land over all the churches & now it came to pass that after Helaman & his brethren had appointed priests & teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them & they would not give heed to the words of Helaman & his brethren but they grew proud being lifted up in their hearts because of their exceding great riches therefore they grew rich in their own eyes[936](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3017360348095109318" \o "Note) & would not give heed to their words to walk uprightly before God & it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman & his brethren were gathered together against their brethren & now behold they were exceding wroth insomuch that they were determined to slay them now the leader of those which were wroth against their brethren was a large & a strong man & his name was Amaleki <​Amalickiah​> & Amalickiah was desireous to be a king & those people which were wroth were also desireous that he should be their king & they were the greater part of them the lower Judges of the land & they were seeking for power & they had been led by the flateries of Amalickiah[937](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9831746906606116531" \o "Note) that if they would support him & establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman & his brethren yea notwithstanding their exceding great care over the church for they were high priests over the church & there were many in the church which believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah therefore they dissented over <​even​> from the church & thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceding precarious & dangerous notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites & their great rejoicings which[938](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18304585854605950452" \o "Note) they had had because of their deliveary[939](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10568659432835843531" \o "Note) by the hands of the Lord thus we see how quick the children of men doth forget the Lord their God yea how quick to do iniquity & to be led away by the wicked <​evil​> one yea & we also see the great wickedness one <​verry​> wicked man can cause <​to take place​> among the children of men yea we see that Amalickiah because he was a man of cunning divises & a man of many flattering words that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly yea & to seek to destroy the church of God & to destroy the foundation of liberty which God hath <​had​> granted unto them or which libe◊ty <​blessing​> God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous sake & now it came to pass that when Moroni which was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites had heard of these dissensions he [p. 282] was angry with Amalickiah[940](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3265455096877517365" \o "Note) & it came to pass that he rent his coat & he took a piece thereof & wrote upon it In Memmory of our God our Religion & Freedom & our Peace our Wives & our Children & he fastened it upon the end of a pole thereof & he fastened on his headplate & his breast plate & his shields & girted on his armour about his loins & he took the pole which had on the end thereof his rent coat & he called it the title of liberty & he bowed himself to the earth & he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethen so long as there should a band of christians remain to possess the land for thus were all the true believers of Christ which belonged to the church of God called by those who did not belong to the church & those who did belong to the church were faithful yea all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them gladly[941](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "168890920814254487" \o "Note) the name of Christ or christians as they were called because of their belief in christ which should come & therefore at this time Moroni prayed that the cause of the christians & the freedom of the land might be favoured & it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God he gave all the land which was south of the land Desolation yea & in fine all the land both on the north & on the south a chosen land & the land of liberty & he sayeth surely God shall not suffer that we who are dispised because we take upon us the name of Christ shall be troden down & destroyed until we bring it upon us by our own <​own​> transgressions & when Moroni had said these words he went forth among the people waveing the rent of his garment in the air that all might see the writing which he had wrote upon the rent & crying with a loud voice saying behold whosoever will maintain this title upon the land let them come forth in the strength of the Lord & enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights & their[942](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1139285300926154581" \o "Note) religion that the Lord God may bless them [943](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10526042980780701452" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words behold the people came running together with their armours girted about their loins rending their garments in token or as a covenant that they would not forsake the Lord their God or in other words if they should transgress the commandments of God or fall into transgression & be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments now this was the covenant which they made & they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni saying we covenant with our God that we shall be destroyed even as our brethren in the land Northward if we shall fall into transgression yea[944](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2925963519844694600" \o "Note) he may cast us at the feet of our enemies even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be troden under foot if we should fall into transgression Moroni sayeth unto them behold we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob yea we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces yea & now behold let us remember to keep the commandments of God or our garments shall be rent by our brethren & we be cast into prison[945](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2323554072998911931" \o "Note) or be sold or be slain yea let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph yea let us remember the words of Jacob before his death for behold he saw that a part of the remnant of [p. 283] the coat <​of Joseph​> was preserved & had not decayed &[946](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9448284976719401443" \o "Note) he sayeth even as this remnant of garment of my Son<​s​> hath been preserved so shall a remnant of the Seed of my Son be preserved by the hand of God & be taken unto himself while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish even as the remnant of his garment now behold this giveth my soul sorrow nevertheless my soul hath joy in my Son becaus that part of the his seed which shall be taken unto God now behold this was the language of Jacob & now who knoweth but what[947](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13448013411821672643" \o "Note) the remnant of the seed of Joseph which shall <​shall​> perish as his garment are those which have deserted desented[948](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5644590681443022754" \o "Note) from us yea & even it shall be us if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ [949](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4017444146375908500" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these[950](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11683440166226612" \o "Note) words he went forth & also sent forth in all the[951](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14497814654405704116" \o "Note) parts of the land where there were dissensions & gathered together all the people which were desireous to maintain their liberty to stand against Amalickiah & those which had dissented which were called Amalickiahites & it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites & he also saw that his people were doubtful conserning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken therefore fearing that he should not gain the point took those of his people which would & departed into the land of Nephi now Moroni thought it was not expediant that the Lamanites should have any more strength therefore he thought to[952](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13687373478261168572" \o "Note) cut off the people of Amaleckiah or to take them & bring them back & put Amalickiah to[953](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10655615721670974719" \o "Note) death yea for he knew that[954](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17786211829421519770" \o "Note) they would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them & cause them to come to[955](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18146051183133567216" \o "Note) battle against them & this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposses therefore Moroni thought it was expediant that he should take his armies that <​which​> had gathered themselves together & armed themselves & entered into a covenant to keep the peace & it came to pass that he took his army & marched out into[956](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10685806205386135689" \o "Note) the wilderness to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness & it came to pass that he <​did​> according to his desires & marched forth into the wilderness & headed the armies <​armies​> of Amalickiah & it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men & the remainder was <​were​> delivered up into the hands of Moroni & were taken back into the land of Zarahemla now Moroni being a man which was appointed by the chief Judges & the voice of the people therefore he had power[957](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15915594576368826644" \o "Note) according to his will with the armies of the Nephites to establish & to exercise authority over them & it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenat to support the cause of freedom that they might maintain [p. 284] a free goverment he caused to be put to death & there was but few which denied the covenant of freedom & it came to pass also that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land which was possessed by the Nephitees & thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites & they began to have peace again in the land & thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the Judges & Helaman & the high priests did also maintain order in the church yea even form tth <​for the​> space of four years did they have much peace & rejoicing in the church & it came to pass that there were many who died firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ thus they went out of the world rejoicing & there were some who died with fevers which[958](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14074929319382778079" \o "Note) at some seasons of the year was verry frequent in the land but not so much so with fevers because of the excelence excellent qualities of the many plants & roots which God had prepared to move the <​cause​> of deseases which was subsequent to man[959](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17545863296646944355" \o "Note) by the nature of the climate but there were many who died with old age & those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him as we must needs suppose now we[960](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16489456332739100526" \o "Note) will return in our record to Amalickiah & those which had fled[961](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13475896953890265133" \o "Note) with him into the wildarness for behold he had taken those which went[962](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1680582094718534259" \o "Note) with him & went up into[963](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2495740622219976401" \o "Note) the land of Nephi among the Lamanites & did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites <​people​> of Nephi insomuch that the King of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land among all his people that they should gather themselves[964](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12742919182958361462" \o "Note) together <​again to go up to battle​> against the Nephites & it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceding fraid yea they feared to displease the king & they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives & it came to pass that they would not or the more part of them would not obey the commandment[965](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17640619484021321772" \o "Note) of the king & now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobediance therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obediant unto his commands & commanded him that he should go forth & compel them to arms now behold this was the desires of Amalickiah for he being a verry subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites & now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites which were in favour of the king & he sought to gain favour of those which were not obediant therefore he went forward to the place which was which were not <​obediant​> in[966](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "847151916106696041" \o "Note) therefore <​called​> Oneidah[967](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5121927501486020991" \o "Note) for thither had all the Lamanites fled for they discovered the army of coming & they supposed <​supposing that​> they were coming to destroy them therefore they fled to Oneidah to the place of arms & they had[968](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13807682658036665486" \o "Note) [p. 285] appointed a man to be a king & a leader over them being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites & it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas in preperation to battle now it was not Amalickiah intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the King but behold it was his intention to gain favour with the armies of the Lamanites that he might place himself at their head & dethrone the king & take possession of the kingdom & behold it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the vally which was near the mount Antipas & it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret Embassy into the mount Antipas desireing that the leader of those which were upon the mount whose name was Lehonti that he should come down to the foot of the mount for he desired to speak with him & it came to pass that whem Lehonti recived the Message he dearst not go down to the foot of the mount & it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time desireing him to come down & it came to pass that Lehonti would not & he sent again the third time & it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount he went up into the mount nearly to Lehontis camp & he sent again the forth time his message unto Lehonti desireing that he would come down &[969](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10366222082656260854" \o "Note) that he would bring his guards with him & it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night time & surround those men in their Camps over whom the king had gave him command & that he would deliver them up into Lehontis[970](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14836051671257922081" \o "Note) hands if he would make him Amalickiah a[971](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13830334310481504302" \o "Note) second leader over the whole army & it came to pass that Lehonti cameim with his men & surrounded the men of Amalickiah so that before they awoke at the dawn of <​the​> day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti & it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall to fall w <​in with​> their brethren that they might not be destroyed now this was th[e] verry thing which Amalickiah desired & it came to pass that he delivered [p. 286] his men conterary to the commands of the king now this was the thing which <​that​> Amalickiah desired that he might accomplish his designs in dethroneing the king now it was the custom among the Lamanites if their chief leader was killed to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader & it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti that he died now when Lehonti was dead the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader & their chief commander & it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies for he had gained his desires to the land of Nephi to the city of Nephi which was the chief city & the king came out to meet him with his guards for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands & that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army for to go against the Nephites to battle but behold as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king & they went &[972](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17002591523459825513" \o "Note) bowed themselves before the king as if to reverance him because of his <​his​> greatness & it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to <​raise​> them as was the custom with the Lamanites & a token of peace which custom they had taken from the Nephites & it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground behold he stabed the king to the heart & he fell to the earth now the servants of the king fled & the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry saying behold the servants of the king have stabed him to the heart & he has <​has​> fell & they have fled behold come & see & it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth & see what had hapened unto the king & when they had come to the spot & found the king lieing in his goar Amalickiah pretended to be wroth & said whosoever loved the king let him go forth & persue his servants that they may be slain & it came to pass that when all they <​who​> loved the king when they heard these words came forth & persued after the servants of the king now when the servants of the king saw an army persueing after they them they were frightened[973](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2688148823612513745" \o "Note) <​again​> & fled into the wilderness & came over into[974](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "480247901412801365" \o "Note) the land of Zarahemla & joined the people of Ammon & the army which persued after them [p. 287] returned having persued after them in vain ◊ & thus Amalickiah by his fraud gained the hearts of the people & it came to pass on the morrow he entered the City Nephi with his armies & took possession of the City & now it came to pass that the Queen <​Queen​> when she had heard that the king was slain for Amalickiah had sent an Embassy to the <​Queen​> informing her that the king had been slain by his servants that he had persued them with his army but it was in vain & they had made their escape therefore when the Queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah desireing him that he would spare the people of the city & she also desired him that he should come in unto her & she also desired him that he should bring <​bring​> witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king & it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king & also[975](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12543657850648053964" \o "Note) they which were with him & went in unto the Queen unto the place where she sat & they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants & they said also they have fled dos not this testify against them & thus they satisfied the Queen concerning the death of the king & it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favour of the Queen & took her unto him to wife & thus <​thus​> by his fraud & by the assistance of his cunning servants he obtained the kingdom yea he was acknowledged king throughout all the land among all the people of the Lamanites which was composed of the Lamanites & the Lemuelites & the Ishmaelites & all the dissenters from the Nephites from the Reign of Nephi down to the presant time now these dissenters having the same instruction & the same information of the Nephites yea having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord nevertheless it is strange to relate not long after their dissensions they became more hardened & impenitant & more wild wicked & ferosious than the Lamanites drind <​drinking​> in with the traditions of the Lamanites giving way to indolence & all manner of lasciviousness yea entirely forgeting the Lord their God & now it came to pass that as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi yea he <​did​> appointed <​men​> to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers [p. 288] against the Nephites & thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth yea of the reign of the Judges he having accomplished his designs therefore thus far <​yea​> he having been made king over the Lamanites he sought also to reign over all the land yea & all the people which were in the land the Nephites as well as the Lamanites therefore he had accomplished his design for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites & blinded their minds & stired them up to angar inso much that he had gathered together a numerous hoast to go to battle against the Nephites for he was determined because of the greatness of the <​number​> of his people to over-power the Nephites & to bring them into bondage & thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites & their places of resort & their wekest parts of their cities therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies & it came to pass that they took their camp & moved forth towards the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud & deceit Moroni on the other hand had been a prepareing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God yea he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites & erecting small forts or places of resort throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose[976](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3860849595271611365" \o "Note) his armies & also building walls of Stone to ensircle them about round about their Cities & the borders of their lands yea all round about the land & in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men & thus he did fortify & strengthen the land was possessed by the Nephites & thus he was prepareing to support their liberty their lands their wives & their children & their peace & that they might live unto the Lord their God & that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of christians & Moroni was a strong & a mighty man he was a man of a perfect understanding yea a man that did not delight in bloodshed a man whose soul did joy in the liberty & the freedom of his country & his brethren from bondage & slavery yea a man whose heart did swell with thanks giving to his God for the many privileges & blessings which he bestowed upon his people a man who did labour excedingly for the wellfare & safety of his people yea & he was a [p. 289] man who was firm in the faith of Christ & he had swoarn with an oath to defend his people his rights & his country & his religion even to the loss of his blood now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enimies even to the sheding of blood if it were necessary yea & they were also taught never to give an offence yea & never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy except it were to preserve their lives & this was their faith that by so doing God would prosper them in the land or in other words if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land yea warn them to fle or to pepare for war according to their danger & also that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies & by so doing the Lord would deliver them & this was the faith of Moroni & his heart did glory in it not in the sheding of blood but in doing good in preserving his people yea in keeping the commandments of God yea & resisting iniquity yea verily verily I say unto you if all men had been & were & ever would be like unto Moroni behold the verry powers of Hell would[977](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17598131392412962014" \o "Note) <​would​> have been shaken forever yea the Devil <​would​> never have <​no​> power over the hearts of the children of men behold he was a man like unto Ammon the Son of Mosiah yea & even the other Sons of Mosiah yea & & also Alma & his Sons for they were all men of God now behold Helaman & his brethren were no[978](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12829909460031812847" \o "Note) less servicable unto the people than was Moroni for they did preach the word of God & they did baptise <​unto repentance​> all men whosoever would hearken unto their words & thus they went forth & the people did humble themselves because of their words in so much that they were highly favoured of the Lord & thus they were free from war<​s​> & contentions among themselves yea even for the space of four years but as I have said in the latter end of the nineteenth yea[979](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "587953593135682156" \o "Note) notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren the Lamanites yea & in fine their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites notwithstanding their much reluctance now they were sorry to take [p. 290] up arms against the Lamanites because they did not delight in the sheding of blood yea & this was not all they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world unprepared to meet their God nevertheless they could not suffer to lay down their lives that their wives & their children should be massacreed by the barbarous cruelty of those who was once their brethren yea & had desented from their church & had left them & had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites yea they could not bare that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God for the promises of the Lord were if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land[980](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7808104283164693088" \o "Note) & now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year on the tenth day of the month the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah & behold the city had been rebuilt & Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city & they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows & the stones of the Lamanites for behold they fought with stones & with arrows behold I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt I say unto you yea that it was in part rebuilt & because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people they supposed <​that​> it would again become an easy prey for them but behold how great was their disapointment for behold the [981](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13237568793170568649" \o "Note)Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones & their arrows at them that they might take effect neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of enterance now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished excedingly because of the wisdom of the Nephites in prepairing[982](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11201576128809910150" \o "Note) their places of security now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed because of the greatness of their numbers yea they supposed <​that​> they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done yea & they had also prepared themselves with shields & with breastplates & they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins yea verry thick garments to cover [983](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3362182519969287234" \o "Note)their nakedness & being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily [p. 291] overpower & subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage or slay & massacre them according to their pleasure but behold to their uttermost astonishment they were prepared for them in a manner which never had been known among all[984](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14193359940664809111" \o "Note) the children of Lehi now they were pepared for the Lamanites to battle after the manner of the instruction<​s​> of Moroni [985](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "643882627462253763" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Lamanites or the Amalickiahites were excedingly astonished at their manner of preperation for war[986](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16710162865085368478" \o "Note) now if king Amalickiah had came down out of the land of Nephi at the head of his army perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah for behold[987](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5087566634754209968" \o "Note) he did care not for the blood of his people but behold Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle & behold his chief captains dearst not attackt the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites inomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat & they could not come upon them therefore they retreated into the wilderness & took their camp & marched towards the land of Noah supposeing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites for they knew not that Moroni had fortified or had built forts of security for every City in all the land round about therefore they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination yea their chief captains[988](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1353441562119656916" \o "Note) came forward & took an oath that they would destroy the people of that City but behold to their astonishment the City of Noah which had hitherto been a weak place had now by the means of Moroni became strong yea even to exced the strength of the city Ammonihah <​&​> now behold this was wisdom in Moroni for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah & as the City of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land therefore they would march thither to battle & thus it was according to his desires & behold Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that City & it was that same Lehi which with the Lamanites in the vally on the east of the River Sidon[989](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1227491505132401443" \o "Note) [990](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13070883352896298471" \o "Note)& now behold it came to pass that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed for they feared Lehi excedingly nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an [p. 292] oath to attackt the city therefore they brought up their armies now behold the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up & the debth of the ditch which had been dug round aboat save it were by the enterance & thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter in the fort by any other way by casting over stones & arrows at them thus they were prepared yea a body of their most strong men[991](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4130483575875448333" \o "Note) with their swords & their slings to smite down all who should attempt to come in to their place of security by the place of enterance & thus were they prep <​prepared​> to defend themselves against the Lamanites & it came to pass that the captaains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of enterance & began to contend with the Lamanites <​Nephites​> to get into their place of security but behold they were driven back from time to time inso much that they were slain with an immence slaughter now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies that they might have an equal chance to fight but behold in these attempts they were swept off[992](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12278422607409145409" \o "Note) by the stones & the arrows which were thrown at them & instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth they were filled up in a measure with their dead & wounded bodies thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies & thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites untill their chief Captains were all slain yea & more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain while on the other hand there was not a single soul of the Nephites which were slain there were about fifty which were wounded which had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass but they were shielded by their shields & their breastplates & their headplates insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs many of which was[993](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5059618302596707368" \o "Note) verry severe [994](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6473387929143560902" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that their cheef captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness & it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi to inform their king Amalickiah who was a Nephite by birth concerning their loss & it came to pass that he was exceding angry with his people because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage yea he was exceding wroth & he did curse God & also Moroni swearing[995](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8590430152438721293" \o "Note) with an oath that he would drink his blood & this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in prepareing for the safty of his people & it came to pass [p. 293] that on the[996](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4128619388683087308" \o "Note) other hand the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God because of his matchless[997](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11717873178562024745" \o "Note) power in delivering them from their <​the hands​> of their enemies & thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi yea & there was continual peace among them & exceding great prosperity in the church because of their heed & diligence which they gave unto the word of God which was declared unto them by Helaman & Shiblon & Corianton & Ammon & his brethren .&c. yea & by all those which had been ordained by the Holy order of God being baptised unto repentance & sent forth to preach among the people &c——

Alma, Chapter 22 [Alma 50]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preperations for war or to defend themselves against the Lamanites for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the Judges that they should commence in diging up heaps of earth round about all the cities throughout all the land which was posessed by the Nephites & upon the top of these those ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers yea works of timbers built up to the heighth of a man round about the cities & he caused that upon those works of timbers[998](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6445623432820386602" \o "Note) that there should be a frame of pickits built upon the timbers round about & they were strong & high & he caused towers to be erected that over looked those works of pickets[999](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15790973134551849944" \o "Note) & he caused places of security to be built upon those towers that the stones & the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them & they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof according to their pleasure & their strength & slay him which should attempt to approach near the walls of the City thus Moroni did prepare strong holds against the comeing of their enemies round about every City in all the land & it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness yea & they went forth & drave all the Lamanites which were in the east wilderness into their own lands which were south of the land of Zarahemla & the land of Nephi did run in a strait course[1000](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14874826290216095088" \o "Note) from the east Sea to the west & it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness which was north of the lands of their own possessions he caused that the inhabitants which were in the land of Zarahemla & in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness even to the borders by the Seashore & possess the land & he also plased armies on the south [p. 294] in the borders of their possessions & caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies & their people from the hands of their enemies & thus he cut off all the strong holds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness yea & also on the west fortifying the line between the Nephites & the Lamanites between the land of[1001](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "586337453127742632" \o "Note) Zarahemla & the land of Nephi from the west sea running by the head of the River Sidon the Nephites possessing all the land Northward yea even all the land which was Not <​northward​> of the land Bountiful according to their pleasure thus Moroni with his armies which did increase daily because of the assureance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them therefore they did seek to cut off the strength & the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions that they should have no power upon the lands of their possessions [1002](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15155706612250052196" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city & they called the name of the city Moroni & it was by the east Sea & it was on the South by the line[1003](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7126781469965515394" \o "Note) of the possessions of the Lamanites & they also began a foundation for a city between the City of Moroni & the City of Aaron joining the borders of Aaron & Moroni & they called the name of the city or the land Nephihah & they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north one in a particular manner which they called Lehi which was in the north by the borders of the Sea shore & thus ended the twentieth year & in these prosperous Circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty & first year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & they did prosper excedingly & they became exceding rich yea & they did multiply & wax[1004](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11077646518926505677" \o "Note) strong in the land & thus we see how merciful &[1005](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15300411244736160539" \o "Note) Just are all the dealings of the Lord to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men yea we can behold that his words are verrified even at this time which he spake unto Lehi saying blessed art thou & thy children & they shall be blessed in as much as they <​shall​> keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land but remember in as much as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presance of the Lord & we see that these promises have been verrified to the people of Nephi for it has been their quarelings & their contention yea their murderings & their plunderings their idoletry their whoredoms & their abominations which were among themselves which brought upon them their wars & their destructions &[1006](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4115092046102414479" \o "Note) those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times whilst others <​thousands​> of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage or to perish by the sword or to dwindle in unbelief & mingle with the Lamanites but behold there never was a happier time among the Nephites since the day of Nephi than in the days of Moroni yea even at this time in the twenty & first year of the reign of the Judges & it came to pass that the twenty & second year of the reign of the Judges also ended in peace yea & also the twenty & third year [1007](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11497095095166225147" \o "Note)& it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty & fourth year [p. 295] of the reign of the Judges there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi & the land of Morianton[1008](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15647388844369005527" \o "Note) which joined upon the borders of Lehi both of which were on the borders by the Sea shore for behold the people which possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi therefore they there began to be a warm contention among <​between​> them insomuch that the people of Morianton took up[1009](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16771614158840213408" \o "Note) arms against their brethren & they were determined by the sword to slay them but behold the peopeole which possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni & appealed unto him for assistance for behold they were not in the wrong [1010](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16832797990696355221" \o "Note)& it came to pass that[1011](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12460802246949041832" \o "Note) the people of Morianton which were led by a man whose name was Morianton found[1012](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4973671002831352332" \o "Note) that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni they were exceding fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them & destroy them therefore Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward which was covered with large bodies of water & take possession of the land which was northward & behold they would have carried this plan into an exffect which would have been a cause to have been lamented but behold Morianton being a man of much passion therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants & he fell upon her & beat her much & it came to pass that she fled & came over to the camp of Moroni & told Moroni all things concerning the matter & also concerning their intensions to[1013](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17169212660457830981" \o "Note) flee into the land northward now behold the people which were in the land Bountiful or rather Moroni feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton & unites with his people & thus he would obtain possessions of that <​those​> parts of the land which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi yea which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty therefore Moroni sent an army with their camp to head the people of Morianton to stop their flight into the land northward & it came to pass that they did not head them until they had came to the borders of the land desolation[1014](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5145095214645871268" \o "Note) & there they did head them by the narrow pass which led by the Sea into the land northward yea by the sea on the west & on the[1015](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13762200280722905172" \o "Note) East [1016](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1944835529123348354" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni which was led by a man whose name was Teancum did meet the people of Morianton & so stuborn were the people of Morianton being inspired by his wickedness & his flattering words that a battle commenced between them in the which Teancum did slay Morianton & defeat his army & took them prisoners & returned to the camp of Moroni & thus ended the twenty & fourth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus was [p. 296] the people of Morianton brought back & upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton & a union took place between them & the people of Lehi &[1017](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5284724903338988577" \o "Note) they were also restored to their lands [1018](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12055943959814173834" \o "Note)& it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them that Nephihah the second Chief Judge died having filled the Judgmentseat with perfect uprightness before God nevertheless he had refused Alma to take possession of those records & those things which were esteemed by Alma & his fathers to be most sacred therefore Alma had confered them upon his Son Helaman [1019](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4207383422451413730" \o "Note)behold it came to pass that the Son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the Judgmentseat in the stead of his father yea he was appointed Chief Judge & Governor over the people with an oath & sacred <​sacred​> ordinance to Judge righteously[1020](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7094721484363398305" \o "Note) & to keep the peace & the freedom of the people & to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God yea to support & maintain the cause of God all his days & to bring the wicked to Justice according to their crime now behold his name was Pahoran[1021](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13667983692977536618" \o "Note) & Pahoran did fill the seat of his father & did commence his reign in the end of the twenty & fourth year over the people of Nephi——

Alma, Chapter 23 [Alma 51]

Chapter XXIII—— And now it came to pass in the twenty & fifth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi they having established peace between the people of Lehi & the people of Morianton concerning their lands & having commenced the twenty & fifth year in peace nevertheless they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land for there began to be a contension among the people concerning the chief Judge Pahoran for behold there were a part of the people which desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered but behold Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered therefore he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law therefore those which were[1022](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2230424019231869216" \o "Note) desireous that the law should be altered were angry with him & desired that he should no longer be chief Judge over the land therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter but not unto bloodshed [1023](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12100148424786087020" \o "Note)& it came to pass that those who were desireous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the Judgment <​seat​> were called King men for they were desireous that the law should be altered in a[1024](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12105678966035708236" \o "Note) manner to overthrow the free goverment & to establish a king over the land & those who were desireous that Pahoran should remain chief Judge over the land tookupon them the name of Free men & thus was the division among them for the Free Men had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights & their priviliges of their religion by a[1025](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8254765480987932186" \o "Note) free goverment [1026](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17122177139538866898" \o "Note)& it came to pass that this matter of their contention was setteled by the voice of the people & it came to pass that the voice of the people came in the favour of the Free men & Pahoran retained the Judgmentseat which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran & also [p. 297] many <​the People​>[1027](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "935645636352772417" \o "Note) of liberty which also put the Kingmen to silence that they dearst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom now those which were in favour of Kings were those of high birth & they sought to be kings & they were supported by those which sought power & authority over the people but behold this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi for behold[1028](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6863926262982322544" \o "Note) Amalickiah had again stired up the hearts of the people of the Lamaites against the people of the Nephites & he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land & arming them & prepareing for war with all diligince for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni but behold we shall see that his[1029](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11197661329503907960" \o "Note) promise which he made was rash nevertheless he did prepare himself & his armies to come to battle against the Nephites now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been because of the many thousands which had been slain by the hand of the Nephites but notwithstanding[1030](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17935803645981923794" \o "Note) their great loss Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderful great army insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla <​yea​> even Amalickiah did himself come down at the head of the Lamanites & it was in the twenty & fifth year of the reign of the Judges & it was at the same time that they had began to settle the affairs of their contention<​s​> concerning <​the​> chief Judge Pahoran [1031](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3704640445478510708" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when the men which were called King men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them they were glad in their hearts & they refused to take up arms for they were so wroth with the chief Judge & also with the people of liberty that they would not take up arms to defend their country & it came[1032](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9607927136119669947" \o "Note) to pass that when Moroni saw this & also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land he was exceding wroth because of the stuborness of those people of whom he had laboured with so much diligence to preserve yea he was exceding wroth his soul was filled with anger against them & it came to pass that he sent a petition with the voice of the people unto the Chief Govornor of the land desireing that he should head[1033](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10846420649735442458" \o "Note) it & give him Moroni power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death for it was his first care to put an end to such contentions & dissensions among the people for behold this had been hitherto a cause of all their distructions &[1034](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5224522608337588870" \o "Note) it came to pass that it was granted according to the[1035](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17940822495293634249" \o "Note) voice of the people [1036](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4928715503769424777" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those Kingmen to pull down their pride & their nobility & level them with the earth or they should take up arms to s support the cause of liberty & it came to[1037](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12300947256127803981" \o "Note) pass that the armies did march forth against them & they did pull down their pride & their nobility insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men men of Moroni they were hewn down & leveled to the earth & it came to pass that there was were four thousand of those dissenters which were hewn down by the sword [p. 298] & <​those of​> their leaders which were not slain in battle were taken & cast into prison for there was no time for their trials at this period & the remainder of those dissenters rather than to be smote down to the earth by the sword yielded to the standard of liberty & were compelled to hoist the title of biberty upon their towers & in their Cities & to take up arms in defence of their[1038](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11859737263244551006" \o "Note) Country & thus Moroni put an end to those king men that there were not any known by the appellation of king men & thus he put an end to the stuborness & the pride of those people which professed the blood of nobility but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren & to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage behold it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars & contentions among his own people & subjecting them to peace & siviliseation & making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites behold the Lamanites had came into the land of Moroni which was in the borders by the Sea shore & it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni therefore Amalickiah did drive them slaying many & it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city yea possession of all their fortifications & those which fled out of the city of Moroni came to the City of Nephihah & also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together & made preperations & were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle but it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle but kept them down by the Sea shore leaving men in every city to maintain & defend <​it​> & thus he went on taking possession of many cities the city of Nephihah[1039](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8028888871746749445" \o "Note) & the city of Lehi & the city of Morianton & the city of Omner & the city of Gid & the city of Mulek all of which were on the east borders by the Sea Shore & thus had the Lamanites obtained by the cunning of Amalickiah so many Cities by their numberless hosts all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni all of which afforded strong holds for the Lamanites & it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful driveing the Nephites before them & slaying many but it came to pass that they were met by Teancum who had slain Morianton & had headed his[1040](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12776325082551602842" \o "Note) people in his flight & it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also as[1041](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6187676199634008170" \o "Note) he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful & also the land northward but behold he met with a disapointment of <​by​> <​being​> repulsed by Teancum & his men for they were[1042](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5197286306090322098" \o "Note) great wariors for every man of Teancum did excede did excede the Lamanites in their strength & in their skill of war insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites & it came to pass that they did harrass them insomuch that they did slay them even until [p. 299] it was dark & it came to pass that Teancum & his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful & Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the Sea shore & after this manner were they driven & it came to pass that when the night had come Teancum & his servant stole away <​forth &​> went out by night & went into the camp of Amalickiah & behold sleep had overpowered them because of their much fateague which was caused by the labours & heat of the day & it came to pass that Teancum stole privally into the tent of the King & put a Javlin to his heart & he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants & he returned again privally to his own camp & behold his men were asleep & he awoke them & told them all the things that he had done & he caused that his armies should stand in readiness lest the Lamanites had awoke & should come upon them & thus ended the twenty & fifth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended the days of Amalickiah

Alma, Chapter 24 [Alma 52–53]

Chapter XXIV—— And now it came to pass in the twenty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi behold when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month behold they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent & they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day & now when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted & they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward & retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek & sought protection in their fortifications & it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people & his name was Ammoron thus king Ammoron the brother of King Amalickiah was appointed to reign in his stead & it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities which they had taken by the sheding of blood for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood & now Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken & those parts of the land which they had obtained possession off & also seeing the enormity of their number Teancum thought it was not expediant that he should attempt to attackt them in their forts but he kept his men round about as if making preperations for war yea & truly he was prepareing to defend himself against them by casting up walls round about & prepareing places of resort & it came to pass that he kept thus prepareing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army & Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners which fell into his hands for as the Lamanites [p. 300] had taken many prisoners that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamaites as a ransom for those which the Lamanites had taken & he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful & secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward lest the Lamanites should obtain that point & should have power to harrass them on every side & Moroni also sent unto him desireing him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land & that he would seek every opportunity to screen <​scourge​> the Lamanites in that quarter as much as was in his power that perhaps he might take again by stratigem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands & that he <​also​> would also fortify & strengthen the cities round about which had had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites & he also said unto him I would come unto you but behold the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west Sea & behold I go against them therefore I cannot come unto you now the king Ammoron had departed out of the land of Zarahemla & had made known <​un​>to <​unto​> the Queen concerning[1043](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2000554902554030746" \o "Note) the death of his brother & had gathered together a large number of men & had marched forth against the Nephites by[1044](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11110772588277347242" \o "Note) <​on​> the borders by the west Sea & thus he was endeavoring to harrass the Nephites & <​to​> draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land which <​while​>[1045](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5498023884501657185" \o "Note) he had commanded those which he had left to possess the cities which he had taken that they should also harrass the Nephites or on the borders by the east sea & should take possession of their lands as much as it were in their power according to the power of their armies & thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi but behold it came to pass in the twenty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges the Teancum by the command of Moroni who had established armies to protect the South & the west borders of the land had began his march towards the land of Bountiful that he might assist Teancum with his armies in retakeing the cities which they had lost & it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attackt upon the city of Mulek & retake it if it were possible & it came to pass that Teancum made preperations to make an attackt upon the City of Mulek & march forth with his army against the Lamanites but he saw that it was impossble that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications therefore he abandoned his designs & he returned again to the city Bountiful to wait for the coming of Moroni that he might receive strength to his army & it came to pass that Moroni did arive with his army to the land of Bountiful in the latter end of the twenty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & in the commencement of the twenty & eighth year Moroni & Teancum & many of the chief Captains held a council of war what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle or that they might by [p. 301] some means flatter them out of their strong holds that they might gain advantage over them & take again the city of Mulek & it came to pass that they sent embassies to the armi◊s army of the Lamanites which protected the city of Mulek to their leader whose name was Jacob desireing him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities but behold Jacob which was a Zoramite would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains & it came to pass that Moroni having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds therefore he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strong holds therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men & march down near the Sea Shore & Moroni & his army by night marched into[1046](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5152967024700962542" \o "Note) the wilderness on the west of the city Mulek & thus on the morrow when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum they ran & told it unto Jacob their leader & it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum supposeing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers & as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to[1047](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6656988065068797262" \o "Note) retreat down by the Sea Sea shore northward & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee they took courage & persued them with vigor & while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites which were persueing them invain behold Moroni commanded that a part of his army which were with him should march forth into the city & take possession of it & thus they did & slew all those which <​who​> had been left to protect the city yea all those who would not yield up their weapon<​s​> of war & thus Moroni did <​had​> obtain<​ed​> a possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the persuit of Teancum & it came to pass that the Lamanites did persue Teancum until they came near the City Bountiful & then they were met by Lehi & a small army which[1048](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9676972098701366121" \o "Note) had been left to protect the city Bountiful & now behold when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them they fled in much confusion lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtaake them for they were wearied because of their march[1049](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11983320031626476660" \o "Note) & the men of Lehi were fresh now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army & all they feared was Lehi & his men now Lehi was not desireous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni & his army & it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites by the men of Moroni on one hand & the men of Lehi on the other all of whom were fresh & full of strength but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march & Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them umtil [p. 302] until they had given up their weapons of war & it came to pass that Jacob being their leader being also a Zoramite & having an unconquerable spirit led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceding fury against Moroni Moroni <​being​> in their course of march therefore Jacob was determined to slay them & cut his way through to the city of Mulek but behold Moroni & his men were more powerful therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites & it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceding fury & there were many slain on both sides yea & Moroni was wounded & Jacob <​Jacob​> was killed & Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war & the remainder of them knew not where <​whether​>[1050](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14471174592306110748" \o "Note) to go or to strike Moroni seeing[1051](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10491650215543743806" \o "Note) their confusion he said unto them if ye will bring forth your weapos of war & deliver them up behold we will forbare sheding your blood & it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words their chief captains all those which were not slain came forth & threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni & also commanded their men that they should do the same but behold there were many that would not <​not​> & those who would not deliver up their swords were taken & bound & their weapons of war were taken from them & they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful & now the number of prisoners which were taken exceded more than the number of those which had <​had​> been slain yea more than those which had been slain on both sides & it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites & did compel them to go forth & bury their dead yea & also the dead of the Nephites which were slain & Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labours & Moroni went to the city Malek with Lehi & took command of the city & gave it unto Lehi now behold this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battle <​battles​> & he was a man like unto Moroni & they rejoiced in each others safty yea they were beloved by each other & also[1052](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4786619314711798464" \o "Note) beloved by all the people of Nephi & it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead & also the dead of the Nephites they were marched back into the land Bountiful & Teancum by the orders of Moroni caused that they should commence in labouring in diging a ditch round about the land & <​or​> the city Bountiful & he caused that they should build a breast work of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch & they cast up[1053](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15639981845369391614" \o "Note) dirt out of the ditch against the breast work of timbers & thus they did cause the Lamanites to labour until they had enclo <​incerceled​> the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers & earth to a exceding heighth & this city became an exceding strong hold ever after [p. 303] & in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites yea even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labour because it were easey <​easy​> to guard them while at their labour & he desired all his forces when he should make an attackt upon the Lamanites & it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites & had obtainid possession of the city Mulek which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi & thus he had also builded <​built​> a strong hold to retain his prisoners & it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year but he did employ his men in prepareing for war yea & in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites yea & also delivering their women & their children from famine & affliction & providing food for their armies & now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites on the west Sea south while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intreague amongst the Nephites which caused[1054](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11088850363495225086" \o "Note) dissensions amongst them had gained some ground over them Nephites yea insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land & thus because of iniquity amongst themselves yea because of dissensions & intreague among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances & now behold I have some what to say concerning the people of Ammon which in the beginning were Lamanites but by Ammon & his brethren or rather by the power & word of God they had been converted unto the Lord & they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla & had ever since been protected by the Nephites & because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more & according to their oath they would have perished yea they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren had it not been for the pity & the exceding love which Ammon & his brethren had had for them & for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla & they ever had been protected by the Nephites but it came to pass that when they saw the danger & the many afflictions & tribullations which the Nephites did <​bore​> for them they were moved with compassion & were desireous to take up arms in the defence of their country but behold as they were about to take their weapons of war they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman & his brethren for they were about to brake the oath which they had made & Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls therefore all those which had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions in their dangerous circumstances at this time but behold it came to pass they had many Sons which had not entered [p. 304] into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time as many as were able to take up arms & they called themselves Nephites & they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites yea to protect the land to <​unto​> the laying down of their lives yea even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites & themselves from bondage now behold there were two thousand of those young <​men​> which entered into this covenant & took their weapons of war to defend their country now behold as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites they became now at this time of time also a great support for they took their weapons of war & they would that Helaman should be their leader & they were all young men & they were exceding valiant for courage & also for strength & activity but behold this was not all they were men which were true all at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted yea they were men of truth & soberness for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God & to walk uprightly before him & now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling Soul Soldiers to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the South by the west Sea & thus ended the twenty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi .&c.

Alma, Chapter 25 [Alma 54–55]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass in the[1055](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5903715644578042235" \o "Note) twenty & ninth year <​year​> of the Judges that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desireing that he would exchange prisoners & it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice excedingly at this request for he desired the provisions which was imparted for the Support of the Lamanites prisoners for the support of his own people & he also desired disered his own people for the strengthening of hi <​his​> own army now the Lamanites had taken many women & children & there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of the Nephites Moroni or the prisoners which Moroni had taken therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratigem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible therefore he[1056](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17499825894598118030" \o "Note) wrote an Epistle & sent it by the servant of Ammoron the same who had brought an Epistle to Moroni now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron saying behohold Ammoron I have wrote unto you som <​somewhat​> concerning this war which ye have wedged against my people or rather which thy Brother hath wedged against them & which ye are still determined to carry on after his death behold I would tell you something concerning the justice of God & the sword of his Almyghty wrath which doth hang over you except ye repent & withdraw your armies into your own lands or the lands of your possessions which is the land of Nephi yea I would tell you these things if ye were capible of trear <​harkening​> unto them yea I would tell you concerning that awful Hell whic <​that​> awaits to receive such murderers as thou & thy brother hath been except ye repent & with [p. 305]draw your murderous purposes & return with your armies to your own lands but as ye have once[1057](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16329044958347109612" \o "Note) rejected these things & have fought against the people of the Lord even so I may expect you will do it again & now behold we are prepared to receive you yea & except you withdraw your purposes behold you <​ye​> will pull down the wrath of that God whom you <​ye you​> have rejected upon you <​ye you​> even to your utter distruction but as the Lord liveth our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw & <​ye​> shall soon be visited with death for we will retake <​retain​> our cities & our lands yea & we will maintain our Religion & the cause of our God but behold it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain or it supposeth me that thou art a child of Hell therefore I will close my Epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisons save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man & his wife & his children for one prisoner if this be the case that ye will do it I will exchange & behold if ye do not this I will come against you with my armies yea even I will arm my women & my children & I will come against you & I will follow you even unto into your own land which is the land of our first inheritance yea & it shall be blood for blood yea life for life & I will give you battle even untill you are destroyed from off the face of the Earth behold I am in my anger & also my people ye have sought to murder us & we have only sought to defend ourselves[1058](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14434692390690823240" \o "Note) but behold if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you yea & we will seek our land the lands of our first[1059](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16760836747780182278" \o "Note) inherita◊ce now I close my Epistle I am Moroni I am a leader of the people of the Nephites Now it came to pass that Ammoron when he had received this Epistle he was angry & he wrote another Epistle unto Moroni & these are the wo◊◊◊ [words] which he wrote saying I am Ammoron the King of the Lamanites I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered behold I will avenge his blood upon you yea & I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatnings for behold your fathers did wrong their brethren insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the goverment when it rightly[1060](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17014671658871964823" \o "Note) belonged unto them & now behold if ye will lay down your arms & subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the goverment doth rightly belong then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons & shall be at war no more behold ye have breathed out many threatnings against me & my people but behold we fear not your threatnings nevertheless I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request gladly that I may preserve my food for <​my​> men of war & we will wedge a war which shall be eternal either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction & as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected behold we know not such a being neither ye but if it so be that there is such a being we know not but that he hath made us as well [p. 306] as you & if it so be that there is a Devil & a Hell behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother which ye have murdered which ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place but behold these things mattereth not I am Ammoron & a desendant of Zoram whom your fathers pressed & brought out of Jerusalem & behold now I am[1061](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7159187437939626118" \o "Note) a bold Lamanite behold this war hath been wadged to avenge their wrongs & to maintain & to obtain their rights to the goverment & I close my Epistle to Moroni now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this Epistle he was more angry because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud yea he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that he had caused him to wedge a war against the people of Nephi & he said behold I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose as I have stated in my Epistle for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got behold I knew know the place where the Lamanites doth guard my people which they have taken prisoners & as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine Epistle behold I will give unto him according to my words yea I will seek death among them until they shall sue por peace & now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he caused that a search should be made among his men that perhaps he might find a man which was a desendant of Laman among them & it came to pass that they found one whose name was Laman & he was one of the servants of the King which was murdered by Amalickiah now Moroni caused that Laman & a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards which were over the Nephites now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid therefore Moroni caused that Laman & a small number of men which was appointed to go[1062](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8773925198401069759" \o "Note) with him. & it came to pass that when it was evening Laman went to the guards which were over the Nephites & behold they saw him coming & they hailed him but he sayeth unto them fear not behold I am a Lamanite behold we have escaped from the Nephites & they sleepeth & behold <​behold​> we have took of their wine & brought with us now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy & they said unto him give us of your wine that we may drink we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary but Laman sayeth unto them let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to Battle but this saying only made them more desireous to drink of the wine for said they were are weary therefore let us take of the wine & by & by we shall receive wine for our rations which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites & Laman sayeth unto them you may do according to your desires <​desires​> & it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely & it was pleasant to the taste therefore they took of it more freely & it was strong having been prepared in its strength[1063](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13232434383005199784" \o "Note) & it came to pass they did drink & were merry [p. 307] & by & by they were all drunken & now when Laman & his men saw that they were all drunken & were in a deep sleep they returned to Moroni & told him all the things that had hapened & now this was according to the design of Moroni & Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war & <​he​> went[1064](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "719287989709948659" \o "Note) to the city Gid while the Lamanites[1065](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1477312609378604002" \o "Note) were in a deep sleep & drunken & cast in the weapons of war in unto the prisoners insomuch that they were all armed yea even to their women & all those of their children as many as were able to use a weapon of war when Moroni had armed all those prisoners & all those things were done[1066](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5738758302025605438" \o "Note) in a profound silence but had they awoke the Lamanites behold they were drunken & the Nephites could have slain them but behold this was not the desire of Moroni he did not delight in murder or blood shed but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction & for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice he would not fall upon the Lamanites & destroy them in their drunkeness but he had obtained his desire for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephits which were in the wall of the city & had gave them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls & then he caused his[1067](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17524406418378282714" \o "Note) men which were with him to withdraw a pace from them & surround the armies of[1068](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8548003586542180381" \o "Note) the Lamanites now behold this was done in the night time so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without & that their prisoners were armed within & thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them & in these circumstances they found that it was not expediant that they should fight with the Nephites therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war & they brought them forth & cast them at the feet of the Nephites pleading for mercy now behold this was the desire of Moroni[1069](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13332890740827605395" \o "Note) he took them prisoners of war & took possession of the City & caused that all the prisoners should be liberated which were[1070](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4704560953034182947" \o "Note) Nephites & they did join the army of Moroni & were a great strength to his army [1071](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16478836178575008194" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites which he had taken prisoners that they should commence a labour in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid & it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid according to his desires he caused that[1072](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11529219884148093091" \o "Note) his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful & he also guarded that City with an exceding strong force & it came to pass that they did notwithstanding all the intreagues of the Lamanites keep & protect all the prisoners which they had taken & also maintain all the ground & the advantage which they had retaken[1073](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13959901672161902681" \o "Note) & it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious & to reclaim their rights & their privileges many times did the Lamaites attempt to incircle them about by night but in these attenpts they did lose many prisoners [p. 308] & many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkeness but behold the Nephiites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their times of affliction these they could not be taken in their snares yea they would not partake of their wine[1074](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15782692723537377691" \o "Note) yea they would not take of wine[1075](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6384122202249499000" \o "Note) save they had firstly given to some of the Lamanite prisoners & they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among then for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite & thus they did try all their liquers & now it came to pass that it was expediant for[1076](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5019476694571053036" \o "Note) Moroni to make preperations to attackt the city Morianton for behold the Lamanites had by their labours fortified the city Morionton until it had become an exceding strong hold & they were continually bringing new forces into that City & asls <​also​> new supplies of provisions & thus ended the twenty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi

Alma, Chapter 26 [Alma 56–58]

[blank]

[1077](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "438008292137642206" \o "Note)And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the Judges in the second day of <​on​> the first Month Moroni received an Epistle from Helaman stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land & these are the words which he wrote saying My dearly beloved Brother Moroni as was <​well​> in the Lord as in <​the​> tribullations of our warfare behold my beloved Brother I have some what to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land behold two thousand of the Sons of those men which Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi now ye have known that these were a desendant of Laman wh◊◊h was the eldest Son of our father Lehi now I need not rehearse[1078](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2275707127824471443" \o "Note) unto you concerning their tradition<​s​> or their unbelief for thou knowest concerning all these things therefore it supposeth[1079](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "536255755443648771" \o "Note) me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men hath taken their weapons of war & would that I should be their leader & we have come forth to defend our Country & now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made that they would not take up their weapons of[1080](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6057663556108736024" \o "Note) war against their[1081](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1845799391277981452" \o "Note) brethren to shed blood but in the twenty & sixth year when they saw our afflictions & our tribullations for them they were about to brake the covenant which they had made & take up their weapons of war in our defence but I would not suffer them that they should brake this[1082](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8007825607594134206" \o "Note) covenant which they had made supposeing that God would strengthen us insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken but behold here is one thing in which we may have great joy for behold in the twenty & sixth year I Helaman did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the City of Judeah to assist Antipus whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land & I did join my two thousand Sons <​for they are worthy to be called Sons​> to the army of Antipus in the which strength Antipus did rejoice excedingly for behold his army had been redused by the Lamanites because of the numerority of their forces having slain[1083](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "700778575370148905" \o "Note) a vast number of our men for which cause[1084](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13240172671441369861" \o "Note) [p. 309] we have to mourn nevertheless we may console ourselves in this point that they have died in the cause of their country & <​of​> their God yea & they are hapy & the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners whom are chief Captains for none other have they spared alive <​&​> we suppose <​<​that​> they are​> now at this time in the land of Nephi it is so if they are not slain & now these are the cities which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the sheding of the blood of so many of our valiant men <​the​> the land of Manti or the city of Manti & the city <​of​> Zeezrum <​&​> the city of Cumeni & the city of Antiparah & these are the cities which they possessed[1085](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5095165427004502513" \o "Note) when I arived to <​at​> the city of Judeah & I found Antipus & his men toiling with their mights to fortify the city <​yea​> & they were depressed in body as well as in spirit for they had fought valiantly by day & toiled by night to maintain their cities & thus they had suffered[1086](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8549813640739293977" \o "Note) great afflictions of every kind & now they were determined to conquer in this place or die therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me yea those Sons of mine gave them great hopes & much joy[1087](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17390700960948993582" \o "Note) [1088](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17604176852086716205" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judeah or against us to battle & thus were we favoured of the Lord for had they came upon us in this our weakness they might have <​have​> perhaps destroyed our little army but thus were we preserved[1089](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6638778286223780411" \o "Note) they were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken & thus ended the twenty & sixth year & in the commencement of the twenty & seventh year we had prepared our City & ourselves for defence now we were desireous that the Lamanites should come upon us for we were not desireous to make an attackt upon[1090](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17235859913261987003" \o "Note) them in their strong holds & it came[1091](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16379559019361779338" \o "Note) to pass that we kept spies out round[1092](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4239106707842213789" \o "Note) about to watch the movements of the Lamanites that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attackt upon our other cities which were on the northward for we knew in those Cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them therefore we were desireous if they should pass by us to fall upon them in their rear & thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front we suppossed that we could overpower them but behold we were disappointed in this our desire they dearst not pass by us with their whole army neither dearst they with a part lest they should not be sufficiently strong & they [p. 310] should fall neither dearst they march down against the city of Zarahemla neither dearst they cross the[1093](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16189550344344509127" \o "Note) head of Sidon over to the City of Nephihah & thus with their forces they wer determined to miantain those City Cities which they had taken & now it came to pass in the second month of this year there was brought unto us many prisoners <​provisions​> from the fathers of those my two thousand Sons & also there was sent unto us two thousand men <​unto us​> from the land of Zarahemla & thus we were prepared with ten thousand men & provisions for them & also for their wives & their children & the Lamanites thus seeing our forces increas daily & provisions arive for our support they began to be fearful & began to sally forth if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions & strength now when we saw that the[1094](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11014654674655203205" \o "Note) Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise we were desireous to bring a stratigem into an effect upon them therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little Sons to a neighboring City as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring City & we were to march near the City Antiparah as if we were going to the <​City​> beyond in on the borders by the Sea shore & it came to pass that we did march forth as if with our provisions to go to that city & it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army leaving the remainder to maintain the city but he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army & came near the City Antiparah & now in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites yea the most numerous & it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies they came forth with their army & ar marched against us & it came to pass that we did flee before them northward & thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites yea even to a considerable distance insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus persueing them with their mights they did not turn to the right nor to the left but persued their march in a strait course affter us & as we suppose that it[1095](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6429301147940304955" \o "Note) was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them & this <​this​> that they might not be surrounded by our people & now Antipus beholding our[1096](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10871489515879320363" \o "Note) danger did speed the march of his army but behold it was night therefore they did not overtake us neither did Antipus ove overtake them therefore we did camp for the night & it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning behold the Lamanites were persueing us now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them yea I would not [1097](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15717444340277577898" \o "Note)suffer that my little Sons should fall into their hands therefore we did continue our march & we too <​took​> our march into the wilderness now they dearst not turn to the right nor to theleft lest they should be surrounded neither would I turn to the right nor [p. 311] to the left lest they should over take me & we could not stand against them but be slain & they would make their escape & thus we did flee all <​all​> that day into the wilderness even until it was dark & it came to pass that again when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us & we did flee before them but it came to pass that they did not persue us far before they halted & it was in the morning of the third day on the seventh month & now whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not but I said unto my men behold we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them that they might catch us in their snare therefore what say ye my Sons will ye go against them to battle & now I say unto you my beloved Brother Moroni that never had I seen so great courage nay not amongst all the Nephites for as I had ever called them my Sons for they were all of them verry young even so they said unto me father behold our God is with us & he will not suffer that we shall fall then let us go forth we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone therefore let us go lest they should over power the army of Antipus now they never had fought yet they did not fear death & they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives yea they had been taught by their mothers that if they did not doubt that God would deliver them & they rehearsed unto me the words of their Mothers saying we do not doubt our Mothers knew[1098](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5934561117349353786" \o "Note) & it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites which had persued us & now behold the armies of Antipus had overtaken them & a terrible battle had commenced the army of Antipus being weary because of their long march in so short a space of time were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites & had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose for Antipus had fallen by the sword & many of his leaders because of their weariness which was occasioned by the speed of their march therefore the men of Antipus being confused because of the fall of their leaders began to g◊ve way before the Lamanites & it came to pass that the Lamantes took courage & began to persue them & thus were the Lamanites persueing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand & began to slay them excedingly insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted & turned upon Helaman now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned they <​them​> about they gathered together their men & came again upon the [p. 312] rear of the Lamanites & now it came to pass that we the people of Nephi the people of Antipus & I with my two thousand did surround the Lamanites & did slay them yea insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war & also themselves as prisoners of war & now it came to pass that when they had <​had​> surrendered themselves up unto us behold I numbered those young men which had fought with me fearing lest there were many of them slain but behold to my great <​great​> joy there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth yea & they had fought as if with the strength of God <​yea​> never was men known to have fought with such maracilus strength & with such my <​mighty​> power did they fall upon the Lamanites that they did frighten them & for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war & as we had no place for our prisoners that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites therefore we sent them to the <​land of​> Zarahemla & a part of those men which were not slain of Antipus with them & the remainder I took & joined them to my stripling Ammonites & took our march back to the City of Judeah & now it came to pass that I received an Epistle from Ammoron the King stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war which we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah but I sent an Epistle unto the king that we were sure oou <​our​> forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force & by delivering up the prisoners we <​for​> that city we should suppose ourselves unwise & that we would <​only​> deliver up our prisoners on exchange & Ammoron refused mine Epistle for he would not exchange prisoners therefore we began to make preperations to go against the city of Antiparah but the people of Antiparah did leave the city & fled to their other city cities which they had possessions of to fortify them & thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands & thus ended the twenty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges & it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty & ninth year we received a supply of provisions & also an at addition to our army from the land of Zarahemla & from the land round about to the number of six thousand men besides sixty of the Sons of the Ammonites whi◊h[1099](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15031289264315798937" \o "Note) had come to join their brethren my little band of two thousand & now behold we were strong yea & we <​we​> had also a plenty of provisions brought to <​unto​> us & it came to pass that it was our desire to wedge a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni & now behold I will shew unto you that we soon accomplished our desire yea with our strong force or with a part of our strong force whic <​we​> did surround by night the city Cumeni a little before they were to receive a supply of [p. 313] provisions & it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights but we did sleep upon our swords & keep guards that the Lamanits Could not come upon us by night & slay us which they attempted many times but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt at length their provisions did arive & they were about to enter the city by night & we instead of being Lamanites were Nephites therefore we did take them & their provisions & notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner they were still determined to maintain the City therefore it became expediant that we should take those prisoners <​provisions​> & send them to Judeah & our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla & it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of sccour therefore they yielded up the city & thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni & <​but​> it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that no not withstanding the enumerority <​enormity​> of our numbers[1100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11247189475455721896" \o "Note) we were oblidged to employ all our force to keep them or to put them to death for behold they would brake out in great numbers & would fight with stones & with clubs or whatsoever things they could get into their hands insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered <​themselves​> prisoners of war therefore it became expediant for us that we should put an end to their lives or guard them sword in hand down to the land of Zarahemla & also our prosoners <​provisions​> were not any more than sufficient for our own people notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites & now in those critical circumstances it became a verry serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war nevertheless we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla therefore we selected a part of our men & gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla but it came to pass that on the morrow they did return & now behold we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners for behold the Lamanites were upon us & they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands for behold Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provision & also a numerous army of men & it came to pass that those men which we sent with the prisoners did arive in season <​to​> check them as they were about to overpower us but behold my little band of two thousand & sixty fought most desperately yea they were firm before the Lamanites & did administer death unto all those who opposed them & as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanits [p. 314] behold those two thousand & sixty were firm & undanted yea & they did obey & observe to perform every word of command with exactness yea & even according to their faith it was done unto them & I did remember they words which they said that their Mothers had taught them & now behold it was these my Sons & those men which had been selected to convey the prisoners to whom we owe this great victory for it was they who did beat the Lamanites therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti & we retained our City Cumeni & were not all destroyed by the sword neverthele<​s​>s we had suffered great loss & it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled I immediately gave orders that my men which had been wounded should be taken from among the dead & caused that their wounds should be dressed & it came to pass that there were two hundred out of my two thousand & sixty which had feinted because of the loss of blood nevertheless according to the goodness of God & to our great astonishment & also the joy[1101](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12274643038546867196" \o "Note) of <​of​> our whole army there was not one soul of them which did perish yea & neither was there one soul among them which had not received many wounds & now their preservation was astonishing to our whole army yea that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren which were slain & we do justly ascribe it to marac <​<​the​> miraculous​> power of God because of their exceding faith <​in that​> which they had been taught to believe that there was a just God & whosoever did not doubt that they should be preserved by <​his​> marvelous power now this was the faith of these <​of​> which I have spoken they are young their minds are firm & they do put their trust in God continually & now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men & had buried our dead & also the dead of the Lamanites which were many behold we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners which they had stard <​started​> to go down to the land of Zarahemla with now Gid was the chief captain over the loan <​band​> which was appointed to guide them down to the <​that​> land of Zarahemla <​& now these​> are the words which Gid said unto me behold we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla & it <​with​> our prisoners & it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies which had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites & they cried unto us saying behold the armies of the Lamanites are <​a​> marching towards the city of Cumeni & behold they will fall upon them <​yea​> & will destroy our people & it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries which caused them to take courage & they did rise up in rebellion against us & it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them & it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords [p. 315] in the which the greater number of them were slain & the remainder of them broke through & fled from us & behold when they had fled & we could not overtake them we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni & behold we did arive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city & behold we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies & blessed is the name of our God for behold it is he that hath delivered us ye that hath done this great thing for us now it came to pass that when I Helaman had heard these words of Gid I was filled with exceding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us that we might not all perish yea & I trust that the souls of them which has been slain have entered into the rest of their God & behold now it came to pass that our next object was[1102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9120740128380379916" \o "Note) to obtain the city of Manti but behold there was no way that we could lead them out of the City by our small bands for behold they remembered that which we had hither to done therefore we could not decoy them away from their strong holds & they were so exceding[1103](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14968452332113129258" \o "Note) more numerous than was our army that we dearst not of go forth & attack them in their strong holds yea & it became expediant that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land of the which we had retained of our possessions therefore it became expediant that we should wait that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla & also a new supply of provisions & it came to pass that I <​thus​> did send an empassy to the Governor[1104](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8575059683079615075" \o "Note) of our land to acquaint him of <​concerning​> the affairs of our people & it came to pass that we did wait to receive strength provisions & strength from the land of Zarahemla but behold this did not profit us but little for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day & also many provisions & thus were our circumstances at this period of time & the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time resolving by stratigem to destroy us nevertheless we could not come to battle with them because of their retreats & their strong holds & it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months even until we were about to perish for the want of food but it came to pass that we did receive food which was guarded to us by[1105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4806443109515485087" \o "Note) an army of two thousand men to our assistance & this is all the assistance which we did receive to defend ourselves & our country from falling into the hands of our enemies yea to contend with an enemy which was innuberable & now the cause of these our embarrassments or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us we knew not therefore we were grieved & also filled with fear lest by any means the Judgments of God should come upon our land to our overthrow & utter [p. 316] distruction therefore we did pour out our souls to in prayer to God that he would strengthen us & deliver us out of the hands of our enemies yea & also give us strength that we might retain our cities & our lands & our possessions for the support of our people yea & it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assureances that he would deliver us yea insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls & did grant unto us great faith & did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him & we did take courage with our small force which we had received & were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies & to maintain our lands & our possessions & our wives & our children & the cause of our <​liberty​> & thus we did go forth with <​all​> our mights against the Lamanites which were in the[1106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1471236227760462370" \o "Note) City of Manti & we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side which was near the City & it came to pass on the morrow that when the Lamanites saw that we <​were​> in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number & the strength of our army & it came to pass that when they saw thad <​that​> we were not strong as <​according​> to our <​numbers​> numbers & fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us & kill us & also supposeing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts therefore they began to make peperations to come <​out​> against us to battle & when we saw that they were making preperations to come out against us behold I caused that Gid with a small number of men should secrete himself in the wilderness & also that Teomner should with a small number of men secrete themselves <​himself​> also in the wilderness now Gid & his men were <​was​> on the right & the other on the left & when they had thus secreted themselves behold I remained with the remainder of my army in the <​that​> same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle & it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us & when they had come & were about to fall upon us with the sword I caused that my men those which were with me should retreat into the wilderness & it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed for they were excedingly desireous to overtake us that they might slay us therefore they did follow us into the wilderness & we did pass by in the midst of Gid & Teomner insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites & it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by or when the army had passed by Gid & Teomner did rise up from their secret places & did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city & it came to pass that when they had cut them off they ran to the city & fell upon the guards which were left to guard the city insomuch that they did destroy [p. 317] destroy them & did take possession of the city now this was done because the Lamanites did suppose <​suffer​> their whole army save a few guards to be lead away into the wilderness & it came to pass that Gid & Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their City <​strong​> hold & it came to pass that we took our course after trav <​having​> traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla & when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla they were exceding fraid lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction therefore they began to retreat back <​into​> the wilderness again yea even back by the same way which they had came & behold it was night & they did pitch their tents for the chief captains of the Lamanites & supposeing that the Nephites were weary becase of their march & supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti now it came to pass that when it was night that I caused <​that​> my men should not sleep but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti & because of this our march in the night time behold on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites insomuch that we did arive before them to the city of Manti & thus it came to pass that by this stratigem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the sheding of blood & it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arive near the city & saw that we were prepared to meet them they were astonished excedingly & struck with great fear insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness yea & it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land but behold they have carried with them many of our women & children out of the land & the cities <​which had been taken by the Lamanites​> which had been taken by the Lamanites all of them are at this period of time in our possession & <​our​> fathers & our women & our children are returning to their homes all save it be those which have been taken prisoners & carried off by the Lamanites but behold our armies are small to maintain so great a number of Cities & so great possessions but behold we trust that our God who hath given us victory over those lands insomuch that we have obtained those Cities & those lands which were our own no◊[1107](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12471191469975542682" \o "Note) we do not know the cause that the goverment does not grant us more strength neither does those men which came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength behold we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful & ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land if so we do not desire to murmur <​&​> if it is not so behold we fear that there is some farction[1108](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13804302979867496846" \o "Note) in the govorment that they do not send <​send​> more men to our assistance for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent but behold it mattereth not we trust God will deliver us [p. 318] notwithstanding the weakness of our armies yea & deliver us out of the hands of our enemies behold this is the twenty & ninth year & in the latter end & we are in the possession of our land<​s​> & the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi & those Sons of the people of Ammon of which I have so highly spoken are with with me in the city of Manti & the Lord hath supported them yea & kept them from falling by by the sword insomuch that even one soul hath not been slain but behold they have received many wounds nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free & they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day yea they do observe to keep his statutes & his Judgments & his commandments continually & their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come & now my beloved Brother Moroni that the Lord our God who hath redeemed us & made us free may keep you continually in his presance yea & that he may favour this people even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites hath taken from us which was for our support & now behold I close mine Epistle I am the Helaman the Son of Alma——

Alma, Chapter 27 [Alma 59–60]

—— Chapter [blank] Now it came to pass in the thirtyeth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi after Moroni had receivd & had read Helaman’s Epistle he was excedingly rejoiced because of the wellfare[1109](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10370685888035023982" \o "Note) yea the exceding success which Helaman had had in obtainig those lands which were lost yea & he did make it known unto all his people in all the land round round about in that part where he was that they might rejoice also & it came to pass that he immediately sent an Epistle to Pahoran desireing that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman or the armies of Helaman insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in retaining & it came to pass when Moroni had sent this Epistle to the land of Zarahemla he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions & cities which <​which​> the Lamanites had taken from them & it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preperations to go against the Lamanites to battle behold the people of Nephihah which were gathered together from the city of Moroni & the city of Lehi & the city of Morionton were attackted by the Lamanites yea even those which had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti & <​from​> the land round about had came over & joined the Lamanites in this part of the land & thus being exceding numerous yea & receiving strength from day to day by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephihah & they [p. 319] did begin to slay them with an exceding great slaughter & their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephihah were oblidged to flee before them & they came even & joined the army of Moroni & now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephihah to the assistance of the people to maintain that city & knowing that it was easier to keep the City from falling into the hands of the Lamanites[1110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10281032973017859476" \o "Note) he supposed that they would easily maintain that city therefore he retained all his force to maintain those cities places which he had recovered & now when Moroni saw that the city of Nephihah was lost he was exceding sorrowful & began to fear lest because of the wickedness of the people whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren now this was the case with all his chief captains that doubted & marveled also because of the wickedness of the people & this because of the success of the Lamanites over them & it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the goverment because of the <​their​> indifferance concerning the freedom of their country [1111](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13377141658313523680" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he wrote again to the govornor of the land which was Pahoran & these are the words which he wrote saying behold I direct mine Epistle to Pahoran in the city of Zarahemla which is the chief Judge & the govornor over the land & also to all those who hath been chosen by this people to govorn & manage the affairs of this war for behold I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation for behold ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed[1112](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8754437399051990136" \o "Note) by <​to​> gather together men & arm them with swords & with simitars & all manner of weapons of war & <​of​> every kind & send forth against the Lamanites in whatsoever parts they should come into our land & now behold I say unto you that myself & also my men & also[1113](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15609967989842754887" \o "Note) Helaman & his men have suffered exceding great sufferings yea even hunger thirst & fateague & all manner of afflictions of every kind but behold were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain but behold great has been the slaughter among the people yea thousands have fallen by the sword while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength & succour for them yea great has been your neglect towards us & now behold we desire to know the cause of this exceding great neglect yea we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you yea while th◊y[1114](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7539420155894650092" \o "Note) are murdering thousands of your brethren yea even they which have looked up to you for protection yea have plased you in a situation that ye might have succoured them yea ye might have sent armies unto them to have strengthened them & have saved thousands of them from falling [p. 320] by the sword but behold this is not all ye have withheld your provisions from them insomuch that many have fought & bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the wellfare of this people yea & this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger because of your exceding great neglect towards them & now my beloved brethren for ye had ought to be beloved yea & ye had ought to have stired yourselves more diligently for the wellfare & the freedom of this people but behold ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance yea for known unto God were all their cries & all their sufferings behold could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones & because of the exceding goodness of God ye could do nothing & he would deliver you behold if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain do ye suppose that because so many of you <​your​> your brethren have been killed because[1115](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10399458876346320811" \o "Note) of their wickedness I say unto you if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain for I say unto you that there are many which have fallen by the sword & behold it is to your condemnation for the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his Justice & Judgment may come upon the wicked therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost[1116](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4634439153054739203" \o "Note) becaus they are slain but behold they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God & now behold I say unto you I fear excedingly that the Judgments of God will come upon you <​this​> people because of their exceding slothfulness yea even the slothfulness of our govorment & their exceding great neglect towards their brethren yea <​towards​> those which have been slain for were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us yea had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves yea were it not for those King men which caused so much bloodshed among ourselves yea at the time we were contending among ourselves if we had united our strength as we[1117](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7071134107690447877" \o "Note) had hitherto have done yea had it not been for the desire of power & authority which those King men had over us had they been true to the cause of our freedom & united with us & gone forth against our enemies instead of taking up our <​their​> swords against us which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves yea if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord we should have dispersed our enemies for it would have been done according to the fulfilling of his word but behold now the Lamanites are comeing upon us & they are murdering our people with the sword yea our women & our children taking possession of our lands & also carrying them away captive causing them that they should suffer all manner [p. 321] of afflictions & this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power & authority yea even those Kingmen but why should I say much concerning this matter but <​for​> we know not but what ye yourselves are a seeking for authority we know not but what ye are also traitors to your country or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country[1118](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12270164440131032231" \o "Note) & ye are surrounded by security that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us & also men to strengthen our armies have ye forgat the commandments of the Lord your God yea have ye forgat the captivity of our fathers have ye forgat the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us while we sit upon our thrones & do not make[1119](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11604726632472938593" \o "Note) use of the means which the Lord hath provided for us yea will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those yea & tens of thousands of those <​which do​> also sit in idleness while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land which are falling by the sword yea wounded & bleeding do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still & behold these things behold I say unto you nay now I would that ye should remember that God hath said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first & then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also & now except ye do repent of that which ye have done & begin to be up & doing & send forth food & men unto us & also unto Helaman that he may support those parts of our[1120](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1645890212707916703" \o "Note) country which he hath obtained[1121](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7491920425849517431" \o "Note) that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts behold it will be expediant that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inner <​inner​> vessel yea even the great head of our goverment & except ye grant mine Epistle & come out & shew unto me a true spirit of freedom & try to strengthen & fortify our armies & grant unto them food for their support behold I will leave a part of my Freemen to maintain this part of our land & I will leave the strength of <​& &​> the blessings of God upon them that none other power can opperate against them & this because of their exceding faith & their patience in their tribullations & I will come unto you & if there be any among you that[1122](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17024421646430271789" \o "Note) hath a desire for freedom yea if there be even a spark of freedom remaining behold I will stir up insurrections among you even until those who hath desires to usurp power & authority shall become extinct yea behold I do not fear your power nor your authority but it is my God whom I fear & it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country & it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss behold it is time yea the time is <​now​> at hand that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country & your little ones the sword [p. 322] of Justice doth hang over you yea & it shall fall upon you & visit you even to your utter destruction behold I wait for assistance from you & except ye do administer unto[1123](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4566093234037584898" \o "Note) our relief behold I come unto you even into[1124](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17117126511476586324" \o "Note) the land of Zarahemla & smite you with the sword insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom for behold the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live & wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people behold can you supposs that the Lord will spare you & come out in judgment against the Lamanites when it is the tradition of their fathers that hath caused their <​their​> hatred yea & it hath been redoubled by those which have dissented from us while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory & the vain things of the world ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God & ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet behold the Lord saith[1125](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7045475316422580222" \o "Note) unto me if those whom ye have appointed your govornors do not repent of their sins & iniquities ye shall go up to battle against[1126](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6559978945809944289" \o "Note) them & now behold I Moroni am constrained according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of <​my​> God therefore I would that ye should adhear to the word of God & send speadily unto me of your provisions & of your men & also to Helaman & behold if ye will not do this I come unto[1127](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17244407505728244939" \o "Note) you speadily for behold God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger therefore he will give unto us of your food even if it must be by the sword now see that ye fulfil the word of God behold I am Moroni your Chief captain I seek not for power but to pull it down I seek not for honour of the world but[1128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6673322241894297338" \o "Note) for the glory of my God & the freedom & wellfare of my country & thus I close mine Epistle

Alma, Chapter 28 [Alma 61]

Chapter [blank]—— Behold now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his Epistle unto the chief govornor he received an Epistle from Pahoran the Chief Govornor & these are the words which he received I Pahoran which art the chief govornor of this land do send these words unto Moroni the chief captain over the army behold I say unto you Moroni that I do not joy in your great afflictions yea it grieves my soul but behold there are those who do joy in your afflictions yea insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me & also those <​of​> my people which are free men yea & those which have risen up are exceding numerous & it is those who have sought to take away the Judgmentseat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity for they have used great flattery[1129](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15399667940545081236" \o "Note) & they have led away the hearts of many people which will be the cause of sore affliction among us they have withheld our provisions & have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you & behold they have driven me out before them & I[1130](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9172258972162567976" \o "Note) [p. 323] have fled to the land of Gideon with as many men as it were possible that I could get & behold I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land & behold they are flocking to us daily to their arms in the defence of their country & their freedom & to avenge our wrongs & they have come unto us insomuch that those which have rose up in rebellion against us are set at defiance yea insomuch that they do fear us & dearst not come out to battle against us to battle they have got provision of the land of the city of Zarahemla they have appointed a King over them & he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites in the which he hath joined an allyance with him in the which allyance he hath agreed to maintain the City of Zarahemla in the[1131](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11208866367009547353" \o "Note) which maintainance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land & he shall be plased King over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites & now in your Epistle ye hath sensured me but it mattereth not I am not angry but do rejoice[1132](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11567038090014134239" \o "Note) in the greatness of your heart I Pahoron do not seek for power save only to retain my Judgment seat that I may preserve the rights & the liberty of my people my soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made me free[1133](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8515073977363826262" \o "Note) [1134](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10547159057395121102" \o "Note)& now behold we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed we would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land we would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion & take the sword against us we would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the Justice of God or if he should command us so to do but behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies but that we should put our trust in him & he will deliver us therefore my beloved Brother Moroni let us resist evil & whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words yea such as rebellions & dissensions let us resist them with our swords that we may retain our freedom that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church & in the cause of our redeemer & our God therefore come unto me speedily with a few of your men & leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi & Teancum give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land according to the pirit of God which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them behold I have sent a few provisions unto them that they may not perish until ye can come unto me gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither & we will go <​speedily​> against those dissenters in the strength of our God according to [p. 324] the faith which is in us & we will take possession of the City of Zarahemla that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi & Teancum yea we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord & we will put an end to this great iniquity [1135](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5095395073370997924" \o "Note)& now Moroni I do joy in receiving your Epistle for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren but ye have said except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them see that ye strengthen Lehi & Teancum in the Lord tell them to fear not for God will deliver them yea & also all those who stand fast in that liberty where with God hath made them free & now I close mine Epistle to my beloved brother Moroni——

Alma, Chapter 29 [Alma 62]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this Epistle his heart did take courage & was filled with exceding <​great​> joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoron that he was not also a traitor to the freedom & cause of his country but he did also mourn excedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoron from the Judgmentseat yea in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country & also their God & it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men according to the desire of Pahoron & gave Lehi & Teancum command orer <​over​> the remainder of his army & took[1136](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16330735170539890464" \o "Note) his march towards the land of Gideon & he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter & gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon & it came to pass that <​that​> thousands did flock unto his standard & did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom that they might not come into bong <​bondage​> & thus when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march he came to the land of Gideon & uniting his forces with that of Pahorons they became exceding strong even <​stronger​> than the men of Pachus which was the King of those dissenters which had driven out the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla & had taken possession of the land & it came to pass that Moroni & Pahoron went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla & were went forth against the city & did meet the men of Pachus insomuch that they did come to battle & behold Pachus was slain & his men were taken prisoners & Pahoron was restored to his Judgmentseat & the men of Pachus received their trial according to the law & also those Kingmen which had been taken & cast into prison & they were executed according to the law yea those men of Pachus & those Kingmen whosoever would not take up arms in <​the​> defence of their country but would fight against it were put to death & thus it became expediant that this law should be strictly observed [p. 325] for the safety of their country yea & whosoever was found a denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law & thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi Moroni & Pahoron having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla among their own people having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom & it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty & first year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi Moroni immediately caused that Provisions should be sent & also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman to assist him in preserving that part of the land & he also caused that an army of six thousand men with a sufficient quantity of food should be sent to the armies of Lehi & Teancum & it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites & it came to pass that Moroni & Pahoron leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city & it came to pass <​that​> as they were marching towards the land they took a large body of men of the Lamanites & slew many of them & took their provisions & their weapons of war & it came to pass after they had took them they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites & when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon & they were in number about four thousand which had not been slain & it came to pass that when they had sent them away they persued their march towards the land of Nephihah & it came to pass that when they had come to the city Nephihah they did pitch their tents in the planes of Nephihah which is near the city Nephihah now Moroni was desireous ous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them upon the planes but the Lamanites knowing of their exceding great courage & <​beholding​> knowing the greatness of their numbers therefore they dearst not come out against them therefore they did not come to battle in that day & when the night came Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night & came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the City the Lamanites did camp with their army & it came to pass that they were on the east by the enterance & they were all asleep & now Moroni returned to his army & caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords & ladders to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall & it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth & come up[1137](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17766132360125554963" \o "Note) upon the top of the wall & let themselves down into that part of the city yea even on the west where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies [p. 326] & it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night by the means of their strong cords & their ladders thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city & now when the Lamanites awoke & saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls they were affrightened excedingly insomuch that they did flee out by the pass & now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him he did cause that his men should march forth against them & slew many & surrounded many others & took them prisoners & the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni which was in the borders by the seashore thus had Moroni & Pahoron obtaained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul & there were many of the Lamanites which were slain now it came to pass that as many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desireous to join the people of Ammon & it become a free people & it came to pass <​that​> as nany as were desireous unto them it was granted according to their desires therefore all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon & did begin to labour excedingly tilling the ground raising all manner of grain & flocks & heards of every kind & thus were the Nephites releaved from a great burthen yea in somuch that they were thus releaved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites now it came to pass that Moroni after he had obtained possession of the city <​of​> Nephihah having taken many prisoners which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites excedingly & having retained many of the Nephites which had been taken prisoners which did strengthen the army of Moroni excedingly therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was a coming against them they were again frightened & fled before the army of Moroni & it came to pass that Moroni & his army did persue them from City to City untill they were met by Lehi & Teancum & the Lamanites fled from Lehi & Teancum even down upon the borders by the Sea shore until they came to the land of Moroni & the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni now Ammoron the Ning of the Lamanites was also with them & it came to pass that Moroni & Lehi & Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni insomuch that the Lamanites were ensirceled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south & in the borders by the wilderness on the east & thus they did encamp for the night for behold the Nephites & the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march therefore they did not resolve upon any stratigem in the night time save it were Teancum for he was exceding angry with Ammoron insomuch that he considered that Ammoron & Am [p. 327]alickiah his Brother had been the cause of this great & lasting war betweem <​them​> & the Lamanites which had been the cause of so much war & bloodshed yea & so much famine & it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites & did let himself down over the wills of the city & he went forth with a cord from place insomuch that he did find the king & he did cast a Javlin at him which did pierce him near the heard but behold the King did awake his servant before he died insomuch that they[1138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17067462136814215602" \o "Note) did persue Teancum & slew him now it came to pass that when Lehi & Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceding sorrowful for behold he had been a man which had fought valiantly for his country yea a true friend to liberty & he had suffered <​very​> many exceding sore afflictions but behold he was dead & had gone the way of all the earth now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow & came upon the Lamanites insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter & they did drive them out of the land & they did flee even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites & thus ended the thirty & first year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus they had had wars & bloodsheds & famine & affliction for the space of many years & there had been murders & contentions & dissensions & all manner of iniquity among the <​people of​> Nephit◊s nevertheless for the righteous sake yea because of the prayers of the righteous they were spared but behold because of the exceding great length of the war between the Nephites & the Lamanites many had become hardoned because of the exceding great length of the war & many were supported <​softened​> because of their afflictions inso much that they did humble themselves before God even in the debth of humility & it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites until they were sufficiently strong he returned to the city of Zarahemla & also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance & there was once <​more​> peace established among the people of Nephi & Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his Son whose name was Moronihah[1139](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12186390126092988458" \o "Note) & he retired to his own House that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace & Pahoron did return to his Judgmentseat & Helaman did did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God for because of so many wars & contentions it had become expediant that a regulation should again be made <​again​> in the church therefore Helaman & his brethren went forth & did declare the word of Gid with much power unto the convinceing many of the people of their wickedness which did cause them to repent of their sins & be baptised unto the Lord their God & it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God throughout all the land yea & regulations were made concerning the law & their [p. 328] Judges & their chief Judges were chosen & the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land & began to multiply & <​to​> wax exceding strong again in the land & they began to grow exceding rich but notwithstanding their riches or their strength or their prosperity they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God but they did humble themselves excedingly before him yea they did remember how great things he <​the Lord​> had done for them that he had delivered them from death & from bonds & from prisons & from all manner of afflictions & he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & they did pray unto the Lord their God continually insomuch that the Lord did bless them according to his word so that they did wax strong & prosper in the land & it came to pass that all these things were done & Helaman died in the thirty & fifth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi——

Alma, Chapter 30 [Alma 63]

Chapter [blank]——

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges over the People of Nephi that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma & he was a just man & he did wald <​walk​> uprightly before God & he did observe to do good continually to keep the commandments of the Lord his God & also did his brother & it came to pass that Moroni died also & thus ended the thirty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges & it came to pass that in the thirty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges there was a large company of men even to the amount of five thousand & four hundred <​men​> with their wives & their children departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward & it came to pass that Hagoth he being an <​an​> exceding curious man therefore he went forth & built him an exceding large large Ship on the borders of the land bountiful by the land Desolation & launched it forth into the west Sea by the narrow neck which led into the land Northward & behold there were many of the Nephites which did enter therein & did sail forth with much provisions & also many women & children & they took their course Northward & thus ended the thirty & seventh year & in the thirty & eigth year this man built other ships & the first ship did also return & many more Nephites <​People​> did enter into it & they also took much provisions & set out again for <​to​> the land Northward & it came to pass that they were never heard of more & we suppose that they were[1140](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16867174344333690993" \o "Note) drowned up in the debeths of the Sea & it came to pass that one other Ship did also did sail forth & whether She did go we know not & it came to pass that in this year there were many People which went forth into the land Northward & thus ended the thirty & eigth year & it came to pass in the thirty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges Shiblon died also & Corianton had gone forth to the land Northward in a Ship to carry forth [p. 329] provisions unto those people which had gone forth into that land therefore it became expediant for Shiblon to confer those sacred things before his death upon the Son of Helaman whose name was called Helaman being <​called​> after the name of his father now <​now​> behold all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written & sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land save it was <​were​> those parts which it had been commanded by Alma should not go forth nevertheless these things were to be kept sacred & handed down from one generation to another therefore in the year they had been confered upon Helaman before the death of Shiblon & it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissensions which had gone forth unto the Lamanites & they were stired up again to anger against the Nephites & also in this same year they came down with an <​a​> numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah or against the arny of Moronihah in the which they were beaten & driven back again to their own lands suffering great looss <​loss​> & thus ended the thirty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended the account of Alma & Helaman his Son & also Shiblon which was his Son <​Son​>

Helaman, Chapter 1 [Helaman 1–2]

The Book of Helaman—— Chapter—— [blank]——

An account of the Nephites— Their wars & contententions & their dissensions— And also the prophecies of many Holy Prophets before the comeing of Christ according to the Record of Helaman which was the Son of Helaman & also according to the Records of his Sons even down to the coming of Christ— And also many of the Lamanites are converted— An account of their conversion— An account of the rrighteousness[1141](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12187826927071618860" \o "Note) of the Lamanites & the wicked<​ness​> & abominations of the Nephites according to the Record of Helaman & his Sons even down to the coming of Christ which is called the Book of Helaman &C—— And now behold it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites for behold Pahoron had died & gone the way of all the earth therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the Judgment seat among the brethren which were the Sons of Pahoron now these are their names which did contend for the Judgmentseat Pahoron Pa cause <​whicd did also cause​> the people to contend Pahoron Paanchi & Pacumeni now these are not all the Sons of Pahoron for he had many but these are they which did contend for the Judgmentseat therefore they did cause three divisions among the people newer <​nevertheless​> it came to pass that Pahoron was appointed by the voice of the people to be a[1142](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16727609647834676247" \o "Note) Chief Judge & a governor over the people of Nephi & it came to pass that [p. 330] Pacumeni[1143](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3435172929926319699" \o "Note) when he saw that he could not obtain the Judgmentseat he did unite with the voice of the people but behold Paanchi & that part of the people that were desireous that he should be their Governor was exceding wroth therefore he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren & it came to pass as he was about to do this behold he was taken & was tried accoding to the voice of the people & condemned unto death for he had raised up in rebellion & sought to destroy the liberty of the people now when those people which were desireous that he should be their Governor saw that he was condemned unto death therefore they were angry & behold they sent forth one Kishkumen[1144](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4092174045595003562" \o "Note) even to the Judgmentseat of Pahoron & murdered Pahoron as he sat upon the Judgmentseat & he was persued by the servants of Pahoron but behold so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him & he went unto those that sent him & they all entered into a covenant yea swearing by their everlasting Maker that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoron therefore Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoron & Kishkumen & his band which had covenanted with him did mingle themselves among the people in a manner that they all could not be found but as many as were found were condemned unto death & now behold Pacumeni was appointed according to the voice of the people be to be a chief Judge & a governor over the people to reign in the stead of his Brother Pahoron & it was according to his right & all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the Judges & it had an end & it came to pass in the forty & first year of the reign of the Judges that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men & armed them with swords & with Simitars & with bows & with arrows & with head plates & with breast plates & with all manner of shields of every kind & they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites & they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr & he was a desendant of Zarahemla & he was a dissenter from among the Nephites & he was a large & a mighty man therefore the king of the Lamanites whose name was Tubaloth who was the Son of Ammoron now Tubaloth supposeing the that Coriantumr he being a mighty man could stand against the Nephites insomuch with his strength & also with his great wisdom that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites therefore he did stir them up to anger & he did gather together his armies & he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader & did cause that they should march down into the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites [1145](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10074120824926748988" \o "Note)& it came to pass that because of so much contention & so much difficulty in the goverment [p. 331] that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla for[1146](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17426854360305181658" \o "Note) they had supposed that the Lamanites dearst not come into the heart of their lands to & attackt that great City Zarahemla but it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host & came upon the inhabitants of the City & their march was with such exceding great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the enterance of the City & did march forth with his whole army into the city & they did slay every one who did oppose them insomuch[1147](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3289582289485992151" \o "Note) that they did take possession of the whole city & it came to pass that Pacumeni which was the chief Judge did flee before Coriantumr even to the walls of the city & it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall insomuch that he died & thus ended the days of Pacumeni & now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city <​of​> Zarahemla & saw that the Nephites had fled before them & were slain & were taken & were cast into prison & that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land his he heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land & now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla but he did[1148](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12992780290793254891" \o "Note) march forth with a large army even towards the city of Bountiful for it was his determination to go forth & cut his way through with the sword that he might obtain the North parts of the land & supposing that their greatest strength was in the centre of the land therefore he did march forth giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies & in this manner they did fall upon them & cut them down to the earth but behold this march of Coriantumr through the centre of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over <​over​> them notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites which were slain for behold Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites dearst not come[1149](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11180108406892074655" \o "Note) into the centre of the land but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders but behold the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire but they had come into the centre of the land & had taken the capital City which was the city of Zarahemla & were marching through the most capital parts of the land slaying the people with a great slaughter both men women & children taking possession of many Cities & of many strong holds but when Moronihah had discovered this he immediately sent fortt Lehi with an army round about to head them[1150](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3396161246678294787" \o "Note) before they should come to the land Bountiful [p. 332] &[1151](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1812061484288625420" \o "Note) thus he did & he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful & gave unto them battle insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla & it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat & did give unto them battle insomuch that it became an exceding bloody battle yea many were slain & among the number which were slain Coriantumr was also found & now behold the Lamanites could not retreat no farther neither way neither on the north nor on the south nor on the east nor on the west for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites & thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into[1152](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13448201636054313343" \o "Note) the midst of the Nephites inso much that they were in the power of the Nephites & he himself was slain & the Lamanites did yield themselves into[1153](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8007865570407761136" \o "Note) the hands of the Nephites [1154](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14434460105422109149" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again & caused that the Lamanites which had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace & thus ended the forty & first year of the reign of the Judges [1155](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10899214272172039863" \o "Note)& it came to pass in the forty & second year of the reign of the Judges after Moronihah had again established peace <​again​> the peace between the Nephites & the Lamanites behold there[1156](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1538486419038412389" \o "Note) was no one to fill the Judgmentseat therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the Judgmentseat & it came to pass that Helaman which was the Son of Helaman was appointed to fill the Judgmentseat by the voice of the people but behold Kishkumen who had murdered Pahoron did lay wait to destroy Helaman also & he was upheld by his band which had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness for there was one Gadianton who was exceding expert in many words & also in his craft to carry on the secret work of murder & of roberry therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen therefore he did flatter them &[1157](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4183633602238504997" \o "Note) also Kishkumen that if they would place him in the Judgmentseat he would grant unto those which belonged to his band that they should be placed in power & authority among the people therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman [1158](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11903987702355595081" \o "Note)& it came to pass as he went forth towards the Judgmentseat to destroy Helaman behold one of the servants of Helaman having been out by night & having obtained through disguise a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman & it came to pass that he met Kishkumen & he gave unto him a sign therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire[1159](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7935412045219883700" \o "Note) desireing that he would dond <​conduct​> him to the Judgmentseat that he might murder Helaman & it came to pass that when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen & how that it was his object to murder & also <​that​> it was the object of all those which belonged to his band to murder & to rob & to gain power & this was their secret plan & their combination the Servant of Helaman sayeth unto Kishkumen let us go forth unto the Judgmentseat now this did please Kishkumen excedingly for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design but behold the servant of Helaman as they were going forth unto the Judgmentseat did stab Kishkumen even to the heart that he fell[1160](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14361251084624550485" \o "Note) dead without a groan & he ran & told Helaman all the[1161](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3397021539530454051" \o "Note) [p. 333] things which he had seen & heard & done & it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers & secret murderers that they might be executed according to the law but behold when Gadianton[1162](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17904164147621280205" \o "Note) had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared at lest that he should be destroyed therefore he caused that his band should follow him & they took their flight out of the land by a secret way into the wilderness & thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could no where be found & more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter & thus ended the forty & second year of the reign of the Judges[1163](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6091335196260907663" \o "Note) over the people of Nephi & behold in the end of this Book ye shall see that this Gadianton did pove the overthrow yea almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi behold I do not mean the end of the Book of Helaman but I mean the end of the Book of Nephi from which I have taken all the account which I have written——

Helaman, Chapter 2 [Helaman 3–6]

Chapter [blank]

And now it came to pass in the forty & third year of the[1164](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3741529582649122162" \o "Note) reign of the Judges there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it ware a little pride which was in the church which did cause some little dissensions among the people which affairs were setteled in the ending of the forty & third year & there was no contention among the people in the forty & fourth year neither was there much contention in the forty & fifth year & itcame to pass in the forty & sixth yea there were much contentions & many dissensions in the which there were an exceding great many which departed out of the land of Zarahemla & went forth unto the land Northward to inherit the land & they did travel to an exceding great distance insomuch that they came to large[1165](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18421241787049739797" \o "Note) bodies of water & many rivers yea & even they did spread forth into all parts of the land into whatsoever[1166](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4948097058098512413" \o "Note) parts it had not been rendered desolate & without timber because of the many inhabitants which had before inherited the land & now no part of the land was desolate save it were for timber .&c. but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people which had before inhabited the land it was called desolate & there being but little timber upon the face of the land nevertheless the people which went forth became exceding expert in the working of cement therefore they did build Houses of cement in the which they did dwell [1167](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16228554903985947889" \o "Note)& it came to pass that they did multiply & spread & did [1168](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7914200360883166259" \o "Note)go forth from the land Southward to the land Northward & did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth from the Sea South to the Sea North from the Sea West to the Sea East & the people which were in the land Northward did dwell in tents & in Houses of Cement & they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up that in time they might have timber to build their Houses yea their cities & their Tempels & their Synagogues & their Sanctuaries & all manner of their buildings [1169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11755509232548811148" \o "Note)& it came to pass as timber was exceding scarce in the land Northward they did send forth much by the way of Shipping[1170](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7528372580019728589" \o "Note) & thus they did enablle the people in the land Northward that they might build many Cities both of wood & of Cement & it came to pass that there were many of the[1171](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10835762975510603060" \o "Note) people of Ammon which were Lamanites by birth did did also go forth into this land [1172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15444910055390005711" \o "Note)& now there are many records kept of the procedings [p. 334] of this people by many of this people which are particular & very verry large concerning them but behold a hundreth part of the procedings of this people yea the account of the Lamanites & of the Nephites & their wars & contentions & dissensions & their preaching & their prophecies & their shiping & their building of Ships & their building[1173](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15283111243922696052" \o "Note) of Tempels & of Synagogues & their Sanctuaries & their righteousness & their wickedness & their murders & their robings & their plunderings & all manner of abominations & whoredoms cannot be contained in this work but behold there are many Books & many records of every kind & they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites & they have been handed down from one Generation to another by the Nephites even until they have fallen into transgression & have been murdered plundered & hunted & driven forth & slain & scattered upon the face of the Earth & mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites becoming wicked & wild & ferocious yea even <​even​> becoming Lamanites[1174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1852054661249610691" \o "Note) [1175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16594846464026213825" \o "Note)& now I return again to mine account therefore what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions & disturbances & wars & dissensions among the people of Nephi the forty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges ended & it came to pass that <​that​> these there was still great contentions in the land yea even in the forty & seventh year & also in the forty & eighth year nevertheless Helaman did fill the Judgmentseat with Justice & equity yea he did observe to keep the statutes & the Judgments & the commandments of God & he did that which was right in the sight of God continually & he did walk after the ways of his father insomuch that he did prosper in the land [1176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11253383828175699433" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he had two Sons he gave unto the Eldest the name of Nephi & unto the youngest the name of Lehi & they began to grow up unto the Lord & it came to pass that the wars & contentions began to cease in a small degree among the people of <​the​> Nephi<​tes​> & in the latter end of the forty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & it came to pass in the forty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges there was continual peace established in the land all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber[1177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10669215626344290246" \o "Note) had established in the more setteled parts of the land which at that time were not known unto those which were at the head of goverment therefore they were not destroyed out of the land [1178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7258764350002343165" \o "Note)& it came to pass that in this same year there was exceding great prosperity in the church insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church & were Baptised unto repentance & so great was the pro prosperity of the church & so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people that even the high priests & the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure & it came to pass that[1179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1684239150116792028" \o "Note) the work of the Lord did prosper <​un​>to the Baptiseing & the uniting unto the church of God many souls yea even tens of thousands thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will in the cincerity of their hearts call upon his holy name yea thus we see that the gate of Heaven is open unto all even <​even​> to those who will believe[1180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13235061384646441749" \o "Note) on the name of Jesus Christ which is the Son of God yea yea we see that who soever will lay hold upon the word of God which is quick & powerful which shall divide asunder all the cunning & the snares & the [p. 335] wiles of the Devil & lead the man of christ in a strait[1181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6792306152290055282" \o "Note) & narrow course across that everlatsting gulf of miseary which is prepared to engulf the wicked & land their souls yea their immortal souls at the right hand of God in the Kingdom of Heaven to sit down with Abraham & Isaac & with Jacob & with all our Holy fathers to go no more out & in this year there were continual rejoiceings in the land of Zarahemla & in all the regions round about even in all the land which was possesed by the Nephites & it came to pass that there was peace[1182](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11676928203426046491" \o "Note) & exceding great joy in the remainder of the forty & ninth year yea & also there was continual peace & great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the Judges & in the fifty & first year of the reign of the reign Judges there was peace also save it were the pride which began to enter into the church not into the church of God but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God & they were lifted up in pride even to the persecution of many of their brethren now thus this was a great evil which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions & to wade through much affliction nevertheless they did fast & pray oft & did wax stronger & stronger & <​in​> their humility & firmer & firmer in the faith of Christ[1183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12117486736741323918" \o "Note) unto the[1184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10885268584535057590" \o "Note) filling their souls with joy & consolation yea even to the purifying & the sanctification of their hearts which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God & it came to pass that the fifty & second year ended in peace also save it were the exceding great pride which had got into the hearts of the people & it was because of their exceding great riches & their prosperity in the land & it did grow upon them from day to day[1185](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12840197118767540996" \o "Note) & it came to pass in[1186](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8138924547651831243" \o "Note) the fifty & third year of the reign of the Judges Helaman died & his eldest Son Nephi began to reign in his stead & it came to pass that he did fill the Judgmentseat with justice & equity yea he did keep the commandments of God & did walk in the ways of his father & it came to pass in the fifty & fourth year there were many dissensions in the Church & there was also a contention among the people insomuch that there was much bloodshed & the rebellious part were slain & driven out of the land & they did go unto the King of the Lamanites & it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites but behold the Lamanites were exceding fraid insomuch that they would not[1187](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1515900977713776830" \o "Note) hearken to the words of those dissenters but it came to pass in the fifty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges there were dissenters which went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites & they succeded with those others in stiring them up to anger against the Nephites & they were all that year prepareing for war & in the fifty & seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle & they did commence the work of death yea insomuch that in the fifty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges they succeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla yea & also all the lands even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful & the Nephites & the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful & there they[1188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16252690650884949548" \o "Note) did [p. 336] fortify against the Lamanites from the west Sea even unto the east it being a days journey for a Nephites on the lime which they had fortified & stationed their armies to defend their north country & thus those dissenters of the Nephites with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward & all this was done in the fifty & eigth <​eight​> & ninth years of the reign of the Judges & it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the Judges Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land yea they retained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites & it came to pass in the sixty & first year of the reign[1189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16579325575121778211" \o "Note) of the Judges they succeded in retaining even the half of all their possessions now this great loss of the Nephits & the great slaughter which was among them would not have hapened had it not been for the<​ir​> wickedness & their abomination which was among them yea <​yea​> & it was among those also which professed to belong to the church of God & it was because of the pride of their hearts because of their exceding riches yea it was because of their oppression to the poor withholding their food from the hungry withholding their cloathing from the naked & smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek<​s​> makeing a mock of that which was sacred denying the spirit of prophecy & of revelation murdering plundering lieing stealing committing adultery raiseing up in[1190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1408676428002577238" \o "Note) great contentions & desenting[1191](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10216566089218561537" \o "Note) away into the land of Nephi among the Lamanites & because of this their great wickedness & their boastings in their own strength they were left in their own strength therefore they did not prosper but were afflicted & smitten & driven before the Lamanites until they had lost possession of almost all their lands but behold Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity & also Nephi & Lehi which were the Sons of Helaman did preach many things unto the people yea & did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities & what should come unto them if they did not repent of their Sins & it came to pass that they did repent & inas much as they did repent they did begin[1192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4302536840117958633" \o "Note) to prosper for when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place & from city to city even until they had retained the one half of their property & the one half of <​all​> their lands & thus ended the sixty & first year of the reign of the Judges & it came to pass in the sixty & second year of the reign of the Judges that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands for so numerous was the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken[1193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11635903152675700398" \o "Note) [1194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15337490363454516304" \o "Note)& it came to pass because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear lest[1195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15527736433336165867" \o "Note) they should be overpowered & slain trodden down & slain & destroyed yea they began to remember the prophecies of Alma & also the words of Mosiah & [p. 337] they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people & that they had set at nought the commandments of God & that that they had altered & trampeled under their feet the laws of Mosiah or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people & thus seeing that their laws had become corrupt & that they had become a wicked people insomuch that they were wicked even unto the Lamanites & because of their iniquity the church had began to dwindle & they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy & in the spirit of revelation & the Judgments of God did stare them in the face & they saw they had become wicked <​weak​> like unto their brethren the Lamanites & that the spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them yea it had withdrawn from <​them​> because the spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy tempels therefore the Lord did cause <​cease​> to preserve them by his maraculous & matchless power for they had fallen into a state of unbelief & awful wickedness & they saw that the Lamanites were more exceding numerous than they & except they should repent <​cleave​> unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish for behold they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength even man for man & thus had they fallen into this great transgression yea thus had they become weak because of their transgression in the space of not many years & it came to pass that in this same year behold Nephi delivered up the Judgmentseat to a man whose name was Cezoram for as their laws & their goverment<​s​> were established by the voice of the people & they which chose evil were more numerous than they which chose good therefore they were ripening for destruction for the laws had become corrupted yea & this was not all they were a stiffnecked people insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice save it were to their destruction & it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity & he yielded up the Judgmentseat & took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days & his brother Lehi also all the remainder of his days for they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them & these are the words which he spake Behold my Sons I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God & I would that ye should declare unto the people these words behold hold I have given unto you the names of our first parents which came out of the land of Jerusalem & this I have done that when you remember your names that ye may remember them & when ye remember[1196](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2749384944861505043" \o "Note) them ye may remember their works & when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said & also written that they were good therefore my Sons I would that ye should do that which is good that it may be said of you & also written even as it has been said & written of them & now behold my Sons behold I have some what more to desire of you which desire is that ye may not do these things that ye may boast but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in Heaven yea which is Eternal & which fadeth not away yea that ye may have that preasious gift of Eternal life which ye <​we​> have reason [p. 338] to suppose hath been given to our fathers O remember remember my Sons the words which King Benjamin spake unto his people yea remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved only through the atoneing blood of Jesus Christ which shall come yea remember that he cometh to redeem the world & remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom in the city of Ammonihah for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins but to redeem them from their sins & he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their Sins because of repentance therefore he hath sent his Angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer unto the salvation of their souls & now my Sons remember remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer which is Christ the Son of God that ye must build your foundation that when the Devil shall send forth his mighty winds yea his shafts in the whirlwind yea when all his hail & his mighty storm shall beat upon you it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of miseary & endless wo because upon <​of​> the Rock upon which ye are built which is a sure foundation a foundation whereon if men buildet◊[1197](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15598573194672807758" \o "Note) they cannot fall & it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his Sons yea he did teach them many things which are not written & also many things which are written & they did remember his words & therefore they went forth preachen <​keeping​> the commandments of God to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi beginning at the city Bountiful & from thence forth to the city of Gid & from the city of Gid to the city Mulek & even from one city to another until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi which were in the land Southward & from thence into the land of Zarahemla among the Lamanites[1198](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12071551396313659696" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they did preach with great power insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters which had gone over from the Nephites insomuch that they came forth & did confess their Sins & were Baptised unto repentance & immdiately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done & it came to pass that Nephi & Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power & authority for they had power & <​authority​> given unto them that they might speak & they also had what they should speak given unto them therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites to the convinceing them inso much that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites which were in the land land of Zarahemla & round about baptised unto repentance & were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers & it came to pass that Nephi & Lehi did persuade procede to go <​from​> thence to go to the land of Nephi & it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites & cast into prison yea even in that same prison in which Ammon & his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi & after they had been cast into prison many days without food[1199](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8522506125407553369" \o "Note) [p. 339] behold they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them & it came to pass that Nephi & Lehi were encircled about as if by fire even insomuch that they dearst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned nevertheless Nephi & Lehi were not burned & they were as standing in the midst of fire & <​they​> were not burned & when they saw that they were ensirceled about with a pillar of fire & that it burned them not their hearts did take courage for they saw that the Lamanites dearst not lay their hands upon them neither dearst they come near unto them but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement & it came to pass that Nephi & Lehi did stand forth & began to speak unto them saying fear not for behold it is God that hath shown unto you this marvelous thing in the which is shewn unto you that ye can not lay your hands upon us to slay us & behold when they had said these words the Earth shook excedingly & the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth but behold they did not fall & behold they that were in the prison were Lamanites & Nephites which were dissenters & it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness & an awful solumn fear came upon them & it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness saying repent ye repent ye & seek no more to destroy my servants which I have sent unto you to declare good tidings & it came to pass when they heard this voice & beheld that it was not a voice of thunder neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise but behold it was a small voice of perfect mildness as if it had been a whisper & it did pierce even to the verry soul & notwithstanding the mildness of the voice behold the earth shook excedingly & the walls of the prison trembeled again as if it were about to tumble to the earth & behold the cloud of darkness which had overshadowed them did not disperce & behold the voice came again saying repent ye repent ye for the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand & seek no more to destroy my servants & it came to pass that the earth shook again & the walls trembeled & also again the third time the voice came & did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man & the walls did tremble again & the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder & it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them yea & also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them & it came to pass that he turned him abot & behold he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi & Lehi & behold they did shine excedingly even as the face of Angels & he beheld that they did lift their[1200](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5159048675185902430" \o "Note) eyes to Heaven & they were in the attitu <​atitude​> as if talking or lifting their voices to some being which they beheld & it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude that they might turn & look &[1201](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15886780116315947466" \o "Note) behold these there was power given unto them that they did turn & look & they did [p. 340] behold the faces of Nephi & Lehi & they said unto the man behold what doth all these things mean & who is it whith whom these men do converse now the mans name was Aminadab & Aminadab saieth unto them they do converse with the angels of God & it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him what shall we do that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us & Aminadab saieth unto them you must repent & cry unto the wo <​the voice​> even until ye shall have faith in Christ in which was taught unto you by Alma & Amulek & <​by​> Zeezrom & when ye shall do this the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you & it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him which had shook the earth yea they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed & it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about & saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them & behold they saw that they were ensirceled about yea every soul by a pillar of fire & Nephi & Lehi were <​was​> in the midst of them yea they were enserceled about yea they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire yet it did harm them not neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison & they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable & full of glory & behold the Holy Spirit of God did come down from Heaven & did enter into their hearts & they were filled as if with fire & they could speak forth marvelous words & it came to pass that there came a voice unto them yea a pleasant voice as if it were a whisper saying peace peace be unto you because of your faith in my beloved which was from the foundation of the world & now[1202](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10833825443233549443" \o "Note) when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came & behold they saw the Heavens open & Angels came down out of Heaven & ministered unto them & there were about three hundred souls which saw & heard these <​these​> things & they were bid to go forth & marvel not neither should they doubt & it came to pass that they did go forth & did minister unto the people declareing throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard & seen insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received & as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war & also their hatred & the tradition of their fathers & it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession & it came to pass that when the sixty & second year of the reign of the Judges had ended all these things had happened & the Lamanites had become the more part of them a righteous people insomuch that their righteousness did excede that of the Nephites because of their firmness & their stediness in the faith for behold there were many of the Nephites which had become hardoned & impenitant & grossly wicked insomuch that they did reject the word of God & all the preaching & the prophesying which did come among them nevertheless the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites yea because of the church of God which had been established among them & they did fellowship one with an other & did rejoice one with another & did have great joy & it came to pass that [p. 341] many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla & did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion & did exhort them to faith & repentance yea & many did preach with excding great power & authority unto the bringing down many of them into the debths of humility to be the humble followers of God & of the Lamb & it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land Northward & also Nephi & Lehi went into the land Northward to preach unto the people & thus ended the sixty & third year & behold there was peace in all the land insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites & it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whethersoever they would whether it were among the Lamanites or <​among​> the Nephites & thus they did have free intercorse one with another for to buy & to sell & to get gain according to their desire & it came to pass that they became exceding rich both the Lamanites & the Nephites & they did have an excding plenty of gold & of silver & of all manner of precious petals both in the land South & in the land land North now the land South was called Lehi & the land North was called Mulek which was after the Son of Zedekiah for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land North & Lehi into the land south & behold there was all manner of gold in both these lands & of Silver & of precious oar of every kind & there was also curious workmen which did work all kinds of oar & did refine it & thus they did become rich they did raise grain in abundance both in the North & in the South & they did flourish excedingly both in the north & in the South & they did multiply & wax exceding strong in the land & they did raise many flocks & heards yea many fatlings behold their women did toil & spin & did make all manner of cloth of fine twined linnen & cloth of every kind to cloath their nakedness & thus the sixty & forth fourth year did pass away in peace & in the sixty & fifth year they did also have great joy <​& peace​> yea <​yea​> much preaching & many prophecies concerning that which was to come & thus passed away the sixty & fifth year & it came to pass that in the sixty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges behold Cezoram was murdered byan unknown hand as he sat upon the Judgmentseat & it came to pass that in the same year that his Son <​which​> had been appointed by the people in his stead was also murdered & thus ended the sixty & sixth year & in the commencement of the sixty & seventh year the people began to grow exceding wicked again for behold the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stired up to anger to wars & <​nor​> to bloodsheds therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches yea they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another therefore they began to commit secret <​secret​> murders & to rob & to plunder that they might get gain & now behold those murderers & plunderers were a band which had been formed by Kishkumen & Gadianton & now it had came to pass that there were many even among the Nephites of Gadiantons band but behold they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites & they were called Gadiantons rod robbers & murderers & it was they which did murder the Chief Judge Cezoram & his Son while in the Judgm [p. 342]entseat & behold they were not found[1203](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9950590606462108956" \o "Note) & now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceding sorrowful & they did use every means whatsoever was[1204](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13049730951279744852" \o "Note) in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth but behold Satan did stir up the hearts of the more parts[1205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11446025973053411313" \o "Note) of the Nephites insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers & did enter into their covenants & their oaths that they would protect & preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed in that they should not suffer for their murders & their plunderings & their stealings & it came to pass that they did have their signs yea their secret signs & their secret words & this that they might distuin <​distinguish​> a brother who had entered into the covenant that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother nor <​by by​> those who did belong to his band who had taken this covenant & thus they might murder & plunder & steal & commit horedoms & all manner of wickedness conterary to the laws of their country & also the laws of their God & whosoever of those whi◊h belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness & their abominations should be tried not according to the laws of their country but according to the laws of their wickedness which had been given by Gadianton & Kishkumen now behold it is these secret oaths & covenants which Alma commonded his Son should not go forth unto the world lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction now behold those secred <​secret​> oaths & covenants did not come[1206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13998716083229665431" \o "Note) forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman but behold they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit yea that same being who did plot with Cain that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world & he did plot with Cain & his followers from that time forth & also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a Tower sufficiently high that they might get to Heaven & it was that same being which lead on the people which came from that Tower into this land which spread the works of darkness & abominations over all the face of the land until he draged the people down to an entire destruction & to an everlasting Hell yea it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness & of secret murder & he hath brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to thise time & behold it is he which is the author off all sin & behold he doth carry on his works of darkness & secret murder & doth hand down their plots & their oaths & their covenants & their plans of awful wickedness from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men & now behold he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites yea insomuch that they had become exceding wicked yea the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness & did trample under their feet [p. 343] the commandments of God & did turn unto their own ways & did build up unto themselves Idols of <​their​> gold & of <​their​> Silver & it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years insomuch that the <​a​> more part of it had come unto them in the sixty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty & eighth year also to the great sorrow & lamentation of the righteous & thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief & grow in wickedness & abominations while the Lamanites began to grow excedingly in the knowledge of their God yea they did begin to keep his statutes & commandments & to walk in truth & uprightness before him & thus we see that the spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites because of the wickedness & the hardness of their hearts & thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his spirit upon the Lamanites because of their easiness & willingness to believe in his word & it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton & they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites & it came to pass on the other hand that the Nephites did build them up & support them beginning at the more wicked part of them until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites & had suduced <​seduced​> the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works & partake of their spoils & to join with them in their secret murders & combinations & thus they did obtain the sole management of the goverment insomuch that they did trample[1207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9128683725614627718" \o "Note) under their feet & smite & rend & turn their backs upon the poor & the meek & humble followers of God & thus we see that they were in an awful state & ripening for an everlasting destruction & it came to pass that thus ended the sixty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi——

Helaman, Chapter 3 [Helaman 7–10]

Chapter [blank]

The prophecy of Nephi the Son of Helaman

God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness— God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence— they repent & turm unto him— Samuel a Lamanite prophesies unto the Nephites—— Behold now it came to pass in the sixty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of <​the​> Nepites that Nephi the Son of Helaman returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land Northward for he had been forth among the people which was in the land Northward & did preach the word of God unto them & did prophesy many things unto them & they did reject all his words insomuch that he could not stay among them but returned again unto the land of his nativity & seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness & those Gadianton robbers filling the Judgmentseats having usurped the power & authority of the land laying aside [p. 344] the commandments of God & not in the least aright before him doing no justice unto the children of men condemning the righteous because of their righteousness letting the guilty & the wicked go unpunished because of their money & moreover to be held in office at the head of goverment to rule & to do according to their wills that they might get gain & glory of the world & moreover that they might more easy commit adultry & steal & kill & do according to their own wills now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites in the space of not many years & when Nephi saw it his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast & he did exclame in the agony of his soul O that I could have had my days in the days of <​when​> my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem that I could have joyed with him in the promised land then were his people easy to be intreated firm to keep the commandments of God & slow to be led to do iniquity & they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord yea if my days could have been in my <​them​> days then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren but behold I am consigned that these are my days & that my soul should <​shall​> be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren & behold now it came to pass that it was upon a Tower <​Tower​> which was in the garden of Nephi which was by the highway which led to the chief Market which was in the city of Zarahemla therefore as Nephi had bowed himself upon the Tower which was in his Garden which Tower was also near unto the garden gate which led by the haghway[1208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5444136310327212616" \o "Note) & it came to pass that there was sertain men passing by & saw Nephi as he was a pouring out his soul unto God upon the Tower & they ran & told the people what they had seen & the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people & now when Nephi arose & <​he​> beheld the multitudes of people which had gathered together & it came to pass that he opened his mouth & said unto them Behold what have <​why have​> ye gathered yourselves together that I may tell you of your iniquities yea because I have got upon my Tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God because of the exceding sorrow of my heart which is because[1209](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9161303558998511777" \o "Note) of your iniquities & becaus of my mourning & lamenation ye have gathered yourselves together & do marvel yea & ye have great need to marvel yea ye had ought to marvel because ye are given away that the Devil hath got so great hold upon your hearts yea how could ye have given away to the enticeing of him who art seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting miseary & endless wo O repent ye repent ye why while <​will ye​> die turn ye bturn <​turn ye​> unto the Lord your God why hath he forsaken you it is because you have hardened your hearts yea ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good Shepherd yea ye have provoked him to anger against you & behold instead of[1210](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12811973655611029231" \o "Note) gathering you except ye will repent behold he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs & wild beasts O how could you have forgotten your God in the verry day that he hath delivered you but behold it is to get gain to be praised of [p. 345] men yea & that ye might get gold & silver & ye have set your hearts upon the riches & the vain things of this world for the which ye do murder & plunder & steal & bear fals witness against your neighbor & do all manner of iniquity & for this cause wo shall come unto you <​excpt​> ye shall repent for if ye will not repent behold this great city & also all those great cities which are round about which are in the land of our possession shall[1211](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17628397838553112414" \o "Note) be taken away that ye shall have no place in them for behold the Lord will not grant unto you strength as he hath hitherto done to withstand against your enemies for behold thus saith the Lord I will not shew unto the wicked of my strength to one more than the other save it be unto those who repenteth of their Sins & hearken unto my words nor now therefore I would that ye should behold my brethren that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye <​shall​> repent for behold they are more righteous than you for they have not sined against that great knowledge which ye have received therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them yea he will lengthen out their days & increase their[1212](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4159306075242567733" \o "Note) seed even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent yea wo be in unto <​you​> because of that great abomination which hath come among you & ye have united yourselves unto it yea to that secret band which was established by Gadianton yea wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts which hath lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceding[1213](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13255824601792939683" \o "Note) great riches yea wo be unto you because of your wickedness & abominations & excpt ye repent ye shall perish yea even your lands shall be taken from you & ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth behold I do not say these things shall be of myself because it is[1214](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16236131805260237153" \o "Note) notof <​not of​> myself because it is not of <​that I know these things​> but behold I know that these things are true because the Lord God hath made them known unto me therefore I testify that they shall be [1215](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18337344263877872516" \o "Note)& now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words behold there were men which were Judges which also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton & they were angry & they cried out against him saying unto the people why do ye not seaze upon this man & bring him forth that he may be condemned according to the crime which he hath done why seest thou this man & hearest him revile against this people & against our law for behold Nephi[1216](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "865439683480939381" \o "Note) had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law yea many things did Nephi speak which can not be written & nothing did he speak which were conterary to the commandments of God & those Judges were angry with him because he spake plane unto them concerning their secret works of darkness nevertheless they dearst not lay their own hands upon him for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them therefore they did cry unto the people saying why do ye suffer this man to revile against us for behold he doth condemn all this people even unto destruction yea & also <​also​> that these our great cities shall be taken from us that we shall have no place in them & now we[1217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6192633859671463702" \o "Note) know that this is impossible for behold we are powerful & our cities great therefore [p. 346] our enemies can have no power overpower us now it came to pass that the thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi & raised contentions among them for there were some which did cry out let this man alone for he a is a good man & those things which he saieth with <​will​> surely come to pass except we repent yea behold all the Judgments will come upon us which he hath testified unto us for we know that he hath testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities & behold they are many & he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities yea & behold if he had not been a prophet he[1218](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12283075970152961280" \o "Note) could not have testified concerning those things & it came to pass that those people which sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear that they did not lay their hands on him therefore he began again to speak unto them seeing that he had gained favour in the eyes of some insomuch that the remainder of them did fear therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying Behold my brethren have ye not red that God gave power unto one man even Moses to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea & they departed[1219](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "422640692518928915" \o "Note) hither & thither insomuch that the Israelites which were our fathers came through upon dry ground & the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians & swallowed them up[1220](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14117409787955582882" \o "Note) & now behold if God gave unto this man such power then why should ye dispute among yourselves & say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the Judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent but behold ye not only deny my words but ye also deny all the words which hath been spoken by our fathers & also the words which was spoken by this man Moses which has had such great power given unto him yea the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of Messiah yea did he not bear record that the Son of God should come & as he lifted up the Brazen Serpant in the wilderness even so should he be lifted up which should come & as many as should look upon that Serpant should live even so as many as[1221](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11146750084084172222" \o "Note) should look upon the Son of God with faith having a contrite spirit might live even unto that life which is eternal & now behold Moses did not only testify of these things but also all the holy prophets from his day even to the days of Abraham yea & behold Abraham saw of his coming & was filled with gladness & did rejoice yea & behold I say unto you that Abraham not only knew of these things but there were many before the days of Abraham which were called by the order of God yea even after the order of his Son & this that it should be shewn unto the people a great many thousand years before his coming that even redemption should come unto them & now I would that ye should know that even since the days of Abraham[1222](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9148802927081348346" \o "Note) that there hath been many prophets that hath testified these things yea behold the prophet Zenos did testify boldly for the which he was slain & behold also Zenock & also Ezaias[1223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17890547854480810019" \o "Note) & also Isaiah & Jeremiah Jeremiah being that same prophet which testified of the destruction of Jerusalem & now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah O then why [p. 347] not the Son of God come according to his prophecy & now will ye dispute that Jerusalem was not[1224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7538345338407722617" \o "Note) destroyed will ye say that the Sons of Zedekiah were not slain all except it were Mulek yea & do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us & they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem but behold this is not all our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem[1225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14502843189902316980" \o "Note) because he testified of these things Nephi also testified of these things & also almost all of our fathers even down to this time yea they have testified of the coming of Christ & have looked forward & have rejoiced in his day which is to come & behold he is God & he is with them & he did manifest himself unto them that they were redeemed by him & they gave unto him glory because of that which is to come & now seeing ye know these things & cannot deny them except ye shall lie therefore in this ye have sined for ye have rejected all these things notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received yea even ye have received all things both things in Heaven & all things which are in earth as a witness that they[1226](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11465458382585148888" \o "Note) are true but behold ye have rejected the truth & rebelled against your holy God & even at this time instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in Heaven where nothing doth corrupt & where nothing can come which is unclean heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of Judgment yea even at this time ye are ripening because of your murders & your fornication & wickedness for everlasting destruction yea & except ye repent it will come unto you soon yea behold it is now even at your doors yea go ye in unto the Judgmentseat & search & behold your Judge is murdered & he lieth in his blood & he hath been murdered by his brother who seeketh to sit in the Judgmentseat & <​behold​> they both belong to your secret[1227](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12597841909301797556" \o "Note) band whose author is Gadianton & the evil one which seeketh to destroy the souls of men behold now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words sertain men which were among them ran to the Judgmentseat yea even there were five which went & they said among themselves as they went behold now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet & God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us behold we do not believe that he hath yea we do not believe that he is a prophet nevertheless if this thing which he hath said concerning the chief Judge be true that he be dead then will we believe that the other words which he hath spoken i◊ true & it came to pass that they[1228](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1874909108135311244" \o "Note) ran in their might & came in unto the Judgmentseat & behold the chief Judge had fallen to the earth & did lie in his blood & now behold when they saw this they were astonished excedingly insomuch that they fell to the earth for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the Chief Judge but now when they saw they believed & fear came upon them lest all the Judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people therefore they did quake & had fallen to the earth now immediately when the Judge had been murdered he being stabed by his brother by a garb of secrecy & he [p. 348] fled & the servants ran & told the people raising the cry of murder among them & behold the people did gather themselves[1229](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6410224845067194179" \o "Note) together unto the place of the Judgmentseat & behold to their astonishment they saw those five men which had fallen to the earth & now behold the people knew nothing concerning the multitude which had gathered together at the garden of Nephi therefore they said among themselves these men are they which have murdered the Judge & God hath smitten them that they could not flee from us[1230](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11287283957669597248" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they laid hold on them & bound them & cast them into prison & there was a proclamation sent abroad that the Judge was slain & that the murderers had been taken <​taken​> & was cast into prison & it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themse <​themselves​> together to mourn & to fast at the buriel[1231](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14876895507375392685" \o "Note) of the[1232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2186653728660669614" \o "Note) great & chief Judge which had been slain & thus were also those Judges which were at the garden of Nephi & heard his words were[1233](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10571514551042493806" \o "Note) also gathered together at the buriel[1234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2119288395023845307" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they inquired among the peo ple saying where are the five which was sent to inquire concerning the chief Judge whither[1235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2396898092731379249" \o "Note) he was dead & they answered & said concerning this five which ye say ye have sent we know not but there are five which are the murderers whom we have cast into prison & it came to pass that the Judges desired that they should be brought & they were brought & behold they were the five which were sent & behold they Judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter & they told them all they that they had done saying we ran & came to the place of the Judgmentseat[1236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14321278084085969840" \o "Note) & when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth & when we were recovered from our astonishment that we fell to the earth <​behold they cast us into​> prison now as for the murder of this man we know not who hath done it & only this much we know we ran & came according as ye desired & behold he was dead according to the words of Nephi & now it came to pass that the Judges did expound the matter unto the people & did cry <​out​> against Nephi saying behold we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the Judge & then he might declare it unto us that he might convert us unto his faith that he might raise himself to be a great man chosen of God & a prophet & now behold we will detect this man & he shall confess his fault & make known unto us the true murderer of this Judge & it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the trial buriel nevertheless they did rebuke the Judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi & did contend with them one by one insomuch that they did confound them nevertheless[1237](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9444382315699921780" \o "Note) they caused that Nephi should be taken & bound & brought before the multitude & they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him that they might accuse him to death saying un <​into​> him thou art confederate with <​who is​> this man that hath done this murder now tell us & acknowledge thy fault fault saying behold here is money & also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us & acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him but Nephi saith unto them O ye fools ye uncircumcised of heart ye blind & ye stiffnecked people do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on [p. 349] in this your ways of sin O ye had ought to begin to howl & mourn because of the great destruction at this time that <​which​> doth await you except ye <​shall​> repent behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram our chief Judge but behold I say unto you that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing yea even for a witness unto you that I did know of the wickedness & abominations which is among you & because I have done this ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing <​yea​> because I shewed unto ye you this sign ye are angry with me & seek to destroy my life & now behold I will shew unto you an other sign & see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me behold I say unto you go to the hous of Seantum which is the brother of Seezoram & say unto him hath Nephi the pretended prophet which doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people agreed with thee inthewhich ye have murdered[1238](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4688074954812118363" \o "Note) Seezoram which is your brother & behold he shall say unto you nay & ye shall say unto him have ye murdered your brother & he shall stand with fear & wist not what to say & behold he shall deny unto you & he shall make as if he were astonished nevertheless he shall declare unto you that he is inocent but behold ye shall examine him & ye shall find blood in the skirts of his cloak & when ye have seen this ye shall say from whence cometh this blood do we not know that it is the blood of your brother & then shall he tremble & shall look pale even as if death had come upon him & then shall ye say because of this fear & this paleness which hath come upon your face behold we know that thou art guilty & then shall greater fear come upon him & then shall he confess unto you & deny no more that he hath done this murder & then shall he say unto you that I Nephi knew[1239](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9325231454248309368" \o "Note) nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God & then shall ye know that I am an honest man & that I am sent unto you from God & it came to pass that they went & did even according as Nephi had said unto them & behold the words which he had said were true for according to the words he did deny & also according to the words he did confess & he was brought to prove that he himself was the verry murderer inso much that the five were set at liberty & also was Nephi & these there were some of the Nephites which did believe on the words of Nephi & there were some also which believed because of the testimony of the five for they had been converted while they were in prison & now there were some among the people which said that Nephi was a prophet & there were others which said behold he is a God for except he was a God he would <​could​> not know all things for behold he hath told us the thoughts of our hearts & also hath told us things & even he hath brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief Judge & it came to pass that there arose a division among the people inso much that they divided hither & thither & went their ways leaving Nephi alone as he was standing in the midst of them & it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house pondering upon the things which the Lord had shewn unto him & it came to pass as he was thus pondering being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephtes their secret works of darkness & their murderings & their plundering [1240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15087694159450154292" \o "Note) [p. 350] plunderings & all manner of iniquities & it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart behold a voice came unto him saying blessed art thou Nephi for those things which thou hast done for I have beheld how thou hast with unweringness <​unwearyingness​> declared the word which I have given unto thee unto this people & thou hast not feared them & hast not sought thine own life but hath sought my will & to keep my commandments & now because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness behold I will bless thee forever & I will make thee mighty in word & in deed in faith & in works yea even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will behold thou art Nephi & I am God behold I declare it unto thee in the presance of mine Angels that ye shall have power over this people & shall smite the earth with famine & with pestilence & distruction according to the wickedness of this people behold I give unto you power that whatsoever ye shall Seal on earth shall be Sealed in Heaven & whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in Heaven & thus shall ye have power among this <​people​> & thus if ye shall say unto this Temple it shall be wrent in twain & it shall be done & if ye shall say unto this Mountain be thou cast down & become smooth & it shall be done & behold if ye shall say that God shall smite this people it shall come to pass & now behold I command you that ye shall go & declare unto this people that thus saith the Lord God who is the Almighty except ye repent ye shall be smitten even unto destruction & behold now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi he did stop & did not go unto his own house but did return unto the multitudes which were scattered about upon the face of the land & began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him concerning their destruction if they did not repent now behold notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief Judge they did harden their hearts & did not hearken unto the words of the Lord therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord Saying except ye repent thus saith the Lord Ye shall be smitten even unto destruction & it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word obe <​behold​> they did still harden their hearts & would not hearken unto his words therefore they did revile against him & did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison but behold the power of God was with him & they could not take him to cast him into prison for he was taken by the spirit & conveyed away out of the midst of them & it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the spirit from multitude to multitude declareing the word of God even untill he had declared it unto them all or sent it forth among all the people & it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words & there began to be contentions insomuch that they were divided against themselves & began to slay one another with the sword & thus ended the seventy & first year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi [p. 351]

Helaman, Chapter 4 [Helaman 11–12]

Chapter—— [blank]—— And now it came to pass in the seventy & second year of the reign of the Judges that the contentions did increase insomuch that <​there​> were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi & it was this secret band of robbers which did carry on this work of destruction & wickedness & thus this war did last all that year & in the seventy & third year it did also last & it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord saying O Lord do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword but O Lord rather let there be a famine in the land to stir them up in rememberance of the Lord their God & perhaps they will repent & turn unto thee & so it was done according to the words of Nephi & there was a great famine upon the land among all the people of Nephi & thus in the seventy & forth year the famine did continue & the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became soar by famine & this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy & fifth for the earth was smitten that it was dry & did not yield forth grain in the season of grain & the whole earth was smitten even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land & it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine & they began to remember the Lord their God & they began to remember the words of Nephi & the people began to plead with their chief Judges & their leaders that they would say unto Nephi behold we know that thou art a man of God & therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled & it came to pass that the Judges did say unto Nephi according to the words which had been desired & it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented & did humble themselves in sack cloth he cried again unto the Lord saying O Lord behold this people repenteth & they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct & they have concealed their secret plans in the earth now O Lord because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger & let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed O Lord wilt thou turn away thine anger yea thy fierce anger & cause that this famine may cease in this land O Lord wilt thou hearken unto me & cause that it may be done according to my words & send forth rain upon the face of the earth that she may bring forth her fruit & her grain in the season of grain O Lord thou didst hearken unto my words when I said let there be a famine that the pestilence of the sword might cease & I know that thou wilt even at this time hearken unto my words for thou saidst that if this people repent I will spare them yea O Lord & thou seest that they have repented because of the famine & the pestilence & destruction which has come unto them & now O Lord wilt thou turn away thine anger & try again if they will serve thee & if so O Lord thou cast <​canst​> bless them according [p. 352] to thy word which thou hast said & it came to pass that in the seventy & sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people & caused that reign <​rain​> should fall upon the earth insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit & it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain & it <​in the​> season of her grain & behold the people did rejoice & gloryfy God & the whole face of the land was filled with rejoiceing & they did no more seek to destroy Nephi but they did esteem him as a great prophet & man of God having great power & authority given unto him from God & behold Lehi his brother was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness & thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land & began to build up their waste places & began to multiply & spread even until they did cover the whole face of the land both on the Northward & on the Southward from the Sea west to the Sea east[1241](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2234074865415456575" \o "Note) & it came to pass that the seventy & sixth year did end in peace & the seventy & seventh year began in peace & the church did spread throughout the face of all the land & the more part of the people both the Nephites & the Lamanites did belong to the church & they did have exceding great peace in the land & thus ended the seventy & seventh year & also they had peace in the seventy & eighth year save it were a few contentions <​concerning​> the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets & in the seventy & ninth year there began to be much strife but it came to pass the that Nephi & Lehi & many of their brethren which knew concerning the true points of doctrine having many revelations daily therefore they did preach unto the people insomuch that they did put an end <​to​> their strife in that same year[1242](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12646098776181892925" \o "Note) & it came to pass that in the eighteeth y eightieth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi which had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites & took upon themselves the name of Lamanites & also a certain number which were real decendants of the Lamanites being stired up to anger by them or by those dissenters therefore they commenced a war with their brethren & they did commit murder & plunder & then they would retreat back into the mountains & into the wilderness & secret places hiding themselves that they could not be discovered receiving daily an addition to their numbers in as much as there were dissenters that went forth unto them & thus in time yea even in the space of not many years they became an exceding great band <​of​> robbers & they did scearch out all the secret plans of Gadianton & thus they became robbers of Gadianton now behold these robbers did make great havock yea even great destruction among the people of Nephi & also among the people of the Lamanites & it came to pass that it was expediant that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness & upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers & to destroy them but behold it came to pass that in that same [p. 353] year they were driven back even into their own lands & thus ended the eightieth yea year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & it came to pass in the commencement of of the eighty & first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers & did destroy many & they were also visited with much destruction they were again oblidged to return out of the wilderness & out of the mountains unto their own lands[1243](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14828110181597263559" \o "Note) because of the exceding greatness of the numbers of those robbers which infested the mountains & the wilderness & it came to pass that thus ended this year & the robbers did still increase & wax strong insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites & also of the Lamanites & they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land yea for they did visit many parts of the land & did do great destruction unto them yea did kill many & did carry away others captive into the wilderness yea & more especially their women & their children & now this great evil which come unto the people because of their iniquity did stir them up again in rememberance of the Lord their God & thus ended the eighty & fist year of the reign of the Judges & in the eighty & second year they began again to forget the Lord their God & in the eighty & third year they began to wax strong in iniquity & in the eighty & fourth year they did not mend their ways & it came to pass in the eighty & fifth year they did wax stronger & stronger in their pride & in their wickedness & thus they were ripening again for destruction & thus ended the eighty & fifth year & thus we can behold how fals & also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men yea we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless & prosper those who put their trust in him yea & we may see at the verry time when he doth prosper his people yea in the increase of their fields their flocks & their herds & in gold & in silver & in all manner of precious things of every kind & art spareing their lives & delivering them out of the hands of their enemies softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them yea & in fine doing all things for the wellfare & happiness of his people yea then is the time that they do harden their hearts & do forget the Lord their God & do trample under their feet the Holy One yea & this because <​of​> their ease & their exceding great prosperity & thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions yea except he doth visit them with death & with terror & with famine & with all manner of pestilences they will not remember him O— how foolish & how vain & how evil & devilish & how quick to do iniquity & how slow to do good are the children of men yea how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one & to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world yea how quick to be lifted up in pride yea how quick to boast & do all manner of that which is iniquity & how slow are they to remember the Lord their God & to give ear unto his Councels yea how slow to walk in wisdoms paths behold they do not desire that the Lord their God who hath created them should rule & reign over them notwithstanding his great goodness & his mercy towards them they do set at nought his councels & they will not that he should be their guide O how great is the nothing [p. 354]ness[1244](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2975387669293775483" \o "Note) of the children of men yea even they are less than the dust of the earth for behold the dust of the earth moveth hither & thither to the dividing asunder at the command of our great & everlasting God yea behold at his voice doth the hills & the mountains tremble & quake & by the power of his voice they are broken up & become smoth yea even like unto a vally yea by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake yea by the power of his voice doth the foundations rock even to the verry sentre yea & if he say saieth unto the earth move & it is moved yea if he say unto the earth thou shalt go back that it lengthen out the day for many hours & it is done & thus according to his word the earth goeth back & it appeareth unto man that the Sun standeth still yea & behold this is so for sure it is the earth that moveth & not the Sun & behold also if he saieth unto[1245](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7553796077584955988" \o "Note) the waters of the great deep be thou dried up & it is done behold if he saieth unto this Mountain be thou raised up & come over & fall upon that City that it be buried up & behold it is done & behold if a man hideth up a treasure in the earth & the Lord shall say let it be acursed because of the iniquity of him that hath had it up behold it shall be acursed & if the Lord shall say be thou acursed that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth & forever & behold no man geteth it henceforth & forever & behold if the[1246](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4086952708555392927" \o "Note) Lord shall say unto a man[1247](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4492422758453476017" \o "Note) because of thine iniquities thou shalt be a cursed forever & it shall be done & if the Lord shall say because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presance & he will cause that it shall be so & wo unto whom he shall say this for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity & he cannot be saved therefore for this cause that men might be saved hath repentance been declared therefore blessed are they who will repent & hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God for these are they that shall be saved & may God grant in his great fulness that men might be brought unto repentance & good works that they might be restored unto grace for grace according to their works & I would that all men might be saved for <​but​> we read that in that great & last day there are some which shall be cast out yea which shall be cast off from the presance of the Lord yea which shall be consigned to a state of endless miseary fulfilling the words which say <​saieth​>[1248](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13711800130850949802" \o "Note) they that have done good shall have everlasting life & they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation & thus it is Amen——

Helaman, Chapter 5 [Helaman 13–16]

[blank]—— [blank]——

The prophecy of Samuel the Lamanite to the Nephites

And now it came to pass in the eighty & sixth year the Nephites did still remain in wickedness yea in great wickedness while the Lamanites did observe <​strictly​> to keep the commandments of God according to the law of Moses & it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel a Lamanite came into the land of Zarahemla & began to preach unto the people & it came to pass that he did preach many day repentance unto the people & they did cast him out & he was about to return to his own land but behold the <​voice​> of the Lord came unto him that he should return again & prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should [p. 355] come into[1249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5592746902842344644" \o "Note) his heart[1250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1972218267998628606" \o "Note) & it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the City therefore he went & got upon the wall thereof & streached forth his hand & cried with a loud voice & prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart & he said unto them Behold I Samuel a Lamanite do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into mine <​my​> heart & behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of Justice hangeth over this people & four hundred years passeth not away save the sword of Justice falleth upon this people yea heavy destruction awaiteth this people & it surely cometh unto this people & nothing can save this people save it be repentance[1251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "68254543755284263" \o "Note) & faith on the Lord Jesus Christ which surely shall come into the world & shall suffer many things & shall be slain for his[1252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1291925599086730130" \o "Note) people & behold an Angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me[1253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5520148368933914840" \o "Note) &[1254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12898275918509923890" \o "Note) he did bring glad tidings[1255](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17069910092669475978" \o "Note) to my soul & behold I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also that ye might have glad tidings but behold ye would not receive me therefore thus saith the Lord because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites except they repent I will take away my word from them & I will withdraw my spirit from them & I will suffer them no longer & I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them & four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten yea I will visit them with the sword & with famine & with pestilence yea I will visit them in my fierce anger & there shall be those of the fourth generation <​which shall live​> of your enemies to behold your utter destruction & this shall surely come except ye repent saith the Lord & those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction but if ye will repent & return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger saith the Lord yea thus saith the Lord blessed are they who will repent & turn unto me but wo unto him that repenteth not yea wo unto this great city of Zarahemla for behold it is because of they which are righteous that it is saved yea wo unto this great City for I perseive saith the Lord that there are many yea even the more part of this great city that will harden their hearts against me saith the Lord but blessed are they who will repent for them will I spare but behold if it were not for the righteous which are in this great city behold I would cause that fire should come down out of Heaven & destroy <​destroy​> it but behold it is for <​for​> the righteous sake that it is spared but behold the time cometh saith the Lord that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you then shall ye be ripe for destruction yea wo be unto this great city because of the wickedness & abominations which is in her yea & wo be unto this <​the​> City of Gideon for the wickedness & abominations which is in her yea & wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about which is possessed by the Nephites because of the wickedness & the abominations which is in them & behold a curse shall come upon the land saith the Lord of Hosts because of the peopless sake which is upon the land yea because of their wickedness & their abomination & it shall come to pass saith the Lord of Hosts yea our great & true God that whoso shall [p. 356] hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more because of the great curse of the land save it[1256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8688027055804716998" \o "Note) be a righteous man & shall hade it up unto the Lord for I will saith the Lord that they shall hide up their treasures unto me & cursed be they who hideth not up their treasures unto me for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous & he that hideth not up his treasure unto me cursed is he & also the treasure & none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land & the day shall come when <​that​> they shall hide up their treasures because they have set their hearts upon riches & because they have set their hearts upon their riches & will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies because they will not hide them up unto me cursed be they & also their treasures in that day <​shall​> they be smitten saith the Lord behold ye the people of this great city & hearken unto my words yea hearken unto the words which the Lord saith for behold he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches & also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them & hath not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things which he hath blessed you but ye do always remember your riches not to thank the Lord your God for them yea your heart is not drawn out unto the Lord but they do swell with great pride unto boasting & unto great swelling envyings strifes malice persecutions & murders & all manner of iniquities for this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land & also upon your riches & this because of your iniquities yea wo unto this people because of this time which has ariven that ye do cast out the prophets & do mock them & cast stones at them & do slay them & do do all manner of iniquity unto them even as they did of old time & now when ye talk ye say if our days had been in the days of our fathers of Old ye would not not <​have​> slain the prophets ye would not have stoned them & cast them out behold ye are worse than they for as the Lord liveth if a prophet come among you & declareth unto you the word of the Lord which testifieth of your sins & iniquities ye are angry with him & cast him out & seek all manner of ways to destroy him yea you will say that he is a fals prophet & that he is a sinner & of the Devil because he testifieth that your deeds are evil but behold a if a man shall come among you & shall say do this & there is no iniquity do that & ye shall not suffer yea he will say walk after the pride of your own hearts yea walk after the pride of your eyes & do whatsoever your heart desireth & if a man shall come among you & say this ye will receive him & he <​ye​> will say that he is a prophet yea ye will lift him up & ye will give unto him of your substance ye will give unto him of your gold & of your silver & ye will cloath him with costly apparrel & because he speaketh flattering words unto you & he sayet <​saieth​> that all is well & then ye will not find no fault with him O ye wicked & perve <​&​> ye perverse generation ye hardened & ye stiffnecked people how long will ye suppose that the Lord will[1257](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7723188561316464168" \o "Note) [p. 357] suffer you yea how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish & blind guides yea how long will ye chose darkness rather than light ye behold the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you behold he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity & behold the time cometh that he curseth your riches that it becometh slippery & <​that​> ye cannot hold them & in the days of your poverity ye cannot retain them & in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord & in vain shall ye cry for your destruction <​desolation​> is already come upon you & your destruction is made sure <​&​> then shall ye weep & howl & in that day saith the Lord of Hosts & then shall ye lament & say O that I had repented & had not killed the prophets & stoned them & cast them out yea in that day shall ye say O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches & then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them for behold our riches are gone from us behold we layeth a tool here & on the morrow it is gone & behold our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle yea we have had <​hid​> up our treasures & they have sliped away from us because of the curse of the land O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us for behold the land is cursed & all things are become slippery & we cannot hold them behold we are surrounded by Demons yea we are encircled about by the Angels of him who hath sought to destroy our Souls behold our iniquities are great O Lord canst thou not turn away thine anger from us & this shall be your language in them days but behold your days of probation is passed ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly to late & your destruction is made sure yea for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain & ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity which thing is conterary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great & eternal head O ye people of the land that ye would hear my words & I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you & that ye would repent & be saved & now it came to pass that Samuel the Lamanites did prophesy a great many more things which can not be written & behold he saieth unto them Behold I give unto you a sign for five years more cometh & then behold <​then​> cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name & behold this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming for behold there shall be great lights in Heaven insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day therefore there shall be one day & a night & a day as if it were one day & there were no night & this shall be unto you for a sign for ye shall know of the riseing of the Sun & also of its sitting therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two day <​days​> & a night nevertheless the night shall not be darkened & it shall be the night before he is born & behold there shall be[1258](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12082033162672881437" \o "Note) a new Star arise such an one as ye never have beheld & this also shall be a sign unto you & behold this is not all there shall be many many signs & wonders in Heaven & it shall come to pass that ye shall all[1259](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3303891596963136449" \o "Note) be amazed [p. 358] & wonder insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth & it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God the same shall have everlasting life & behold thus hath the Lord commanded me by his Angel that I should come & tell this thing in <​un​>to you yea he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you yea he hath said unto me cry unto this people repent & prepare the way of the Lord & now because I am a Lamanite & hath spoken unto you the word which the Lord hath commanded me & because it was hard against you ye are angry with me & do seek to destroyme & have cast me out from among you & ye shall hear my words for for this intent I have come up upon the walls of this city that ye might hear & know of the Judgments of God which doth await you because of your iniquities & also that ye might know the conditions of repentance & also that ye might know of the coming of Jusus Christ the Son of God the Father of Heaven & of Earth the Creator of all things from the beginning & that ye might know of the signs of his coming to the intent that ye might believe on his name & if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins that thereby ye may have[1260](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13480713098063299271" \o "Note) remission of them through his merits & behold again another sign I give unto you yea a sign of his death for behold he surely must die that salvation may come yea it behoveth him & becometh expedeant that he dieth to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead that thereby men may be brought into the presance of the Lord yea behold this death bringeth to pass the resurrection & redeemeth all mankind from the first death that spiritual death for all mankind by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presance of the Lord are[1261](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17062681649882561295" \o "Note) considered as dead both as to things temporal & to things spiritual but behold the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind yea even all mankind & bringeth them back into the presance of the Lord yea & it bringeth topass the conditions of repentance that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down & cast into the fire but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down & cast into the fire & there cometh upon them again a spiritual death yea a second death for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness therefore repent ye repent ye lest by knowing these things & not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation & ye are brought down unto this second death but behold as I said unto you concerning another sign a sign of his death behold in the day that he shall suffer death the Sun shall be darkened & refuse to give h◊r light unto you & also the Moon & the stars & there shall be no light upon the face of the land even from the time that he shall suffer death for the space of three days to the time that he shall rise again from the dead yea at the time that he shall yield up the Ghost there shall be thunderings & lightnings for the space of many hours & the Earth shall shake & tremble & the rocks which is upon the face of the earth which is both abore <​above​> the earth & beneath which ye know at this time is solid or the more part of it is one solid mass shall be broken up yea they shall be wrent in twain & shall ever after be found in seams & in cracks & in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth yea both above the earth & both beneath & [p. 359] behold there shall be great tempests & there shall be many mountains laid low like unto a vally & there shall be many places which are now called valies which shall become mountains whose heighth thereof is great & many highways shall be broken up & many cities shall become desolate & many graves shall be opened & shall yield up up many of their dead & many saints shall <​shall​> appear unto many & behold thus hath the Angel spoken unto me for he said into <​unto​> me that there should be thunderings & lightnings for the space of many hours & he said unto me that whilest the thunder & the lightning lasted & the tempest that these things should be & that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days & the Angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these to the intent that they might believe that these signs & these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men & this to the[1262](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17515709956027577117" \o "Note) intent that whosoever will believe might be saved & that whosoever will not believe a righteous Judgment might come upon them & also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation & now remember remember my brethren that whosoever perisheth perisheth unto himself & whosever doeth iniquity doeth it unto himself for behold ye are free ye are permitted to act for yourselves for behold God hath given unto you a knowledge & he hath made you free he hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil & he hath given unto you that ye might chose life or death & ye can do good & be restored unto that which is good or have that which is good restored unto you or ye can do evil & have that which is evil restored unto you & now my beloved brethren behold I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate yea except ye repent your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck for ye shall attempt <​to​> flee & there shall be no place for reffuge yea & wo unto them which are with child for they shall be heavy & cannot flee therefore they shall be trodden down & shall be left to perish yea wo unto this people which are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent when they shall see all those signs & wonders which shall be shewed unto them for behold they have been a chosen people of the Lord yea the people of Nephi hath he loved & also hath he chastened them yea in the days of their iniquities he hath he chastened them because he loveth them but behold my brethren the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually & this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers but behold salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites & for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days & I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty & they do walk sircumspectly before God & they do observe to keep his commandments & his statutes & his Judgments according to the law of Moses yea I say unto you that the more part of the◊ are doing this & they are striving with unwearied diligence that they [p. 360] may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth therefore there are many which do add to their numbers daily & behold ye do know of yourselves for ye have witnessed it that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth & to know of the wicked & abominable traditions of their fathers & are led to believe the holy Scriptures yea the prophicies of the holy prophets which are written which leadeth them to faith on the Lord <​&​> unto repentance which faith & repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them therefore as many as have come to this ye know of yourselves are firm & steadfast in the faith & in the things[1263](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3197713630643306400" \o "Note) wherewith they have been made free & ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war & they fear to take them up lest by any means they shall sin yea ye can see that they fear to sin for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down & slain by their enemies & will not lift their swords against them & this because of their faith in Christ & now because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened behold the Lord shall bless them & prolong their days notwithstanding their iniquity yea even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers & also by the prophet Zenos & many other prophets concerning the restoration of our brethren the Lamanites again to the knowledge of the truth yea I say unto you that in the latter times the promises of the Lord hath been extended to our brethren the Lamanites & not withstanding the many afflictions which they shall have & notwithstanding they shall be driven to & fro upon the face of the earth & be hunted & shall be smitten & scattered abroad having no place for reffuge the Lord shall be merciful unto them & this is according to the prophecy that they shall again[1264](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "723736496241751833" \o "Note) be brought to the true knowledge which is the knowledge of their redeemer & their great & their true Shepherd & be numbered among his Sheep therefore I say unto you it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent for behold had the mighty works been shewn unto them which have been shewn unto you yea unto them which have dwindeled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindeled in unbelief therefore saith the Lord I will not utterly destroy them but I will cause that in the days of my wisdom they shall return again unto me saith the Lord & now behold saith the Lord concerning the people of the Nephites if they will not repent & observe to do my will I will utterly destroy them saith the Lord because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them & as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be saith the Lord & now it came to pass that there were many which heard the words of Samuel the Lamanites Lamanite which he spake upon the walls of the City & as many as believed on his words went forth & sought for Nephi & when they came forth & found him they confessed unto him their sins & denied not desireing that they might be Baptised unto the Lord but as many as there were whi◊h did not believe [p. 361] in the words of Samuel were angry with him & they cast stones at him upon the wall & also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall but the spirit of the Lord was with him insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows now when they saw that[1265](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1210854860517226947" \o "Note) they could not hit him there were many more which did believe on his words inso much that they went away unto Nephi to be Baptised for behold Nephi was baptising & a prophesying & preaching crying repentance unto the people shewing signs & wonders working miracels among the people that they might know that the Christ must shortly come telling them of things which must shortly come that they might know & remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them before hand to the intent that they might believe therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be Baptised for they came repenting & confessing their sins but the more part of them did not believe <​in​> the words of Samuel therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their Stones & their arrows they cried out unto their captains saying take this fellow & bind him for behold he hath a Devil & because of the power of the Devil <​which is in him​> we cannot hit him with our stones & our arrows therefore take him & bind him & away with him & as they went forth to lay their hands on him behold he did cast himself down <​from the wall​> & did flee out of their hands <​hands​>[1266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9780974989311974322" \o "Note) yea even unto his own country & began to preach & to prophesy among his own people & behold he was never heard of more among the Nephites & thus were the affairs of the people & thus ended the eighty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended also the eighty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges & the more part of the people remaining in their pride & wickedness & the lesser part walking more sircumspectly before God & thus[1267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11394351114837667381" \o "Note) were the conditions also in the eighty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges & there were but little alteration in the affairs of the people save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity & do more & more of that which was conterary to the commandments of God in the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges but behold it came to pass in the ninetieth <​year​> of the reign of the Judges there were great signs given unto the people & wonders & the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled & Angels did appear unto men wise men & did declare unto them glad tidings of great go <​joy​> & thus in this year the Scriptures began to be fulfilled nevertheless the people began to harden their hearts all save it were the most believing part of them both of the Nephites & also of the Lamanites & began to depend upon their own strength & upon their own wisdom saying some things they may have guessed right among so many but behold we kn◊w that all these great & marvelous works <​works​> cannot come to pass which hath been spoken & they began to reason & to contend among themselves saying that it is not reasonable that such a being[1268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7645891753932552768" \o "Note) as a Christ shall come if so & he be the Son of God the Father of Heaven & of Earth as it hath been spoken [p. 362] why will he not shew himself unto us as well as unto they which shall be unto Jerusalem yea why will he not shew himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem but behold we know that this is a wicked tradition which has been handed down unto us by our fathers to cause us that we should believe in some great & marvelous thing which should come to pass but not among us but in a land which is far distant a land which we know not therefore they can keep us in ignorence for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true & they will by the cunning & the mysterious arts of the evil one work some great mystery which we can not understand which will keep us down to be servants to their words & also servants unto them for we depend upon them to teach us the word & thus will they keep us in ignorance if we yield ourselves unto them all the days of our lives & many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts which were foolish & vain & they were much disterbed for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually yea he did go about spreading rumors & contentions upon all the face of the land that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good & against that which should come & notwithstanding the signs & the wonders which was wrought among the people of the Lord & the many miracels which they did Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land & thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended the Book of Helaman according to the record of Helaman & his Sons——

Third Nephi, Chapter 1 [3 Nephi 1–2]

—— The Book of Nephi the Son of Nephi Which was the Son of Helaman & Helaman was the Son of Helaman which was the Son of Alma which was the Son of Alma being a decendant of Nephi which was the Son of Lehi which came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah the king of Judah——

Chapter—— [blank]—— Now it came to pass that the ninety & first year had passed away & it was <​was​> six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem & it was in the year that La con Lachoneus was the chief Judge & the governor over the land of Nephi & the Son of Helaman had departed out of the land of Zarahemla giveing charge unto his Son Nephi which was his eldest Son concerning the plates of Brass & all the records which had been kept & all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem then he departed out of the land & whether he went no man knoweth & his Son Nephi did keep the record in his stead ye the record of this people & it came to pass that in the commencement of the minety & second year behold the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully for there began to be greater signs & greater miracels wrought among the people but there were some whi◊h began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled which was spoken by Samuel the Lamanite & they began to rejoice over their brethren saying behold the time is past & the words of Samuel is <​are​> not fulfilled therefore your joy & your faith [p. 363] concerning this thing hath been vain & it came to pass that the did make a great uprore throughout the land & the people which believed began to be verry sorrowful lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass but behold they did watch steadfastly for that day & that night & that day which should be as one day as if there were no night that they might know that these things had not been vain now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass which had been given by Samuel the prophet now it came to pass that when Nephi the Son of Nephi saw this wickedness of his people his heart was exceding sorrowful & it came to pass that he went out & bowed himself down upon the earth & cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people yea those which were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers & it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day & behold the voice of the Lord came unto him saying lift up your head & be of good cheer for behold the time is at hand & on this night shall the sign be given & on the morrow come I into the world to shew unto the world that I will fulfil all that I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets behold I come unto my own to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from from the foundation of the world <​&​> to do the will of both of the Father & of the Son of the Father because of me & of the Son because of my flesh & behold the time is at hand & this night shall the sign be given & it came to pass that the word<​s​> which came unto Nephi was fulfilled according as they had been spoken for he beheld[1269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4068815405646624196" \o "Note) at the going down of the Sun there was no darkness & the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came & there were manny which had not believed the words of the prophets fell to the earth & became as if they were dead for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who had believed in the words of the prophets had been frustratred for the sign[1270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11512527880427485553" \o "Note) which had been given was already at hand & they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear yea & in fine all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east both in the land north & in the land south were so excedingly astonished that they fell to the earth for they knew that the prophets had testified of these thing for many years & that the sign which had been given was already at hand & they began to fear because of their iniquity & their unbelief & it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night but it was a light as tho it was mid day & it came to pass that the Sun did rise in the morning again according to its proper order & they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born because of the sign which had been given & it had come to pass yea all things every whit according to the words of the prophets & it came to pass also that a new Star did appear according to the word & it came to pass from this time forth there began to be lieings sent forth among the people by Satan to harden their hearts to the intent that they might not believe in those signs & wonders which they had seen but notwithstanding [p. 364] those lieings & deceivings the more part of the people did believe & were converted unto the Lord & it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people & also many other others baptiseing unto repentance in the which there were a great remission of sins & thus the people began again to have peace in the land & there were no contentions save it wer a few that began to preach endeavoring to prove by the Scriptures that it was no more expediant to observe the law of Moses now in this thing they did err having not understood the Scriptures but it came to pass that they soon became converted & were convinced of the error which they were in for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled & that it must be fulfilled in every whit yea the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled yea that one jot nor tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error & did confess their faults & thus the ninety & second year did pass away bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets & it came to pass that the ninety & third year did also pass away in peace save it were for the Gadianton robbers which did dwell upon the mountains which did infest the land for so strong were their holds & their secret places that the people could not overpower them therefore they did commit many murders & did do much slaughter among the people & it came to pass that in the <​ninety​> & fourth year they began to increase in a great degree because there were many dissenters of the Nephites which did flee unto them which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites did remain in the land & there were also a cause ofmuch sorrow among the Lamanites for behold they had many children which did grow up & began to wax strong in years that they became for themselves & were lead <​led​> away by some which were Zoramites by their lieings & their flattering words to join those Gadianton robbers & thus were the Lamanites afflicted also & began to decrease as to their faith & righteousness because of the wickedness of the riseing generation & it came to pass that thus <​thus​> passed away the ninety & fifth year also & the people began to forget those signs & wonders which they had heard & began to be less & less astonished at a sign or a wonder from Heaven insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts & blind in their minds & began to disbelieve all which they had heard & seen imagioning up some vain thing in their hearts that it was wrought by men & by the power of the Devil to lead away & deceive the hearts of the people & thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again insomuch that he did blind their eyes & lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish & a vain thing & it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness & abominations & they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given & Satan did go about leading away the hearts of the people tempting them & causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land & thus did pass away the ninety & sixth year & also the ninety & seventh year & also the ninety & eighth year & also the ninety & ninth year & unto also an hundred years had passed away since the day<​s​> of Mosiah which was [p. 365] King over the people of the Nephites & six hundred & nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem & nine years had passed away from the time which the sign was given which was spoken of by the prophets that Christ should come into the world now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period which the sign was given or from the coming of Christ therefore nine years h◊d[1271](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16085723597504665090" \o "Note) passed away & Nephi which was the father of Nephi which had the charge of the records did not return to the land of Zarahemla & could no where be found in all the land & it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness notwithstanding the much preaching & prophesying which was sent among them & thus passed away the tenth year also & they the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity & it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars & contention<​s​> throughout all the land & the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous & did slay so many of the people &[1272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15797052725565221856" \o "Note) did lay waste so many cities & did spread so much death & carnage throughout the land that it became expediant that all the people both the Nephites & the Lamanites should take up arms against them therefore all the Lamanites which had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren the Nephites & were compelled for the safety of their lives & their women & their children to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers yea & also to maintain their rights[1273](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2945581910690201402" \o "Note) & their privileges of their church & of their worship & their freedom & their liberty & it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war which had become exceding soar & it came to pass that those Lamanites which were <​had​> <​united​> with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites & their curse was taken from them & their skin became white like unto the Nephites & their Young men & their Daughters became exceding fair & they were numbered among the Nephites & were called Nephites & thus ended the thirteenth year & it came to pass in the Commencenemt <​Commencement of​> the fourteenth <​year​> the war between the robbers & the people of Nephi did continue & did become exceding soar nevertheless the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains & into their secret places & thus ended the fourteenth year & in the fifteenth year they did come forth again[1274](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3877012953305435007" \o "Note) against the people of Nephi & because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi & their many contentions & dissensions the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them & thus ended the fifteenth year & thus were the people in a state of many afflictions & the sword of destruction did hang over them insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it & this because of their iniquity——

Third Nephi, Chapter 2 [3 Nephi 3–5]

Chapter—— [blank]—— And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ Lachoneas the governor of the land received an Epistle from the leader & the governor of this band of robbers & these are the words which were written saying Lachoneas most noble & chief governor of the land behold I write this Epistle unto you & do give unto you exceding great praise because of your firmness & also the firmness of your people in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right & [p. 366] liberty yea ye do stand well as if ye were supported by the hand of God in the defence of your liberty & your property & your country or that which ye call so & it seemeth a pity unto me most noble Lachoneas that ye should be so foolish & vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men which are at my command which do now at this time stand in their arms & do await with great anxiety for the word go down upon the Nephites & destroy them & I knowing their unconquerable spirit having proved them in the field of battle & knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of their many wrongs which ye have done unto them therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction therefore I have wrote this Epistle Sealing it with mine own hand feeling for your wellfare because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right & your noble spirit in the field of battle therefore I write unto you desireing that ye would yield up up unto this my people your cities your lands & your possessions rather than that they should visit you with the sword & that destruction should come upon you or in other words yield yourselves up unto us & unite with us & become acquainted with our secret works & become our brethren that ye may be like unto us not our slaves but our brethren & partners of all our substance & behold I swear unto you if ye will do this with an out <​oath​> ye shall not be destroyed but if ye will not do this I swear unto you with an oath that on the morrow month <​month​> I will command that my armies shall come down against you & they shall not stay their hand & shall spare not but shall slay you & shall let fall the sword upon you yea even until ye shall become extinct & behold I am Giddianhi & am the governor of this secret society of Gadianton & which secrecy <​society​> & the works thereof I know to be good & there they are of ancient date & they have been handed down unto us & I write this Epistle unto you Lachoneus & I hope that ye will deliver up your lands & your possessions without the sheding of blood that this my people may recover their rights & goverment which have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of goverment & except ye do this I will avenge their wrongs I am Giddianhi And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this Epistle he was excedingly astonished because of the boldness of Giddianhi in[1275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9725439105178128538" \o "Note) demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites & also of threatning the people & avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong save it were they had wronged themselves by desenting away unto those wicked & abominable robbers & now behold this Lachoneus the governor was a Just <​just​> man & could not be frightened by the demands of the threatnings of a robber therefore he did not hearken to the Epistle of Giddianhi the governor of the robbers but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord against <​for strength​> for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them yea he sent a proclamation among all the people that they should gather to gether [p. 367] their women & their children their flocks & their herds & all their substance save it were their land unto one place & he caused that fortifications should be built round about them & the strength thereof should be exceding great & he caused that there should be armies both of the Nephites & of the Lamanites or of all them which were numbered among the Nephites should be placed as guards round about to watch them & to guard them from the robbers day & night yea he said unto them as the Lord liveth except ye repent of all your iniquities & cry unto the Lord that they could in no wise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers & so great & marvelous were the word & prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people & they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus & it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them now the chiefest among all the chief[1276](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11881954162829399217" \o "Note) captains & the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed & his name was Gidgiddoni now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains save it were in their times of wickedness some one that had the spirit of revelation & also of prophecy therefore this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them & also was the chief Judge now the people said unto Gidgiddoni pay <​pray​> unto the Lord & let us go up upon the Mountains & into the wilderness that we may fall upon the robbers & destroy them in their own lands but Gidgiddoni saith unto them the Lord forbid for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands therefore we will prepare ourselves in the centre of our <​our​> lands & we will gather all our armies together & we will not go against them but we will wait till they shall come against us therefore as the Lord liveth if we do this he will deliver them into our hands & it came to pass in the seventh <​seventeenth​> year in the latter end of the year the proclamation of Lachoneas had gone forth throughout all the face of the land & they had taken their horses & their charriots & their cattle & all their flocks & their heards <​herds​> & their grain & all their substance & did march forth by thousands & by tens of thousands until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together to defend themselves against their enemies in <​&​> the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla & the land which was between the land of Zarahemla[1277](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18382435058366917116" \o "Note) & the land Bountiful yea the line which was betwixt the land Bountiful & the land Desolation & there were a great many thousand people which were called Nephites which did gather themselves together in the <​this​> land now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward because of the great curse which was upon the land northward & they did fortify themselves against their enemies & they did dwell in one land & in one body & they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus insomuch that they did repent of all their sins & they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God that he would [p. 368] deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle & they were exceding sorrowful because of their enemies & Gidgiddoni <​did​> caused that they should make weapons of war of every kind that they should be strong with armour & with shields & with bucklers after the manner of his instructions & it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle & began to come down & to sally forth from the hills & out of the mountains & the willderness & their strong hold<​s​> & their cere <​secret​> places & began to take possession of the lands both which was in the land south & which was in the land north & began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites & the cities of which had <​had​> been left desolate but behold there wa◊ no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites & there were no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness & the robbers could not exist save it were in wilderness for the want of food for the Nephites had left their lands desolate & had gathered their flocks & their herds & all their substance & they were in one body therefore there w◊◊e no chance for the robbers to plunder & to obtain food save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites & the Nephites being in one body & having so great a number & having reserved for themselves provisions & horses & cattle & flocks of every kind that they might subsist for the space of seven years inthewhich time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land & thus the eighteenth year did pass away & it came to pass in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expediant that he should go up to battle against the Nephites for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder & rob & murder & they dearst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain lest the Nephites should come upon them & slay them therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites & it came to pass that they did come up to battle & it was in the sixth month & behold great & terrible w◊s was the day that they did come up to battle & they were girded about after the manner of robbers & they had a lamb shim <​skin​> about their loins & they were dyed in blood & their heads were shorn & they had headplates upon them & great & terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi because of their armour & because of their being dyed in blood & it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhis Giddianhi had all fallen to the earth & did lift their cries to the Lord their God that he would spare them & deliver them out of the hand<​s​> of their enemies & it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice because of their joy for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies but in this thing they were disappointed for the Nephites did not fear them but they did fear their God & did suplicate him for protection therefore when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them yea in the strength of the Lord they did receive them & the battle commenced in this the sixth month & great & terrible was the battle [p. 369] thereof yea great & terrible was the slaughter thereof insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem & notwithstanding the threatnings & the oaths which Giddianhi had made behold the Nephites did beat them insomuch that they did fall back <​from​> before them & it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should persue them as far as to the borders of the wilderness & that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way & thus they did persue them & did slay them to the borders of the wilderness even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni & it came to pass that Giddianhi who had stood & fought with boldness was persued as he fled & being weary because of his much fiting <​he​> was overtaken & slain & thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber [1278](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16783618863642640334" \o "Note)& it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security & it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away & the robbers did not come again to battle neither did they come in[1279](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9456897515738543886" \o "Note) the twentieth year but in the twenty & first year they did not come up to battle but they <​an​> came up on all sides to lay seige round about the people of Nephi for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands & should hem them in on every side & if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges that they could cause them to yield themselves according[1280](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9233227015761049714" \o "Note) to their wishes now they had appointed unto themselves an other leader whose name was Zemnarihah therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place but behold this was an advantage unto the Nephites for it was impossible <​for the robbers​> to lay siege sufficiently long to have any affect upon the Nephites because of their much provision which they had laid up in store & because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers for behold they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistance which meat they did obtain in the wilderness & it came to pass that the wild game became scears in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hanger & the Nephites were continually marching out by day & by night & falling upon their armies & cutting them off by thousands & by tens of thousands & thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design because of the great destruction which come upon them by night & by day & it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege & to march into the fartharmost parts of the land northward & now Gidgiddoni being aware of their design & knowing of their weakness because of the want of food & the great slaughter which had been made among them therefore he did send out his armies in the night time & did cut off the way of their retreat & did place their <​his​> armies in the way of their retreat & <​this​> did they do in the night time & got on their march beyond the robbers so that on the morrow <​when​> the robbers began their march they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front & in their rear & the robbers which were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat & all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni & there were many thousands which did yield themselves up prisoners [p. 370] unto the Nephites & the remainder of them were slain & their leader Zemnarihah was taken & hanged upon a tree yea even upon the top thereof until he was dead & when they had handed him until he was dead they did fall the tree to the earth & did cry with a loud voice saying may the Lord preserve his people in righteousness & in holiness of heart that they may cause to be fell to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power & secret combinations even as this man hath been fell to the earth & they did rejoice & cry again with one voice saying may the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob protect this people in righteousness so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection & it came to pass that they did break forth as all as one in singing praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies yea they did cry Hozannah to the most high God & they did cry Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty the most high God & their hearts were swollen with joy unto the yielding <​out​> up <​up​> of many teers <​tears​> because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies & they knew it was because of their repentance & their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction & now behold there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites which did doubt in the least thing in the words of all the holy prophets which had been spoken for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled & they knew that it must be expediant that Christ had come because of the many signs which had been given according to the words of the prophets & because of the things which had come to pass already they knew it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken therefore they did forsake all their sins & their abominations & their whoredoms & did serve God with all diligence day & night & now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners insomuch that none did escape which were not slain they did cast their prisoners into prison & did cause the word of God to be preached unto them & as many as would repent of their sins & enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty but as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant & who did still continue to have their secret murders in their hearts yea as many as were found breathing out threatnings against their brethren were pun condemned & punished according to the law & thus they did put an end to all those wicked & secret & abominable combinations inthewhich there were so much wickedness & so many murders committed & thus had the twenty & second year passed away & the twenty & third year also & the twenty & fourth & the twenty & fifth & thus had twenty & five years passed away & there had been many things transpired which in the eyes of some would be great & marvelous nevertheless they could not all be written in this Book yea this Book cannot contain even a handredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty & five years but behold there are records which do contain all the procedings of this people & a more short but a true account is <​was​> given by Nephi therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi which were engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi & [p. 371] behold I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands & behold I am called Mormon being called after the land of Mormon the land inthewhich Alma did establish the church among this people yea the first church which was established among them after their transgression yea <​behold​> I am a Desiple of Jesus Christ the Son of God I have been called of him to declare his word among his people that they might have everlasting life & it hath become expediant that I according to the will of God that the prayer of those which have gone hence which were the holy ons should be fulfilled according to their faith[1281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17293855680442920332" \o "Note) should make a record of these things which have been done yea a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem even down until the presant time therefore I do make my record from the accounts which hath been given by those which were before me until the commencement of my day & then do I make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes & I know the record which I make to be a just & a true record nevertheless there are many things which according to our language we are not able to write & now I make an end of my saying which is of myself & prosede to give my account of the things which hath been before me I am Mormon & a pure decendant of Lehi I have reason to bless my God & my Saviour Jesus Christ that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & no one knew it save it were himself & those which he brought out of that land & thus <​that​> he hath given me & my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob & hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph & in as much[1282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2460177723936786015" \o "Note) as the children of Lehi hath kept his commandments he hath[1283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14151711705241855027" \o "Note) blessed them & prospered them according to his word yea & surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God & as surely as the Lord liveth will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob which are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth & as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time unto the restoreing all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them & then shall they know their redeemer which is Jesus Christ the Son of God & then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands from whence they have been disperced yea as the Lord liveth so shall it be Amen——

Third Nephi, Chapter 3 [3 Nephi 6–7]

Chapter [blank]—— And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty & sixth year every man with his family his flocks & <​his​> herds his horses & his cattle & all things whatsoever did belong unto them & it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured <​of​> all their grain of every kind & their gold & their silver & all their precious things & they did return to their own lands & their possessions both on the north & on the south both on the land northward & on the land southward & they granted unto those robbers which had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land[1284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14421163896759475987" \o "Note) which were desireous to remain Lamanites lands according to their numbers that they might have with their labours [p. 372] wherewith to subsist upon & thus they did establish peace in all the land & they began again to prosper & to wax great & the twenty & <​sixth​> & seventh years passed awy & there was great order in the land & they had formed their laws according to equity & justice & now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually except they should fall into transgressions & now it was Gidgiddoni & the Judge Lachoneus & those which had been appointed leaders which had established this great peace in the land & it came to pass that there were many cities built anew[1285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12744940749977868737" \o "Note) & there were many old cities repaired & there were many high ways cast up & many roads made which led from city to city & from land to land & from place to place & thus passed away the twenty & eighth year & the people had continual peace but it came to pass in the twenty & ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people & some were lifted up unto pride & boastings because of their exceding great riches yea even unto great persecutions for there were many mearchants in the land & also many lawyers & many Officers & the people began to be distinguished by ranks according to their riches & their chance for learning yea some were ignorent because of their poverty & othors did receive great learning because of their riches some were lifted up in pride & others were exceding humble some did return railing for railing while others would receive railing & persecution & all manner of afflictions & would not turn & revile again but were humble & penitant before God & thus there became an <​a​> great unequality in all the land insomuch that the church began to be broken up yea insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites which were converted unto the true faith & they would not depart from it for they were firm & steadfast & immoveable willing with all diligence to keep the commands[1286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7389003329836196985" \o "Note) of the Lord now because of this iniquity of the people was this Satan had great power unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity & to the buffeting[1287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14100522302255992872" \o "Note) them up with pride tempting them to seek for power & authority & riches & the vain things of the world & thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity therefore they had not enjoyed peace but a few years & thus in the commencement of the thirtieth year the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the Devil whithersoever he desired to carry them & to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should & thus in the commencment of this the thirtieth year they were in a state of awful wickedness now they did not sin ignorently for they knew the will of God concerning them for it had been taught unto them therefore they did willfully rebell against God & now it was in the days of Lachoneus the Son of Lachoneus for the Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father & did govern the people that year & there began to be men inspired from Heaven & sent forth standing among the people in all the land preaching & testifying boldly of the Sins & iniquities of the people & testifying unto them concerning the redemptions which the Lord would make for his people or in other words the resurrection of Christ & they did testify boldly of his death & sufferings now there were many of the people which were exceding angry [p. 373] because of those which testified of these things & those which were angry were chiefly the chief Judges & they which had been highpriests & lawyers yea all they which were lawyers were angry <​with​> those which testified of these things now there was no lawyer <​nor​> Judge nor highpriest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land now there were many of those which testified of things pertaining to Christ which testified boldly which were taken & put to death secretly by the Judges that the knowledge of their death come not unto the governor of the land until after their death now behold this was conterary the laws of the land that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla to the governor of the land against the Judges which had condemned <​the prophets of the Lord[1288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1352504924424825894" \o "Note)​> unto death not according to the law now it came to pass that they were taken & brought up before the Judge to be Judged of their crime which they had done according to the law which had been given by the people now it came to pass that those Judges had many friends & kindreds <​& the remainder​> yea even almost all the lawyers & the highpriests did gather themselves together & unite with the kndreds of those Judges which were to be tried according to the law & they did enter into a covenant one with another yea even into that covenant which was given by them of old which covenant was given & administered by the Devil to combine against all righteousness therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord & enter into a covenant to destroy them & to deliver those which were guilty of murder from the grasp of Justice which was about to be administered according to the law & they did set at defiance the law & the rights of their country & they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor & to establish a king over the land that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings now behold I will shew unto you that they did not establish a king over the land but in this same year yea the thirtieth year they did destroy upon the Judgmentseat yea did murder the chief Judge of the land & the people were divided one against another & they did separate one from another into tribes every man according to his family & his kind <​kindred​> & h◊◊ friends & thus they did destroy the goverment of the land every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them & thus they became tribes & leaders of tribes now behold there were no man among them save he had much family & many kindreds & friends therefore there <​their​> tribes became exceding great now all this was done & there was no wars as yet among them & all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan & they regulations of the goverment was destroyed because of the secret combination of the friends & the kindreds of them which murdered the prophets & they did cause a great contention in the land insomuch that the more righteous part of the people altho they were nearly all become wicked yea there were but few righteous men among them & thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness like the Dog to his vomit or like the Sow to her wallowing in the mire now this secret combination which had brought so great iniquity upon [p. 374] the people did gather themselves together & did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob & they did call him their king therefore he became a king over this wicked band & he was one of the chiefest which had given his voice against the prophets which testified of Jesus & it came to pass that they were not so strong in numbers as the tribes of the people which were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws every one according to his tribe nevertheless they were enemies notwithstanding they were not a righteous people yet they were united in the hatred of those who had not united into a covenant to destroy the goverment therefore Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they he being the kind <​king​> of the band therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northan most part of the land & there build up unto themselves a kingdom until they were joined by dissenters for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters & they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people & they did so & so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people & thus ended the thirtieth year & thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi & it came to pass in the thirty & first year that they were divided into tribes every man according to his family kindred & friends nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with an other but they were not united as to their laws & their manner of goverment for they were established according to the minds of them which was their chiefs & their leaders but they did establish verry strict laws that one tribe should not[1289](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3851879807235604768" \o "Note) tresspass against another insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land nevertheless their hearts were turned from the Lord their God & they did stone the prophets & did cast them out from among them & it came to pass that Nephi having been visited by angels & also the voice of the Lord therefore having seen angesls & being eye witness & having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the minestery of Christ & also being eye witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness & also abominations therefore being grieved for the hardness of their hearts & the blindness of their minds went forth among them in that same year & began to testify boldly repentance & remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ & he did minister many things unto them & all of them cannot be written & a part of them would not suffise therefore they are not written in this Book & Nephi did minister with power & with great authority & it came to pass that they were angry with him even because he had greater power than they for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that Angels did minister unto him daily & in the name of Jesus did he cast out Devils & unclean spirits & even his Brother did he raise from the dead after he had been stoned & suffered death by the people & the people saw it & did witness of it & were angry with him because of his power & he did also do many more miracels in the sight of the people in the name of Jesus & it <​came​> to pass that the thirty & first year did pass away & there were but few which were converted unto the Lord but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the [p. 375] people that they had been visited by the power & spirit of God which was in Jesus Christ in whome they believed & as many as had Devils cast out from them & was <​were​> healed of their sicknesses & their infirmities did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the spirit of God & had been healed & they did shew forth signs also & did do some miracels <​among the people​> & it came to pass that thus passed away the thirty & second year also & Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty & third year & he did preach unto them repentance & remissions of sins now I would have you remember also that there were none which were brought unto repentance who were not Baptised with water the <​there​>fore there were ordained of Nephi men unto this ministry that all such as should come unto them should be Baptised with water & this as a witness & a testimony before God & unto the people that they had repented & received a remission of their sins & there were many in the commencement of this year that were Baptised unto repentance & thus the more part of the year did pass away——

Third Nephi, Chapter 4 [3 Nephi 8–10]

Chapter [blank]——

And now it came to pass <​that​> according to our record & we know our record to be true for behold it was a just man which did keep the record for he truly did many miracels in the name of Jesus & there was not any man which could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity & now it came to pass if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time the thirty & third year had passed away & the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given <​given​> by the prophet Samuel the Lamanite yea for the sign <​time​> that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land & there began to be great doubtings & disputations among the people notwithstanding so many signs had been given & it came to pass that in the thirty & fourth year in the first month in the fourth day of the month there arose a great storm such an one as never had been known in all the land & there was also a great & terrible tempest & there was terrible thunder insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide a sunder & there was exceding sharp lightnings such as never had been known in all the land & the City of Zarahemla did take fire & the City of Moroni did sink into the debths of the Sea & the inhabitants thereof were drowned & the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah that in the place of the city thereof there became a great Mountain & there were a great & terrible destruction in the land southward but behold there were a more great & terrible destruction in the land northward for behold the whole face of the land was changed because of the tempests & the whirlwinds & the thunderings & the lightnings & the exceding great quaking of the whole earth & the highways were broken up & the level roads were spoiled & many smothe places became rough & many great & notable cities were sunk & many were burned & many were shook till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth & the inhabitants thereof were slain & the places were left desolate & there were some cities which remained but the damage thereof was exceding great & there were [p. 376] many in them which were slain & there were some which were carried away in the whirlwind & whither they went no man knoweth save they know that they were carried away & the face of the whole earth became deformed because of the tempests & the thunderings & the lightnings & the quakeing of the earth & behold the rocks were wrent in twain yea they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth insomuch that they were found in broken fragments & in seams & in cracks upon all the face of the land & it came to pass that when the thunderings & the lightnings & the storm & the tempest & the quakeings of the earth did cease for behold they did last for about the space of three hours & it was said by some that the time was greater nevertheless all these great & terrible things were done in about the space of three hours & then behold there was darkness upon the face of the land & it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon the face of all the land insomuch that the inhabitants thereof which had fallen could feel the vapour of darkness & there could be no light because of the darkness neither candels neither torches neither could there be fire kindeled with their fine & exceding dry wood so that there could not be any light atal & there was not any light seen neither fire nor glimmer neither the Sun nor the Moon nor the Stars for so great were the mists of darkness which[1290](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2716100902675598017" \o "Note) were upon the face of the land [1291](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16632477860981472211" \o "Note)& it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days <​days​> that there was no light seen & there was great mourning & howling <​& weeping​> among all the people continually yea great were the mournings of[1292](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6835363314164868880" \o "Note) the people because of the darkness & the great destruction which had come upon them & in one place they were heard to cry saying O that we had repented before this great & terrible day & then would our brethren have been spared & they would not have be been burned in that great city Zarahemla & in another place they were heard to cry & mourn saying O that we had repented before this great & terrible day & had not killed & stoned the prophets & cast them out then would our mothers & our fair daughters & our children have been spared & not have been burned <​buried​> up in that great City Moronihah & thus were the howling of the people great & terrible & it came to pass that there was a vice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth upon all the face of this land crying Wo. wo wo. unto this people wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent for the Devil laugheth & his angels rejoice because of the slain of the fair Sons & Daughters of my people & it is because of their iniquity & their abominations that they are fallen behold that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire & the inhabitants thereof & behold that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the debths of the Sea & the inhabitants thereof to be drowned & behold that great City Moronihah have I covered with earth & the inhabitants thereof to hide their iniquities & their abominations from before my face that the blood of the prophets & of the Saints should <​shall​> not come up up[1293](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6498643437658494081" \o "Note) any more unto me against them & behold the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk & the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the debths of the earth yea & the City of Onihah & the inhabitants thereof & the city of Mocum & the [p. 377] inhabitants thereof & the city of Jerusalem & the inhabitants thereof & waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof to hide their wickedness & their abominations from <​before​> my face that the blood of the prophets & the saints should <​shall​> not come up any more unto me against them & behold the city of Gadiandi & the city of Gadiomnah & the city of Jacob & the city of Gimgimno all these have I caused to be sunk & made hills & vallies in the places thereof & the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the debths of the earth to hide their wickedness & abominations from before my face that the blood of the prophets & the Saints should <​shall​> not come up any more unto me against them & behold that great city Jacob Ugath which was inhabited by the people of the king of Jacob have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins & their wickedness which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth because of their secret murders & combinations for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people & the goverment of the land therefore I did cause them to be burned to destroy them from before my face that the blood of the prophets & the saints should not come up to unto me any more against them & behold the city of Laman & the city of Josh & the city of Gad & the city of Kishkumen have I caused to be burned with fire & the inhabitants thereof becaus of their wickedness in casting out the prophets & stoning them which I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness & their abominations & because they did cast them all out that there were none righteous among them I did send down fire & destroy them that their wickedness & abominations might be hid from before my face that the blood of the prophets & the saints which I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them & many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land & upon this people because of their wickedness & their abominations O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they will ye not now return unto me & repent of your sins & be converted that I may heal you yea verily I say unto you if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life behold mine arm of mercy is extended towards you & whosoever will come him will I receive & blessed are they which cometh[1294](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17819548588407267940" \o "Note) unto me behold I am Jesus Christ the Son of God I created the Heavens & the earth <​&​> all things that in them is I was with the Father from the beginning I am in the Father & the Father in me I & in me hath the Father Glorified his name I came unto my own & my own received me not & the Scriptures concerning <​my​> coming are fulfilled & as many as have received me to them have I given to become the Sons of God & even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name for behold by me redemption cometh & in me is the law of Mose fulfilled I am the light <​& the life​> of the world I am Alpha & Omega the beginning & the end & ye shall offer up unto me no more the sheding of blood yea your Sacrifices & your burnt offerings shall be done away for I will except none of your Sacrifices & your burnt offerings & ye shall offer for a Sacrifice unto me a broken heart & a contrite spirit & whoso cometh [p. 378] unto me with a broken heart & a contrite spirit him will I baptise with fire & with the holy Ghost even as the Lamanites because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion were baptised with fire & with the holy Ghost & they knew it not behold I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world to save the world from sin therefore whoso repenteth & cometh unto me as a little Child him will I receive for of such is the Kingdom of God behold for such I have laid down my life & have taken it up again therefore repent & come unto me ye ends of the earth & be saved & now behold it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings & did witness of it & after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours so great was the astonishment of the people that they did <​cease​> from <​lamenting &​> howling for the loss of their kindreds which had been slain therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours & it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people & all the people did hear & did witness of it saying O ye people of these great cities which have fallen which are a decendant of Jacob yea which are of the house of Israel O ye people of the house of Israel[1295](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14736386163435054805" \o "Note) how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth he chickens under her wings & have nourished you & again How oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings yea O ye people of the house of Israel which have falllen[1296](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8953674298534976767" \o "Note) <​fallen​> yea O ye people of the house of Israel ye that dwell at Jerusalem as ye that have fallen yea hay oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens & ye would not O ye house of Israel whom I have spared[1297](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2890569266573898573" \o "Note) how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings if ye will repent & return unto me with full purpose of heart but if not O house of Israel the place of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers & now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words behold they began to weep & howl again because of the loss of their kindreds & friends & it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away & it was in the morning & the darkness did pass <​dispersed​> from off the face of the land & the earth did cease to tremble & the rocks did cease to <​rend​> & the dreadful groanings did cease & all the tumultuous noise did pass away & the dark <​earth​> did close <​cleave​> together again that it stood & the mourning & the weeping & the wailing of the people which were spared alive did cease & their mourning was turned unto into joy & their lamentations into the praise & the thanks giveing unto the Lord Jesus Christ their Redeemer & thus far were the Scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets & it was the more righteous part of the people which were saved & it was they which received the prophets & stoned them not & it was they which had not shed the blood of the saints which were spared & they were spared & were not sunk & buried up in the earth & they were not drowned in the debths of the Sea & they were not burned by fire neither were they falle <​fallen​> upon & crushed to death & they were not carried away in the whirlwind neither were they overpowered by the vapours[1298](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16177941489443618675" \o "Note) of smoke & of darkness & now whoso readeth let him understand he that hath the Scriptures let him search them & see & behold if all these deaths & destructions by fire & by smoke & by tempests & by whirlwinds & by the opening [p. 379] of the earth to receive them & all these things is not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets behold I say unto you many have testified of these things at the coming of christ & were slain because they testified of these things yea the prophet Zenos did testify of these things & also Zenock spake concerning these things because they testified particular of <​concerning​> us which is a <​the​> remnant of their seed behld our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph & behld are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph & these things which testifies of us are they not written upon the plates of Brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem & it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty & fourth year behold I will shew unto you that the people of Nephi which were spared & also they which had had been called Lamanites which had been spared did have great favours shewn unto them & great blessings poured out upon their heads inso much that soon after the assension of Christ in to Heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them shewing his body unto them & ministering unto them & an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter therefore for this time I make an end of my <​sayings​> sayings——

Third Nephi, Chapter 5 [3 Nephi 11–13:24]

Chapter—— [blank]— Jesus Christ sheweth[1299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2176516343192130279" \o "Note) himself unto the people of Nephi as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful & did minister unto them— And on this wise did he shew himself unto them——

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together of the people of Nephi round about the Temple which was in the land Bountiful & they were marveling & wondering one with another & were shewing one to another the great & marvelous change which had taken place & they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ of which the sign had been given concerning his death & it came to pass that while they we <​were​> thus conversing one with another they heard a voice as if it came out of Heaven & they cast their eyes round about for they understood not the voice which they heard & it was not a harsh voice neither was it a loud voice nevertheless & notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them <​that​> did hear to the centre insomuch that there were no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake yea it did pierce them to the verry soul & did cause their hearts to burn & it came to pass that again they heard the voice & they understood it not & again the third time they did hear the voice & did open their ears to hear it & eyes were towards the sound thereof & they did look steadfastly towards Heaven from whence the sound came & behold the third time they did understand the voice which they heard & it sayeth unto them Behold my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased in whom I have grorified my name hear ye him & it came to pass as they understood they cast their eyes up towards Heaven & behold they saw a man decending out of Heaven & he was cloathed in a white robe &[1300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11085443109797309988" \o "Note) he came down & stood in the midst of them & the eyes of the whole multitude was turned upon him & they dearst not open their mouths even one to another & they [p. 380] wist not what it meant for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them & it came to pass that he streached forth his hand & spake unto the people saying Behold I am Jesus Christ of which the prophets testified that should come into the world & behold I am the light & the life of the world & I have drank out of that bitter cup which <​the​> Father hath given me & have glorified the Father in takeing upon me the sins of the world in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning & it came to pass that when Jesus had spake these words the whole multitude fell to the earth for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should shew himself unto them after his assension into Heaven & it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying arise & come forth unto me that ye may thrust your hands into my side & also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands & in my feet that ye may know that I am the God of Israel & the God of the whole earth & have been slain for the sins of the world & it came to pass that the multitude went forth & did <​thrust​> their hands into his side & did feel the prints of the nails in his hands & in his feet & this they did do going forth one by one until they had all gone forth & did see with their eyes & did feel with their hands & did know of a surety & did bear record that it was he of whom it was written by the prophets that should come & it came to pass that when they had all gone forth & had witnessed for themselves they did cry out with one accord saying Hozannah to the most <​blessed be​> had <​blessed​> be the name of the most high God & they did fall down at the feet of Jesus & did worship him[1301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18382280588313298539" \o "Note) & it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi for Nephi was among the multitude & commanded him that he should come forth & Nephi arose & went forth & bowed himself before the Lord & he did kiss his feet & the Lord commanded him that he should arise & he arose & stood before him & the Lord said unto him I give unto you power that ye shall baptise this people when I am again ascended into Heaven & again the Lord called others & said unto them likewise & he gave unto them power to Baptise & he sayeth unto them on this wise shall ye baptise & there shall be no disputations among you verily I say unto you that whosoever repenteth of his sins through your words & desireth to be baptised in my name on this wise shall ye baptise them behold ye shall go down & stand in the water & in my name shall <​ye​> baptise them & now behold these are the words which ye shall say calling them by name saying having authority <​Having authority​> given me of Jesus Christ I baptise you in the name of the Father & of the Son & of the Holy Ghost Amen & then shall ye immerse them in the water & come forth again out of the water & after this manner shall ye baptise in my name for behold verily I say unto you that the Father & the Son & the Holy Ghost are one & I am in the Father & the Father in me & the Father & I are one & according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptise & there shall be no disputations among you <​as there hath hitherto been neither shall there be disputations among you concernin you​> concerning the points of my doctrine as there hath hitherto been for verily verily I say unto you he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me but is of the Devil which is the father of contention & he stireth up the hearts of men to contend with anger one with another behold this is not my doctrine to stir up the hearts of men to <​with​> anger against one <​against​> another but this is my doctrine that such things should be done away behold verily verily I say unto you I will[1302](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8081479315615212052" \o "Note) [p. 381] declare unto you my doctrine & this is my doctrine & it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me & I bear record of the Father & the Father beareth record of me & the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father & me & I bear record <​that​> the Father commandeth all men every where to repent & believe in me & whoso believeth in me & is baptised the same <​shall​> shall be saved & they are they which shall inherit the Kingdom of God & whos believes believeth not in me & is not baptised shall be damned & verily verily I say unto you that <​this​> is my doctrine & I bear record of it from the Father & whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also & unto him will the Father bear record of me for he will visit him with fire & with the Holy Ghost & thus will the Father bear record of me & the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father & me for the Father & I & the Holy Ghost are one And again I say unto you ye must repent & become as a little child & be pap baptized in my name or ye can in no wise receive these things And again, I say unto you ye must repent & be baptized in my name & become as a little child or ye can in nowise inherit the Kingdom of God verily verily I say unto you that this is my doctrine & whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock & the gates of Hell shall not prevail against them & whoso shall declare more or less than this & establisheth it for my doctrine the same cometh of evil & is not built upon my rock but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation & the gates of Hell standeth open open to receive such when the floods come & the winds beat upon them therefore go forth unto this people & declare the words which I have spoken unto the ends of the earth And it came to pass that when Jesus had spake these words unto Nephi & to those which had been called now the number of them which had been called & received power & authority to baptize were twelve & behold he streached forth his hand unto the multitude & cried unto them saying Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve which I have chosen from among you to minister unto you & to be your servants & unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water & after that ye are baptized with water behold I will baptize you with fire & with fire & with the Holy Ghost therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me & be baptized after that ye have seen me & know that I am & again more blessed are they which shall believe in your words because <​that​> ye shall testify that ye have seen me & that ye know that I am yea blessed are they which shall believe in your words & come down un <​into​> the debths of humility & be baptized for they shall be visited with fire & with the Holy Ghost & shall receive a remision of their sins yea blessed are the poor in spirit which cometh unto me for theirs is the kingdom of Heaven & again blessed are all they that mourn for they shall be comforted & blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the earth & blessed are all they which do hunger & thirst after righteousness for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost & blessed are the merciful for they shall obtain mercy & blessed are all the pure in hea [p. 382] for they shall see God & blessed are all the peace makers for they shall be called the children of God & blessed are all they which are persecuted for my name<​’s​> sake for theirs is the kingdom of Heaven & blessed are ye when men shall revile you & persecute you & say all manner of evil against you falsly for my sake for ye shall have great joy & be exceeding glad for great shall be your reward in Heaven for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you verily verily I say unto you I give unto you to be the salt of the earth but if the salt shall lose its savio <​savour​> wherewith shall the earth be salted the salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out & to be trodden under foot of men verily verily I say unto you I give unto you to be the light of this people a city that is set on a hill cannot be hid bohold do men light a candle & put it under a bushel nay but on a candlestick & it giveth light to all that are in the house therefore let your light so shine before this people that they may see your good works & glorify your Father which is in Heaven think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets I am not come to destroy but to fulfil for verily I say unto you one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law but in me it hath all been fulfilled & behold I have given unto you the law & the commandments of my Father that ye shall believe in me & that ye shall repent of your sins & come unto me with a broken heart & a contrite spirit behold ye have the commandments before you & the law is fulfilled therefore come unto me & be ye saved for verily I say unto you that except ye shall keep my commandments which I have commanded you at this time ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of Heaven ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time & it is also written before you That thou shalt not kill & whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the Judgment of God but I say unto you that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment & whososoever shall say to his brother Raca shall be in danger of the council & whosoever shall say thou fool shall be in danger of Hellfire Therefore if ye shall come unto me or shall desire to come unto me & rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee go thy way unto thy brother & first be reconciled to thy brother & then come unto me with full purpose of heart & I will receive you agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him lest at any time he shall get thee & thou shalt be cast into prison verily I say unto thee thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine & while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine we verily verily I say unto you nay Behold hold <​it​> is written by them of old time That thou shalt not commit adultery but I say unto you That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery already in his heart behold I give unto you a commandment that ye suffer none of [p. 383] these things to enter to enter into your heart for it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things wherein ye will take up your cross than that ye should be cast into Hell it hath been written that whosoever shall put away his wife let him give her a writing of divorcement v◊◊ily[1303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "783625801738143051" \o "Note) verily I say unto you That whosoever shall put away his wife saving for the cause of fornication causeth her to commit adultery & whoso shall marry her who is divorced is committeth adultery & again It is written Thou shalt not forswear thyself but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths but verily I say unto you Swear not at all neither by Heaven for it is God’s throne nor by the earth for it is his footstool neither shalt thou swear by thy[1304](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16717636336749757220" \o "Note) head because thou canst not make one hair black or white for whatsoever cometh of more than these are evil & behold it is written An eye for an eye & a tooth for a tooth but I say unto you That ye shall not resist evil but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek turn to him the other also & if any man will sue thee at the law & take away thy coat let him have thy cloak also & whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile go with him twain give to him that asketh thee & to him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away & behold it is written also That thou shalt love thy neighbor & hate thine enemy but behold I say unto you love your enemies bless them that curse you do good to them that hate you & pray for them which dispitefully you <​use​> you & persecute you that ye may be the children of your heave Father which is in heaven for he maketh his son <​sun​> to rise on the evil & on the good therefore those things which were of old time which were under the law in me are all fulfilled old things are done away & all things have become new therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I or your Father which is in heaven is perfect verily verily I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them otherwise ye have no reward of your Father which is in heaven therefore when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you as will hypocrites do in the Synagogues & in the streets that they my <​may​> have glory of men verily I say unto you they have their reward but when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth that thine alms may be in secret & thy Father which seethe in secret himself shall reward thee openly & when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites for they love to pray standing in the Synagogues & in the corners of the streets that they may be seen of men Verily I say unto you they have their reward But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet & when thou hast shut thy door pray to thy Father which is in secret & thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly But when ye pray use not vain repetitions as thee [p. 384] heathen for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking Be not ye therefore like unto them for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him After this manner therefore pray ye Our Father which art in Heaven hallowed be thy name thy will be done i◊ earth as it is in Heaven & forgive us our debts as we forgive our debtors & lead us not into temptation but deliver us from evil for thine is the Kingdom & the power & the glory forever. Amen. For if ye forgive men their tressp <​trespasses​> your Heavenly Father will also forgive you but if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses Moreover when ye fast be not as the hypocrites of a sad contenance for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast Verily I say unto you they have their reward But thou <​when​> thou fasteth anoint thy head & wash thy face that thou appear not unto <​men​> to fast but unto thy Father which is in secret & thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth where moth & rust doth corrupt & thieves break through & steal but lay up for yourselves treasures in Heaven where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt & where thieves do not break through nor steal for where your treasure is there will your heart be also The light of the body is the eye if therefore thine eye be single thy whole body shall be full of light but if thine eye be evil thy whole body shall be full of darkness if therefore the light that is in thee be darkness how great is that darkness No man can serve two masters or either he will hate the one & love the other or else he will hold to the one & dispise the other ye cannot serve God & Mammon.——

Third Nephi, Chapter 6 [3 Nephi 13:25–14:27]

Chapter [blank]—— And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen & saith unto them Remember the words which I have spoken for behold ye are they which I have chosen to minister unto this people therefore I say unto you take no thought for your life what ye shall eat or what ye shall drink nor yet for your your body what ye shall put on is not the life more than meat & the body than rament behold the fowls of the air for they sow not neither do they reap <​reap​> nor gather into barns yet your Heavenly Father feedeth them are ye not much better than they which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature & why take ye thought for rament consider the lilies of the field how they grow they toil not neither do they spin & yet I say unto you that even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these therefore <​wherefore​> if God so clothe the grass of the field which to day is & to morrow is cast into the oven even so will he [p. 385] clothe you if ye are not of little faith therefore take no thought saying what shall we eat or what shall we drink or wherewithal shall we be chothed for your Heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things but seek ye first the Kingdom of Heaven <​God​> & his righteouness & all these things shall be added unto you take therefore no thought for the morrow for the morrow shall take thougt for the things of itself sufficient is the <​day​> unto the evil thereof And now it came[1305](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17087028285290670438" \o "Note) to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude & he did open his mouth unto them again saying Verily verily I say unto you judge not that ye be not judged for with what judgment ye judge ye shall be judged & <​with​> what measure ye mete it shall be measured to you again & why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brothers eye but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye or how wilt thou say to thy brother Let me pull out the mote out of thine eye & behold a beam is in thine own eye thou hypocrite first cast out the beam out of thine own eye & then shalt thou see clearly to cast out the mote out of thy brothers eye give not that which is holy unto the dogs neither cast ye your pearls before swine lest they trample them under their feet & turn again & rend you Ask & it shall be given un <​unto​> you seek & ye shall find knock & it shall be opened unto you for every one that asketh receiveth & he that seeketh findeth & to him that knocketh it shall be opened Or what man is there of you whom if his son ask bread will he give him a stone or if he ask a fish will he give him a serpant if ye then being evil know how to give good gifts unto your children how <​much​> <​more​> shall your Father which is in Heaven give good things to them that ask him therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you do ye even so to them for this is the law & the prophets Enter ye in at the strait[1306](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7401091932945516120" \o "Note) <​gate​> for wide is the gate & broad is the way <​that​> leadeth to destruction & many there be which go in thereat because strait[1307](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14374363502331955064" \o "Note) is the gait <​gate​> & narrow is the way which leadeth unto life & few there be that find it Beware of fals prophets which come to you is in sheep’s clothing but inwardly <​they​> are ravening wolves ye shall know them by their fruits do men gather <​grapes​> of thorns or figs of thistles even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit a good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down & cast into the fire wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them not every one that saith unto me Lord Lord shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in Heaven Many will say to me in that day Lord Lord have we not prophesied in thy name & in thy name have cast out Devils & in thy name [p. 386] done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them I never knew you depart from me ye that work iniquity Therefore whoso heareth these sayings of mine & doeth them I will liken him unto a wise man which built his house upon a rock & the rain descended & the floods came & the winds blew & beat upon that house & it fell not for it was founded upon a rock & every one that heareth these sayings of mine & doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man which built his house upon the sand & the rain descended & the floods came & the winds blew & beat upon that house & it fell & great was the fall of it

Third Nephi, Chapter 7 [3 Nephi 15–16]

Chapter [blank] And it now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude & saith unto them Behold ye have heard the things which I have taught before I ascended to my Father therefore whos remembereth these sayings of mine & doeth them him will I raise up at the last day And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he pese perseived that there were some among them which marvelled & wondered what he would concearning the law of Moses for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away & that all things had become new & he saith unto them marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed awag & that all things had become new behold I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses behold I am he that gave the law & I am he which covenanted with my people Israel therefore the law in me is fulfilled for I have come to fulfil the law therefore it hath an end behold I do not destroy the prophets for as many as have not been fulfilled in me verily I say unto you shall all be fulfilled & because I said unto you that old things hath passed awy I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which is to come for behold the covenants which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me behold I am the law & the light look unto me & endure to the end & ye shall live for unto him that endureth to the end will I give Eternal life behold I have given unto you the commandments therefore keep my commandments & this is the law & the prophets for they truly testify <​testified​> of me And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen Ye are my desipels & ye are a light unto this people which are a remnant of the house of Joseph & behold this is the land of your inheritance & <​&​> the Father hath given it unto you & not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other Tribes of the house of Israel which the Father hath led away out of the land [p. 387] this much did the Father command me that I should tell unto them that other Sheep I have which are not of this fold them also I must bring & they shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold & one shepherd & now because of stiffneckedness & unbelief they understood not my word therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them but verily I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me & I tell it unto you that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you & verily I say unto you again that the other Tribes hath the Father separated from them & it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them & verily I say unto you that ye are they of which I said other Sheep I have which are not of this fold them also I must bring & they shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold & one shepherd & they understood me not for they supposed it had been the Gentiles for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching & they understood me not that I said they shall hear my <​my voice​> & they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my <​voice​> that I should not at manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost but behold ye have both heard my voice & seen me & ye are my sheep & ye are numbered among them which the Father hath given me & verily verily I say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land neither of the land of Jerusalem neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister for they of which I speak are they which have not as yet heard my voice neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them but I have received a commandment of the Father that I should <​shall​> go unto them & that they shall hear my voice & shall be numbered among my sheep that there may be one fold & one shepherd therefore I go to shew myself unto them & I command you that ye shall write these things after that I am gone that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem they which have seen me & been with me in my ministry do not ask the Father in my name that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost & also of the other tribes which they know not of that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept & shall be manifested unto the Gentiles that through the fulness of the <​Gentiles​> the remnant of their seed which shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief may be brought in or may be brought to a knowledge of me their redeemer & then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth & then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel & blessed are the Gentiles because of their belief in me in & of the Holy Ghost which witness unto them of me & of the Father behold because of their belief in me saith the Father & because of the unbelief of you O House of [p. 388] Israel in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles the that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them but Wo saith the Father unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles for notwithstanding that they have come forth upon the face of this land & have scattered my people which are of the house of Israel & my people which are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them & have been trodden under feet by them & because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles & also the judgments of the Father upon my people which are of the house of Israel verily verily I say unto you That after all this & I have caused my people which are of the house of Israel to be smitten & to be afflicted & to be slain & to be cast out from among them & to become hated by them & to become a hiss & a byword among them & thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto <​unto you​> at that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my Gospel & shall reject the fulness of my Gospel[1308](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17115366053277253270" \o "Note) & shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations & above all the people of the whole earth & shall be filled with all manner of lyings & of deceits & of mischiefs & all manner of hypocracy & murders & priestcrafts <​&​> whoredoms & of secret abominations & if they shall do all these things & shall reject the fulness of my Gospel behold saith the Father I will bring the fulness of my Gospel from among them & then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people O House of Israel & I will bring my Gospel unto them & I will shew unto thee O house of Israel that the Gentiles shall not have power over you but I will remember my covenant unto you O house of Israel & ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my Gospel but <​but​> if the Gentiles will repent & return unto me saith the Father behold they shall be numbered among my people O house of Israel & I will not suffer my people which are of the house of Israel to go through among them & tred them down saith the Father but if they will not return[1309](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8867044707305241888" \o "Note) unto me & hearken unto my voice I will suffer them yea I will suffer my people O house of Israel that they shall go through among them & shall tred them down & they shall be as salt that has <​hath​> lost its[1310](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "627248887208148979" \o "Note) savor which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out & to be trodden under food <​foot​> of my people O house of Israel verily verily I say unto you thus hath the Father commanded me that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance & when the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled which saith Thy watch men shall lift up the voice with the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion brake forth into <​joy​> sing together ye waste[1311](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6192883761140467336" \o "Note) places of Jerusalem for the Lord hath comforted his people he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations & all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

Third Nephi, Chapter 8 [3 Nephi 17–18]

Chapter [blank]— Behold now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude & he saith unto them <​Behold​> my time is at hand I perceive that ye are weak that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you [p. 389] at this time therefore go ye unto your homes & ponder upon the things which I have said & ask of the Father in my name & <​that​> ye may understand & prepare your minds for the morrow & I come unto you again but now I go unto the Fathe & also to shew myself unto the lost tribes of Israel for they are not lost unto the Father for he knoweth whither he hath taken them And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude & behold[1312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16677056256321137063" \o "Note) they were in teers & did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them & he saith unto them Behold my bowels is filled with compassion towards you have ye any that are sick among you bring them hither have ye any that are lame or blind or halt or maimed or lepros or that are withered or that are deaf or that are afflicted in any manner bring them hither & I will heal them for I have compassion upon you my bowels is filled with mercy for I perceive that ye desire that I should shew unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken all the multitude with one accord did go forth with their sick & their afflicted & their lame & with their blind & with their dumb & with all they that were afflicted in any manner & he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him & they did all both they which had been healed & they which were whole did bow down at his feet & did worship him & as many as could come fore the multitude did kiss his feet insomuch that they did bathe his feet with <​their​> teers And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought so they brought their little children & sat them down upon the groun <​ground​> round about him & Jesus stood in the midst & the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him And it came to pass that when they had all been brought & Jesus stood in the midst he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground Jesus groaned within himself & saith Father I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel & when he had said these words he himself also knelt upon the earth & behold he prayed unto the Father & the things which he prayed cannot be written & the multitude did bear record wh◊◊◊[1313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17175739690123598224" \o "Note) heard him & after this manner do they bear record The eye hath never seen neither hath the ear heard before so great & marvellous things as we saw & heard Jesus speak unto the Father & no tongue cannot speak neither can there be written by any man neither can the hearts of men conceive so great & marvellous things as we both saw & heard Jesus speak & no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father & it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father he arose but so great was the joy of the [p. 390] multitude that they were overcome And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them & bade them arise & they arose from the earth & he saith unto them Blessed are ye because of your faith & now behold my joy is full & when he had said these words he wept & the multitude bear record of it & he took their little children one by one & blessed them & prayed unto the Father for them & when he had done this he wept again & he spake unto the multitude & saith unto them Behold your little ones & as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards Heaven & they saw the Heavens open & they saw angels descending out of Heaven as it were in the midst of fire & they came down & encircled those little ones about & they were encircled about with fire & the angels did minister unto them & the multitude did see & hear & bear record & they know that their record is true for they all of them did see & hear every man for himself & they were in number about two thousand & five hundred souls & they did concist of men women & <​Children​> And And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his descipels that they should bring forth some bread & wine unto him & while they were gone for bread & wine he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth & when the desipels had come with bread & wine he took of the bread & brake & blessed it & he gave unto the desipels & commanded that they should eat & when they had eat & were filled he commanded that they should give unto the multitude & when the multitude had eaten & were filled he saith unto the desipels Behold there shall one be ordained among you & to him will I give power that he shall brake bread & bless it & give it unto the people of my church unto all they which shall believe & be baptized in my name & this shall ye always observe to do even as I have done even as I have broken bread & blessed it & gave it unto you & this shall ye do in remembrance of my body which I have shewn unto you & it shall be a tistimony unto the Father that ye do alway<​s​> remember me & if ye do always remember me ye shall have my spirit to be with you And it came to pass that when he had said these words he commanded his desipels that they should take of the wine of the cup & drink of it & that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it And it came to pass that they did so & did drink of it & were filled & they gave unto the multitude & they did drink & they were filled & when the desipels had done this Jesus saith unto them Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done for this is fulfilling my commandments & this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you & this shall <​ye​> always do unto those who repent & are baptized in my name & ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood which I have shed for you that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me & if ye do always remember me yee shall have my spirit to be with you & I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things & if ye shall always do these [p. 391] things blessed are ye for ye are built upon my rock but whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock but are built upon a sandy foundation & when the rain descends & the floods come & the winds blow & beat upon them they shall fall & the gates of hell is already[1314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4601456308159188889" \o "Note) open to receive them therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandment<​s​> which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you verily verily I say unto you Ye must watch & pray always lest ye be tempted by the devil & ye are led <​away​> captive by him & as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church among my <​my​> people wh◊◊h do repent & are baptized in my name behold I am the light I have set an example before[1315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12127921022151753834" \o "Note) you And it came to pass that when Jesus had spake these words unto his desipels he turned again unto the multitude & saieth <​saith unto​> them Behold verily verily I say unto you ye must watch & pray always lest ye enter into temptation for satan desireth to have you that he may sift you as wheat therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name & whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name which[1316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6680516074901247317" \o "Note) is right believing that ye shall receive & behold it shall be given unto you pray in your families unto the Father always in my name that your wives & your children my be blessed & behold ye shall meet together oft & ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together but suffer them that they may come unto you & forbid them not but ye shall pray for them & shall not cast them out & if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father in my name therefore hold up your light that it may shine unto the world behold I am the light which ye shall hold up that which ye have seen me do behold ye have seen <​see that​> I have prayed unto the Father & ye all have witnessed & ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me that ye might feel & see even so shall ye do unto the world & whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned his eyes again upon the desipels whom he had chosen & saith unto them Behold verily verily I say unto you I give unto you another commandment & then I must go unto my Father that I must <​may​> fulfil other commandments which he hath given me & now behold this is the commandment which I give unto you that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh & blood unworthily when ye shall minister it for whoso eateth & drinketh my flesh & blood unworthily eateth & drinketh damnation to his Soul therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat & drink of my flesh & blood ye shall forbid him nevertheless ye shall not cast him out from among you but ye shall minister unto him & shall pray for him unto the Father in my name & if it so be that he [p. 392] repenteth & is baptized in my name then shall ye receive him & shall minister unto him of my flesh & blood but if he repenteth not he shall not be numbered among my people that he may not destroy my people for behold I know my sheep & they are numbered nevertheless ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues or your places of worship for unto such ye shall continue to minister for ye know not but what they will repent <​return​> & return unto <​& come​> unto me will full purpose of heart & I shall heal them & ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them therefore keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth & I give you these commandments because of the disputations which hath been among you before times[1317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9069691176821445928" \o "Note) & blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you & now I go unto the Father because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings he touched with his hand the desipels whom he had chosen one by one even until he had touched them all & spake unto them as he touched them & the multitude heard not the words which he spake therefore they did not bear record but the desipels bear record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost & I will shew unto you hereafter that this record is true And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all there came a cloud & overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus & while they were overshadowed he departed from them & ascended into Heaven & the desipels saw & did bear record that he ascended again into Heaven

Third Nephi, Chapter 9 [3 Nephi 19–21:21]

Chapter [blank]—— And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into Heaven the multitude <​did​> dispersed & every man did take his wife & his children & did return to his own home & it was noised abroad among the people immediately before it was yet <​yet​> dark that the multitude had seen Jesus & that he had ministered unto them & that he would also shew himself on the morrow unto the multitude yea & even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus & insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many yea an exceeding great number did babor exceedingly all that night that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should shew himself unto the multitude And it came to pass that on the morrow when the multidtue multitude was gathered together Behold Nephi & his brother whom he had raised from the dead whose name was Timothy & also his son whose name was <​was​> Jonas & also Mathoni & Mathonihah his brother Kumen & Kumenonki & Jeremiah & Shemnon & Jonas & Zedekiah & Isiah now these were the names of the desipels whom Jesus had chosen And it came to pass that they went forth & stood in the midst of the multitude & behold the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into[1318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10094635053434432129" \o "Note) [p. 393] twelve bodies & the twelve did teach the multitude but behold they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth & should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus & the desipels did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus And it came to pass that they arose & ministered unto the people & when they had ministered them same words which Jesus had spoken nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken behold they knelt again & prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus & they did pray for that which they most desired & they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them & when they had thus prayed they went down unto the waters edge & the multitude followed them And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water & was baptised & he came up out of the water & began to baptize & he did baptize all they whom Jesus had chosen And it came to pass when they were all baptized & had come up out of the water the Holy Ghost did fall upon them & they were filled with the Holy Ghost & with fire & behold they were encercled about as if it were fire & it came down from Heaven & the multitude did witness it & do bear record & angels did come down out of Heaven & did minister unto them & it came to pass that while angels were ministering unto the desipels behold Jesus came & stood in the midst & ministered unto them & it came to pass <​that​> he spake unto the multitude & commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth & also that his desipels should kneel down upon the earth And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down <​down​> upon the earth he commanded his desipels that they should pray & behold they began to pray & they did pray unto Jesus calling him their Lord & their God & it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them & went a little way off from them & bowed himself to the earth & he saith Father I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen & it is because of their belief that I have chosen them out of the world [](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#8530177109217071588)Father I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holiy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words Father thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believd[1319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17803485318454322099" \o "Note) in me and thou seeest <​that​> they <​that​> believe in me because thou hearest them and they pray unto me And they pray unto me because I am with them and now Father I pray unto thee for them and also <​for​> all they which shall believe on their words that they may believe in me that I may be in them as thou Father art In me that we may be one, and it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father he came unto his disciples and bhold they did still continue without ceasing to pray unto him and they did not multiply many words for it was given unto them what their they should pray and they were filled with desire and it came to pass that Jesus beheld then[1320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5988793158595733910" \o "Note) [p. 394] as they did pray unto Him and his countenane did Smile upon them and the light of his countenance did shine upon them and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the Garments of Jesus and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness yea <​even​> their could be nothing upon Earth so white as the whiteness thereof and Jesus sayeth unto them pray on. nevertheless they did not cease to pray and he turned from them again and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth and he prayed again unto the Father, saying Father I thank thee that thou hast purified these which I have chosen because of their faith and I pray for them and also for them which shall believe on their words that they may be purified in me through faith on their words even as they are purified in me, Father I pray not for the world but for them which thou hast given unto me out of the world because of their faith, that they may be purified in me that I may be in them as thou Father art in me that we may be one that I may be Glorified in them. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spake these words he came again unto his disciples and behold they did pray sedfastly without ceasing unto him and he did smile upon them again and behold they were white even as Jesus and it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father and tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed neither can be written by man the words which he prayed and the multitude did hear and do their record and their hearts were open and they dod understand in their hearts the words which he prayed nevertheless so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written neither can they be uttered by man, and it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples and sayeth unto them so great faith have I never seen among all the Jews wherefore I could not shew unto them so great miracles bcause of their unbelief verily I say unto you there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard, and it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray and also his disciples, and he commanded them[1321](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "237722464736610862" \o "Note) that they should not cease to pray in their hears, and he commanded them that they should arise and stand upon their feet and they arose up and stood <​up​> on their feet, and it came to pass that he brerke bread gain and blessed it and gave to the disciples to eat and when they had eat he commanded them that they should break bread and give unto the multitude and when tth [p. 395] they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude now there had been no bread neither wine brought by the disciples neither by the multitude but he truely gave unto them bread <​to eat​> and also wine to drink and he say◊th unto them he that eateth this bread eateth of my body to their soul and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to their Soul and their soul shall never hunger nor thirst but shall be filled now when the multitude had all eat and drank behold they were filled with the spirit and they did cry out with one voice and gave Glory to Jessus whom they both saw and heard and it came to pass that when they had all given Glory unto Jesus he sayeth unto them behold I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this People which are a remnant of the House of Israel ye remember that I spake unto you and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fullfiled behold they are written ye have them before you therefore search them and verrily verily I say unto you that when their they shall be fullfiled then is the fullfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his peo[1322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12900438745653069888" \o "Note) people O House of Israel and then shall the remnants[1323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7927609111813775246" \o "Note) which shall be scattered t◊◊[1324](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13891733740029173270" \o "Note) abroad upon the face of the Earth be gathered in from the East and from the West and from the South and from the North and they shall be brought to the knowlege[1325](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12043686247586314298" \o "Note) of the Lord their God who hath redeemed them and the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto this land for your Inheritage and I say unto you that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessings which they shall receive after th◊t they have scattered my People then shall ye which a remnant of the House of Jacob go forth among them and ye shall be in the midst of them which shall be many and ye shall be among them as a Lion among the beasts of the beast the forest and as a young Lion among the flocks of sheep who if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces and none can deliver thy hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries and all their enemies shall be cut off. and I will gather my People together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor for I will make my People <​with​> whom the Father hath covenanted Yea I will make thy horn Iron & I will make thy hoofs Brass and thou shalt beat in pieces many People and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord and their substance unto the Lord of the whole Earth and behold I am he which doeth it and it shall come to pass saith the Father that thee Sword of my Justice shall hang over them at that day and Except they repent it shall fall [p. 396] upon them saith <​the​> Father yea even upon all the Gentiles Nations of the Gentiles, and it shall come to pass that I will establish my People O House of Israel and behold this People will I establish in this Land unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your Father Jacob and it shall be a new Jerusalem and the Powers of Heaven shall be in the midst of this People yea even I will be in the midst of you, Behold I am in the he of whom Moses spake, saying a People shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your Brethren like unto me him shall ye hear in all things whatsover he shall say unto you and it shall come to pass that every Soul which will not hear that People Prophet shall be cut off frrom among the People, verily I say unto you, yea and all the Prophets from Samuel and those that follow after as many have spoken have testified of me and behold ye are the Children of the Prophets and ye are <​of​> the House of Israel and ye are of the Covenant which the Father made with your Fathers saying unto Abraham and in thy seed shall all the Kingdoms of the Earth be blessed. the Father having raised me up unto you first and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his Iniquities and this because ye are the Children of the Covenant after that ye were blessed then fulfileth the Father the Covenant which he made with Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the Kindreds of the earth be blessed unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all unto the Scattering of my People O House of Israel and they shall be a scourge unto the People of this land nevertheless when they shall have received the fullness of my Gospel then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads saith the Father and I will remember the covenant which I have made with my People, & I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time that I would give unto them again the land of their Fathers for their inheritance which is the land of Jerusalem which is the promised land unto them forever saith the Father & it shall come to pass that the time cometh when the fullness of my Gospel be preached unto them and they shall believe in me that I am Jesus Christ the Son of God & shall pray unto the Father in my name then shall their watchmen lift up their voice & with the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye then will the Father gather them together again & give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance then all shall they break forth into joy sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Father hath comforted his People he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Father to hath made bare his Holy [p. 397] arm in the eyes of all the Nations and all the ends of the Earth shall see the salvation of the Father and the Father & I are one and then shall be brought to pass that which is written awake awake again & put on thy strength O Zion put on thy beautiful garments O Jerusalem the Holy City for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the unciri◊mcised & the unclean shake thyself from the dust arise sit down O Jerusalem loose thyself from the bands of thy neck O Captive Daughter of Zion for thus saith the Lord ye have sold yourselves for naught & ye shall be redeemed without money, verily verily I say unto you that my People shall know my name yea in that day they shall know that I am he that speak & then shall they say how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them that publisheth peace that bringeth good tidings unto them of good that publisheth salvation that sayeth unto Zion thy God reigneth and then shall a cry go forth depart ye depart ye go ye out from thence touch not that which is unclean go ye out of the midst of her be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord for ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight for the Lord will go before you[1326](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8267021812353880269" \o "Note) & the God of Israel shall be your reward behold my Servant shall deal prudently he shall be exalted & extalled and be very high as many were astonished at thee, his visage was so mared[1327](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18279354511612574970" \o "Note) more than any man and his form more than the sons of men so shall he sprinkle many Nations the Kings shall shutt their mouths at him for that which had been told them shall they see and that which they had not heard shall they consider, verily verily I say unto you all these things shall surely come even as the Father hath commanded me & then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his People be fulfiled & there then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my People & it shall be the land of their inheritance & verily I say unto you again a sign that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place that I shall gather in from their long dispersion my People O House of Israel & shall establish again among my Zion and behold this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign for verily I say unto you that when these things which I deliver <​deliver​> unto you and which I shall deliver unto you hereafter of myself & by the power of the holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this People which are a remnant of the House of Jacob and concerning this my People which shall be scattered by them verily verily I say unto you when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father and shall come forth of the Father from them unto you for it is wisdom in the Father that they should [p. 398] be established in this land & be set up as a free People by the Power of of the Father that these might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed that the covenant of the Father may be fulfiled which he hath covenanted with his People O House of Israel therefore when these works and the work which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity for thus it becometh behoveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles that he may shew forth his power unto the Gentiles for this cause, that the Gentiles if they will not harden their hearts that they may repent and come unto me and be baptised in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine that they may be numbered among my People O House of Israel & when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things it shall be a sign unto them that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfiling of the covenant which he hath made unto the People which are of the House of Israel & when that day shall come to pass that Kings shall shut their mouths for that which had not been told them shall they see & that which they had not heard shall they consider, for in that day for my sake shall the Father work a work among which shall be a great & a marvelous work among them and there shall be among them which[1328](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14904690710740405606" \o "Note) will not believe it although a man shall declare it unto them, but behold the life of my servant shall be in my hand therefore they shall not hurt him although he shall be marred because of them yet I will heal him for I will shew unto him them that my Wisdom is Greater than the cunning of the Devil therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words which am Jesus Christ which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles & shall give unto him power that he shall bring thim forth unto the Gentiles it shall be done even as Moses said they shall be Cut off from among my People which are of the covenant & my People which are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles yea in the midst of them as a Lion among the Beasts of the forest as a Young Lion among the flocks of sheep who if he go through both treadeth down & teareth in pieces & none can deliver their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries & all their Enemies shall be cut off yea woe be unto the Gentiles except they repent for it shall come to pass in that day saith the Father that I will cut off thy Horses out of the midst of thee & I will destroy thy chariots & I will cut off the cities of thy land & throw down all thy strong holds & I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy hand[1329](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7711097812732425762" \o "Note) & thou shalt have no more soothsayers thy Graven Images I will also cut off & thy stonding Images out of the midst [p. 399] of thee & thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands & I will pluck up thy Groves out of the midst of thee so will I destroy thy cities & it shall come to pass that all lyings & deceivings & envyings & strife & priestcraft & whoredoms shall be done away for it shall come to pass saith the Father that at that day whosoever will not repent & come unto my beloved Son them will I cut off from among my People O House of Israel & I will execute vengeance & fury upon them even as upon the Heathen such as they have not heard[1330](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8303591209945027965" \o "Note)

Third Nephi, Chapter 10 [3 Nephi 21:22–23:13]

Chapter X But if they will repent & hearken unto my words & harden not their hearts I will establish my church among them & they shall come in unto the covenant & be numbred among this the remnant of Jacob unto whom I have given this land for their Inheritance & they shall assist my People the remnant of Jacob & also as many of the house of Jacob Israel as shall come, that they may build a City which shall be called the New Jerusalem & then shall they assist my People that they may be gathered in which are scattered upon all the face of the land in unto the New Jerusalem & then shall the powers of Heaven come down among them & I also will be in the midst and then shall the work of the Father commence at that day even when this Gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this People verily I say unto you at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my People yea even the tribes which have been lost which the Father hath lead away out of Jerusalem yea the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my People with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me that they may call on the Father in my name yea & then shall the work commence with the Father among all Nations in preparing the way whereby his People may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance & they shall go out from all Nations & they shall not go out in haste nor go by flight for I will go before them saith the Father & I will be their rearward & then shall that which is written come to pass. Sing O barren thou that dodst not bear, break forth into singing & cry aloud thou that didst not travel with child for more are the Children of the dsolate than the Children of the Married wife saith the Lord enlarge the place place of thy tent & let them streach forth the curtain of thy habitations spare not lengthen thy Cords & strengthen thy stakes for thou shalt break forth on the right hand & on the left & thy seed shall Inherit the Gentiles & make the desolate Cities to be Inhabited fear not for thou shalt not be ashamed neither be thou confounded for thou shalt not be put to shame for thou shalt forget the shame of thy Youth[1331](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13851735342893391473" \o "Note) & shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more for thy maker thy Husband [p. 400] the Lord of Hosts is his name. & thy redeemer the Holy one of Israel the God of the whole earth shall he be called for the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken & grieved in spirit & wife of youth when thou wast rfused saith thy God for a small moment have I forsaken thee but with great mercies will I gather thee in a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee saith the Lord thy redeemer for this the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, for the Mountains shall depart & the hills be removed but my kindness shall not depart from thee neither shall the covenant of my peace[1332](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4503393101715893531" \o "Note) be removed saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee O thou afflicted tossed with tempests & not comforted behold I will lay thy Stones with fair Colors & lay thy foundations with saphires & I will make thy windows of agates & thy gates of Carbunkles & all thy borders of pleasant stones & all thy Children shall be taught of the Lord & great shall be the peace of thy Children in righteousness shalt thou be established thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear & from terror for it shall not come near thee, behold they shall surely gather together against thee not by me whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake behold I have created the Smith that bloweth the Coals in the fire & that bringing bringeth forth an instrument for his work & I have created the water <​waster​> to destroy no weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper & every tongue that shall revile[1333](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16546630603085199066" \o "Note) against thee in Judgment thou shalt condemn this is the heritage of the servants of the Lord & their righteousness is of me saith the Lord & now behold I say unto you that ye had aught to search these things yea a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently for great is the words of Isaiah for surely he spak as touching all things concerning my People which are of the House of Israel therefore it must kneeds be that he must speak to also to the Gentiles & all things that he spake hath been & shall be even according to the words which he spake therefore give heed to my words, write the things which I have told you & according to the time & the will of the Father go forth unto the Gentiles & whosoever will hearken unto my words & repenteth & baptised the same shall be saved, search the Prophets for many there be that testify of these things & now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he sayeth unto them again ofter he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received he sayeth unto them behold other Scriptures I would that ye should write that ye have not & it Came to pass that he sayeth unto Nephi bring forth the Records which ye have kept, & when Nephi had brought forth the records & laid them before him he cast his eyes upon them & sayeth verily I say unto you I commanded my servant Samuel the [p. 401] Lalemnite that he should testified testify unto this People that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me the◊e were many Saints which should arise from the dead & should appear unto many & should minister unto them & he say◊th unto them were it not so & his Disciples answered him & said yea Lord Samuel did Prophesy according to thy words & they were all fulfiled & Jesus sayeth unto them how be it that ye have not written this things that many Saints did arise & appear unto many & did minister unto them & it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written & it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written therefore it was written according as he commanded

Third Nephi, Chapter 11 [3 Nephi 23:14–26:5]

Chapter XI

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the Scriptures in one which they had written he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them & it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi which he should tell unto them & it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them & these are the words which he did tell unto them saying thus said the Father unto Malachi behold I will send my messenger & he shall prepare the way before me & the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his Temple even the messenger of the covenant whom ye delight in behold he shall come saith the Lord of Hosts but may abide the of[1334](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1819080797180541954" \o "Note) day of his comeing & who shall stand when he appearith, for he is like a refiners fire & like fullers soap & he shall sit as a refiner & purifier of Silver & he shall purify the Sons of Levi & purge them as Gold & Silver that they may offer unto the Lord an Offering in righteousness then shall the Offering of Judah & Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord as in the days of old & as in former years & I will come near to you to Judgment & I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers & against the adulterers & against false swearers & against those that oppress the hireling in his wages the widow & the Fatherless & that turn aside the stranger & fear not me saith the Lord of Hosts for I am the Lord I change not, therefore ye Sons of Jacob are not consumed even from the days of your Fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinancces & have not kept them, return unto me & I will return unto you saith the Lord of Hosts but ye said wherein shall we return will a man rob God yet ye have robed me but ye say wherein have we robed thee in tithes & offerings ye are cursed with a curse for ye have robed me even this whole nation bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse that there may be meat in my house and prove me now herewith sayeth <​saith​> the Lord of Hosts if I will not open you the windows of Heaven & pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it & I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes he shall [p. 402]not destroy the fruits of your ground neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field saith the Lord of Hosts & all Nations shall call you Blessed for ye shall be a delightsome land saith the Lord of Hosts. your words have been stout against me saith Lord yet ye say what have we spoken against thee ye have said it is vain to serve God & what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances & that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of hosts & now we call the proud happy yea they that work wickedness are set up yea them that tempt God are even delivered then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another & the Lord hearkened & heard & a Book of remembrance written before him for them that feared the Lord & that thought upon his name & they shall be mine saith the Lord of Hosts in that day when I make up my Jewels & I will spare them as a man spareth his own Son that seveth him then shall ye return discern between the righteous & the wicked between him that serveth God[1335](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9952232864547425786" \o "Note) & him that serveth him not for behold the day cometh that shall burn as an Oven & all the proud yea & all that do wickedly shall be sthubble & the day that cometh shall burn them up saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither nor <​root​> nor branch but unto you that fear my name shall the Son of righteousness arise with healing[1336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9141231821516010138" \o "Note) in his wings & ye shall go forth & grow up as Cedars Calves of[1337](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13513137627434797723" \o "Note) the stall & ye shall tread down the wicked for they shall be as ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this saith the Lord of Hosts remember ye the Law of Moses my servant which I commanded unto him in horeb for all Israel with the statutes & Judgments behold I will send you Elijah the Prophet before the comeing of the great & dreadful day of the Lord & he shall turn the heart of the Fathers to the children & the heart of the children to their Fathers lest least I come & smite the Earth with a Curse. And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude & he did expound all things unto them both great & small & he sayeth these scriptures which ye had not with you the Father commanded that I should give unto you for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future Generations & he did expound all things even from the begining until the time that he should come in his glory yea even all things which should come upon the face of the Earth even until the elements should melts with fervent heat & the earth should be wrapped together as a scrawl & the Heaven & the Earth should pass away & even unto the great & last day when all People & all Kindreds & all Nations & Tongues shall stand fefore God to be Judged of their work<​s​> whether they be good or whether they be Evil if they be good to the resurrection of Everlasting life & if they be Evil to the resurrection of damnation being on a [p. 403] parallel the one on the one hand & the other on the other hand according to the mercy & the Justice & the holiness which is in Christ which was before the world began.[1338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11244149835726024571" \o "Note)

Third Nephi, Chapter 12 [3 Nephi 26:6–27:22]

Chapter XII

And now there cannot be written in this Book even an hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the People but behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the People & these things have I written which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the People & I have wrote them to the intent they may be brought again unto this People from the Gentiles according to the words which Jesus hath spoken & when they shall have received they this which is expedient that they should have first to try their faith & if it should so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them & if it so be that they will not believe these things then shall the greater things be withheld from them unto their condemnation behold I were about to write them all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi but the Lord forbid it saying I will try the faith of my People therefore I Mormon do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord, And now I Mormon make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me therefore I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the People for the space of three days & after that he did shew himself unto them oft & did break bread oft & bless it & give it unto them & it came to pass that he did teach & minister unto the Children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken & he did loose their tongues & they did speak unto their Fathers great & marvelous things even greater than he had revealed unto the People & loosed their tongues that they could utter & it came to pass that after had asscended into Heaven the second time that he shewed himself unto them & gone unto the Father after having healed all their sick & their lame & opened the eyes of the blind & unstopped the ears of the deef & even had done all manner of cures among them & raised a man from the dead & had shewn forth his Power unto them & had asscended unto the Father, behold it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together & they both saw & heard these Childen yea even Babes did open their mouths & utter marvelous things & the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them & it came to pass that the Disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptise & to teach as many as did com unto them & as many as were baptised in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost & many of them saw & hard unspeakable things which [p. 404] are not lawful to be written & they taught & did minister one to another and they had all things common among them every mon dealing justly one with another and it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them & they which were baptised in the name of Jesus were called the Church of Christ & it came to pass that as the Disciples of Jesus were journying & were preaching the things which they had both heard & seen & were Baptising in the name of Jesus it came to pass that the Disciples were gathered together & were united in mighty prayer & fasting & jesus again shewed himself unto them for they were praying unto the Father in his name & Jesus came & stood in the midst of them & sayeth unto them what will ye that I shall give unto you & they sait◊ unto him Lord we will that thou wouldest tell us the name whereby we shall call this Church for there are disputations among the People concerning this matter & the Lord said unto them verily verily I say unto you why is it that the People should murmer & dispute because of this thing have they not read the Scriptures which saye◊◊ ye must take upon you the name of Christ which is my name for by this name shall ye be called at the last day & whoso taketh upon him my name & endureth to the end the same shall be saved at the last day therefore whatsoever ye shall do ye shall do it in my name therefore ye shall call the Church in my name & ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the Church for my sake & how be it my Church save it be called in my name for if a Church be Called in Meses name then it be moses Church or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the Church of a man but if it be called in my name thin it is my Church if it so be that they are built upon my Gospel verily I say unto you that ye are built upon my Gospel therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call in my name therefore if ye call upon the Father for the Church if it be in my name the Father will hear you & if it so be that the Church is built upon my Gospel then will the Father shew forth his own works in it but if it be not built upon my Gospel & is built upon the works of man or upon the works of the Devil verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season & by & by the end cometh & they are hewn down & cast into the fire from whence there is no return for their works do follow them for it is because of their works that they are hewn down therefore remember the things that I have told you behold I have given unto you my Gospel & this is the Gospel which I have given unto you that I came into the world to do the will of my Father because my Father sent me & my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the crooss & after that he had been lifted up upon the cross I might draw all men unto me that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father to stand before to be judged of their works whether they be good or or whether they be evil & for this cause have I been lifted up therefore according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me that they may [p. 405] be judged according to their works & it shall come to pass that whoso repenteth & is baptised in my name shall be filled & if he endureth to the end behold him will I hold Guiltless before my Father at the that day when I shall stand to judge the world & he that endureth not unto the end the same is he that is also hewn down & cast into the fire from whence they can no more return because of the justice of the Father & this is the word which he hath given unto the Children of men & for this cause he fulfils fulfileth the words which he hath spoken given & he lieth not but fulfileth all his words & no unclean thing can enter into his Kingdom therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood because of their faith & the repentance of all their sins & their faithfulness unto the end, now this is the commandnent repent all ye ends of the earth & come unto me & be Baptised in my name that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day verily verily I say unto you this is my Gospel & ye know the thing that ye must do in my Church for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye olso do that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do therefore if ye do these things blessed are ye for ye shall be lifted up at the last day

Third Nephi, Chapter 13 [3 Nephi 27:23–29:9]

Chapter XIII

Write the things which ye have seen & heard save it be those which are forbidden write the words of this People which shall be even as hath been written of that which hath been for behold out of the Books which have been written & which shall be written shall this People be judged for by <​them shall​> their works be known unto men & behold all things are written by the Father therefore out of the Books which shall be written shall the world be judged & know ye that ye shall be judged judges of this People according to the judgment which I shall give unto you which shall be just therefore what manner of men had ye aught to be verily I say unto you even as I am. and now I go unto the Father and verily I say unto you whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name it shall be given unto you therefore ask & ye shall receive knock & it shall be opened unto you for he that asketh receiveth & to him that knocketh it shall be opened and <​now​> behold my joy is great even unto fullness because of you & also this Generation yea & even the Father rejoiceth & also all the holy Angels because of you & this Generation for none of them lost behold I would that yo should understand for I mean them which are now alive of this Generation & none of them are lost & in them I have fullness of joy but behold it sorroweth me because of the fourth Generation from this Generation for they are lead away captive by him even as was the Son of Perdition for they will sell me for silver & for Gold & for that moth doth corrupt & which thieves can break through & steal & in that day will I visit them even in turning their works upside their own heads & it came to pass that when [1339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18220771006853841793" \o "Note) [p. 406] Jesus had ended these sayings he sayeth unto his Disciples enter ye in at the strait gate for strait[1340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17454357995772163559" \o "Note) is the gate & narrow is the way that leads to life & few there be that find it but wide is the gate & broad the way which leads to death and many there be that travele◊h therein until the night cometh wherein no man can work & it came to pass when Jesus had said these words he spake unto his Disciples one by one saying unto them what is it that ye desire of me after that I am gone to the Father & they all spake save it were three saying[1341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4671953856083362421" \o "Note) we desire that after we have lived unto the age of man that our ministry wherein thou hast called us may have an end that we may speedily come unto thee in thy Kingdom & he saith unto them blessed are ye because ye desire[1342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18344327156965175356" \o "Note) this thing of me therefore after that ye are seventy & two years old ye shall come unto me in my Kingdom & with me ye shall find rest & when he had spake unto them he turned himself unto the three & said unto them what will ye that I should do unto you when I am gone unto the Father & they sorrowed in their hearts for they dearst not speak unto him the thing which they desired & he saith unto them Behold I know your thoughts & ye have desired the thing which John my Beloved did desire (which was with me in my minestry before that the I was lifted up by the Jews) desired of me therefore more blessed are ye for ye shall never taste of death but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the Children of men even untill all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father when I shall come in my Glory with the powers of Heaven & ye shall never endure the pains of death but when I shall come in my Glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to Immortality & then shall ye be blessed in the Kingdom of my Father & again yo shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh neither sorrow save it be for the Sins of the world & all this will I do because of the thing which yo have desired of me for ye have desired that ye might bring the Souls of men unto me while the world shall stand & for this cause ye shall have fullness of joy & ye shall sit down in the Kingdom of my Father yea your joy shall be full even as the Father hath given me fullness of joy & ye shall be even as I am & I am even as the Father & the Father and I am are one & the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me & the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the Chldren of men because of me. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spake these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three which were to tarry & then he departed. And behold the Heavens were opened and they caught up into Heaven & saw & heard unspeakable things & it was forbidden them that they should utter neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw & heard & whether they were in the body or out out of the body they could not tell for it did seem unto them like a Transfiguration of them that they were changed from this body of flesh into [p. 407] an Immortal state that they could behold the things of God but it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard & seen because of the commanadment which was given them in Heaven & now whether they were mortal or immortal from the day of their Transfiguration I know not but this much I know according to the Record which hath been given they did go forth upon the face of the land & did minister unto all the People uniting as many to the Church as would believe in their Preaching Baptising th◊m[1343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5827166281051438711" \o "Note) them & as many as were Baptised did receive the Holy Ghost & they were cast into Prison by them who did not belong to the Church & the Prisons could not hold them for they were rent in twain & they were cast down into the earth but they did smite the earth with the words[1344](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6403446130081632652" \o "Note) of God insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the debths of the earth & therefore they could not dig pits sufficiently to hold them & thrice they were cast into a furnace & received no harm & twice were they Cast into a den of wild beasts & behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb & received no harm & it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the People of Nephi & did preach the Gospel of Christ unto all people upon the facee of the land & they were coverted unto the Lord & were united unto the Church of Christ & thus the People of that Generation were blessed according to the word of Jesus. And now I Mormon make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time behold I were about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death but the Lord forbade, therefore I write them not for they are hid from the wourld but behold I have seen them & they have ministered unto me & behold they will be among the Gentiles & the Gentiles knoweth them not, they will also be among the Jews & the Jews shall know them not & it shall come to pass when that when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel & unto all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People & shall bring out of them unto Jesus many Souls that their desire may be fulfiled & also because of the convincing power of God which is in them & they ore as the Angels of God & if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can shew themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good therefore great & marvelous works shall be wrought by them before the great & comeing day when all People must surely stand before the Judgment seat of Christ;[1345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4312237569264705625" \o "Note) yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them before that Judgment day & if ye had all the scriptures which gives an account of all the marvelous works of Christ ye would according to the words of Christ know that these things must surely come to pa & woe be unto him that will not hearken [p. 408] unto the words of Jesus & also to them which he hath chosen & sent among them for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus & the words of them which he hath sent receiveth not him & therefore he will not receive them at the last day & it would be better for them if they had not been born for do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God who hath been trampleed under feet of men that thereby salvation might come, And now behold as I spake concerning them whom the Lord had chosen yea even three which were caught up into <​the​> Heaven<​s​> that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality but But since I wrote I have enquired of the Lord & he hath made it manifest unto me that needs be a change wrought upon their bodies or else needs needs be that they must taste of death therefore that they might not toste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the Sins of the world now this change was not equal to that which should take place at the last day but there was a change wrought upon them insomuch that Satan could have no power over them that he could not tempt them & they were sanctified in the flesh that they were Holy & that the powers of the earth could not hold them & in this state they were to remain until the Judgment day of christ & at that day they were to receive a greater change & to be received into the Kingdom of the Father to go no more out but to dwell with God eternally in the Heavens & now behold I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit in his wisdom that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the Children of Israel concerning their restoration to the land<​s​> of their inheritance is already beginning to be fulfiled & ye may know that the words of the Lord which have been spoken by the Holy Prophets shall all[1346](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8157558893237439435" \o "Note) be fulfiled & ye need not say that the Lord delays his comeing unto the Children of Israel & ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain for behold the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his People of the House of Israel & when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord for the sword of his justice is in his Right hand & behold at that day if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause it that it shall soon overtake you. woe unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord yea woe unto him that shall deny the Christ & his works yea woe unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord & that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelations onl or by Prophecy or by gifts or by tongues or by healings or by the power of the Holy Ghost yea & woe unto him that shall say at that day that there can be no miracle wrought by jesus Christ for to get gain for he that doeth this shall become likes unto the son of perdition for whom there was no mer[1347](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "754602188596868100" \o "Note) mercy according the words of Christ yea & ye need not any longer hiss nor spurn nor make [p. 409] game of the Jews nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel for behold the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them & he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfiling of the covenant which he hath made unto the House of Israel

Third Nephi, Chapter 14 [3 Nephi 30]

Chapter XIV

Hearken O ye Gentiles and hear the words of jesus Christ the Son of God the living God which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you for behold he commandeth me that I should write saying, turn all ye Gentiles from your wicked ways & repent of your evil doings, of your lyings & deceivings & your whoredom<​s​> & of your secret abominations & your Idoletries & of your Murders & your Priestcrafts & your envyings & your strifes & from all your wickedness & abominations & come unto me & be Baptised in my name that ye may receive a remission of your of your[1348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12819905702080130525" \o "Note) Sins & be filled with the Holy Ghost that ye may be numbred with my People which ore of the House of Israel.[1349](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13504288284702598635" \o "Note)=

Fourth Nephi, Chapter 1 [4 Nephi 1]

The Book of Nephi which is the Son of Nehi one of the Disciples of Jesus Christ— An account of the People of Nephi according to his Record— And it came to pass that the thirty & fourth year year passed away & also the thirty & fifth & behold the Disciples of Jesus had formed a Church of Christ in all the lands round about & as many as did come unto them & did truly repent of their sins were Baptised in the name of jesus & they did also receive the Holy Ghost and it came to pass in the thirty & sixth year the People were all converted unto the Lord upon all the face of the land both Nephites & Lamanites & there was no contentions & disputations among them & every man did deal justly one with another & they had of things common among them therefore there were not rich & poor bond & free but they were all made free & partakers of the Heavenly gift & it came to pass that the thirty & seventh year passed away also & there still continued peace in the land & there were great & marvellous works wrought by the Disciples of Jesus insomuch that they did heal the sick & raise the dead & cause the lame to walk & the blind to receive their sight & the deaf to hear and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men & in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus & thus did the thirty & eighth year pass away & also the thirty & ninth & the forty & first & the forty & second yea even until forty & nine years had passed away & also the fifty & first and the fifty & second yea & even until fifty & nine years had passed away & the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land yea in so much that they did build[1350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9943064861367207559" \o "Note) cities again where there had been cities burned yea even thot great City Zarahemla did they build cause to be built again but there were many Cities which had been sunk & waters came up in the stead thereof therefore these Cities could not be renewed & now behold it came to pass that the People of Nephi did wax strong & did multiply exceeding fast & became an exceeding fair [p. 410] And delightsome People & they were married & given in marriage & were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them & they did not walk any more after the performances & ordinances of the Law of Moses but they did walk after the commands commandments which they had received from their Lord & their God continuing in fasting & prayer & in meeting together oft both to pray & to hear the word of the Lord, And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the People in all the land but there were mighty miracles wrought among the the Disciples of Jesus & it came to pass that the seventy & first year passed away & also the seventy & second year yea & in fine until the seventy & ninth year to had passed away yea even an hundred years had away. & the Disciples of Jesus whom he had chosen had all gone to the paridice of God save it were the three which should tarry & there were other Disciples ordained in their stead & also many of that generation which had passed away & it came to pass that there was no contention in the land because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the People & there were no envyings nor strifes nor tumults nor whoredoms nor lyeings nor murders nor no manner of lasciviousness & surely there could not be a happier People among all the People which had been created by the hand of God there were no robbers nor no murderers neither were there Lamanites nor no monner[1351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2524067499182867500" \o "Note) manner of ites but they were in one the Children of Christ & heirs to the Kingdom of God & how Blessed were they for the Lord did bless them in all their doings yea even they were blessed & prospered until an hundred & ten years had passed away & the first generation from Christ had passed away & there was no contention in all the land & it came to pass that Nephi (he that kept the last record & he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died & <​his​> son Amos kept it in his stead & he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also & he kept it eighty & four years & there was still Peace in the land save it were a small part of the People which had revolted from the Church & took upon them the name of Lamanites therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land & it came to pass that Amos died also & it was an hundred & Ninety & four years from the comeing of Christ, and his Son Amos kept it <​the record​> in his stead & he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi & it was also written in the Book of Nephi which is this book & it came to pass that Two Hundred years had passed away & the second Generation had also all passed away save it were a few & now I Mormon would that ye should know that the People had multiplied insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land & thot they had become exceeding rich because of their prosperity in Christ & now in this Two hundred & first year there began to be among them those which were lifted up in pride such as the wearing of costly apparel & all manner of fine pearls & of the fine things of the world, & from that time forth they did have their goods & their substance no more common among them & they began to be divided into classes & they began to build up Churches unto themselves to get gain and [p. 411] began to deny the true church of church christ & it came to pass that when two hundred & ten years Had passed away there were many Churches in the Land yea there were Churches[1352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5534367851648661314" \o "Note) which professed to know the Christ & yet they did deny the more part[1353](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14550966680522095859" \o "Note) of his Gospel insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness & did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthyness & this Church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity & because of the power of Satan which did get hold upon their hearts, & again there was another Church which denyed the Christ & they did persecute the true Church of Christ because of their humility & thier belief in Christ & they did despise them bcause of the many miracles which were wrought among them therefore they did erercise power over[1354](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3448176740909772447" \o "Note) & authority over the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry with them & they did cast them into prison but by the power of the word of God which was in them the prisons were rent in twain & they went forth doing mighty miracles among them nevertheless & notwithstanding all these miracles the People did harden their hearts & did seek to kill them even as the Jews at Jerusalem saught to kill Jesus according to his word & they did cast them into furnaces of fire & they came forth receiving no harm & they also cast them into dens of wild beasts & they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb & they did come forth from among them reciveing no harm nevertheless the People did harden their hearts for they were lead by many preist & false Prophets to build up many Churches & to do all manner of iniquity & they did smite upon the people of Jesus but the people of did not smite again & thus they did dwindle in unbelief & wickedness from year to year even until two hundred & thirty years had passed away— & now it came to pass in this year yea in the two hundred & thirty & first year there were a great division among the People. & it came to pass that in this year there arose a People which was called the Nephites & they were true believers in Christ & among them there were they which was called by the Lamanites Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites therefore the true believers in Ch◊ist & the true worshipers of Christ among whom were the three disciples of Jesus which should tarry, were called Nephites & Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites & it came to pass that they which rejected the Gospel were called Lamanites & Lemuelites & Ishmaelites & they did not dwindle in unbelief but they did willfully rebell against the Gospel of Christ & they did teach their children that they should not believe even as their Fathers from the beginning dwindle & it was because of the wickedness & abominations of their Fathers even as it was in the beginning & they were taught to hate the Children of God even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the Children of Nephites from the beginning & it came to pass thot two hundred & forty & four years had passed away & thus were the affairs of the People & the more wicked part [p. 412] of the People did wax strong & became exceeding more numerous than were the People of God & they did still continue to build up Churches to themselves & adorn them with all manner of precous things & thus did two hundred selves & fifty years pass away & also two hundread & sixty years & it came to pass that the wicked part of the People began again to build up the secret ouths & combinations of Gaddiaton & also the people which were called the people of Nephi began to proud in their hearts because of their exceeding riches & became[1355](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10835611461909021414" \o "Note) vain like unto their brethren the Lamanites & from this time the Disciples began to sorrow for the Sins of the world & it came to pass that <​when three​> hundred years had passed away both the People of Nephi & the Lamanites had become exceeding wicked one like unto an other & it came to pass that the Robbrs of Gaddianton did spread over all the face of the Land & there were none thot were righteous save it were the Disciples of Jesus, and Gold & silver did they lay up in store in abundance & did traffick in all manner of traffick & it came to pass that after three hundred & five years did had passed away & the people did still remain in wikedness & Amos died & his Brothe Ammoron did keep the Record in his stead & it came to pass that when three hundred & twenty years had passed away Ammoron being constrained by the Holy Ghost did hide up the records which were sacred yea even all the sacred records shich had been handed down from Generation to Generation which were Sacred even until[1356](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9048630191267278589" \o "Note) the three hundred & twentieth year from the comeing of Christ & did hide them up unto the Lord that they might come again unto the remnant of the House of Israel <​Jacob​> according to the Prophesies & the promises of the Lord & thus is the end of the records[1357](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17471090126893187350" \o "Note) of Ammoron

Mormon, Chapter 1 [Mormon 1–3]

Chapter— I And now I Mormon make a record of the things which I have both seen & heard & call it the Book of Mormon—— And abot the time that Ammoron hid up the records unto the Lord he came unto me I being about ten years of age & I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my People & Ammoron say◊th[1358](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13362226215992131203" \o "Note) unto me I perceive that thou art a sober Child & art quick to observe therefore when ye are about twenty & four years old I would that ye should remembr the things that ye have observed concerning this People & when ye are of that age go to the land of Antum unto a hill which shall be called Shim & there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engraveings concerning this People & behold ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself & the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are & ye shall engrave upon the Plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this People & I Mormon being a descendant of Nephi & my Fathers name was Mormon & I remembred the things which Ammoron Commanded me & it came to pass [p. 413] that I being eleven years old was carried by my Father into the land southward even to the land of Zarahemla the whole face of the land having become covered with buildings & the People were as numerous almost as it were the sands[1359](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12281307443913855071" \o "Note) of the Sea & it came to pass that in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites which consisted of the Neptites & the Jacobites & the Josephites & the Zoramites & this war was between the Nephites & the Lamanites Lemuelites & the Ishmaelites now the Lamanites & the Lemuelites & the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites & the two parties were Nephites & Lamanites & it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla by the waters of Sidon & it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men even to exceed the number of thirty thousand & it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of Battles in the which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites & did slay many of them & it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design & there was peace settled in the Land & peace did remain for the pace of about four years that there was no blood shed but wickedness did prevail upon the whole land insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved Disciples. & the work of miracles & of healings did cease bcause of the iniquity of the people & there were no gifts from the Lord & the Holy Ghost did not come upon any bcause of their wickedness & unbelief & I being fifteen years of age & being somewhat of a sober mind therefore I was visited of the Lord & tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus & I did endeavor to preach unto the people but my mouth was shut & I were forbidden that I should preach unto them for behold they had willfully reblled against their God & the beloved Disciples were taken away out of the land because of their iniquity but I did remain among them but I were forbidden that I should preach unto them because of the hardness of their hearts & because of the hardness of their heart the land was cursed for their sake & these Gaddianton Robbers which were among the Lamanites did infest the land insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth & they became slippery because the Lord had cursed the land that they could not hold them nor retain them again & it came to pass that there were sorceries & wichcrfts & magics & the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the <​fou◊​> land face of the land even unto the fullfiling of all the words of Abinadi & also Samuel the Lamanite & it came to pass ◊◊at in that some year there began to be a war again between the Nephites & the Lamanites & notwithstanding I being young was large in staure therefore the People of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader or the leader of their armies therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephtis against the Lamanites therefore three hundred & twenty six years had passed away & it came to pass that in the three hundred & twentey & seventh year the Lamanites [p. 414] did come upon us with exceeding great power in somuch that they did frighten my armies therefore they would not fight & they began to retreat towards the North countries & it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angolah[1360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15768952476638793422" \o "Note) & we did take possession of the city & make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites & it came to pass that we did fortify the city with all u our mights but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us & did drive us out of the City & they did also drive us forth out of the land of David & we marched forth & came to the land of Joshua which was in the borders west by the Sea shore & it came to pass that we did gather in our People as fast as it were possible that we might get them together in one body but behold the land was filled with Robbers & with Lamanites & notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my People they did not repent of their evil doing<​s​> therefore there was blood & carnage spread throughout all the <​face of th​> land both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites & it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land & now the Lamanites had a King & his name was Aaron & he came against us with an army of forty <​& four​> thousand & behold I withstood him with forty & two thousand & it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me & behold all this was done & three hundred & thirty years had passed away & it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquities iniquity & began to cry even as had been Prophesied by Samuel the Prophet for behold no man could keep that which was his own for the thieves & the Robbers & the murderers & the magic art & the wichcraft which was in the land thus there began to be a mourning & a lemantation in all the land because of these things & more especially among the People of Nephites & it came to pass that when I Mormon saw their lemantations & their mourning & their sorrowing[1361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14901620275022607889" \o "Note) before the Lord my heart did begin to rejoice within me knowing the mercies & the long suffering of the Lord therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous People but behold this my joy was vain for their sorrowing was not unto repentance because of the goodness of God but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin & they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts & contrite spirits but they did curse God & wish to die nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives & it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again & I saw that the day of grace was passed[1362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5118201299524116603" \o "Note) with them both temporally & spiritually for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God & heaped up as dung upon the face of the land & thus three hundred & forty & four years had passed away & it came to pass that in the three hundred & forty & fifth year the the Nephites did to flee before the Lamanites & they were persued untill they came even to the land of Jashon before it we◊e possible to stop them in their retreat & now the City of Jashon was near the land where Ammoron had deposited [p. 415] the Records unto the Lord that they might not be destroyed, & behold I had gone according to the word◊[1363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6668134813450904511" \o "Note) of Ammoron & taken the plates of Nephi & did make a Record according to the words of Ammoron & upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness & abominations but upon these plates I did forbare to make a full account of their wickedness & abominations for behold a continual scene of wickedness & abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man & woe is me because of their wickedness for my heart has been filled wth sorrow because of their wickedness all my days nevertheless I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day & it came to pass that in this year the People of Nephi again were hunted & driven & it came to pass that we were driven forth untill we had come Northward to the land which was called Shem & it came to pass that we did fortify the City of Shem & we did gather in our People as much as it were possible that perhaps we might save them from destruction & it came to pass in the three hundred & forty & sixth year they began to come upon us again & it came to pass that I did speak unto my People & did urge them with great energy that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites & fight for their wives & their children & their houses & their homes & my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor in somuch thot they did not flee from before the Lamanites but did stand with boldness against them & it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand & it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us & it came to pass that when they had fled we did persue them with our armies & did meet them again & did beat them nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us yea we were left to ourselves that the spirit of the Lord did not abide in us therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren & my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my People because of their wickedness & their abominations but behold we did go forth against the Lamanites & the Robbers of Gaddianton untill we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance & the three hundred & forty & ninth year had passed away & in the three hundred & fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites & the Robbers of Gaddianton inthewhich we did get the lands of our inheritance divided & the Lamanites did give unto us the land Northward yea even to the narrow passage which lead into the land Southward & we did give unto the Lamanites all the land Southward & it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again untill ten years more had passed away & behold I had employed my People the Nephites in prepareing their lands & their arms against the time [p. 416] of battle & it came to pass that he the Lord did say unto me cry unto this people repent ye & come unto me & be ye Baptised & build up again my Church & ye shall be spared & I did cry unto this people but it was in vain & they did not realeze that it was the Lord that had spareed them & granted unto them a chance for repentance & behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God & it came to pass that ofter this tenth year had passed away makeing in the whole three hundred & sixty years from the comeing of Christ, & the King of the of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me which gave unto me to know that they were prepareing to come again to battle against us & it came to pass that I did cause my People that they should gather themselves together at the land desolation to a City which was in the borders by the narrow pass which lead into the land Southward & there we did place our Armies that we might stop the Armies of the Lamanites that they might not get possession of any of our lands therefore we did fortify against them with all our force & it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty & first year the Lamanites did come down to the City of Desolation to battle against us & it came to pass that in that year we did beat them insomuch that they did return to their own lands[1364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10540383836907618390" \o "Note) again & in the three hundred & sixty & second year they did come down again to battle & we did beat them again & did slay a great number of them & their dead was cast into the Sea & now because of this great thing which my people the Nephites had done they began to boast in their <​own​> strength & began to swear before the Heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren which had been slain by their enemies & they did swear by the Heavens & also by the throne of God that they would go up to battle against their enemies & would cut them off from the face of the land & it came to pass that I Mormon did utterly Refuse from this time forth to be a commander & a leader of this People because of their wickedness & abomination behold I had lead them notwithstanding their wicdekness I had lead them many times to battle & I had loved them according to the love of God which was in me with all my heart & my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them nevertheless it was without faith because of the hardness of their hearts & thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & they repented not of their sins & when they had sworn by by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord & savior Jesus Christ that they would go up unto their enemies to battle & avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren behold the voice of the Lord came unto me sayig vengeance is mine & I will repay & because this People repented not after that I had delivered them behold they shall be cut off from the face of the earth & it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies & I did stand as an even as the Lord had commanded me & I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw & heard according to the manifestations of the spirit which had testified of things to come therefore I write unto you Gentiles & also unto you House of Israel when the work shall commence that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance yea behold I write unto all the ends of the earth yea unto you twelve tribes of Israel which shall be judgeed according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his Disciples in the land of Jerusalem & I write also unto the remnant of this People which shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land & they shall be judgeed by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem[1365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13820134092490677555" \o "Note) [p. 417] & these things do the spirit manifest unto me therefore I write unto you all & for this cause I write unto you that ye may know that ye must all stand before the gudgement seat of Christ yea every soul wh◊◊h belongs to the whole human family of Adam & ye must stand to be judged of your works whether they be good or evil & also that ye may believe the Gospel of Jesus Christ which ye shall have among you & also that the jews the covenant People of the Lord shall have other witness besides that which they saw & heard [1366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11874161989002867885" \o "Note)that Jesus whom they slew was the very Christ & the very God & I would that I could perswade all ye ends of the earth to repent & prepare to stand before the judgement seat of Christ——

Mormon, Chapter 2 [Mormon 4–5]

Chapter IId And now it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty & third year the Nephites did go up with their armies[1367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4292521557571079393" \o "Note) to battle against the Lamanites out of the land of desolation & it come to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of desolation & while they were yet weary a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them & they had a sore battle in somuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation & did slay many of the Nehites & did take many prisoners & the remainder did flee & join the inhabitants of the City Teancum now the City Teancum lay in the borders by the sea shore & it was also near the City Desolation & it was because th◊t the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten for were it not for that the Lamanites could have had no power over them but behold the Judgements of God will overtake the wicked & it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished for it is the wicked that stireth up the hearts of the Children of men unto bloodshed & it came to pass that the Lamanites did make peperation to come against the city Teancum & it came to pass in the three hundred & sixty & fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum that they might take possession of the City Teancum also, & it came to pass that they were repulsed & driven back by the Nephites & when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength & they went forth in their own might & took possession again of the city desolaton & now all these things had been done & there had been thousands slain on both sides both the Nephites & the Lamanites & it came to pass that <​the​> three hundred & sixty & sixth year had passed away. & the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle & yet the Nephites repented not of the evil which they had done but persisted in their wickedness continually & it is impossible for the tongue to desbribe or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible Scene of the blood & carnage which was among the People both of the Nephites & of the Lamanites & every heart was hardened so that they delighted in the seding of Blood continually & there never had been so great wikedness among all the children of Lehi nor even among all the House off Israel according to the words of the Lord as were among this People & it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city dsolation & this because their numbr did exceed the number of the Nephites & they did also march forward against the city Teancum & did drive the inhabitants forth out of her & did take many prisoners of[1368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4461685129119081365" \o "Note) women & of children & did offer them up as sacrifices unto their Idol Gods [p. 418] and it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty & seventh year the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sa◊rificed their women & their children that they did go against the Lamanites with exceeding great anger insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites & drive them out of their lands & the Lamanites did not come again aganst the Nephites untill the three hundred & seventy & fifth year & in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers & they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number & from this time forth did the Nephites no power over the Lamanites but began <​to​> be swept off by them even as a dew before the Sun & it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the City Desolation & there was an exceeding sore battle faught in the land Desolation in the which they did beat the Nephites & they fled again from before them & they came to the city Boaz & there they did stand against the Lamnites with exceeding boldness in somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them untill they had come again the second time & when they had come the scond time the Nephites were driven & slaughterd with an exceeding great slaughter their women & their Children were again sacrificed unto Idols & it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them takeing all the inhabitants with them both in towns & villages & now I mormon seeing that Lamanites were about to overthrow the land therefore I did go to the hill Shim & did take up all the records which Ammoron had hid up unto the Lord & it came to pass that I did go forth among the People Nephites & did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no mere assist & they wer gave me command again of their armies for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions but behold I was without hopes[1369](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10230802192997186814" \o "Note) for I knew the judgements of the Lord which should come upon them for they repented not of their iniquities but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that being who had created them & it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan but behold they were driven back that they did not take the city at hat tine & it came to pass that they came against us again & we did maintain the City & there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites which strong holds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us to destroy the inhabtants of our land but it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by the inhaitants thereof were not gathered in were destroyed by the Lamanites & their towns & vilages & Cities were berned with fire. & thus the three hundred & seventy & nine years passed away & it came to pass that in the three & eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle & we did stand against them boldly but it was all in vain for so great were their numbrs that they did tread the People under their feet of the Nephites under their feet & it cam to pass that we did again take to flight & they whose flight were swifter than the Lamanites did escape & they whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites were swept down & dstroyed & now behold I Mormon do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood & carnage as was laid before mine eyes but I knowing thot these things must be made known & that all things which are hid must be [p. 419] revealed upon the house top & also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these People & also unto the Gentiles which the Lord hath said should scatter this People & this People should be counted as nought among them therefore I wrte a small abridgement dareing not to give a full account of the things which I have seen because of the commandment which I have received & also that ye might not have to great sorrow because of the wickedness of this People & now behold this I speak unto their seed & also to the Gentiles which hath care for the House of Israel that realize & know from whence their blessings come for I know that such will sorrow for the <​Calamity of the​> house of Israel yea they will sorrow for the destruction of this People they will sorrow that this had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob & they are written after this manner bcause it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them & they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time & this is the commandment which I have received & behold they shall come forth according to the comandment of the Lord when he shall see fit in his wisdom & behold they shall go unto the unbelieveing of the jews & for this intent shall they go that they may be perswaded that Jesus is the Christ the Son of the living God that the Father may bring about through his most beloved his great and eternal purpose in the restoreing the Jews or all the house of Israel to the land of their inheritance which the Lord their God hath given them unto the fulfilling of his covenant & also that the seed of this People may more fully believe his Gospel which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles for this People shall be scattered & shall become a dark a filthy & a loathsome People beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us yea even that which hath been among the Lamanites & this because of their unbelief & Idolitry for behold the spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their Fathers & they are without Christ & God in the world & they ore driven about as chaff before the wind they were once a delightsome People & they had Christ for their shepherd yea they were lead even by God the Father but now behold they are lead about by Satan even as Chaff is driven before the wind or as a Vessel is tossed about upon the waves without sail or anchor or without any thing wherewith to steer her & even as she is so ort are they & behold the Lord hath rserved their blessing which they might have received in the land for the Gentiles which shall fossess the land but behold it shall come to pass that they shall be driven & scattered by the Gentiles & after th◊t they have been driven & scattered by the Gentiles behold then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham & unto all the house of Israel & all the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous which hath been put up unto him for them & then O ye Gentiles how can ye stand before the power of God except ye shall repent & turn from your evil ways know ye [p. 420] not that ye are in the hand<​s​>[1370](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5507094683482696053" \o "Note) of God know ye not he hath all power & at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scrawl therefore repent ye & humble yourselves before him last he shall come out in justice against you least a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion & tear you in pieces & there is none to deliver.——

Mormon, Chapter 3 [Mormon 6–7]

Chater III And now I finish my record concrning the destruction of my People the Nephites & it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites & I Mormon wrote an Epistle unto the King of the Lamanites & desired of him that he woould grant unto us that we might gather <​together​> our People unto the land of Camorah[1371](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3699926777360100478" \o "Note) by a hill which was called Cumorah & there we would give them battle & it came to pass that the King did of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired & it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah & we did pitch our tents round about the hill Cumorah & it was in a land of many waters rivers & fountains & here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites. & when three hundred & eighty & four years had passed away we had gathered in all the remainder of our People unto the land Comorah & it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our People in one to the land of Cumorah behold I Mormon began to be Old & knowing it to be the last struggle of my People & haveing been Commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer that the records which had been handed down by our Fathers which were sacred to fall into the hands of the Lamanites for the Lamanites would destroy them therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi & hid up in the hill Cumorah all the Records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord save it were thse few plates which I gave unto my Son Moroni & it came to pass that my People with their wives & their Children did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them & with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked did they await to receive them & it came to pass that they came to battle against us & every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers & it came to pass that they did fall upon my People with the sword & with the bow & with the arrow & with the Axe & with all manner of weapons of war & it came to pass that my men were hewn down yea or even my ten thousand which were with me & I fell wounded in the midst & they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life & when they had gone through & hewn down all my People save it twenty & four of us among whom was my son Moroni & we haveing survived the dead of our People did behold on the morrow when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps from the top of the hill Comorah the ten thousand of my People which were hewn down being lead in the front by me & we also beheld the ten thousands of my People which were lead by my son moroni & behold the ten thousand of Sidgiddonah had follen & he also [p. 421] in the midst & Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand & Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand & Limhah had follen with his ten thousand & Jonoum[1372](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17300174370213055195" \o "Note) had fallen with his ten thousand & Cumenihah[1373](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6387402752861417958" \o "Note) & moronihah & Antionum & shiblom & Shem & Josh had fallen with their tin thousand each & it came to pass thot there were ten more which did fall by the sword with their ten thousand each yea even all my People save it were those twenty & four which were with me & also a few which had escaped into the south countries & a few which had deserted[1374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14748426306622020657" \o "Note) over into unto the Lamanites had had fallen & their flesh & bones & blood lay upon the face of the earth being left by the hands of those who slew them to moulder upon the land & to crumble & to return to their mother earth & my soul was wrent with anguist because of the slain of my People & I said O ye fair ones how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord O ye fair ones how could ye have rejected that Jesus who stood with open arms to receive you behold if ye had not done this ye would not have fallen but behold ye are fallen & I mourn your loss O ye fair sons & daughters ye Fathers & Mothers ye husbands & wives ye fair Ones how is it that ye could have fallen but behold ye are gone & my sorrows cannot bring your return & the day comeeth that your mortal must put on immortality & these bodies which are now mouldering in corruption must soon become incorruptable bodies & then ye must stand before the judgement seat of Christ to be judged according to your works & if it so be that ye are righteous then are ye blessed with your Fathers which have gone before you. O that ye had repen◊ed before that this great destruction had come upon you but behold ye are gone & the Father yea the eternal Father of Heaven knoweth State & he doeth with you according to his justece & mercy. And now I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this People which are spared if it so be that God may give unto them my words that they may know of the things of their Fathers yea I speak unto you ye remnant of the house of Israel & this[1375](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18331699183697146908" \o "Note) is the words which I speak know ye that ye are of the house of Israel know ye that ye must come unto repentance or ye cannot be saved know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war & delight no more in the sheding of blood & take them not again save it be that God shall command you know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your Fathers & repent of all your sins & iniquities & believe in Jesus Christ that he is the Son of God & that he was slain by the jews & by the power of the Father he hath risen again whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave & also in him is the sting of death swallowed up & he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgement seat & he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto them to dwell in the presance of God in his Kingdom to sing ceaseleess praises with thee Choires above unto the Father & unto the Son & unto the Holy Ghost which is one God in a state of happiness which hath no end therefore repent & believe Baptised in the name of Jesus & lay hold upon the [p. 422] Gospel of Christ which shall be set before you not only in the records but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews which records shall come from the Gentiles unto you for behold this is written for the intent that ye may believe, that & if ye believe that ye will believe this also & if ye believe this ye will know concerning your Fathers & also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them & ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob therefore ye are numberd among the People of the first covenant & if it so be that ye believe in Christ & are baptised first with water then with fire & with the Holy Ghost following the example of of our Saviour according to that which he hath commanded us it shall be well with you in the day of Judgement Amen==

Mormon, Chapter 4 [Mormon 8–9]

Chapter I[blank]== Behold I Moroni do finish the Record of my Father Mormon bhold I have but few things to write which things I have been commanded of my Father & now it came to pass that after the great & tremendious battle at Cumorah behold the Nephites which had escaped into the Country southward were hunted by the Lamanites until they were all destroyed & my Father also was killed by them & I even I remaineth alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my People but behold they ore gone & I fulfill the commandment of my Father & whether they will slay me I know not therefore I will write & hide up the records in the earth & whither I go it mattereth not behold my Father hath made this record & he hath written the intent thereof & behold I would write it also if I had room upon the plates but I have not I have none for I am alone my Father hath been slain in battle & all my kinsfolks. & I have not friends nor whither to go & how long t◊◊t the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not behold four hundred years have passed[1376](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6293163208327046739" \o "Note) since the comeing of our Lord & Savior & behold the Lamanites have hunted my People the Nephites down from City to City & from place to place even until they are no more & great has been their fall yea gratt & marvelous is the destruction of my People the Nephites & behold it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it & behold also the Lamanites are at war one with another & the whole face of this land is one continual round of Murders & bloodshed & no one knoweth the end of the war & now behold I say no more concerning them for there are none save save it be Lamanites & robbers that do exist upon the face of the land & there are none that do know the true God save it be the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the People were so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the People & whither[1377](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14699399954193049778" \o "Note) they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth but behold my Father & I have seen them & they have ministered unto us & whoso receiveth this record & shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it the same shall know of greater things than these. behold I am Moroni and were it possible, I would make all thing<​s​> known unto you behold I make an end of speaking concerning this People. I am the son of Mormon & my Father was a descendant of Nephi & I am the same which hide up this Record unto the Lord the plates thereof are of no worth because of the commandment of the Lord for he truly sayeth thot [p. 423] none shall have them to get gain but the record thereof is of great worth & whoso shall bring it to light him will the Lord bless for no one can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God for God will that it shall be done with an eye singled to his Glory or the welfare of the ancient & long dispersed covenant People of the Lord & blessed be him that shall bring this thing to light for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light according to the word of God yea it shall be brought out of the earth & it shall shine forth out of darkness & come unto the knowledge of the People & it shall be done by the power of God & if there be faults they be faults of a man but behold we know no fault nevertheless God knoweth all things therefore he that condemneth let him be aware least he shall be in dnger of Hell fire & he that sayeth shew unto me or ye shall be smitten let him be aware[1378](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15531712958239234815" \o "Note) least he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord for behold the same that judges judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again for according to his works shall his wages be therefore he that smiteeth shall be smitten again of the Lord behold what the scriptures saith man shall not smite neithe shall he judge for judgement is mine saith the Lord & vengeance is mine also & I will repay & he that shall breath out wrath & strifes against the work of the Lord & against the covenant People of the Lord which is the house of Israel & shall say we will destroy the work of the Lord & the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel the same is in danger to be hewn down & cast into the fire for the eternal purposes of the shall roll on untill all his promises shall be fullfiled search the scriptures Prophecies of Isaiah behold I cannot write them yea behold I say unto you that those saints which have gone before me which have possesesd this land shall cry yea even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord & as the Lord liveeth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them & he knoweth their prayers that they were in behalf of their Brethren & he knoweth their faith for in his name could could they remove mountains & in his name could they cause the earth to shake & by the power of his word did they cause Prisons to tumble to the earth yea even the fiery furnace could not harm them neither wild beasts nor poison serpants because of the power of his word & behold their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth & no one need not say they shall not come for they surely shall for the Lord hath spoken it for out of the earth shall they come by the hand of the Lord & none can stay it & it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away & it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead & it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord because of secret combinations & the works of darkness yea it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denyed & churches become defiled & shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea even in a day when leaders of churches & teachers in the pride of their hearts even to the envying of them who belong to their church[1379](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3513468014469669572" \o "Note) yea it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires & tempests & vapours of smoke in foreign lands & there shall also be heard of [p. 424] wars & rumors of wars & earthquakes in divers places yea it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth there shall be murders & robing & lying & deceiveings & whoredoms & all manner of abominations when there shall be many which will say do this or do that & it mattereth not for the Lord will uphold such at the last day but woe unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity yea it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall come unto me & for your money you shall be forgiven of your Sins. O ye wicked & perverse Generation & stiffnecked People why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain why have ye transfigured the Holy word of God that ye might bring damnation upon your souls behold look ye unto the revelations of God for behold the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled behold the Lord hath shewn unto me great & marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come at that day when these things shall come forth among you behold I speak unto you as if ye were presant & yet ye are not but behold Jesus Christ hath shewn you unto me & I know your doing & I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts & there are none save a few only which do not lift themselves upin the pride of their hearts unto the wearing of very fine apparel unto envying & strife & malice & persecutions & all manner of iniquity & your churches yea even every one have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts for behold ye do love money & your substances[1380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5268369376350684119" \o "Note) & your fine apparel & the adorning of your churches more than ye love the poor & needy the sick & the afflicted. O ye pollutions ye hypocrites ye teachers which sell yourselves for that which will canker why have ye polluted the Holy Church of God why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ why do you ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies because of the praise of the world why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life & yet suffer the hungry & the needy & the naked & the sick & the afflicted to pass by you & notice them not yea why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain & cause that widows should mourn before the Lord & also orphans to mourn before the Lord & also the blood of their Fathers & their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground for vengeance upon your heads behold the sword of vengeance hangeth over you & the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you for he will not suffer their Cries any longer. & now I speak also conccerning those who do not believe in Christ behold will ye believe in the day of your visitation behold when the Lord shall come yea even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scrawl & the elements shall melt with fervent heat yea in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God then will ye say <​that​> there is no God then will ye longer deny the Christ or can behold the lamb of God do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that Holy being when your souls are racked with a consciousness of your[1381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5022535708067774367" \o "Note) guilt that ye have ever abused the his laws behold I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a Holy [p. 425] & a just God under a consciousness of your filthiness before him than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell for behold when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God & also the Glory of God & the holiness of Jesus Christ it will kindle a flame of anguishable[1382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10454049937347649386" \o "Note) fire upon you O then ye unbelieveing turn ye unto the Lord cry mightily unto the Father in the name of the Jesus that perhaps ye may be found spotless fair & white haveing been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb at that great & last day. And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God & say that they are done away thot there is no revelations nor Prophecies nor gifts nor healing nor speaking with tongues & the interpretations of tongues behold I say unto you he that denyeth these things knoweth not the Gospel of Christ yea th◊y have not read them scriptures if so they do not understand them for do we not read that God is the same yesterday to day & forever & in him there is neither no variableness neither shadow of changeing & now if ye have imagineed up unto yourselves a God which doth vary & in him there is a[1383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8453561171586004373" \o "Note) shadow of changeing then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a God which is not a God of miracles but behold I will shew you a God of miracles even the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob & it is that same God which created the Havens & the earth & all things that in them is behold he created Adam & by Adam came the fall of man & because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ even the Father & the Son & because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man & because of the redemption of man which came by Jesus Christ they are brought back into the presance of the Lord yea this is wherein all men ore redeemed bcause the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrction which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep from which sleep all men shall be awoke by the power of God when the trump shall sound & they shall come forth both small & great & all shall stand before his bar being redeemed & loosed from this eternal bond of death is a temporal death & then cometh the judgment of the Holy one upon them & then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still & he that is righteous shall be righteous he thot is happy shall Be happy still & he that is unhappy shall be unhappy stills shall be unhappy shall be unhappy shall be unhappy[1384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4457737893629267359" \o "Note) still, and now O all ye that have imagineed up unto yourselves a God which can do no miracles I would ask of you have all these things past of which I have spoken has the end come yet behold I say unto you nay & God has not ceaseed to be <​a​> God of miracles behold are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes yea & who can comprhend the marvelous works of of God who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the Havens & the earth should be & by the power of his work word man was created of the dust of the earth & by has the power of his word hath miracles been wrought & who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles & there was many mighty miracles wrought by the Apostles & if there <​was​> miracles wrought then why has God ceaseed to be a God of miracles & yet be an unchangeable being & behold I say [p. 426] unto you he changeth not if so he would cease to be God & he ceaseth not to be God and is a God of miracles & the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief & depart from the right way & know not the God in whom they should trust behold I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ doubting nothing whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted them & this promise is unto all even unto the ends of the earth for behold thus sayeth Jesus Christ the son of God unto his Disciples which should tarry yea & also to all his Disciples in the hearing of the multitude go ye into all the earth world & preach the Gospel to every creature & he that believeth & is Baptised shall be saved but he that believeth not shall be damned & these signs shall follow them that bliev in my name shall they cast out Devils they shall speak with new tongues they shall take up serpants & if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them they shall lay hands on the sick & they shall recover & whosoever shall believe in my name doubting nothing unto him will I confirm all my words even unto the ends of the earth & now behold who can stand stand[1385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13599528302696918045" \o "Note) against the work<​s​> of the Lord who can deny his sayings who will rise up against the allmighty power of the Lord who will despise the works of the Lord who will despise the children of Christ behold all ye despisers the works of the Lord for ye shall wonder & perish O the <​then​>[1386](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18190472686969385322" \o "Note) despise not & wonder not but hearken unto the words of the Lord & ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need doubt not but be believing & begin as in times of old & come unto the Lord with all your hearts & work out your own salvation with fear & trembling before him be wise in the days of your brobation strip yourselves of all uncleanness ask not that ye may consune it on your lusts but ask with[1387](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13269572779308440655" \o "Note) with a firmness unshaken that ye will yield to no temptation but that ye will serve the true and liveing God see that ye are not baptised unworthily see that ye partake <​not​> of the sacrament <​of Christ​> unwothily but see that ye do all things in worthiness & do it in the name of Jesus Christ the Son of the liveing God & if ye do this and endure to the end ye will in no wise be cast out behold I speak as though I spake from the dead for I know that ye shall have[1388](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5142637213323455242" \o "Note) my words condemn me not believe because of mine imperfection neither my Father because of his imperfection neither them which have written before him but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections that ye may learn to be more wise then that which we have ben & now behold we have written this record according to our knowledge in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian being handed down & altered by us according to our manner of speach & if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in the Hebrew but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also & if we could have written in the Hebrew behold ye would have had none imperfections[1389](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "292343534171966412" \o "Note) in our record [p. 427] but the Lord knoweth the things which we have written & also that none other People knoweth our language & because that none other People knoweth our language[1390](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12746521522593095447" \o "Note) therefoore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof and these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren which have dwindleed in unbelief & behold these things which we have desired concerning our Brethren yea even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ is according to the prayers of all the saints which have dwelt in the land & may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith & may God the Father remembr the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel & may he bless them forever through faith on the name of Jesus Christ— Amen—— [p. 428]

Ether, Chapter 1 [Ether 1–4]

[](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#5792653886978452276)The Book of Ether Chapter— I— And now I Moroni proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants which were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country & I take mine account from the twenty & four plates which were found by the people of Limhi which is called the Book of Ether & as I suppose that the first part of this record which speaketh concerning the creation of the world & also of Adam & an account from that time even to the great tower & whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time is had among the Jews therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time but they are had upon the plates & whoso findeth them the same will have power that he may get the full account but behold I give not the full account but a part of the account I give from the tower down until they were destroyed & on this wise do I give the account He that wrote this account was Ether & he was a descendant of Coriantor & Coriantor was the Son of Moron & Moron was[1391](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4595840548971654817" \o "Note) the Son of Ethem & Ethem was the son of Ahah & Ahah was the son of Seth & Seth was the son of Shiblon & Shiblon was the Son of Com & Com was the son of Coriantum & Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah & Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron & Aaron was a descendant of Heth who was the son of Hearthom & Hearthom was the son of Lib & Lib was the son of Kish & Kish was the son of Corom[1392](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9380515168561757561" \o "Note) & Corom was the son of Levi & Levi was the son of Kim & Kim was the son of Morianton & Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish & Riplakish was the son of Shez & Shez was the son of[1393](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "986761075225786521" \o "Note) Heth & Heth was the son of Com & Com was the son of Coriantum & Coriantum was the son of Emer & Emer was the son of Omer & Omer was the son of Shule & Shule was the son of Kib And <​&​> Kib was the son of Orihah which was the Son of Jared which Jared came forth with his brother & their families with some others & their families from the great tower at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people & swear in his wrath that they should be scattered upon <​upon​> all the face of the earth & according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered & the brother of Jared being a large & a mighty[1394](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9824035864443017096" \o "Note) man & being a man highly favored of the Lord for Jared his brother said unto him Cry unto the Lord that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord & the Lord had compassion upon Jared therefore he did not confound the language of Jared & Jared & his brother were not confounded then Jared said unto his brother Cry again unto the Lord & it may be that he will turn away his anger from them which are our friends that he confound not their language And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord & the Lord had compassion upon their friends & their families also that[1395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11798622841937732387" \o "Note) [p. 429] they were not confounded And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother saying Go & inquire of the Lord whither he will drive us out of the land & if he will drive us out of the land cry unto him whither shall we go <​Go​> & who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth & if it so be let us be faithful unto the Lord that we may receive it for our inheritance And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared And it came to pass that the Lord did hear[1396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13851032465365590540" \o "Note) the brother of Jared & had compassion upon him & said unto him Go to & gather togeth thy flocks both male & female of every kind also of the seed of the earth of every kind & thy family[1397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7939193174233977258" \o "Note) &[1398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16250176330827906417" \o "Note) also Jared thy brother & his family & also <​also​> thy friends & their families & the friends of Jared & their families & when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the vally which is north ward & there will I meet thee & I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the land of the earth & there will I bless thee & thy seed & raise up unto me of thy seed & the seed of thy brother[1399](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18403865361403671729" \o "Note) & they which shall go with thee a great nation & there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed upon all the face of the earth & this[1400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18094161961824275943" \o "Note) I will do unto thee because of this long time which ye have cried unto me [1401](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15259857303636662720" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Jared & his brother & their families & also the friends of Jared & his brother & their families went down into the vally which was northward & the name of the vally was Nimrod being called after the mighty hunter with their flocks which they had gathered together male & female of every kind & they did also lay snares & catch fowls of the air & they did also prepare a vessel in the which they did carry with them the fish of the waters & they did also carry with them Deseret which by interpretation is a honey bee & this thus they did carry with them swarms of bees & all manner of that which was upon the face of the land seeds of every kind[1402](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3553470079091933560" \o "Note) And it came to pass that when they had came down into the vally of Nimrod the Lord came down & talked with the brother of Jared & he was in a cloud & the brother of Jared saw him not And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness yea into that quarter where there never had man been & it came to pass that the Lord did go before them & did talk with them as he stood in a cloud & gave directions whither they should <​travel​> And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness & did build barges inthewhich they did cross many waters being directed continually by the hand of the Lord & the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea <​in​> the wilderness but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise which was choice <​above​> all other lands which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people & he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared that whoso should possess this land of promise from that time hense forth & forever should serve him the true & only God or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them And now we can behold the [p. 430] decrees of God concerning this land that it is a land of promise & whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them & the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity for behold this is a land which is choice above all other lands wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off for it is[1403](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3871386580446679771" \o "Note) the everlasting decrees of God & it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land that they are swept off And this cometh unto you O ye Gentiles that ye may know the decrees of God that ye may repent & not continue in your iniquities until the fulness be[1404](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3951331478086882160" \o "Note) come that ye may know <​not bring​> down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land hath hitherto done Behold this is a choice land & whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage & from captivity & from all other nations under Heaven if they will but serve the God of the land which is Jesus Christ which hath been manifested[1405](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7693585732854081030" \o "Note) by the things which we have written And now I proceed with my record for behold it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared & his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands & as they came to <​the​> sea they pitched their tents & they called the name of the place Morian cumer & they dwelt in tents & dwelt in tents upon the sea shore for the space of four years And it came to pass at the end of the[1406](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4759564824288990272" \o "Note) four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared & stood in a cloud & talked with him &[1407](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2589836458968493017" \o "Note) for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother & chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord & the brother of Jared repented him of the evil which he had done & did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren which were with him & the Lord said unto him I will forgive thee & thy brethren of their sins but thou shalt not sin any more for ye shall remember that my spirit will not always strive with man wherefore if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord & this <​is​> my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance for it shall be a land of choice above all other lands & the Lord said Go to work & build after the manner[1408](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18230895564855072145" \o "Note) of barges which ye have hitherto built & it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work & also his brethren & built barges after the manner which they had built according to the instructions of the Lord & they were small & they were light upon the water even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water & they were built upon <​after​> a manner that they were exceeding tight even that they would hold water like unto a dish & the bottom there <​thereof​> thereof was tight like unto a dish & the sides thereof was tight like unto a dish & the ends thereof were peaked & the top thereof was tight like unto a dish & the length thereof was the[1409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5436808246519116370" \o "Note) length of a tree & the door thereof when it was shut was tight like unto a dish And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord saying O Lord I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me & I have made the barges <​according​> as thou hast directed me & behold O Lord in them there is no light whither shall we stear & also we shall perish for in them we cannot [p. 431] breeth save it is the air which is in them therefore we shall perish & the Lord said unto the brother of Jared Behold thou shalt make a hole in the top thereof & also in the bottom thereof & when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole thereof & receive air & if it so be that the water come in upon thee behold ye shall stop the hole thereof that ye[1410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4102707553707438090" \o "Note) may not perish in the flood And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so according as the Lord had commanded & he cried again unto the Lord saying O Lord behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me & I have prepared the vessels for my people & behold there is no light in them Behold O Lord wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness & the Lord said unto the brother of Jared What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels for behold ye cannot have windows for they will be dashed in peaces <​peces​> neither shall ye take fire with you for ye shall not go by the light of fire for behold ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea for the mountain waves shall dash upon you nevertheless I will bring you up again out of the debths of the sea for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth & also & the rains & the floods have I sent forth & behold I prepare you against these things for how be it[1411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "766521443721188146" \o "Note) ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea & the winds which have gone forth & the floods which shall come therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the debths[1412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4776748790666908250" \o "Note) of the sea [1413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14005552590560808429" \o "Note)And it came to pass that the brother of Jared now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight therefore the brother of Jared went forth unto the mount which they called the mount Shelem because of its exceeding heighth & did moulton out of a rock sixteen small stones & they were white & clear even as transparent glass & he did carry them in his hands up on the top of the mount & cried again unto the Lord saying O Lord thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods now behold O Lord & do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee for we know that thou art Holy & dwellest in the Heavens & that we are unworthy before thee because of the fall our natures have[1414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11609239850562313250" \o "Note) become evil continually nevertheless O Lord thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee that from thee we may receive according to our desires Behold O Lord thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity & hath driven us forth & for this many years we have been in the wilderness nevertheless thou hast been merciful unto us O Lord look upon me in pity & turn away <​away​> thine anger from this thy people & suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness but behold these things which I have moulton out of the rock & I know O Lord that thou hast all power & can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man therefore touch these stones O Lord with thy finger & prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness & they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared that we may have light while we shall cross sea behold O Lord thou canst do this we know that thou art able to shew forth great power which looks small unto the understanding of men & it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words behold [p. 432] the Lord streached forth his hand & touched the stones one by one with his finger & the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared & he saw the finger of the Lord & it was as the finger of a man like unto flesh & blood & the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord for he was struck with fear & the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth & the Lord said unto him Arise why <​why​> hast thou fallen & he saith unto the Lord I saw the finger of the Lord & I feared lest he should smite me for I knew not that the Lord had flesh & blood & the Lord said unto him Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh & blood & never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast for were it so[1415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10623260345761592679" \o "Note) ye could not have seen my finger sawest thou more than this & he answered Nay Lord shew thyself unto me & the Lord said unto <​him​> Believest thou the words which I shall speak & he answered Yea Lord I know that thou speakest the truth for thou art a God of truth & canst not lie & when he had said these words behold the Lord shewed himself unto him & said Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall therefore ye are brought back into my presence therefore I shew myself unto you behold I am he which was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people behold I am Jesus Christ I am the Father & the Son in me shall all mankind have life[1416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9184154076227861774" \o "Note) & that eternally even they which shall believe on my name & they shall become my sons & my daughters & never hath I shewed myself unto <​man​> whom I have created for never hath man believed in me as thou hast seest thou that ye are created after mine own image yea even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image behold this body which ye now behold is the body of my Spirit & man have I created after the body of my spirit & even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh [1417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "592236360277951924" \o "Note)And now as I Moroni said I could not make a full account[1418](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18404940819478751183" \o "Note) of these things which are written therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus shewed himself unto this man in the spirit even after the manner & in the likeness of the same body even as he shewed himself unto the Nephites & he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites & all this that this man knew[1419](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5935082444445691102" \o "Note) that he was God because of the many great works which the Lord had shewed unto him & because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil & he saw the finger of Jesus which when he saw he fell with fear for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord & he had faith no longer for he knew nothing doubting wherefore having this perfect knowledge of God he could not be kept from beholding within the veil therefore he saw Jesus & he did minister unto him And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared Behold thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen to <​&​> & heard to go forth unto the world until the time cometh that I shall glorify my <​my​> name in the flesh wherefore ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen & heard [p. 433] & shew it to no man & behold when ye shall come unto me ye shall write them & shall seal them up that no one can interpret them for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read & behold these two stones will I give unto thee & ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write for behold the language which ye shall write I have confounded wherefore I will cause in mine own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall wrte <​write​> & when the Lord had said these words the Lord shewed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been & also all that would be & the Lord withheld them not from his sight even unto the ends of the earth for the Lord had said unto him in times before that if he would believe in him that he could shew unto him all things it should be shewn unto him therefore the Lord could not withhold any thing from him for he knew that the Lord could shew him all things & the Lord said unto him Write these things & Seal them up & I will shew them in mine own due time unto the children of men And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him <​that​> he should seal up the two stones which he had received & shew them not until the Lord should shew them unto the children of men & the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord & write the things which he had seen & they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross & for this cause did King Benjamin keep them that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should shew himself unto his people & after that Christ truely had shewed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest & now after that they have all[1420](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9409331645468873144" \o "Note) dwindled in unbelief & there is none save it be the Lamanites & they have rejected the Gospel of Christ therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth behold I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw & there never was greater things made manifest than that which was made manifest unto the brother of Jared[1421](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3021981350938181436" \o "Note) Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them & I have have wrote them & he commanded me that I should seal them up & he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters according to the commandment of the Lord for the Lord saith unto me They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity & become clean before the Lord & in that day that they shall exercise faith in me saith the Lord even as the brother of Jared did that they may become sanctified in me then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations saith Jesus Christ the Son of God the Father of the Heavens & of the Earth & all things that in them i◊ And he that will contend against the word of the Lord let him be acursed & he that shall deny these things let him be acursed for unto them will I shew no greater things saith Jesus Christ for I am he which speaketh & at my command the Heavens are opened & are [p. 434] shut & at my word the earth shall shake & at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away even so as by fire & he that believeth not my words believeth not my desipels & if it so be that I do not speak judge ye for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh at the last day But he that believeth these things which I have spoken him will I visit with the manifestations of my spirit & he shall know & bear record for because of my spirit he shall know that these things are true for it persuadeth men to do good & whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do[1422](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "941189721334817718" \o "Note) good is of me for good cometh of none save it be of me & I am the same that leadeth men to all good he that will not believe my words will not believe me that I am & he that will not believe me will not believe the Father which sent me for behold I am the Father I am the light & the life & the truth of the world come unto me O ye Gentiles & I will shew unto you the greater things the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief come unto me O ye house of Israel & it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you from the foundation of the world & it hath not come unto you because of unbelief Behold when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness & heardness of heart & blindness of mind then shall the great & marvellous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you yea when ye shall call up on the Father in my name with a broken heart & a contrite spirit then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers O house of Israel & then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people Remember when ye see these things ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed therefore when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the <​land​> earth <​therefore​> repent all ye ends of the earth & come unto me & believe in my Gospel & be baptized in my name for he that believeth & is baptized shall be saved but he that believeth not shall be damned & signs shall follow them that believe in my name & blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day for they shall be lifted up to dwell in the Kingdom prepared for them from the foundation of the world & behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen

Ether, Chapter 2 [Ether 5]

Chapter [blank]— And now I Moroni have written the words which was commanded me according to my memory & I have told you the things which I have sealed up therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate for that thing is forbidden you except by & by it shall be wisdom in God & behold ye may be privileged that ye may shew the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth <​forth this​> work & unto three shall they be shewn by the power of God wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true & in the <​mouth​> of three witnesses shall these things be established & the testimony of three & this work inthewhich shall be shewn forth the power of God & also his word of which the Father[1423](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9696819488014027564" \o "Note) & the Son & the Holy Ghost beareth record & all this shall stand as a testimony [p. 435] against the world at the last day & if it so be that they repent & come unto the Father in the name of Jesus they shall be received into the Kingdom of God & now if I have no authority for these things judge ye for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me & we shall stand before God at the last day Amen.

Ether, Chapter 3 [Ether 6–8]

Chapter [blank]

And now I Moroni proceed to give the record of Jared & his brother—— For it came to pass that after <​that​> the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount the brother of Jared came down out of the mount & he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared one in each end thereof & behold they did give light unto the vessels thereof & thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness to give light unto men women & children that <​they​> might not cross the great waters in darkness And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food that thereby they might subsist upon the water & also food for their flocks & herds & whatsoever beast or animel or fowl that they should carry with them. And it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got a board of their vessels or barges & set forth into the sea commending themselves unto the Lord their God And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should a furious <​wind​> blow upon the face of the waters towards the promised land & thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the debths of the sea because of the mountain waves which broke upon them & also the great[1424](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8187569251052047990" \o "Note) & terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind And <​& it came​> to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them their vessels being tight like unto a dish <​a dish the​> <​& also they were tight like unto the​> Ark of Noah therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord & he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters & it came to pass that the wind did never seace to blow towards the promised land <​while they were upon the waters​> & thus they were driven forth before the wind & they did sing praises unto the Lord yea the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord & he did thank & praise the Lord all the day long & when the night came they did not seace to praise the Lord & thus they were driven forth & no monster of the sea could break them neither whale that could mar them & they did have light continually whether it was above the water or under the water & thus they were driven forth upon <​three​> hundred & forty & four days upon the water & they did land upon the shore of the promised land & when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land & did humble themselves before the Lord & did shed teers of joy before the Lord because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land & ◊◊gan to till the earth & Jared had four sons & they were called Jacom & Gilgah & Mahah & Orihah & the brother of Jared also begat sons & daughters[1425](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2116924126469881597" \o "Note) & the friends of Jared & his brother were in number about twenty & two souls & they also begat sons & daugters [p. 436] before they came to the promised land & therefore they began to be many & they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord & they were also taught from on high [1426](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13681744408640329818" \o "Note)And it came to pass that they began to spred upon the face of the land & to multiply & to till the earth & they did wax strong in the land & the brother of Jared began to be old & saw that he must soon go down to the grave wherefore he saith unto Jared Let us gather together our people that we may number them that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves & accordingly the people were gathered together now the number of the sons & the daughters of the brother of Jared <​were​> twenty & two souls & the number of the sons & daughters of Jred were twelve he having four sons And it came to pass that they did number their people & after that they had numbered them they did desired of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them & now behold this was grievious unto them but the brother of Jared said unto them Surely this thing leadeth into captivity but Jared said unto his brother Suffer them that they may have a king & therefore he said unto them choose ye out from among our sons a king <​even​> whom ye will & it came to pass that they chose even the first born of the brother of Jared & his name was Pagag And it came to pass that he refused & would <​not​> be their king & the people would that his father should constrain him but his father would not & he commanded them that they should not[1427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6098445524494981768" \o "Note) constrain no man to be their king And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag & they would not And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared even all save it were one & Orihah he was anointed to be king over the people & he began to reign & the people began to prosper & they became exceeding rich And it came to pass that Jared died & his brother also & it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord & did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father & also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers And it came to pass that Orihah did execute Judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days whose days were exceeding many & he begat sons & daughters yea he begat thirty & one among whom were twenty & three sons & it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age & it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead & Kib begat Corihor & when Corihor was thirty & two years old he rebelled against his father & went over & dwelt in the land of Nehor & he begat sons & daughters & they became exceeding fair wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him & when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt & took him captive which brought to pass the saying of the broth◊◊r of Jared That they would be brought into captivity now the land of Moron where the king dwelt was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites & it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity & his people under him his son until he became exceeding old nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his Old age while he was yet in [p. 437] captivity & it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother & Shule waxed strong & became mighty as to the strength of a man & he was also mighty in judgment wherefore he came to the hill Ephraim & he did moulton out of the hill & made swords out of steel for those which he had drew away with him & after that he had armed them with swords he returned to the City Nehor & gave battle unto his brother Corihor by which means he obtained the kingdom[1428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8136293028994057125" \o "Note) & restored it unto his father Kib & now because of the thing which Shule had done his father bestowed upon him the Kingdom fhere <​therefore​> he began to reign in the stead of his father & it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness & he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land for the people had become exceeding numerous & it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons & daughters & Corihor repented of the <​many​> evils which he had done wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom & it came to pass that Corihor had many sons & daughters & among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah & it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule the king & also his father Corihor & drew away Cohor his brother & also all his brethren & many of the people & he gave battle unto Shule the king in the which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance <​&​> he became a king over that part of the land & it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule the king & he took Shule the king & carried him away captive into Moron & it came to pass as he was about to put him to death the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night & slew him & broke down the door of the prison & brought out their father & placed him upon his own <​his throne in​> his own kingdom wherefore the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king & the people which were under <​the reign of​> Shule the king did prosper exceedingly & wax great & the country was divided & there was two kingdoms the kingdom of Shule & the kingdom of Cohor the son of Noah & Cohor the son of Noah caused that his people should give battle unto Shule in the which Shule did beat them & did slay Cohor & now Cohor had a son which was called Nimrod & Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule & he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him in the[1429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14937688341244277219" \o "Note) which he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires & also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people <​which were)[1430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11289482025618727266" \o "Note)​> sent <​from the Lord​> prophesying that the wickedness & idoletry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land inthewhich they should be destroyed if they did not repent & it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets & did mock them & it came to pass that king Shule did <​execute​> judgment against all those who did revile againts the prophets & he did execute a law throughout all the land which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whither soever they would & by this cause the people were brought unto repentance & because the people did repent of their iniquities & il id[1431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18211884212682526834" \o "Note) <​idoletries​> the Lord did spare them & they began to prosper again in the land & it came to pass that Shule begat sons & daughters in his old age & there[1432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7738328817212701085" \o "Note) was no more wars in the days of Shule & he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his [p. 438] fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days[1433](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6242497770968613881" \o "Note) [1434](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5115082897989129414" \o "Note)& it came to pass that he begat Omer & Omer reigned in his stead & Omer begat Jared & Jared begat sons & daughters & Jared rebelled against his father & came & dwelt in the land of Heth & it came to pass that he did flatter much people because of his cunning words until he had gained the half of the kingdom & when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father & he did carry away his father into captivity & did make them serve in captivity & now in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days & it came to pass that he begat sons & daughters among whom[1435](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16848560056625632440" \o "Note) were Esrom & Coriantumr & they were exceeding angry because of the doings of Jared their brother insomuch that they did raise an army & gave battle unto Jared & it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night & it came to pass that when they had slew the army of Jared they were about to slay him also & he pled with them that they would not slay him & he would give up the kingdom unto his father & it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life & now Jared became exceeding sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom for he had set his heart upon the kingdom & upon the glory of the world now[1436](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18222467415800979353" \o "Note) the daughter of Jared being exceeding expert & seeing the sorrow of her father thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father now the daughter of Jared was exceeding fair & it came to pass that she did talk with her father & saith unto him Whereby hath my father so much sorrow hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep behold is there not an account concerning them of old that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms & great glory & now therefore let my father send of Akish the son of Kimnor & behold I am fair & I will dance before <​him​> & <​I​> will[1437](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7473217339901862562" \o "Note) please him that he will desire me to wife wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife then shall ye say I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father the King & now Omer was a friend to Akish wherefore when Jared had sent for Akish the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him insomuch that he desired her to wife & it came to pass that he said unto Jared Give her unto me to wife & Jared said unto him I will give her unto you if ye will bring unto me the head of my father the king & it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kindsfolks[1438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8239517766754802925" \o "Note) & saith unto them Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you & it came to pass that they all swear unto him by the God of Heaven & also by the Heavens & also by the Earth & by their heads that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head & whos should devulge whatsoever thing Akish made know unto them the same should lose his life & it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish & Akish did administer unto them the oaths which was given by them of old who also sought power which had been handed down even from Cain who[1439](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10724293613880276825" \o "Note) was a murderer from the beginning & they were kept up by the power of the Devil to administer these oaths unto the people to keep them in darkness to help such as sought pow [1440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4516872449990794799" \o "Note) [p. 439] to gain power & to murder & to plunder & to lie & to commit all manner of wickedness & whoredoms & it was the daughter of Jared which put it into his heart to search up these things of old & Jared put it into the heart of Akish wherefore Akish administered it unto his kindreds & friends leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired & it came to pass that they formed a secret combination even as they of old which combination[1441](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14641218415636045153" \o "Note) is a most abominable & wicked above all in the sight of God for the Lord worketh not in secret combintions neither doth he will that man should shed blood but in all things hath forbidden it from the beginning of man & now I Moroni do not write the manner of their oaths & combinations for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people & they are had among the Lamanites & they have caused the destruction of this people of which I am now speaking & also the destruction of the people of Nephi & whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations to get power & gain until they shall spread[1442](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10802124679380284847" \o "Note) over the nation behold they shall be destroyed for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints which shall be shed by them shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them & yet he avengeth them not Wherefore O ye Gentiles it is wisdom in God that these things should be shewn unto you that thereby ye may repent of your sins & suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you which are built up to get power & gain & the work yea even the work of destruction come upon you yea even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you to your over throw & destruction if ye shall suffer [1443](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4651556450711997556" \o "Note)these things to be Wherefore the Lord commandeth you when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation because of this secret combination which shall be among you or wo be unto it because of the blood of them which have been slain for they cry from the dust for vengance upon it & also upon those who build it up for it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands Nations & countries & it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people for it is build built up by the devil which is the father of all lies even that same liar which beguiled our first parents yea[1444](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4642575344670476887" \o "Note) even the <​that​> same liar which hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning which hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets & stoned them & cast them out from the beginning wherefore I Moroni am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away & that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men but that they may be persuaded to do good continually that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness & be saved

Ether, Chapter 4 [Ether 9–11]

Chapter [blank]

And now I Moroni proceed with my record therefore behold it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish & his friends behold they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer nevertheless the Lord was merciful unto Omer & also to his sons & to his daughters which were not, or which did not seek his destruction & the Lord warned Omer in a dream that <​he​> should depart out of the land wherefore Omer [p. 440] departed out of the land with his family & traveled many days & came over & passed by the hill of Shim & came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed & from thence eastward & came to a place which was[1445](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3318019988792384854" \o "Note) called Ablom by the sea shore & there he pitched his tent & also his sons & his daughters & all his household save it were Jared & his family [1446](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2079237797199978393" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people by the hand of wickedness & he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife & it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father inlaw & he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients & they obtained the head of his fatherinlaw as he sat upon his throne giving audienc to his people for so great had been the spreading of this wicked & secred <​secret​> society that it had corrupted the hearts[1447](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15554999178165712681" \o "Note) of all the people therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne & Akish reigned in his stead & it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son therefore he shut him up in prison & kept him upon a[1448](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16771511945387809187" \o "Note) little or no food until he had sufered death & now the brother of him that suffered death (& his name was Nimrah) & he was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother & it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men & fled out of the land & came over & dwelt with Omer & it came to pass that Akish begat other sons & they won the hearts of the people notwithstanding[1449](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4236386818197300851" \o "Note) they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired now the people of Akish were desirous for gain even as Akish was desirous for power wherefore the sons of Akish did offer them money by the which means they drew away the more part of the people after them & there began to be a war between the sons of Akish & <​Akish​> which lasted for the space of many years yea unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom yea even all save it were thirty souls & they which fled with the house of Omer wherefore Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance & it came to pass that[1450](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6661694472066597166" \o "Note) Omer began to be old nevertheless in his old age he begat Emer & he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead & after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years & he died having seen exceeding many days which were full of sorrow & it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead & did fill the steps of his father & the Lord began again to take the[1451](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2666580242520649963" \o "Note) curse from off the land & the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer & in the space of sixty & two years they had become exceeding strong insomuch that they became exceeding rich having all manner of fruit & of grain & of silks & of fine linnen & of gold & of silver & of precious things & also all manner of cattle of Oxen & cows & of sheep & of swine & of goats & also many other kind of animels which were useful for the food of man & they also had horses & asses & there were elephants & cureloms & cumoms all of which were useful unto man & more especially the elephants[1452](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16925494258746299106" \o "Note) & cureloms & comoms & thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land which was choice above all other lands & he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity for [p. 441] upon such saith the Lord I will pour out the fulness of my wrath & Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days & he begat many sons & daughters & he begat Coriantum & he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead & after that he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his sted <​stead​> he lived four years & he saw peace in the land yea & he[1453](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10628232911262469866" \o "Note) even saw the Son of Righteousness & did rejoice & glory in his day & he died in faith <​peace​> & it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father & did build many mighty Cities & did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days & it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceeding old & it came to pass that his wife died being an hundred & two years old & it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife in his old age a young maid & begat sons & daughters wherefore he liveed until he was an hundred & forty & two years old & it came to pass that he begat Com & Com reigned in[1454](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6309663073818319352" \o "Note) his stead & he reigned forty & nine years & he begat Heth & he also begat other sons & daughters & the people had spread again over all the face of the land & there began again to be an exceeding great wickedness upon the face of the land & Heth began to embrace the <​secret​> plans again of old to destroy his father & it came to pass that he did dethrone his father for he slew him with his own sword & he did reign in his stead & there came prophets in the land again Crying repentance unto them that they must prepare the way of the Lord[1455](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12813986145642251718" \o "Note) or there should come a curse upon the face of the land yea even there should be[1456](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13811558144274447143" \o "Note) a great famine in the which they should be destroyed if they did not repent but the people believed not the words of the prophets but they cast them out & some of them they cast into pits & left them to perish & it came to pass that they done all these things according to the commandment of the king Heth & it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land[1457](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10572075384274854254" \o "Note) & the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceeding fast because of the dearth for there was no rain upon the face of the earth & there came forth poisonous serpants also upon the face of the land & did poison many people & it came to pass that their flocks began to[1458](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2277659075296067846" \o "Note) flee before the poisonous serpants towards the land southward which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla & it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way nevertheless there were some which fled into the land southward & it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpants that they should persue them no more but that they should hedge up the way that they people could not pass that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpants & it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts & did devour the carcases of them which fell by the way until they had devoured[1459](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5441009981935538893" \o "Note) them all now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities & cry unto the Lord & it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord the Lord did send rain upon the face of the earth & the people began to revive again & there began to be fruit in the north countries & in all[1460](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15391695322865516506" \o "Note) the countries round about & the Lord did shew forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine & it came to pass that Shez which was a descendant of Heth for Heth had perished by the famine & all his [p. 442] household save it were Shez wherefore Shez began to build up again a broken[1461](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7715832527469579750" \o "Note) people & it came to pass that Shez did remember the destructions of his fathers & he did build up a righteous kingdom for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared & his brother across the deep & he did walk in the ways of the Lord & he begat sons & daughters & his eldest son whose name was Shez <​did​> rebelled against him nevertheless Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber<​,​> because of his exceeding riches which brought peace again unto his father & it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land & the people began again to spread over all the face of the land & Shez did[1462](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3938595486812416925" \o "Note) live to an exceeding old age & he begat Riplakish & he died & Riplakish reigned in his stead & it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord for he did have many wives & concubines & did lay that upon mens shoulders which was grievious to[1463](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8287976643174550234" \o "Note) be bourn yea he did tax them with heavy taxes & with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings & he did erect him an exceeding beautiful throne & he did build many prisons & whosoever would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison & whosoever were not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison & he did cause that they should labor[1464](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15646581994231515767" \o "Note) continually for their support & whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death wherefore he did obtain all his fine work yea even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison & all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison[1465](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15565415026966693180" \o "Note) & it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms & abominations & when he had reigned for the space of forty & two years the people <​did​> raised up in rebellion against him & there began to be war again in the land insomuch that Riplakish was killed & his descendants were driven out of the land[1466](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10940330505861019730" \o "Note) & it came to pass that after the space of many years Morianton he being a descendant of Riplakish gathered together an army of outcasts & went forth & gave battle unto the people & he gained power over many cities & the war became exceeding sore & did last for the space of many years & he did gain power over all the land & did establish himself king over all the land & after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people in the which he did gain favour in the eyes of the people & they did anoint him to be their king & he did do justice unto the people but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord & it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities & the people became exceeding rich under his reign both in buildings & in gold & in silver & in raising grain & in flocks & herds & such things which had been restored unto them & Morianton did live to an exceeding great age & then he begat Kim & Kim did reign in his <​the​> stead of his father & he did reign eight years & his father died & it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness wherefore he was not favoured of the Lord & his brother did raise up in rebellion against him in the which he did bring him into captivity & he did remain in captivity all his days & he begat sons & daughters in captivity & in his old age he begat Levi & he died[1467](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17477752832525193954" \o "Note) & it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity [p. 443] after the death of his father for the space of forty & two years & he did make war against the king of the land in the which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom & after that he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord & the people did prosper in the land & he did live to a good old age & begat sons & daughters & he also begat Corom whom he anointed king in his stead & it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days & he begat many sons & daughters & after that he had seen many days he did pass away even like unto the rest of of the earth & Kish reigned in his stead & it came to pass that Kish passed away also & Lib reigned in his stead & it came to pass that Lib also did[1468](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6845143353884763910" \o "Note) that which was good in the sight of the Lord & in the days of Lib the poisonous serpants were destroyed wherefore they did go into the land south ward to hunt food for the people of the land for the land was covered with animels of the forest & Lib also himself became a great hunter & they built a great city by the narrow <​narrow​> neck of land by the place where the sea divides the land & they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness to get gain <​game​> & the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants & they were exceeding industrious & they did buy & sell & traffick one with another that they might get gain & they did work in all manner of ore & they did make gold & silver & iron & brass & all manner of metals & they did dig it out of the earth wherefore they did cast up mighty heaps of earth for to get ore of gold & of silver & of iron & of copper & they did work all manner of fine work & they did have silks & fine twined linnen & they did work all manner of cloth that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness & they did make all manner of tools to till the[1469](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6579749171792252145" \o "Note) earth both to plow & to sow to reap & to hoe & also to thrash & they did make all manner of tools inthewhich they did work their beasts & they did make all manner of weapons of war & they did work all manner of work of exceeding workmanship & never could be a people more blessed than were they & more prospered by the hand of the Lord & they were in a land that was choice above all lands for the Lord had spoken it & it came to pass that Lib did live many years & begat sons & daughters & he also begat Hearthom & it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in his <​the​> stead of his father & when Hearthom had reigned twenty & four years behold the kingdom was taken away from him & he served many years in captivity yea even all the remainder of his days & he begat Heth & Heth lived in c◊◊◊ivity all his days & Heth begat Aaron & Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days & he begat Amnigaddah & Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days & he begat coriantum & Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days & he begat Com & it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom & he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty & two years & he went to battle against the king Amgid & they fought for the space of many years inthewhich Com gained power over Amgid & obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom & in[1470](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5920628494296023422" \o "Note) the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land &[1471](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3668196466043664315" \o "Note) they adoped the old plans & administered oaths after the[1472](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17043395419616076085" \o "Note) manner of the ancients & sought again to destroy the kingdom now Com did fight against them much nevertheless he [p. 444] did not prevail against them & there came also in the days of Com many prophets & prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent & turn unto the Lord & forsake their murders & wickedness & it came to pass that the prophets were refe <​rejected​> by the people & they fled unto Com for protection for the people sought to destroy them & they prophesied unto Com many things & he was blessed in all the remainder of his days & he lived to a good old age & begat Shiblom[1473](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9772068547333154000" \o "Note) & Shiblom reigned in his stead & the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him & there began to be an exceeding great war in all the land & it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom did cause that all the prophets which prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death & there was great calamity in all the land for they had testified that a great[1474](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15895054839275694422" \o "Note) curse should come upon the land & also upon the people & that there should be a great destruction among such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth & their bons should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness & they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord because of their wicked combinations wherefore they <​there​> began to be wars contentions in all the land & also many famines & pestilences insomuch that there was a great destruction such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth & all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom & the people began to repent of their iniquity & inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them & it came to pass that Shiblom was slain & Seth was brought into captivity & he did dwell in captivity all his days & it came to pass that Ahah his son did obtain the kingdom & he did reign over the people all his days & he did do all manner of iniquity in his days inthewhich he did cause the shedding of much blood & few were his days & Etham <​Ethem​> being a descendant of Ahah did obtain the kingdom & he also did do that which was wicked in his days & it came to pass in the days of Ethem there came many prophets & prophesied again unto the people yea they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities & it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts & would not hearken unto their words & the prophets mourned[1475](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14607325109276835232" \o "Note) & withdrew from among the people & it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days & he begat Moron & it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead & Moron did do that which was wicked before the Lord & it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people because of that secret combination which was built up to get power & gain there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity & gave battle unto Moron in the which he did gain <​over​> throw the half of the kingdom & he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years & it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him & did obtain the kingdom again & it came to pass that there arose another mighty man & he was a descendant of the brother of Jared & it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron & obtain the kingdom wherefore Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days & he begat Coriantor & it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days & in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets & prophesied of great & marvellous things & cried repentance unto the people & except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their <​their​> [p. 445] utter destruction & that the Lord God would send or bring forth an other people to possess the land by his power after the manner which he brought their fathers & they did reject all the words of the prophets because of their wicked <​secret​> society & wicked abominations & it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether & he died having dwelt in captivity all his days

Ether, Chapter 5 [Ether 12]

Chapter [blank]—— And it came to pass that the days of Ether was in the days of Coriantumr & Coriantumr was king over all the land & Ether was a prophet of the Lord wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr & began to prophesy unto the people for he could not be constrained[1476](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17649468914777587943" \o "Note) because of the spirit of the Lord which was in him for he did cry from the morning even until the going down of the Sun exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed saying unto them that by faith all them <​thi​> things are fulfilled wherefore whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world yea even a place at the right hand of God which hope cometh of faith maketh an anchor to the souls of men which would make them sure & steadfast always abounding in good works being led to glorify God & it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great & marvellous things unto the people which they did not believe because they saw them not & now I Moroni would speak somewhat concerning these things I would shew unto the world that faith is things which is hoped for & not seen wherefore dispute not because ye see not for ye receive no witness not[1477](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6089110715391973429" \o "Note) until after the trial of your faith for it was by faith that Christ shewed himself unto our fathers after that he had <​risen​> from the dead & he shewed himself not unto them untel <​until​> after they had faith in him wherefore it must needs be that some had faith in him for he shewed himself not unto the world but because of the faith of men he has shewn himself unto the world & glorified the name of the Father & prepared the way whereby others might be partakers of the Heavenly gift that they might hope for those things which they have not seen wherefore ye may also have hope & be park partakers of the gift if ye will but have <​have​> faith behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God wherefore by faith was the law of Moses given but in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way & it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled for if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them wherefore he shewed not himself until after their faith Behold it was the faith of Alma & Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth behold it was the faith of Nephi & Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites that they were baptized with fire & with the Holy Ghost Behold it was the faith of Ammon & his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites yea & it was <​even all​> which wrought miracles wrought them by faith even those which were before christ & also them which were after & it was by fait faith that the three desipels obtained a promise that they should not taste of death & they obtained not the promise until after their faith & neither at any time hath any wrought miracels until after their faith wherefore they first believed in the Son of God & there were many whose faith was so exceeding strong even before <​Christ​> [p. 446] came which could not be kept from within the veil but truely saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith & they were glad & behold we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared for so great was his faith in God that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared because of his word which he had spoken unto him which word he had obtained by faith & after that the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith the Lord could not withhold any thing from his sight wherefore he shewed him all things for he could no longer be kept without the veil & it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles therefore the Lord hath commanded me yea even Jesus Christ & I said unto him Lord the Gentiles will mock at these things because of our weakness in writing for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith where unto thou hast not made us mighty in writing for thou hast made all this this people that they could speak much because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them & thou hast made us that we could write but little because of the awkwardness of our hands behold thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art unto the overpowering of man to read them thou hast also made our words powerful & great even that we cannot write them wherefore when we write we behold our weakness & stumble because of the placing of our words & I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words & when I had said this the Lord spake unto me saying Fools mock but they shall mourn & my grace is sufficient for the meek that they shall take no advantage of weakness & if men come unto me I will shew unto them their weakness I give unto men weakness that they may be humble & my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me for if they humble themselves before me & have faith in me then will I make weak things become strong unto them behold I will shew unto the Gentiles their weakness & I will shew unto them that faith hope & charity bringeth unto me the fountain of all righteousness & I Moroni having heard these words was comforted & said O Lord thy righteous will be done for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith for the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin remove <​Remove​> & it was removed & if he had not had faith it would not have moved wherefore thou workest after that men have faith for thus did thou manifest thyself unto thy desipels for after that they had faith & did speak in thy name thou didst shew thyself unto them in great power & I also rememberest that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man yea even among the mansions of thy Father in thewhich man might have a more excellent hope wherefore man must hope or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast pepared [p. 447] & again I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world even unto the laying down of thy life for the world that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men & now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity wherefore except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father wherefore I know by this thing which thou hast said That if the Gentiles have not charity because of our weakness that thou wilt prove them & take away their talant yea even that which they have received & <​give​> unto them which shall have more abundantly & it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace that they might have charity & it came to pass that the Lord said unto me If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee thou hast been faithful wherefore thy garments shall be made clean & because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong even unto the setting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my father & now I Moroni bid farewell unto the Gentiles yea & also unto my brethren whom I love until we shall meet before the judgmentseat of Christ where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood & then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus & that he hath talked with me face to face & that he told me in plain humility even as a man telleth another in mine own language concerning these things & only a few have I written because of my weakness in writing & now I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets & apostels have written that the grace of God the Father & also the Lord Jesus Christ & the Holy Ghost which beareth record of them may be & abide in you forever Amen

Ether, Chapter 6 [Ether 13–15]

Chapter [blank] And now I Moroni proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of which I have been writing for behold they rejected all the words of Ether for he truely told them of all things from the beginning of man & how that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands a chosen land of the Lord wherefore the Lord would have all men should serve him which dwelt[1478](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16813879964839902098" \o "Note) upon the face thereof & that it was the place of the <​New​> Jerusalem which should come down out of Heaven & the Holy Sanctuary of the Lord behold Ether saw the days of Christ & he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land & he spake also concerning the house of Israel & the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come after that it should be destroyed it should be built up again &[1479](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14882783364913406390" \o "Note) Holy City unto the Lord wherefore it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old but it should be built up again & become a Holy City <​of the Lord​> & it should be built up unto the <​house​> of Israel & that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land into unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph for the which things there has been a type for as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt even so he died there wherefore the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Josep out of the land of Jerusalem that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not even as he [p. 448] was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not wherefore the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built up[1480](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12372853128482119927" \o "Note) upon this land & it shall be a land of their inheritance & they shall build up a Holy City unto the Lord like unto the Jerusalem of old & they shall no more be confounded until the end come when the earth shall pass away & there shall be a new Heaven & a new Earth & they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away & all things have[1481](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2822047345058197743" \o "Note) become new & then cometh the New Jerusalem & blessed are they which dwell therein for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb & they are they are they which are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph which were of the house of Israel & then also cometh the Jerusalem of old & the inhabitants thereof blessed are they for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb & they are they which were scattered & gathered in from the four quarters of the earth & from the north countries & are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father Abraham & when these things come bringeth to pass the Scripture which saith There are they which were first which shall be last & there are they which were last which shall be first[1482](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17483127033869607506" \o "Note) & I was about to write more but I am forbidden but great & marvellous were the prophecies of Ether but they esteemed him as nought & cast him out & he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day & by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people & as he dwelt in the cavity of[1483](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3520673229501862133" \o "Note) a rock he made the remainder of this record viewing the destruction which came upon the people by night & it came to pass that in that same year which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people for there were many which rose up who were mighty men & sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness of which hath been spoken & now Coriantumr having studdied himself in all[1484](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13201984085049794150" \o "Note) the arts of war & all the cunning of the world wherefore he gave battle unto them which sought to destroy him but he repented not neither his fair sons nor daughters neither the fair sons & daughters of Cohor neither the fair sons & daughters of Corihor & in fine there was none of the fair sons & daughters upon the face of the whole earth which repented of their sins wherefore it came to pass in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock there was many people which was slain by the sword those secret combinations fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom & it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much & bled much & in the second year the word of the Lord came unto Ether that he should go &[1485](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16974699378716236102" \o "Note) prophesy unto Coriantumr that if he would repent & his household the Lord would give unto him his kingdom & spare the people otherwise they should be destroyed & all his household save it were himself & he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning an other people receiving the land for their inheritance & Coriantumr should receive a buriel by them & every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr & it came to pass that Coriantumr repeneted not neither his household neither the people & the wars did cease not & they sought to kill Ether but he [p. 449] fled from before them & hid again in the cavity of the rock & it came to pass that there arose up Shared & he also gave battle unto Coriantumr[1486](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16602179939445724767" \o "Note) & he did beat him insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity & the sons of Coriantumr in the fourth year did beat Shared & did obtain the kingdom again unto their father now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land every man with his band fighting for that which he <​desired​> & there was robbers <​robbers​> in fine all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land & it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceeding angry with Shared & he went against him with his armies to battle & they did meet in great anger & they did meet in the <​the​> vally of Gilgal & & the battle became exceeding sore & it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days & it came to pass that Coriantumr[1487](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "830918122429126103" \o "Note) beat him & persue<​d​> him until he had came to the plains of Heshlon & it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains & behold he did beat Coriantumr & drove him back again to the vally of Gilgal & Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the vally of Gilgal in the which he beat Shared & slew him & Shared wounded Coriantumr in the <​his​> thigh that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years in the which time all the people upon all the face of the land were a shedding blood & there was none to constrain[1488](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6020122352257568601" \o "Note) them & now there began to be a great curse upon the land because of the iniquity of the people in the which if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon the[1489](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2054851608183846662" \o "Note) shelf or upon the place which <​whither​> he would keep it & behold [1490](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9766512798677202305" \o "Note)upon the morrow he could not find it so great was the curse upon the land wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own with his hands & would not borrow neither would he lend & every man kept the hilt of his sword thereof in his right hand in the defence of his property & his own life & they of his wives & children & now after the space of two years & after the death of Shared behold there arose the brother of Shared & <​he​> gave battle unto Coriantumr in the which Coriantumr did beat him & did persue him to the wilderness of Akish & it came to pass that the brother of Jared <​Shared​> did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish & the battle became exceeding sore & many thousands fell by the sword & it[1491](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16429258036062004956" \o "Note) came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness & the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night & slew a part of the army of Coriantumr as they were drunken & he came forth to the land of Moron & placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr & it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years in the which he did receive great strength to his army now the brother of Shared whose name was Gilead also received great strength to his army also because of secret combinations & it came to pass that his High Priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne & it came to pass that <​one​> of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass & obtained unto himself the[1492](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11661159284403474065" \o "Note) kingdom & his name was Lib & Lib was a man of great stature more than any other man among them <​all the​> people & it came to pass that in the first year of Lib Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron & gave battle unto Lib & it came to pass that he fought with Lib in the which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded nevertheless the army of Coriantumr did press [p. 450] press forward upon Lib that he fled to the borders upon the sea shore & it came to pass that Coriantumr persued him & Lib gave battle unto him upon the sea shore & it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish & it came to pass that Lib did persue him until he came to the plains of Agosh & coriantumr had taken all[1493](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10411732036393016065" \o "Note) the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled & when he had came to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto <​unto​> Lib & he smote upon him until he died nevertheless the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof & the battle became exceeding sore inthewhich Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz & it came to pass that Shiz persued after Coriantumr & he did over throw many cities & he did slay both women & children & did burn the cities thereof & there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the[1494](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7548157938747133170" \o "Note) land yea a cry went forth throughout the land Who can stand before the army of Shiz behold he sweapeth the[1495](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2635536885802590694" \o "Note) earth before him & it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies throughout all the face of the land & they were divided & a part of them fled to the army of Shiz & a part of them fled to the arm <​army​> of Coriantumr & so great & lasting had been the war & so long had been the scene of bloodshed & carnage that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead & so swift & speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood leaving the bodies of both men women & children strewed upon the face of the land to become a prey to the worms of the flesh & the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land even upon all the face of [1496](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6319704285745783264" \o "Note)the land wherefore the people became troubled by day & by night because of the scent thereof nevertheless Shiz did not cease to persue Coriantumr for he had <​sworn​> to avenge himself upon[1497](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3456510868489780292" \o "Note) Coriantumr of the blood of his brother which had been slain & the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword & thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath & their wickedness & abominations had prepared a[1498](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "18308076052935361412" \o "Note) way for their everlasting destruction & it came to pass that Shiz did persue Coriantumr eastward even to the borders by[1499](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "883374880065244869" \o "Note) the sea shore & there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days & so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened[1500](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17939171328682677395" \o "Note) & began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr & they fled to the land of Corihor & swept off the inhabitants before them all they that would not join them & they pitched their tents in the vally of Corihor & Coriantumr pitched his tents in the vally of Shurr now the vally of Shurr was near the hill Comron[1501](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14242362171224277473" \o "Note) wherefore Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comron & did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle & it came to pass that they came forth but were driven again & they came the second time & they were driven again the second time & it came to pass that they came again the third time & the battle became exceeding sore & it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr[1502](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9654541353087298574" \o "Note) that he gave him many deep wounds & Coriantumr having lost his blood fainted & was carried away a<​s​> [p. 451] though he were dead now the loss of men women & children on both sides w◊re so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not persue the armies of Coriantumr wherefore they returned to their camp [1503](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15128697142527156373" \o "Note)& it came to pass that when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him he saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people & he began to sorrow in his heart yea there had been slain two millions of mighty men & also their wves <​wives​> & their children he began to repent of the evil which he had done he[1504](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13515311350659976674" \o "Note) began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets & he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far every whit & his soul mourned & refused to be comforted & it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz desiring him that he would spare the people & he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people & it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr that if he would give himself up that he might slay him with his own sword that he would spare the lives of the people & it came to pass that the people repented not[1505](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2870297039651452837" \o "Note) of their iniquity & the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against[1506](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "8661430404628085251" \o "Note) the people of Shiz & the people of Shiz were stirred up to[1507](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "3214087522513017987" \o "Note) anger against the people of Coriantumr wherefore the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr & when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz & it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum which by interpretation is large or to exceed all wherefore when they came to these waters they pitched their tents & Shiz also pitched his tents near un <​unto​> them & therefore on the morrow they did come to battle & it came to pass that they fought an exceeding sore battle in the which Coriantumr was wounded again & he fainted with the loss of blood & it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them that they caused them to flee before[1508](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5838144431546081493" \o "Note) them & they did flee southward & did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath & it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah & it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord which were sacred & it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land which had not been slain save it were Ether & it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people & he beheld that the people which were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr & the people which were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz wherefore they were for the space of four years gathering together the people[1509](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17075760815626429345" \o "Note) that they might get all wh◊◊h were upon the face of the land & that they might receive all the strength which it were possible that they could receive & it came to pass that <​when​> they were all gathered together every one to the army <​army​> which he would with their wives & their children both men women & children being armed with weapons of war having shields & breast plates & head plates & being cloathed after the manner of war & they did march forth one against another to battle & they fought all that day & conquour <​conquored​> not & it came to pass that when it was night they were weary & retired to their camps & after that they had [p. 452] retired to their camps they took up a howling & a lementation for the loss of the slain of their people & so[1510](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16112537791323959336" \o "Note) great were their cries their howlings & lamentations that it did rend the air exceedingly & it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle & great & terrible was that day nevertheless they conquered not & when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries & their howlings & their mournings for the loss of the slain of their people [1511](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15189688160597886387" \o "Note)& it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz desiring that he would not come again to battle but that he would take the Kingdom & spare the lives of the people but behold the spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them & Satan had full power over the hearts[1512](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10118814569172872605" \o "Note) of the people for they were given up unto the heardness of their[1513](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "6935034442998402846" \o "Note) hearts & the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed wherefore they went again to battle & it came to pass that they fought all that day & when the night came they slept upon their swords & on the morrow they fought even until the night came & when the night came they were drunken with anger even as a man which is drunken with wine & they slept again upon their swords & on the morrow they fought again & when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty & two of the people of Coriantumr & sixty & nine of the people of Shiz & it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night & on the morrow they fought again & they contended in their mights with their swords & with their[1514](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1417479025395001347" \o "Note) shields all that day & when the night came there was thirty & two of the people of Shiz & twenty & seven of the people of Coriantumr & it came to pass that they ate & slept & prepared for death on the morrow & they were large & mighty men[1515](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "12141326350228403571" \o "Note) as to the strength of men & it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours & they fainted with the loss of blood & it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk they were about to flee for their lives but behold Shiz arose & also his men & he wore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword wherefore he did persue them & on the morrow he did overtake them & they fought again with the[1516](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15072585747817974829" \o "Note) sword & it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword save it were Coriantumr & Shiz behold Shiz had fainted with loss of blood & it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword <​sword​> that he rested a little & he smote of the head of Shiz & it came to pass that after he had smote off the head of Shiz that Shiz raised upon his hands & fell & after that he had struggled for breath he died & it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth & became as if he had no life And the Lord spake unto Ether & said unto him[1517](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7453534923258248241" \o "Note) Go forth & he went forth & beheld[1518](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2519514456445661259" \o "Note) the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled & he finished his record & the hundredth part I have not written & he had hid them in a manner[1519](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17634095607448091559" \o "Note) that the people of Limhi did find them Now the last words which are written by Ether are these Whether the Lord will that I be translated or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh it mattereth not if it so be that I am saved in the Kingdom of God Amen[1520](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9234602455714823616" \o "Note) [1521](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16522785265717493760" \o "Note) [p. 453]

Moroni, Chapter 1 [Moroni 1]

The Book of Moroni— Chapter [blank]— Now I Moroni after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared I had supposed to not have written more but I have not as yet perished & I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me for behold their wars are exceeding fierce among themselves & because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ & I Moroni will not deny the Christ wherefore I wander whither soever I can for the safety of mine own life wherefore I a write a few more things[1522](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "16403754599897469849" \o "Note) contrary to that which I had supposed for I had supposed not to have written any more but I write a few more things that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren the Lamanites in some future day according to the will of the Lord—

Moroni, Chapter 2 [Moroni 2]

Chapter [blank]—

The words of Christ which he spake unto his desipels the twelve whom he had chosen as he laid his hands upon their them & he called them by name saying Ye shall call on the Father in my name in mighty prayer & after that ye have done this ye shall have power that on him whom ye shall lay your hand<​s​> ye shall give the Holy Ghost & in my name shall ye give it for thus do mine Apostles now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing & the multitude heard it not but the desipels heard it & on as many as they laid their hands fell the Holy Ghost

Moroni, Chapter 3 [Moroni 3]

Chapter [blank]

The manner which the desipels which were called the elders of the church ordained priests & teachers After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ they laid their hands[1523](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "1841854860813890937" \o "Note) upon them & said In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest or if he be a teacher I ordain you to be a teacher to preach repentance & remission of sins through Jesus Christ by the endurance of faith on his name to the end Amen. & after this manner did they ordain priests & teachers according to the gifts & callings of God unto men & they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost which was in them

Moroni, Chapter 4 [Moroni 4]

Chapter [blank]——

The manner of their elders & priests administering & the flesh & blood of Christ unto the church & they administered it according to the commandments of Christ wherefore we know that the manner to be true & the elder or priest did minister it & they did kneel down with the church & pray to the Father in the name of Christ saying O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son & witness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy[1524](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "14592642355381653486" \o "Note) Son & always remember him & keep his commandments which he hath given them that they may always have his spirit to be with them Amen.

Moroni, Chapter 5 [Moroni 5]

Chapter [blank]— The manner of administering the wine Behold they took the cup & said O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of of it that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son which was shed for them that they may witness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they do always remember him that they may have his spirit to be with them Amen [p. 454]

Moroni, Chapter 6 [Moroni 6]

Chapter [blank]—— And now I speak concerning baptism Behold Elders Priests & Teachers were baptized & they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart & a contrite spirit & witnessed unto the church that they trueely repented of all their sins & none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of christ having a determination to serve him unto the end & after that they had been received unto baptism & were wrought upon & cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost they were numbered among the people of the Church of Christ & their names were taken that they might be remembered & nourished by the good word of God to keep them in the right way to keep them continually watchful unto prayer relying alone upon the merits of Christ who was the author & the finisher of their[1525](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "9676939843226345414" \o "Note) faith & the Church did meet together oft to fast & to pray & to speak one with an other concerning the wellfare of their souls & they did meet together oft to partake of bread & wine in remembrance of the Lord Jesus & they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them & whoso was found to commit iniquity & three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders & if they repented not & confessed not their names were blotted out & they were not numbered among the people of Christ but as oft as they repented & sought forgiveness with real intent they were forgiven & their meetings were contucted by the church after the manner of the workings of the spirit & by the power of the Holy Ghost for as[1526](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7900786607881708000" \o "Note) the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach or exhort or to pray or to suplicate or to[1527](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "17019305904371847325" \o "Note) sing even so it was done[1528](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "15372737694522305507" \o "Note)

Moroni, Chapter 7 [Moroni 7]

Chapter [blank]—— And now I Moroni write a few of the words of my father Mormon which he spake concerning faith hope & charity for after this manner did he speak unto the people as he taught them in the Synagogue which they had build for the place of worship— And now I Mormon speak unto you my beloved brethren & it is by the grace of God the Father & our Lord Jesus Christ & his holy will because of the gift of his calling unto me that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time wherefore I would speak unto you that are of the church that are the peaceable followers of christ & that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord from this time hence forth until ye shall rest with him in Heaven & now my brethren I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men for I remember the word of God which saith by ther <​By their​> works ye shall know them for if their works be good than they are good also for behold God hath said A man being evil cannot do that which is good for if he offereth a gift or prayeth unto God except he shall do it with real intent it propfiteth him nothing for behold it is not counted unto him for righteoasness for behold if a man being evil givith a gift he doeth it grudgingly wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift wherefore he is counted evil before God & likewise also is it counted evil unto a man if he shall pray & not with real intent of heart yea & it proffiteth him nothing for God receiveth [p. 455] none such wherefore a man being evil cannot do that which is good neither will he give a good gift for behold a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water wherefore a man being the[1529](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "7770543069365340620" \o "Note) servant of the devil cannot follow Christ & if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil wherefore all things which are good cometh of God & that which is evil cometh of the devil for the devil is an enemy unto God & fighteth against him continually & inviteth & enticeth to sin & to do that which is evil continually but behold that which is of God inviteth & enticeth to do good continually wherefore every thing which inviteth & enticeth to do good & to love God & to serve him is inspired of God wherefore take heed my beloved brethren that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God or that which is good & of God to be of the devil for behold my brethren it is given unto you to judge that ye may know good from evil & the way to judge is as plain that ye may know with a perfect knowledge as the day light is from the dark night for behold the spirit of Christ is given to every man that they may know good from evil wherefore I shew unto you the way to judge for every thing which inviteth to do good & to persuade to believe in christ is sent forth by the power <​& gift​> of Christ wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God but whatsoever thing persuadeth <​men​> to do evil & believe not in christ & deny him & serve not God then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil for after[1530](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2867815573096987918" \o "Note) this manner doth the devil work for he persuaet <​persuadeth​> no man to do good no not one neither doth his angels neither doth they which subject themselves unto him & now my brethren seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge which light is the light of Christ see that ye do not judge wrongfully for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged wherefore I beseach of you brethren that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil & if ye will lay hold upon every good thing & condemn it not ye certainly will be a child of Christ & now my brethren how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing & now I come to that faith of which I said I would speak & I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing for behold God knowing all things being from everlasting to everlasting behold he sent angels to minister unto the children of men to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ & in christ there should come every good thing & God also declared unto prophets by his own mouth that Christ should come & behold there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men which were good & all things which are good cometh of Christ otherwise men were fallen & there could no good thing come unto them wherefore by the ministering of angels & by every word which proceeded <​proceded​> forth out of the mouth of God men began to exercise faith in Christ & thus by faith they did lay hold upon every good thing & thus it was until the coming of Christ & after that he come men also were saved by faith in his [p. 456] name & by faith they become the Sons of God & as suredly as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers saying Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name which is good in faith believing that ye shall receive behold it shall be done unto you wherefore my beloved brethren hath miracels ceased because that Christ hath ascended into Heaven & hath sit down on the right hand of God to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men for he hath answered the ends of the law & he claimeth all those that hath faith in him & they that have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men & he dwelleth Eternally in the Heavens & because that he hath done this my beloved brethren hath miracels ceased behold I say unto you nay neither hath angels ceased to minister unto the children of men for behold they are subject unto him to minister according to the word of his command shewing themselves unto them of strong faith & a firm mind in every form of Godliness & the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance & to fulfil & to do the work of the covenants of the Father which he hath made unto the children of men to prepare the way among the children of men by declaring the word of Christ unto them vessels of the Lord that they may bear testimony of him & by so doing the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue may have faith in Christ that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts according to the power thereof & after this manner bringeth to pass the Father the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men & christ hath said If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expediant in me & he hath said Repent all ye ends of the earth & come unto me & be Baptized in my name & have faith in me that ye may be saved & now my beloved brethren if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you & God will shew unto you with power & great glory at the last day that they are true & if they are true hath the day of miracel<​s​> ceased or hath angels ceased to appear unto the children of men or hath he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them or will he so long as time shall last or or the earth shall stand or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved behold I say unto you nay for it is by faith that miracels are wrought & it is by faith that angels appear & minister unto men wherefore if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men for it is because of unbelief & all is vain for no man can be saved according to the words of Christ save they shall have faith in his name wherefore if these things have seaced then has faith seaced also & awful is the state of man for they are as though there had been no redemption made but behold my beloved brethren I judge better things of you for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his Church & again my beloved brethren I would speak unto you concerning hope how is it that ye can attain unto faith save ye shall have hope & what is it that ye shall hope for behold [p. 457] I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ & the power of his resurrection to be raised uto <​unto​> life Eternal & this because of your faith in him according to the promise wherefore if a man have faith he must needs hope for without faith there cannot any hope & again behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith & hope save he shall be meek & lowly of heart if so his faith & hope is vain for none is exceptable before God save the meek & lowly of heart & if a man be meek & lowly in heart & confess by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ he must needs have charity for if he have not charity he is nothing wherefore he must needs have charity & charity suffereth long & is kind & envieth not & is not puffed up seeketh not her own is not easily provoked thinketh no evil & rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth beareth all things believeth all things hopeth all things endureth all things wherefore my beloved brethren if ye have not charity ye are nothing for charity never faileth wherefore cleave unto charity which is the greatest of all for all things must fail but charity is the pure love of Christ & it endureth forever & whoso is found possessed of it at the last day it shall be well with them wherefore my beloved brethren pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart that ye may be filled with this love which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son Jesus Christ that ye may become the Sons of God that when he shall appear we shall be like him for we shall shall see him as he is that we may have this hope that we may be purified even as he is pure Amen

Moroni, Chapter 8 [Moroni 8]

Chapter [blank] An epestle of my father Mormon written to me Moroni & it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry & on this wise did he write unto me saying my <​My​> beloved son Moroni I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you & hath called you to his ministry & to his holy work I am mindful of you always in my prayers continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his holy child Jesus that he through his infinite goodness & grace will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end & now my son I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you for if I have learned the truth there has been disputations among you concerning the baptizing of your little children & now my son I desire that ye should labor exceedingly that this gross error should be removed from among you for for this intent I have written this epistle for immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter & the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost saying Listen to the words of Christ your Redeemer your Lord & your God Behold I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance the whole need no physician but they that are sick wherefore little children are whole for they are not capable of committing sin wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me that it hath no power over them & the law of circumcision is done away in me & after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me wherefore my beloved son I know that it is solemn mockery before God that ye should [p. 458] baptize little children behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach repentance & baptism unto they which are accountable & capable of committing sin yea teach parents that they must repent & be baptized & humble themselves as their little children & they shall all be saved with their little children & their little children not <​need​> no repentance neither baptism behold baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remmission of sins but little children are alive in christ even from the foundation of the world if not so God is a partial God & also a changeable being <​God &​> a respecter to persons for how many little children have died without baptism wherefore if little children could not be saved without baptism these must have gone to an endless hell behold I say unto you that he that supposeth that little children needeth baptism is in the gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity for he hath neither faith hope nor charity wherefore should he be cut off while in the thought he must go down to hell for awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism & the other <​must​> perish because he hath <​no​> not[1531](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13831172956427930298" \o "Note) baptism wo be unto him that shall pervert the way of the Lord after this manner for they shall perish except they repent behold I speak with boldness having authority from God for <​&​> I fear not what man can do for perfect love casteth out all fear & I am filled with charity which is everlasting love wherefore all children are alike unto me wherefore I love little children with a perfect love & they are all alike & partakers of salvation for I know that God is not a partial God neither a changeable being but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity little children cannot repent wherefore it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them for they are all alive in him because of his mercy & he that saith that little children needeth repentance <​baptism denieth​> the[1532](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "2998082529557549428" \o "Note) mercies of Christ & seteth at nought the atonement of him & the power of his redemption wo unto such for they are in danger of death hell & an endless torment I speak it boldly God hath commanded me listen unto them & give heed or they stand against you at the judgement seat of Christ for behold that all little children are alive in Christ & also all they that are without the law for the power of redemption cometh on all they that have no law wherefore he that is not condemned or he that is under no condemnation cannot repent & unto such baptism availeth nothing but is is mockery befrore God denying the mercies of Christ & the power of his Holy spirit & putting trust in dead works behold my son this thing had not ought to be for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation & under the curse of a broken law & the first fruits of repentance is baptism & Baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments & the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins & the remission of sins bringeth meekness & lowliness of heart & because of meekness & lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost which comforter filleth with hope & perfect love which <​love​> endureth by diligence unto prayer until the end shall come when all the saints shall dwell with God behold my son I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites behold the pride of this nation or the pride of the Nephites [p. 459] hath proved their destruction except they should repent pray for them my son that repentance may come unto them but behold I fear lest the spirit hath ceased striving with them & in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power & authority which cometh from God & they are denying the Holy Ghost & after rejecting so great a knowledge my son they must perish soon unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which was spoken by the prophets as well as the words of our Saviour himself my Son <​farewell​> my son until I shall write unto you or shall meet you again Amen

Moroni, Chapter 9 [Moroni 9]

Chapter IX——

The second epistle of Mormon to his son Moroni—— My beloved son I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive but I write somewhat that which is grieveous for behold I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites in the which we did not conqer & Archeantus has fallen by the sword & also Luram & Emer yea & we have lost a great number of our choice men & now behold my son I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people for they do not repent & Satan stireth them up continually to anger one with another behold I am laboring with them continually & when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble & anger against me & when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it wherefore I fear lest the spirit of the Lord hath ce[1533](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "11341687709842600151" \o "Note) seaced <​ceased striving​> with them for so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death & they have lost their love one towards another & they thirst after blood & revenge continually & now my beloved son notwithstanding their hardness let us labor diligently for if we should cease to labor we should be brought un <​under​> condemnation for we have a labor to perform whilst <​whilst in this​> tabernacle of clay that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness & rest our souls in the kingdom of God & now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people for according to the knowledge <​which​> I have received from Amoron behold the Lamanites have many prisoners which they took from the tower Sherrizah & there were men women & children & the husbands & fathers of those women & children they have slain & they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands & the children upon the flesh of their fathers & no water save a little do they give unto them & notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum for behold many of the daughters of the Lamanite<​s​> have they taken prisoners & after depriveing them of that which was most dear & precious above all things which is chastity & vertue & after that they had none this thing they did murder them in a most cruel manner torturing their bodies even unto death & after that they have done this they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts because of the hardness of their hearts & they do it[1534](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5875531814395699575" \o "Note) for a token of bravery O my beloved son how can a people like this that are without civilizeation & only a few years have passed away & they were a civil & a delightsome people but O my son how can a people like this whose delight is in so much abomination how can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgement against us behold my heart cries Wo unto this people come out in judgement O God & hide their sins & wickedness & abominations from before thy face & [p. 460] again my son there are many widows & their daughters which remain in Sherrizah & that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away behold the army of Zenephi has carried away & left them to wander whithersoever they can for food & many old women do faint by the way & die & the army which is with me is weak & the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah & me & as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful bruitality O the depravity of my people they are without order & without mercy behold I am but a man & I have but the strength of a man & I cannot any longer enforce my commands & they have become strong in their perversion & they are alike brutal spareing none neither old nor young & they delight in every thing save that which is good & the sufferings of our women & our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed every thing yea tongue cannot tell neither can it be written & now my son I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene behold thou knowest the wickedness of this people thou knowest that they are without principle & past feeling & their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites behold my son I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me but behold my son I recommend thee unto God & I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved & I pray unto God that he would spare thy life to witnes the return of his people unto him or their utter destruction for I know that they must perish except they repent & return unto him & if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites because of the wilfulness of their hearts seeking for blood & revenge & if it so be that they perish we know that many of our brethren have desented[1535](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "5721902041669218695" \o "Note) over unto the Lamanites & many more will also desen[1536](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "4334130989210751305" \o "Note) over unto them wherefore write some what a few things if thou art spared & I should perish & not see thee but I trust that I may see thee soon for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto the my son be faithful in christ & may not the things which I have written grieve thee to way thee down unto death but may christ lift thee up & may his sufferings & death & the shewing his body unto our fathers & his mercy & long suffering & the hope <​of​> his glory & of eternal life rest in your mind forever & may the grace of God the Father whose throne is high in the Heavens & our Lord Jesus Christ who sitteth on the right hand of his power until all things shall become subject unto him be & abide with you forever Amen.——

Moroni, Chapter 10 [Moroni 10]

Chapter [blank]—— Now I Moroni write somewhat as seemeth me good & I write unto my brethren the Lamanites & I would that they should know that more than four hundred & twenty has passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ & I seal up these records after that I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation Behold I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things if it be[1537](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "128704233821229439" \o "Note) wisdom in God that ye should read them that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men from the creation of Adam even down until the time that t◊[1538](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10767615389076308457" \o "Note) ye shall receive these things & ponder it in your hearts & when ye shall receive these things I would exhort you that ye would ask God the Eternal Father in the name of Christ if these things are <​not​> true & if ye shall ask with a sincere heart with real intent having [p. 461] faith in Christ & he will manifest the truth of it unto you by the power of the Holy Ghost & by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things & whatsoever thing is good is just & true wherefore nothing that is good denieth the Christ but acknowledgeth that he is & ye may know that he is by the power of the Holy Ghost wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God for he worketh by power according to the faith of the children of men the same today & tomorrow & forever & again exhort you my brethren that ye deny not the gifts of God for they are many & they come from the same God & there are different ways that these gifts are administered but it is the same God which worketh all in all & they are given by the manifestations of the spirit of God unto men to proffit them for behold to one is given by the spirit of God that he may teach the word of wisdom & to another that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same spirit & to another exceeding great faith & to another the gifts of healing by the same spirit & again to another that he may work mighty miracels & again to another that he may prophesy concerning all things & again to another the beholding of angels & ministering spirits & again to another all kinds of tongues & again to another the interpretation of languages & of divers kinds of tongues & all these gifts comes by the spirit of Christ & they come unto every man severly according as he will & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remember that he is the same yesterday today & forever & that all these gifts of which I have spoken which are spiritual never will be done away even as long as the <​world​> shall stand only according to the unbelief of the children of men wherefore there must be faith & if there must be faith there must also be hope & if there must be hope there must also be charity & except ye have charity ye can in no wise be saved in the Kingdom of God neither can ye be saved in the Kingdom of God if ye have not faith neither can ye if ye have not hope & if ye have no hope ye must needs be in dispair & dispair cometh because of iniquity & Christ truely said unto our fathers If ye have faith ye can do all things which is expediant unto me & now I speak unto all the ends of the earth that if the day cometh that the power & gifts of God shall be done away among you it shall be because of unbelief & wo be unto the children of men if this be the case for there shall be none that doeth good among you no not one for if there be one among you that doeth good he shall work by the power & gifts of God & wo unto them Which shall do these things away & die for they die in their sins & they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God & I speak it according to the words of Christ & I lie not & I exhort you to remember these things for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not for ye shall see me at the bar of God & the Lord God will say unto you Did I not declare my words unto you which was written[1539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10501244843134216193" \o "Note) by this man like as one crying from the dead yea even as one speaking out of the dust [p. 462] I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies & behold they shall procede forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God & his word shall his forth generation to generation & God shall shew unto you that that which I have written is true <​true​> & again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ & lay hold upon every good gift & touch not the evil gift nor the unclean thing & awake & arise from the dust O daughter of Zion yea & put on thy beautiful garments O daughter of Zion & strengthen thy stakes & enlarge thy borders forever that thou mayest no more be confounded that the covenants of the Eternal God which he hath made unto thee O house of Israel <​may be fulfilled​> yea come unto Christ & be perfected in him & deny yourselves of all ungodliness & if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness & love God with all your might mind & strength then is his grace sufficient for you that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ & if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ ye can in no wise deny the power of God & again if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ & deny not his power then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God through the shedding of the blood of Christ which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins that ye become holy without spot & now I bid unto all farewell I soon go to rest in the Paradise of God until my spirit & body shall again <​reunite​> & I am brought forth triumphant through the air to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah the Eternal Judge of both quick & dead Amen—— TE THE END.

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

The testimony of three witnesses

Be it known unto every <​all​> nations kindreds tongues & people unto whom this work shall come that we through the grace of God the Father & our Lord Jesus Christ have seen the plates which contain this record which is a record of the pople of Nephi & also of the Lamanites his[1540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "13544369930862798047" \o "Note) brethren & also of the people of Jared which came from the tower of which hath been spoken & we also know that they have been translated by the gift & power of God for his voice hath declared it unto us wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true & we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates & they have been shewn unto us by the power of God & not of man & we declare with words of soberness that an angel of God came down from Heaven & he brought & laid before our eyes that we beheld & saw the plates & the engravings thereon & we know that it is by the grace of God the Father & our Lord Jesus Christ that we beheld & bear record that these things are true & it is marvellous in our eyes never theless the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it Wherefore to be obediant unto the commandments of God we bear testimony of these things & we know that if we are faithful in Christ we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men & be found spotless before the Judgement seat of Christ & shall dwell with him Eternally in the Heavens & the honor be to the Father & to the Son & to the Holy Ghost [p. 463] whiich is one God. Amen.

([Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#5639102227677952294))

([David Whitmer](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#17912423731056603292))

([Martin Harris](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#7816034060894448871))

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

And also the testimony of eight witnesses

Be it known unto all Nations kindreds tongues & people unto whom this work shall come that Joseph Smith jun. the author & proprietor[1541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5" \l "10188285427650098721" \o "Note) of this work has shewn unto us the plates of which hath been spoken which have the appearance of gold & as many of the leave <​leaves​> as the said Smith has translated wit <​we​> did handle with our hands & we also saw the engravings thereon all of which has the appearance of ancient work & of curious workmanship & this we <​we​> bear record with words of soberness that the said Smith has shewn unto us for we have seen & hefted & know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken & we give our names unto the world to witness unto the world that which we have seen & we lie not God bearing witness of it

[Christian Whitmer](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#9147832919189872115))

[Jacob Whitmer](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#5789175432694134492))

[Peter Whitmer Jun](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#4000171320779589770)—)

[John Whitmer](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#5403485844949712497))

[Hiram Page](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#1215058725234886615))

[Joseph Smith sen](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#10724178154622439889)—)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#3290680058157768602))

[Samuel H Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#4882498140409174456)) [p. 464]

**Footnotes**

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1272667654668886001)

[Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) handwriting begins.

1. [1](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5929821997533678410)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/11): “call the name of the place”.

1. [2](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15583393000833206266)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 5](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/11) of the 1830 edition.

1. [3](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18226341540332890950)

TEXT: “[i]n a vision”, which is now missing but has been supplied here, is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/3). The remainder of the supplied text in this line and the one following is from the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/12). It is possible that [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) inscribed a notation indicating the first page of the first gathering.

1. [4](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16666568483420593522)

TEXT: Page number, which is now missing but has been supplied here, is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/3).

1. [5](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3441654074160198208)

TEXT: Missing word supplied from the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/12).

1. [6](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-567287165521968327)

TEXT: Illegible character wipe-erased and written over; then stricken with whole word.

1. [7](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9472755383425535515)

TEXT: Portions of the following line, which are now missing or obscured but have been supplied here, are visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/4). Archival backing on the rough bottom edge of the page obscures parts of this line. The rest of the supplied text in this line and the one following is from the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/13).

1. [8](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7122047425061008433)

TEXT: Possibly “saught”; the [1923 photo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/4) does not clarify the spelling.

1. [9](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14036000101180365153)

TEXT: Page number, which is now missing but has been supplied here, is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/4).

1. [10](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11787923662243701376)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/14): “are”.

1. [11](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14658620214410436323)

Original: “Lemuel saying”.

1. [12](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15556174134714314233)

TEXT: [Page 8](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/14) of the 1830 edition ends with “my”; the mark, added at the beginning of this line by an unidentified scribe, was likely intended to correspond to that page break.

1. [13](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10912712783334780057)

JS changed this from “my” to “thy”; the [1840 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/15) has “my”.

1. [14](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8699602686493692048)

Original: “come” changed to “gone”.

1. [15](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4461261100589199724)

Original: “of the Lord” inserted after “commandment”.

1. [16](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14157794075795224469)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/16): “knew”.

1. [17](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11434145014855185523)

TEXT: Mark, added by an unidentified scribe, corresponds to the end of [page 10](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/16) of the 1830 edition. The ink flow may match that of the JS cancellation of “that” below.

1. [18](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7125663663786788391)

TEXT: “◊” possibly misshapen “o” or “i”.

1. [19](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11838108169519222699)

TEXT: The ink flow of the revisions to this word appears to match the ink flow of [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery)’s insertion of “slain” seven lines below.

1. [20](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5285366339211135146)

Original: “commandment”.

1. [21](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3097812961524489813)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/20): “our”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/20): “my”.

1. [22](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9756940497378506440)

Original omits “saying”.

1. [23](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8727866288250603175)

Original omits “they”.

1. [24](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6207495514113718399)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/22): “unto”.

1. [25](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9904974879668674284)

Original: “hole” added interlinearly to “his hole” making “his hole hole”; possible reading: “his whole household”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 1:142–143.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [26](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5052426077089101962)

TEXT: Possibly “spirit of the”, with “of” not inserted.

1. [27](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8629831275021523385)

Original: “me” changed to “thee”.

1. [28](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18134942526020169553)

Original: “give thanks” changed to “offer sacrifice”.

1. [29](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5865535175227957409)

TEXT: “I” wipe-erased and written over with “me”; then stricken with whole word.

1. [30](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17502985129921485288)

Original and [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/25): “unto me, and partake of the fruit”.

1. [31](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10323806889682921894)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/25): “straight”.

1. [32](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5195495370743387977)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/26): “beheld”.

1. [33](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3583508485084499568)

Original: “up”.

1. [34](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7337516086826405099)

Original: “pressing”.

1. [35](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7919008875738582232)

Original: “thus is” changed to “thus are”.

1. [36](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4623360402666658382)

TEXT: Mark, added at the beginning of this line by an unidentified scribe, corresponds to a new chapter in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/27). The ink flow appears to match that of other JS corrections on this page.

1. [37](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12882580622402511311)

JS inserted “should” here; this emendation is not incorporated in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/28).

1. [38](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16078887683393385197)

Original: “possess again their land of inheritance”.

1. [39](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4624361259764233267)

Original: “sin”.

1. [40](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5762534235963618669)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 22](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/28) of the 1830 edition.

1. [41](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1861665406741216729)

TEXT: Pilcrow added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor.

1. [42](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-25768402534922674)

Original and [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/28): “prepared for all men”.

1. [43](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1047498815520674952)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/29): “these times”.

1. [44](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4431826730179961148)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 23](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/29) of the 1830 edition.

1. [45](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6409161624830586474)

Original: “exceding high mountain a mountain which”.

1. [46](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8618579946494471967)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 24](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/30) of the 1830 edition.

1. [47](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2273795397630075069)

Original: “most high wherefore” changed to “most high God wherefore”.

1. [48](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16096963787048876778)

Original: “is most precious”.

1. [49](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2190394280250492162)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/32): “even the Son of the Eternal Father”.

1. [50](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8263794062559580367)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/33): “the Son of the everlasting God”.

1. [51](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12332883186857090253)

Original: “bare”.

1. [52](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14849784501285101772)

Original: “bare”.

1. [53](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14023142099986615263)

Original: “world and the fall” changed to “world & it fell and the fall”.

1. [54](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11066309204702495142)

Original: “the earth that it rent & the roks that they rent” changed to “the earth & the roks that they rent”.

1. [55](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5459140477818446971)

Original: “saw the multitudes which had not fallen”.

1. [56](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5737180364061494373)

Original: “bare”.

1. [57](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11571688398045859692)

TEXT: Possibly “th{a\<​a​>}t” or “th<​a​>t”.

1. [58](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11690475296044537606)

Original: “that they perish”.

1. [59](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17692644746655292655)

Original: “sword”.

1. [60](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16280928505770096068)

TEXT: JS here canceled “Jesus Christ” and added “Mosiah”; the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/34) has “the Messiah”.

1. [61](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17909083537909667730)

Original: “formation”.

1. [62](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9804247470483831586)

Original: “formation”.

1. [63](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1269039037375089687)

TEXT: Mark, added at the beginning of this line by an unidentified scribe, corresponds to the end of [page 28](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/34) of the 1830 edition.

1. [64](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6397132369299696135)

Original: “which where”.

1. [65](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1372762379853751882)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/35): “of”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/36): “for”.

1. [66](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5411783469468456345)

Original omits “unto him”.

1. [67](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7902131992749687452)

Original: “fullness”.

1. [68](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2525099398560350866)

Original: “Land”; possible reading: “Lamb”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 1:275–276.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [69](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4653882091747411934)

Original: “bare” or possibly “bore” (both instances of “bear” in this line).

1. [70](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11451451848151873766)

Original: “seest the formation of that”.

1. [71](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15994783379734986500)

Original: “is the most abominable of all”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/37): “is most abominable above all”.

1. [72](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3788216076798382428)

Original: “most precious”.

1. [73](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15896887437236898258)

TEXT: The mark here and the mark nine lines down, added by an unidentified scribe, do not correspond to line breaks in the [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/36) or [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/37) editions. They may match the ink flow of JS’s emendations on this page.

1. [74](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10275176533240959860)

TEXT: JS canceled “&” and added “that”; this emendation is not incorporated in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/37).

1. [75](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1442077782420401630)

TEXT: JS canceled “which” and added “that”, which was partially stricken by JS; this emendation is not incorporated in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/37).

1. [76](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11237690554922211558)

Original: “woundedness”; possible reading: “wickedness”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 1:290–291.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [77](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1934325381848369940)

TEXT: JS canceled “which is” and added “which are”, or possibly “wh{o\i}ch are”.

1. [78](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-280730226284804135)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/39): “foundation”.

1. [79](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9359230189147936800)

The compositor of the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/39) resolved the singular “dominion” by changing “were” seven words later to “was”. JS’s emendation to “dominions” allowed “were” to stand in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/40).

1. [80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3008348332873141626)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/39): “gather together multitudes”.

1. [81](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12192999966685245804)

Original: “that”.

1. [82](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11062899432907988028)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 35](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/41) of the 1830 edition.

1. [83](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14976424792261632043)

Original: “bare” or possibly “bore”.

1. [84](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12502237367169196088)

Original omits “& heard”.

1. [85](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-752764854880667652)

TEXT: “V”, added by an unidentified scribe, in heavier ink flow than that of “I”. Possibly inscribed at the time the manuscript was copied.

1. [86](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10322720469676519612)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 35](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/41) of the 1830 edition.

1. [87](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5807585658730297496)

Original: “destruction”.

1. [88](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1539956447823716012)

TEXT: Partially uninked mark, added by an unidentified scribe, serves no known purpose.

1. [89](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16548248946947346639)

TEXT: “¶.2.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the second gathering of this manuscript. The notation was likely intended to keep the manuscript gatherings in order, particularly as gatherings were taken piecemeal to the printing office. As with the page numbers, it is not always clear whether Oliver Cowdery inscribed these gathering notations one at a time, or several at a time.

1. [90](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-327422381320645540)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 35](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/41) of the 1830 edition.

1. [91](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15949242097407687071)

TEXT: “w” in “which” written over a wipe-erased “s”. Original: “thing”; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/42): “things”.

1. [92](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8134713489388991966)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 36](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/42) of the 1830 edition.

1. [93](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1442244248443167825)

Original: “father”.

1. [94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2714096005041090886)

Original: “numbered”.

1. [95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-843154438903720500)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 37](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/43) of the 1830 edition.

1. [96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16911773732182200400)

Original: “so many”.

1. [97](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10079707912769361888)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 37](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/43) of the 1830 edition.

1. [98](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12941266458111862313)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 37](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/43) of the 1830 edition.

1. [99](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12433797435040401698)

Original: “prepriator”, likely “proprietor”.

1. [100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14879891320937991588)

Original: “man”. It is possible the original dictation was “soul of man”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 1:332–333.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [101](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8315465244780029015)

Original: “separated”.

1. [102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15536063633482878037)

Original: “of”.

1. [103](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17887008418132392506)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 38](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/44) of the 1830 edition.

1. [104](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16554568325513616958)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 39](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/45) of the 1830 edition.

1. [105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3063526402291065997)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/45): “eldest”.

1. [106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-947696415652682349)

Original: “words”.

1. [107](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8975614092301774906)

TEXT: Mark, added after this line by an unidentified scribe, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 40](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/46) of the 1830 edition.

1. [108](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3274873374991994299)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/47): “were”.

1. [109](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3014274019911347542)

Original: “murmuring”.

1. [110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18144040577856246148)

Original: “ways & means”.

1. [111](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14232171693160623151)

Original: “ways & means”.

1. [112](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15230594355324001555)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/49): “arrived”.

1. [113](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17347574801431176895)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/50): “kept”.

1. [114](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15018835703614053807)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/50): “words”.

1. [115](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14149535722050863616)

Original: “flying fiery”.

1. [116](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8276114056815758751)

TEXT: The compositor added a comma here; possibly “{.\,}”.

1. [117](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6800501593574534456)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/52): “reed”.

1. [118](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7274354481863302728)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 47](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/53) of the 1830 edition.

1. [119](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14791249254104420176)

Original: “elder”.

1. [120](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14475154047127855542)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the final word of the third gathering on [page 48](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/54) of the 1830 edition.

1. [121](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5450630877518418883)

Original and [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/53): “cast, with sorrow, into a”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/57): “cast into the”.

1. [122](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6209742672417347096)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/55): “were”.

1. [123](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5201183923625568061)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/56): “fathers”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/54): “forefathers”.

1. [124](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4947547030358486473)

Original: “those first plates”.

1. [125](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15927293975792818595)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. [Page 50](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/56) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “my”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [126](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6106448774424935295)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/58): “what”.

1. [127](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7639042818576518738)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 50](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/56) of the 1830 edition.

1. [128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1236783209533777277)

TEXT: “&” later canceled by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe. [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/57): “and”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/59) omits “and”.

1. [129](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12726365487796427466)

Original: “written in the books”.

1. [130](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8442787288056059018)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/57): “waters of Judah, (or out of the waters of baptism,)”.

1. [131](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12495201533016705026)

Original: “heard & seen”.

1. [132](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8478524420168170167)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/59): “from the womb”.

1. [133](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15349530733736967321)

Original: “how should I” changed to “I will not suffer”.

1. [134](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13122679264656457340)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/64): “were manifest”.

1. [135](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13259647808341928672)

Original: “unto the being nursed”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/61): “unto their being nourished”.

1. [136](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11222594510366458582)

Original: “their first inheritance”.

1. [137](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5025850478067320984)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/63): “that”.

1. [138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10236853855198511225)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/65): “that”.

1. [139](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11068851566823342271)

Original: “spake many things unto them & rehearsed unto them how great things”.

1. [140](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1446443527498448228)

Original: “consecrated”.

1. [141](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7798664403997041966)

Original: “his” changed to “my”.

1. [142](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8117691127185163971)

Original: “his” changed to “my”.

1. [143](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8241156121765915080)

TEXT: JS apparently interpreted the final “say th” as “sayeth” and therefore corrected it to “say”.

1. [144](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5239974704328956802)

TEXT: “¶.3.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the third gathering of this manuscript.

1. [145](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5176227668758203595)

TEXT: This word and “Lord” on the following page are underlined, by an unidentified scribe, for unknown reasons. It is possible that a compositor as early as 1829–1830 did the underlining, but comparison of this manuscript with various printed editions could have prompted the highlighting as well. (See also [pp. 52](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/56) and [55](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/59).)

1. [146](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9181977285967542205)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/71): “mediation”.

1. [147](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16133764303098191613)

TEXT: This word and “Law” on the previous page are underlined, by an unidentified scribe, for unknown reasons. It is possible that a compositor as early as 1829–1830 did the underlining, but comparison of this manuscript with various printed editions could have prompted the highlighting as well. (See also [pp. 51](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/55) and [55](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/59).)

1. [148](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5626299558451647204)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/76): “thy”.

1. [149](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6731824945373908897)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/73) omits “one”.

1. [150](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10812556455881820731)

TEXT: “y f” partially knife-erased and then stricken with whole words.

1. [151](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2904724655462630739)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/78): “after my father Lehi had spoken”.

1. [152](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7480936163716171257)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/76): “men”. It is possible that a compositor as early as 1829–1830 underlined this word, but comparison of this manuscript with various printed editions also could have prompted the highlighting. (See also [pp. 51](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/55) and [52](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/56).)

1. [153](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-569459089530528109)

TEXT: Mark, added at beginning of line by JS, serves no known purpose. It does not signal the end of a page in the [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/78) or [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/82) edition (though two lines later, “wherefore the word of the” ends [page 72](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/78) of the 1830 edition).

1. [154](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14120624394925915263)

TEXT: The underline on “them”, by an unidentified scribe, or possibly inscribed by the compositor, corresponds to the beginning of a line on [page 74](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/80) of the 1830 edition.

1. [155](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10633269663580960702)

Original and [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/79): “opened”.

1. [156](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-461911285408987027)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/86) of the 1830 edition.

1. [157](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10427671554408246091)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/86) of the 1830 edition.

1. [158](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16065393939613956870)

TEXT: JS accidentally struck “th” in “filthy”, perhaps thinking it was a verbal “-th” ending.

1. [159](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6866054189006325772)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/86) of the 1830 edition.

1. [160](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7699615710401268440)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a paragraph in any edition. JS may have intended the pilcrow to be stylized rather than canceled.

1. [161](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16051654942277653562)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the final word of the fifth gathering on [page 80](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/86) of the 1830 edition.

1. [162](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4565259212972182021)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 81](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/87) of the 1830 edition.

1. [163](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4021887763208704116)

TEXT: Parentheses, added by an unidentified scribe, are not incorporated into any JS-era publication.

1. [164](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6911140768540679067)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 81](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/87) of the 1830 edition.

1. [165](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11254547165589764162)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/92): “righteous”.

1. [166](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2733449176117206959)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor in graphite, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 82](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/88) of the 1830 edition.

1. [167](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15543832373541136637)

TEXT: Mark, added at the beginning of this line by JS, serves no known purpose.

1. [168](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14675349794076058928)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/93): “man boweth down”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/97): “man boweth not down”.

1. [169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4764418532604033227)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/95): “shall come to pass”.

1. [170](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1967554024235928258)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) rewrote “but” to correct misshapen first attempt.

1. [171](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8332179082021429345)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by an unidentified scribe, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 92](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/98) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14524908898104053028)

TEXT: JS correction is possibly “&” (with no caret).

1. [173](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9208411939969240238)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 92](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/98) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2246981310621362558)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 93](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/99) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13894767270369282449)

TEXT: The compositor changed “that” to “at”, probably after a comparison with the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-957555736572351033)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 93](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/99) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3952484614467311511)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/100) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8522926312721606780)

TEXT: “¶-4-”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the fourth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7531746528072252627)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/100) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15811503806909395496)

TEXT: Mark after “together” possibly an aborted comma or a stray ink mark.

1. [181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10883576645389341278)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/100) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [182](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8222791557892496512)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/100) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12238095881884548313)

TEXT: Mark after “&” possibly an aborted period or a stray ink mark.

1. [184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3910443393085267547)

TEXT: Mark in the middle of “behold” corresponds to the end of [page 94](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/100) of the 1830 edition.

1. [185](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15466441825946041582)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/101) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [186](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16888743170811511822)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/101) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [187](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9463919339481874317)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/101) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16668017203967866202)

TEXT: [Page 95](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/101) of the 1830 edition ends with “speaketh”; this mark, added by the compositor, was likely intended to correspond to that page break.

1. [189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12522923895720110128)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/102) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10842168387329187558)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/102) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [191](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3815449579867205453)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/107): “away”.

1. [192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1143923125368280978)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/102) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13201997140275851762)

TEXT: “did excel” inserted by the compositor, or possibly by an unidentified scribe; insertion likely made after a comparison with the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10429469908221304792)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 96](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/102) of the 1830 edition.

1. [195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2672232908635485452)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 98](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/104) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [196](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1091287468740170912)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery)’s changes, canceling “he” and “not”, were likely made after a comparison with the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [197](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11417293508964280552)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 98](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/104) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [198](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-568803049319504231)

TEXT: Possibly “Is{s\l}and”.

1. [199](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15971720424573012500)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 99](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/105) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [200](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2889039522988595843)

TEXT: Triple underlining by the compositor corresponds to all caps of “Jehovah” in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/105).

1. [201](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9683462335978674989)

TEXT: Triple underlining by the compositor canceled.

1. [202](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6516070469587486061)

TEXT: A line of impressed dots from an inked pounce wheel appears at this point on the page; this may have been a way of marking the compositor’s place.

1. [203](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8016729514166389248)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 99](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/105) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [204](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16680122377402948028)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/106): “her”. A line of impressed dots from an inked pounce wheel appears at this point on the page; this may have been a way of marking the compositor’s place.

1. [205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18437124959465093747)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/106) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9086542142824417123)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added and canceled by the compositor, corresponds to the end of Isaiah 13 in the King James Version of the Bible. The following sentence is found in the Book of Mormon but not in the Bible.

1. [207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9306822485199338359)

TEXT: A line of impressed dots from an inked pounce wheel appears at this point on the page; this may have been a way of marking the compositor’s place.

1. [208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13106250491710680989)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/106) of the 1830 edition and to a new chapter in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [209](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14744514522447566500)

TEXT: Several lines of impressed dots from an inked pounce wheel from here to the bottom of the page serve no known purpose.

1. [210](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2317915358994422667)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/108) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [211](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1680141565317629356)

Original: “break”.

1. [212](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4043970526441088590)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/108) of the 1830 edition and to a new paragraph in the King James Version of the Bible.

1. [213](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8862878069461551270)

TEXT: Illegible character added by the compositor is an aborted semicolon or colon.

1. [214](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2399819531302556696)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 103](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/109) of the 1830 edition.

1. [215](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6444618321961369652)

TEXT: Neither the comma after “will” nor the opening parenthesis, added by the compositor, is incorporated into the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/109). It is possible the parenthesis is a mark to indicate the progress of the compositor, though it does not correspond to the end of a line in that edition.

1. [216](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14150184193929857906)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/111) of the 1830 edition.

1. [217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16625305593220601004)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/112) of the 1830 edition.

1. [218](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5255931518423695607)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/113): “into”.

1. [219](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1765791864033488639)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 108](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/114) of the 1830 edition.

1. [220](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3202356556562529514)

TEXT: In JS’s correction, the caret is written over the “r” in “founder”, possibly in an attempt to cancel the letter.

1. [221](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17728820734694944995)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/116) of the 1830 edition.

1. [222](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4437403983778646732)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 113](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/119) of the 1830 edition.

1. [223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7138130137778416379)

TEXT: Possible dittography. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 2:873–874.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6207408177643626822)

TEXT: Parts of “&” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12658145325285724028)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/119): “pure”.

1. [226](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16213256965946726255)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/120) omits “must”.

1. [227](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4771486792329282878)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/124): “sins”.

1. [228](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4757657656948668670)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/125): “straightness”.

1. [229](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3119363554568427690)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/126): “straight”.

1. [230](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5262732952146765033)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/126): “straight”.

1. [231](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5863182979583464698)

TEXT: JS changed “things” to “word”; this change agrees with the singular pronoun in the text following; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/134) uses plural “words”.

1. [232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12695174682864628469)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/128): “will be made”.

1. [233](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16124068549275374721)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/134): “them”.

1. [234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7163611950802593787)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/128): “straight”.

1. [235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14517825248090920079)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/130): “whatever”.

1. [236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3990741262433363910)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 125](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/131) of the 1830 edition.

1. [237](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2956018084073811689)

TEXT: “¶ 5”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the fifth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [238](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2727712943884889913)

TEXT: The inserted hyphen was likely intended to close up the gap between “a” and “bomination◊”. “◊” is likely an “s”, canceled with a vertical stroke. (See similar cancellation of “s” on manuscript [page 66](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/70).)

1. [239](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14023675942604417109)

TEXT: The graphite mark, added by the compositor, and a similar mark twelve lines down serve no known purpose.

1. [240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6337197703894193986)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/134): “fathers”.

1. [241](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9561898296502039196)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/134) of the 1830 edition.

1. [242](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13222824207119205135)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/134) of the 1830 edition.

1. [243](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10658546702924490248)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/134) of the 1830 edition.

1. [244](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3386508616892790846)

TEXT: “brethren” inserted by the compositor, or possibly by an unidentified scribe. The ink flow of this insertion is similar to that of the inserted “did excel” on manuscript [page 76](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/80).

1. [245](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10192440196683955684)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 131](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/137) of the 1830 edition.

1. [246](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7208891852221761708)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/139): “part”.

1. [247](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6685124392970542800)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/146) omits “of the vineyard”.

1. [248](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-246326299295176196)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/135): “the”.

1. [249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16908354823311161217)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/140): “into”.

1. [250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9367299692909159256)

TEXT: The colon at the beginning of the line, added by an unidentified scribe, serves no known purpose.

1. [251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10659128219614770652)

TEXT: Possibly “th{e\<​is​>}”.

1. [252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15784704876059737982)

TEXT: [Page 134](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/140) of the 1830 edition ends with “it”; the mark, added by JS at the beginning of this line, was likely intended to correspond to the page break.

1. [253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3286556813627079266)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/141): “a”.

1. [254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7118882127769634861)

TEXT: The text in the original manuscript is obscure, but there does not appear to be any room for “about” in the original manuscript unless it was inserted above the line. JS may have added “about” here without textual precedent.

1. [255](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5798978124153014385)

TEXT: Unlike the compositor’s other punctuation on this page, the period here is in ink.

1. [256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7243719892243776949)

TEXT: Bleed-through from manuscript [page 106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/110) makes “of the” appear to be canceled.

1. [257](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4280232875845758892)

TEXT: The ink flow of the period following “fruit” and the capital “W”, added by the compositor, appears to match that of the period in line 4 above.

1. [258](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15559554315366158186)

TEXT: Bleed-through from manuscript [page 105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/109) makes part of “vineyard” appear to be canceled.

1. [259](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7408744462010782853)

TEXT: Bleed-through from manuscript [page 105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/109) makes part of “shall” appear to be canceled.

1. [260](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4694889622374567475)

TEXT: Comma after “to”, added by an unidentified scribe, is in heavier ink flow, likely in the handwriting of [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [261](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8541168689678001850)

Original: possibly “vineyard & the good the Lord”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 2:1032–1033.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [262](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9892035006611899154)

TEXT: Comma added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [263](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10804105124023284259)

TEXT: Possibly inserted at a later time.

1. [264](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2767975137137940135)

TEXT: “behold”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), and “Prophet” (inserted above the next line) possibly inserted at the time of original inscription.

1. [265](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1757620607946333099)

TEXT: JS struck “n” to make “ever” but then wipe-erased the cancellation.

1. [266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16141331161620589940)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/114). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6355147932820467135)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/148): “armies”.

1. [268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6969614452064748247)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/148) omits “wild”.

1. [269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1291453885617719146)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, indicates the end of the book of Jacob in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/149).

1. [270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8345738633794730229)

TEXT: “ft” is double underlined.

1. [271](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6769634088142330348)

Original: possibly “and I remembered the words”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 2:1073–1075.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8439280431162000961)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/157) omits “&”.

1. [273](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14838670534037395012)

TEXT: Possibly inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) at a later time.

1. [274](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16583748942930617816)

TEXT: Mark, apparently inscribed by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 143](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/149) of the 1830 edition.

1. [275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10923469333685214091)

TEXT: Comma possibly inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) at a later time.

1. [276](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2120821361985275218)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [277](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1783780568405825927)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/150) omits parentheses, added by the compositor.

1. [278](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-614659273956716764)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/150): “struggles”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/158): “strugglings”.

1. [279](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2805201406270128765)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 144](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/150) of the 1830 edition.

1. [280](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10903409650288296791)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/150): “bare”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/158): “bear”.

1. [281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13662824367880477497)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 145](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/151) of the 1830 edition.

1. [282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5466702999676328771)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/151): “girded”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/158): “girdle”.

1. [283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10310942294893095129)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on manuscript [page 112](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/116) makes part of “as I saw” appear to be canceled.

1. [284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14090234324473798640)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of the book of Enos in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/151).

1. [285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5873706129912544279)

TEXT: Possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3405490938203800692)

TEXT: “many” inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16476893455394933555)

TEXT: “&” inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2425401977486379887)

TEXT: Offsetting from a cancellation on manuscript [page 115](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/119) makes “few” appear to be canceled.

1. [289](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3128894020391452165)

TEXT: “&” stricken by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [290](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8541905602619722008)

TEXT: “s” inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [291](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5902742525275103616)

TEXT: “the Book of Mosiah” possibly inserted after the time of the original inscription.

1. [292](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16255564742168168191)

TEXT: “s” inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [293](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15050373126914910370)

TEXT: “g” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [294](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14424532263466382689)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/162) omits “thereby”.

1. [295](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18075278837531944804)

TEXT: Cancellation and insertion, by an unidentified scribe, possibly in the handwriting of [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [296](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4911164414556817750)

TEXT: “be” inserted by an unidentified scribe, or possibly in the handwriting of [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery). The ink flow of this change matches that of the inserted “of” five lines above.

1. [297](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13011700556247391229)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/163): “clear”.

1. [298](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5390693112640182446)

TEXT: Period, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 157](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/163) of the 1830 edition and to the end of a paragraph on that page.

1. [299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14277565730002634524)

TEXT: Question mark, added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by JS.

1. [300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7282089543560949843)

TEXT: An inserted “s” appears here, though it seems to be an ink smear rather than an attempt to edit the word.

1. [301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6945862517910369169)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 158](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/164) of the 1830 edition.

1. [302](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18399775091715641067)

TEXT: Comma inserted by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12589548729396491049)

TEXT: Missing text supplied from the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/165).

1. [304](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11137677029854153252)

TEXT: “¶ 6.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the sixth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [305](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2593016001921602665)

TEXT: An ink blot makes “&” appear to be canceled.

1. [306](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17882301163081674810)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/166) omits “as”.

1. [307](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16483562928019196055)

TEXT: Illegible material likely “ness”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/163): “worthlessness”.

1. [308](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9045653596437116351)

TEXT: Illegible character, added by JS, likely “s”.

1. [309](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5508437753956747873)

TEXT: “{.\,}” added by JS, or possibly written by an unidentified scribe.

1. [310](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3935315947694885062)

TEXT: “p” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [311](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7657660872248707353)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/180) omits “to keep”.

1. [312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18345818993090714202)

TEXT: Wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15099007600171682631)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a chapter and the end of [page 165](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/171) of the 1830 edition.

1. [314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1395377280919244277)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on manuscript [page 128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/132) makes “except” appear to be canceled.

1. [315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8956199463885289020)

TEXT: “save” changed to “except” by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6521768482004883801)

TEXT: Offsetting from a cancellation on manuscript [page 129](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/133) makes “three” appear to be underlined.

1. [317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15876641471514770207)

TEXT: “s” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9356576147008031512)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new chapter in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/174).

1. [319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4116603961837011625)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/175) of the 1830 edition.

1. [320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5339053790617509474)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/175) of the 1830 edition.

1. [321](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17343169846302064251)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 170](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/176) of the 1830 edition.

1. [322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3416910525416459894)

TEXT: JS’s deletion of “the” possibly from misreading “reap the” as “reapeth”.

1. [323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11196780199671456663)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 171](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/177) of the 1830 edition.

1. [324](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15301029736299228030)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/178) of the 1830 edition.

1. [325](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14958277778015112752)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/178) of the 1830 edition.

1. [326](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-336319378537112054)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/179).

1. [327](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8595488704384868266)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 173](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/179) of the 1830 edition.

1. [328](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17401633105478234069)

TEXT: “been” inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by the compositor.

1. [329](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16353274490669305766)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/180) of the 1830 edition.

1. [330](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11000854314704311447)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/180) of the 1830 edition.

1. [331](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15395052636714627112)

TEXT: Pilcrow, aded by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/181) of the 1830 edition.

1. [332](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12640593681256889698)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/190): “off”.

1. [333](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2115345892131683574)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/181).

1. [334](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4616675514868282033)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/181) of the 1830 edition.

1. [335](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11327923487134119333)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/181) of the 1830 edition.

1. [336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4039212635244929710)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/181) of the 1830 edition.

1. [337](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1058789225474111665)

TEXT: This second “& work” may have been mistakenly introduced into either the original manuscript or this manuscript. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 2:1247–1249.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16856212324119451748)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182) of the 1830 edition.

1. [339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6766646706215453097)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182).

1. [340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11883299210974748424)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182) of the 1830 edition.

1. [341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17879641740689339102)

TEXT: “e” stricken by an unidentified scribe, or possibly by the compositor.

1. [342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14386301923186195544)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182) of the 1830 edition.

1. [343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12190957749354241630)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182) of the 1830 edition.

1. [344](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1013406484583786548)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/182) of the 1830 edition.

1. [345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13602033107136931126)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on manuscript [page 133](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/137) makes “yet they” appear to be canceled.

1. [346](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10760436218931026142)

TEXT: Comma, added by an unidentified scribe, possibly inserted by JS.

1. [347](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1602131899802250088)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/183) of the 1830 edition.

1. [348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2510811609368568594)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/183).

1. [349](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1669863332084017345)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/183) of the 1830 edition.

1. [350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8642937932408542322)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/183) of the 1830 edition.

1. [351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7331624757180924791)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/183).

1. [352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15991593036029957667)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/184) of the 1830 edition.

1. [353](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7189180248400414301)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/184) of the 1830 edition.

1. [354](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8035432825163156969)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/194): “ever”.

1. [355](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18187877050120505783)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/184) of the 1830 edition.

1. [356](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-978912796690307927)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/185) of the 1830 edition.

1. [357](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12473608525541365125)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/185).

1. [358](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10082579015982197321)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/185) of the 1830 edition.

1. [359](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1440539982747651548)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/185) of the 1830 edition.

1. [360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1092145884767784213)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/185) of the 1830 edition.

1. [361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15993979724376189566)

TEXT: “unto” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11915209024254832295)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/186) of the 1830 edition.

1. [363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15724113621414934890)

TEXT: Offsetting from a cancellation on manuscript [page 137](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/141) makes “my” appear to be canceled.

1. [364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9417767396520796693)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/186).

1. [365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12548262063741849469)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/186) of the 1830 edition.

1. [366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17485513605466400414)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/196) omits “again”.

1. [367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15813213814218699173)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/186).

1. [368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18381233521634444719)

TEXT: Comma added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [369](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13767020641255274132)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/187) of the 1830 edition.

1. [370](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13172590798364419972)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on manuscript [page 138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/142) makes “this will” appear to be canceled.

1. [371](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11927780005873988509)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/187) of the 1830 edition.

1. [372](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12688293352663844388)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on manuscript [page 138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/142) makes “saith” appear to be canceled.

1. [373](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14701796010123090592)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/187) of the 1830 edition.

1. [374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5477620122134881363)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/187) of the 1830 edition.

1. [375](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12134317544525636545)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/188).

1. [376](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12811839930034962888)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 182](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/188) of the 1830 edition.

1. [377](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18265642816058301496)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/188).

1. [378](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5461522757367635268)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/188).

1. [379](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5111100059507103636)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe. The comma may have been intended to correspond to the end of a line on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10193594331003014338)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189).

1. [381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8542891131065980954)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189).

1. [382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15826156312095902159)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe; possibly intended to correspond to the end of a paragraph on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3142902431278761924)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7413038385787700937)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16678123137910018607)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [386](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-628355474388492359)

TEXT: Apostrophe added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [387](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8766398926900119857)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line on [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/189) of the 1830 edition.

1. [388](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16721104577080535468)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/190) of the 1830 edition.

1. [389](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-955796419718259242)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/190) of the 1830 edition.

1. [390](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8697141832090886213)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line on [page 184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/190) of the 1830 edition.

1. [391](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-951815099958580675)

TEXT: “8th” added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [392](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5921578884013721672)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe. [Page 185](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/191) of the 1830 edition has a line break between “there” and “fore”; this comma may have been intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [393](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8451772742944267980)

TEXT: “&” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [394](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9676857618803505177)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 186](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/192) of the 1830 edition.

1. [395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4060513222967255161)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/193).

1. [396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11997767417747375652)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/193): “are”. This portion of the original is not extant; it may have been “are”, and [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) may have misread it as “art”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 2:1337.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4170425994084747965)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/204): “these”.

1. [398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12738603333529367624)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/194).

1. [399](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6912201830538870703)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/194) of the 1830 edition.

1. [400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12422971640690734492)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/194) of the 1830 edition.

1. [401](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6767371205134286223)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/195).

1. [402](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7441411849774639337)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/195) of the 1830 edition.

1. [403](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-605468952591581541)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/195) of the 1830 edition.

1. [404](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7809571745378549238)

TEXT: The two lines on either side of “words”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), separate it from the rest of the insertion.

1. [405](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1027705937841904678)

TEXT: Red ink smear appears after “sent”.

1. [406](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5066557255573567986)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/196) of the 1830 edition.

1. [407](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8291612083386841210)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/196): “accusation”.

1. [408](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8429084751168091667)

TEXT: “I” added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5764584966825529429)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/196) of the 1830 edition.

1. [410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2021793440155990046)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/196) of the 1830 edition.

1. [411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-977692682651914551)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/207) omits “& bound him”.

1. [412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5955017861724752684)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/207) omits “the pains that I do suffer”.

1. [413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12312383270630361301)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 191](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/197) of the 1830 edition.

1. [414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17026700635415055304)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/197).

1. [415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5842269278331818070)

TEXT: Red ink smear appears after “having”.

1. [416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9211492644108118935)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/197).

1. [417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3410063660527987376)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/198) of the 1830 edition.

1. [418](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4380260005530622182)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/198) of the 1830 edition.

1. [419](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1749170188411371230)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/198) of the 1830 edition.

1. [420](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4128361801786160220)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/199) of the 1830 edition.

1. [421](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2657938989567798223)

TEXT: “¶ 7”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the seventh gathering of this manuscript.

1. [422](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1081716113794905180)

TEXT: Compositor’s large, faint “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this portion of the page.

1. [423](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8726294586259185434)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/199) of the 1830 edition.

1. [424](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17465075438513911752)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/210) omits “a”.

1. [425](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12968848186300780147)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/200) of the 1830 edition.

1. [426](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7882959467348847284)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “never” and “theless”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/200) of the 1830 edition.

1. [427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16379988193932962603)

TEXT: “f” stricken twice.

1. [428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10808884836721555358)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/200) of the 1830 edition.

1. [429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13210147967818566900)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/201) of the 1830 edition.

1. [430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14974792685842027384)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/211) omits “the”.

1. [431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1024508435908239445)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/201) of the 1830 edition.

1. [432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9878125267343884740)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/201) of the 1830 edition.

1. [433](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16642908169573596914)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/201) of the 1830 edition.

1. [434](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4393031883110243433)

TEXT: “that” stricken by the compositor, or possibly by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [435](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17509411275047203387)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/216) omits “of”.

1. [436](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-200623717905569028)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/217): “Mosiah”.

1. [437](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14405335500598834317)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/206): “his”. JS changed text to “th◊ir”.

1. [438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-70577150653363761)

TEXT: “XI” added by an unidentified scribe; “I” stricken first by an unidentified scribe and then by the compositor.

1. [439](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6748134971460808461)

TEXT: Semicolon added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16540263316950207173)

TEXT: “s” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [441](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11431935909577412679)

TEXT: “g” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [442](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5361363126101056859)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/208): “the”.

1. [443](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8667590352849255660)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 202](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/208) of the 1830 edition.

1. [444](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13281388846956856338)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper between “ver” and “ry”. [Page 203](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/209) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “very”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [445](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3815998680486106152)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/210): “which they called Helam”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/221) follows the text of this manuscript.

1. [446](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6164043655495544124)

TEXT: “,” added by the compositor, or possibly “;”. More likely, there is a stray mark above the comma.

1. [447](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-416510479293086364)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 204](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/210) of the 1830 edition.

1. [448](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8026841453771199382)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “pos” and “ession”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/211) of the 1830 edition.

1. [449](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11810261362291529845)

TEXT: “,” added by the compositor, or possibly “;”. More likely, there is a stray mark above the comma.

1. [450](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8184134783155827188)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/211) of the 1830 edition.

1. [451](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16535270248755135443)

TEXT: “he” added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe; the insertion is in graphite and is lighter than the nearby inserted punctuation.

1. [452](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-993429782040409848)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/212) omits “this”.

1. [453](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3124561324320421220)

TEXT: “,” added by the compositor, or possibly “;”. More likely, there is a stray mark above the comma.

1. [454](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7078436908594182641)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/212) of the 1830 edition.

1. [455](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7526090027423323779)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/212) omits “the name of”.

1. [456](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8560956589117832152)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/212) of the 1830 edition.

1. [457](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16362502636237724230)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/213) of the 1830 edition.

1. [458](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12206170674286565684)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “wilder” and “ness”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/213) of the 1830 edition.

1. [459](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1527460300339724264)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/213): “Mulok”.

1. [460](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2343855087313160950)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/224) omits “the time”.

1. [461](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-715577864030937801)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper between “ma” and “ny”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/213) of the 1830 edition.

1. [462](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9894732592450247993)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/214) of the 1830 edition.

1. [463](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12576897874251363488)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/214) of the 1830 edition.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10096527888893145736)

[Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [464](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15415730226394072003)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper between “preach” and “ing”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/214) of the 1830 edition.

1. [465](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13570459107103595563)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/214) of the 1830 edition.

1. [466](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-719474254472556688)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 209](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/215) of the 1830 edition.

1. [467](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15180855086321804626)

TEXT: “◊◊”, at end of line, wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [468](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4968516861073098715)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/209): “unto”.

1. [469](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14392647404371237898)

TEXT: “di◊” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [470](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7583149823109765457)

TEXT: “1” is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/162).

1. [471](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2203007446666140758)

TEXT: This word and “s{ec\ec}retly” three lines below were corrected because the letters were misshapen.

1. [472](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-596920912793641662)

TEXT: Parenthesis appears to signal the end of the strikethrough.

1. [473](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10227229708562431142)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/212) omits “of his people & also the prayers”.

1. [474](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8736001427978023205)

TEXT: Offsetting from a cancellation on manuscript [page 163](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/167) makes “might” appear to be canceled.

1. [475](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4788808671602151532)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/213): “wandering”.

1. [476](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17277082337423111645)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/232): “foresee and that”; possible reading: “but now I know that they may foresee that he will come”. (Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 3:1515–1519.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [477](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15595279578140559602)

TEXT: Possibly a flourish; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/221) omits “E”.

1. [478](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16399762788302708856)

This is actually chapter 12 in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/221).

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2794183685733715005)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) begins.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1031217075407023844)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8432346591443236685)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) begins.

1. [479](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1260127967962966787)

TEXT: “r” added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [480](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2864699810801627135)

TEXT: Comma added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe; the ink flow of the insertion is heavier than that of the compositor’s punctuation.

1. [481](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3088323209490158274)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/223) of the 1830 edition.

1. [482](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1043731590363369849)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/223): “out throughout”.

1. [483](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11084492598182485442)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/223) of the 1830 edition.

1. [484](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1023265766460675700)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 218](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/224) of the 1830 edition.

1. [485](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13325960617874993129)

TEXT: “h” wipe-erased and then written over, then stricken with whole word.

1. [486](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16190648284801538665)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/236) omits “according to the crime which he has committed”.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7129111897379228030)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [487](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14201858895531647911)

TEXT: “death” stricken first by scribe 2 and then again by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [488](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9933921562339062738)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/225).

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13332452224038584083)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) begins.

1. [489](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1154675308114196111)

TEXT: “ed” stricken first by the compositor and then again by JS.

1. [490](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7869558510640086376)

TEXT: The underlining and marks signify the abbreviation of a word.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3577052775171645811)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [491](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7742103859235149807)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/238): “first chief judge”.

1. [492](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-341826910490152140)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/227): “sixty and three years old”.

1. [493](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6220046706155884556)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of the book of Mosiah in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/227).

1. [494](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13451358625162333725)

TEXT: The sequence of copying “Chapter 1st” and the title of the book may indicate that the book title (“the Book of Alma”) was written after “Chapter” in the original manuscript.

1. [495](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14902491746222898608)

TEXT: “¶ 8.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the eighth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [496](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15620205168125770434)

TEXT: “s” canceled by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), and then stricken with whole word.

1. [497](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12367279581703001076)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 222](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/228) of the 1830 edition.

1. [498](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4531574363960746817)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/229) of the 1830 edition.

1. [499](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4679148072658835088)

TEXT: “th” stricken by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [500](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15246434860651035486)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/229) of the 1830 edition.

1. [501](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4519633487281917998)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “la” and “bours”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/229) of the 1830 edition.

1. [502](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7183409348548504593)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230) of the 1830 edition.

1. [503](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5025435140595192362)

TEXT: While editing for the publication of the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/242), JS inserted “or” to make the printer’s manuscript agree with the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230).

1. [504](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15633077784281940831)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230) omits “persecuting”.

1. [505](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3757214528147241465)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230) of the 1830 edition.

1. [506](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10223694470946087581)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/223): “become”.

1. [507](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10321611826863642087)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230) of the 1830 edition.

1. [508](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15578360190248483530)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/230) of the 1830 edition.

1. [509](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14584995246179475501)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/231) of the 1830 edition.

1. [510](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6461650294371996925)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/231) of the 1830 edition.

1. [511](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-573477615937478356)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/244) omits “up”.

1. [512](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9501508535163042118)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/233): “preserve”.

1. [513](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-702831705403056817)

TEXT: “river” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16853362105533001574)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) begins.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16820304620974187728)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [514](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8457247986458770978)

TEXT: “Number” stricken by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [515](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3880050617473481769)

TEXT: JS canceled the “&” by overwriting it with “X”, or possibly with a strikethrough: “&”. [Page 228](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/234) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “they had”; JS’s mark may have been intended to correspond to that line break. The compositors of the 1837 edition likely interpreted the mark as a strikethrough, since “and” does not appear in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/246).

1. [516](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8973614435207026725)

TEXT: “were” stricken by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [517](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10932507676042911337)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/236): “endeth”.

1. [518](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11882922666873342472)

TEXT: “of” stricken and then wipe-erased.

1. [519](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15785677425454383079)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/249): “endeth”.

1. [520](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7885764993128652638)

TEXT: JS corrected “which” to “where”, or possibly “who”.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18368319632638391466)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) begins.

1. [521](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6961955114525429269)

TEXT: Hyphen added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [522](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14540037335620940913)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/238) of the 1830 edition.

1. [523](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1135017823248396403)

TEXT: “Now” triple underlined. While other instances of triple underlining apparently indicated that the type should be set in all caps, this triple underlining does not correspond to all caps in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/238), though this is the first word in the chapter after the heading.

1. [524](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15289018708827500631)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/238): “deliver”.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10119969595335892636)

[Hyrum Smith](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/hyrum-smith) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [525](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1675865667080892363)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/238) of the 1830 edition.

1. [526](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5309562670991300049)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 233](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/239) of the 1830 edition.

1. [527](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3369113859251740260)

TEXT: “d” wipe-erased by scribe 2 and then stricken by the compositor.

1. [528](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12628433394110206064)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/240) of the 1830 edition.

1. [529](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6499795974712745736)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/240) of the 1830 edition.

1. [530](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18431457736443451415)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/240) of the 1830 edition.

1. [531](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15911658187643657242)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [532](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13091474250703994617)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/241) of the 1830 edition.

1. [533](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16065796487400992656)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/241) of the 1830 edition.

1. [534](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2765880181720610052)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/241): “hewn”.

1. [535](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5115614416163583571)

TEXT: “e” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [536](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5403097999942943259)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/241) of the 1830 edition.

1. [537](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6224952828336848266)

TEXT: The compositor appears to have written a comma over a misshapen comma. [Page 235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/241) of the 1830 edition has a line break at this point; the misshapen comma may have been intended to mark that line break.

1. [538](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7969411187222036978)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “works” and the punctuation. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/242) of the 1830 edition.

1. [539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4091238179519149599)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “Be” and “hold”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/242) of the 1830 edition.

1. [540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14401655251597613977)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/242) of the 1830 edition.

1. [541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7599028624483247751)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/242) of the 1830 edition.

1. [542](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14608661857930985171)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally along this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/188). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [543](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6402977687575667232)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 237](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/243) of the 1830 edition.

1. [544](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6848325440390362627)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally along this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [545](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9286934338337209085)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [546](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14849335246585833685)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally along this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/187). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [547](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8940694428454164414)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe. [Page 239](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/245) of the 1830 edition has a page break between “breth-” and “ren”; this comma may have been intended to mark that page break.

1. [548](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6424341583437392711)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/246) omits final “repent ye”.

1. [549](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13263668434002903049)

TEXT: Comma added by scribe 2, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [550](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8145847357040016305)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/259): “succor”.

1. [551](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4950812148585619706)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/246) of the 1830 edition.

1. [552](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-680208416031500987)

TEXT: Semicolon, initially uninked and then rewritten in graphite by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/246) of the 1830 edition.

1. [553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2971535209205373855)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/240): “words”.

1. [554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10599634165379869940)

TEXT: Period added by scribe 2, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [555](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9548392206157560386)

TEXT: “85” added by scribe 2; its meaning is unknown.

1. [556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13557918178474322440)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe; it may have been intended to mark the end of [page 243](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/249) of the 1830 edition (which ends just before “Lord”).

1. [557](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17923086208333447353)

TEXT: Scribe 2 inserted “/”, likely to separate the mistakenly joined “aman” into two words.

1. [558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4941375522702711625)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/250): “church”.

1. [559](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8044840566753021204)

TEXT: Period added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [560](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9551880630521433537)

TEXT: The two commas in this line added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [561](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11687160925470744406)

TEXT: “¶ 9. .B.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the ninth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [562](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16581218228061606329)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [563](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12276838438329984717)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [564](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13570802358327474712)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/253) omits second “repent ye”. Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [565](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4396159289610983124)

TEXT: JS changed “their” to “his”. [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/267): “their”.

1. [566](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17272229748063557987)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [567](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1565600928444358382)

TEXT: “That”, added by JS, apparently emends “which” one line below.

1. [568](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-27697882612226260)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/254): “Giddonah”.

1. [569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8930775030383793317)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 248](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/254) of the 1830 edition.

1. [570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7457668817144219099)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/255): “marvelous”.

1. [571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15238301797450205001)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/268): “the”.

1. [572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11398922893305646156)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/255) of the 1830 edition.

1. [573](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9268448920885432515)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/255) of the 1830 edition.

1. [574](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4131589901802475713)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/255) of the 1830 edition.

1. [575](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15554955086012747479)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/255) of the 1830 edition.

1. [576](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6799103551953669689)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/256) of the 1830 edition.

1. [577](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5375473277198824157)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/256) of the 1830 edition.

1. [578](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5247021286541077484)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/257) of the 1830 edition.

1. [579](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-47136548479482609)

TEXT: Illegible character stricken by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [580](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5828311112461672153)

TEXT: “saying” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [581](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1121982079798236520)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/257) of the 1830 edition.

1. [582](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11925789901615574099)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/257) of the 1830 edition.

1. [583](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8990037521191329838)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/257) of the 1830 edition.

1. [584](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15132650120371815829)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/249): “stripped”.

1. [585](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11655561124078675819)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) of the 1830 edition.

1. [586](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12760602758752555275)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258): “ezrom”.

1. [587](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1679303177776627087)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) of the 1830 edition.

1. [588](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12450682140731910994)

TEXT: “a” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [589](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6163287091884575259)

Original: “shiblum” changed to “shilum”.

1. [590](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4548953873809930029)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258): “shublons”. The 1830 edition places this sentence after the following sentence.

1. [591](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17669489180352971695)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) of the 1830 edition.

1. [592](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11757935264328403670)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) of the 1830 edition.

1. [593](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6562140596898575384)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) omits “I will”.

1. [594](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3634411750032709104)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/258) of the 1830 edition.

1. [595](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1542410914046206)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/259) of the 1830 edition.

1. [596](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14154485917180217250)

TEXT: “a” added before “gain” by scribe 2, making “again”; “a” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [597](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10393040948375437407)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/259) of the 1830 edition.

1. [598](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1101278122416963442)

Original: “speak”; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/259): “spake”.

1. [599](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17440190071469849651)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/259) of the 1830 edition.

1. [600](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7939827975017617360)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/260) of the 1830 edition.

1. [601](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5574197880174761666)

TEXT: “reigned” changed to “arraigned” by the compositor, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [602](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4975343121988273989)

TEXT: “is” added by the compositor, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [603](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9953971752202730197)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/260) of the 1830 edition.

1. [604](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8359136924010950858)

TEXT: Comma added by scribe 2, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [605](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12456052132841887673)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [606](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18441433576693785951)

TEXT: Comma added by scribe 2, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [607](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3586073485811659437)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/275): “works”.

1. [608](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15994780655762824669)

TEXT: “for” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [609](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16841097022504175131)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/262) of the 1830 edition.

1. [610](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10137660027720490334)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/262) of the 1830 edition.

1. [611](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2214751684841105323)

TEXT: Mark corresponds to the end of [page 256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/262) of the 1830 edition.

1. [612](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6164705160640549100)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [613](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6551653495152383486)

TEXT: “of” wipe-erased by scribe 2 and then stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [614](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2820214995911240689)

TEXT: JS added “w” above “which”; apparently he began to change “which” to “who”.

1. [615](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17154555450348777625)

TEXT: Comma, added by JS, possibly intended to correspond to the end of [page 258](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/264) of the 1830 edition.

1. [616](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6597219457299935774)

TEXT: “◊” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [617](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4621055464349888860)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/265): “of”.

1. [618](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4835590007943028452)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [619](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17618384859886109822)

TEXT: While editing for the publication of the 1837 edition, JS changed “their” to “these” to make the printer’s manuscript agree with the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/266).

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13398400482747735321)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) begins.

1. [620](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1435536382172850560)

TEXT: [Page 260](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/266) of the 1830 edition ends with “un-”; JS’s mark may have been intended to correspond to that page break.

1. [621](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1535069032049786367)

TEXT: “ir” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [622](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15828352682874861738)

TEXT: “be” wipe-erased and then stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [623](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2890381396706410313)

TEXT: “had” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [624](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16891384048096283991)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 263](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/269) of the 1830 edition.

1. [625](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3536106718007230547)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new chapter on [page 266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/272) of the 1830 edition.

1. [626](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7728094461118076187)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/272) of the 1830 edition.

1. [627](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7233505758995114651)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/272) of the 1830 edition.

1. [628](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11041685680869813147)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/272) of the 1830 edition.

1. [629](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10532050935095889418)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/273) of the 1830 edition.

1. [630](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13705796684196933547)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/273).

1. [631](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9925946377960721133)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/273) of the 1830 edition.

1. [632](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17152202917706037880)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/273) of the 1830 edition.

1. [633](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14394737900547769500)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/273) of the 1830 edition.

1. [634](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5537695581562870061)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [635](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16702033180180748770)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/274) of the 1830 edition.

1. [636](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5707881268190136989)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/274) of the 1830 edition.

1. [637](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16954424641694704838)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [638](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-792735555569540594)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a chapter on [page 268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/274) of the 1830 edition.

1. [639](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8804437437739166313)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275) of the 1830 edition.

1. [640](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11200874133891586745)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275): “met with the”.

1. [641](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2645131444482261556)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “a” and “journeying”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275) of the 1830 edition.

1. [642](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17905789646128694901)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275) of the 1830 edition.

1. [643](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13113716569651668181)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275) of the 1830 edition.

1. [644](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8530178108060290171)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/275) of the 1830 edition.

1. [645](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9836526876834245400)

TEXT: There is a fold in the page between this line and the one following.

1. [646](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14272023192811433042)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/290) omits “& prayed much,”.

1. [647](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12917156871944311300)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276) of the 1830 edition.

1. [648](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11564481364116131007)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276) of the 1830 edition.

1. [649](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3794296544643215955)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276) of the 1830 edition.

1. [650](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2996334947424702660)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276) of the 1830 edition.

1. [651](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4879873004611220264)

TEXT: An ink blot makes “to” appear to be canceled.

1. [652](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16002932903311640349)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “per” and “haps”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276) of the 1830 edition.

1. [653](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12251840239638908181)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/276): “administer”.

1. [654](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12753532451279679569)

TEXT: JS inserted and canceled an illegible character; possibly stray ink marks.

1. [655](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5398362155220483568)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 271](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/277) of the 1830 edition.

1. [656](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4395343510555415825)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/277).

1. [657](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7619756428303579442)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [658](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10184162658685034678)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [659](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15760549621733479198)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [660](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12512779009492770966)

TEXT: “¶ 10.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the tenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [661](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2205659638857346849)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “never” and “the”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [662](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17855299383576265327)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [663](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10968388992395766875)

TEXT: JS inserted “with his sword”; though the insertion caret overwrites “&”, “&” was not meant to be canceled.

1. [664](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4409598867116833123)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/278) of the 1830 edition.

1. [665](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4292101698943733238)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [666](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-814330528240005017)

TEXT: “he” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [667](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15398635771510103399)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/281) of the 1830 edition.

1. [668](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10799128041947381849)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/281): “answered, and said unto”.

1. [669](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8752937332584989318)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/282): “it in”.

1. [670](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2919290613980601351)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/274): “much”.

1. [671](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7082981156851940664)

TEXT: JS emendation apparently intended to change “light” to “life”.

1. [672](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16569405395891538354)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/285): “clasped”.

1. [673](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2555830890391535306)

TEXT: Uninked “|” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 280](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/286) of the 1830 edition.

1. [674](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-161538362099803791)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/286): “my”.

1. [675](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5698984405419360003)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/287) of the 1830 edition.

1. [676](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11458323061306352000)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/287) of the 1830 edition. The inserted “Cut” was likely an instruction to cut the leaf at this point.

1. [677](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4768188787816661938)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following. Graphite smearing makes some of the words on this line appear to be underlined.

1. [678](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3846746558700735107)

TEXT: “use of his life. & wh” underlined by the compositor for unknown purposes.

1. [679](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1974591424526886806)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/288) of the 1830 edition.

1. [680](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17238456672779403581)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/288) of the 1830 edition.

1. [681](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11860586759577316258)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/288) of the 1830 edition.

1. [682](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6433132649694839382)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [683](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4623844811778404524)

All instances of “Amalekites” in this chapter were likely intended to be “Amlicites”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 3:1605–1609.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [684](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15800117480574343823)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [685](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18406906452294921198)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/304): “strong”.

1. [686](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13177329817101105284)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [687](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18376037074210715034)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [688](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3488762406876606666)

TEXT: Two instances of an uninked “/”, one between “Syna” and “go” and one between “go” and “gues”, etched into the paper. The first mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [689](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8116039382014888501)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [690](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11134819197345508291)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [691](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-991157575825370935)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [692](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5611052676035958427)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/289) of the 1830 edition.

1. [693](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6183115459836485587)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [694](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-893954261916514543)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition.

1. [695](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12094485924908873307)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. [Page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “every”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [696](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8195367410050373588)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition.

1. [697](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6747622890044492368)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition.

1. [698](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-421532903158850287)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition.

1. [699](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-118883375462157133)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290) of the 1830 edition.

1. [700](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1545380531496920134)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/290).

1. [701](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9651731623928127181)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, does not correspond to a new paragraph but does indicate the first line on [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) of the 1830 edition.

1. [702](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7442490484166981914)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) omits “other”.

1. [703](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6983540507744984831)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper along this line.

1. [704](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9048448633054304362)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) of the 1830 edition.

1. [705](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16689136876383686706)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) of the 1830 edition.

1. [706](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3400038081785036283)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) of the 1830 edition.

1. [707](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14334250453792399590)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the beginning of a paragraph on [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/291) of the 1830 edition.

1. [708](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15789536304273141760)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [709](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11431114771976507739)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [710](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1807069639340451008)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [711](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14346769206281459512)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [712](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10822562957576703398)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [713](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15416839912463800718)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [714](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17163078961056161260)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/292) of the 1830 edition.

1. [715](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13384926726354325903)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [716](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13855078327828490834)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/293) of the 1830 edition.

1. [717](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1053270124076171609)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/293) of the 1830 edition.

1. [718](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4305950490636671360)

TEXT: “the” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [719](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6181834468026551254)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/293) of the 1830 edition.

1. [720](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11570712431080910611)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [721](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10866680555029892677)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/293) of the 1830 edition.

1. [722](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2312878879261267268)

TEXT: Insertion and strikethrough, changing “lived” to “dwelt”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [723](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10277302700156736881)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the beginning of a line on [page 288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/294) of the 1830 edition.

1. [724](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15217987124396418560)

TEXT: Comma-like mark inserted between “dest” and “roid” by an unidentified scribe, possibly to show word separation.

1. [725](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-273664071794635807)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/294) of the 1830 edition.

1. [726](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8611289278448828814)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [727](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18098330191876379884)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/294) of the 1830 edition.

1. [728](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16919868989624638611)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the beginning of a line on [page 288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/294) of the 1830 edition.

1. [729](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5222379545160571848)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/294) of the 1830 edition.

1. [730](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14505271241892982576)

TEXT: Stray mark at this point stricken by the compositor.

1. [731](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5242968548214772853)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 290](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/296) of the 1830 edition.

1. [732](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3741443401626107525)

Likely intended to be “Amlicites”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 3:1605–1609.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [733](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5644122752904083328)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/311): “those who were converted”.

1. [734](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6032797190321148427)

Original: “Amelicites”; possible reading: “Amlicites”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2032.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [735](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10362400475926214640)

TEXT: “Helem” changed to “Helam” by the compositor, or “a” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [736](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13259807237302848321)

Original: “Medeon” changed to “Midian”; possible reading: “Middoni”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2101–2104.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [737](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5632474540624601150)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 292](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/298) of the 1830 edition.

1. [738](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2045550847401494122)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [739](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13906816943748068609)

TEXT: Mark, added by an unidentified scribe, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/301).

1. [740](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13250764828883270176)

TEXT: There is possibly a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [741](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12532755951312590098)

TEXT: “¶. 11.”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the eleventh gathering of this manuscript.

1. [742](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6783402972838864242)

TEXT: JS changed “strength” to “strenaid”; he may have intended to change “sayeth”, one line above, to “said”.

1. [743](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16927062098238479691)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [744](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6050959410783118972)

Original: “loosed these”.

1. [745](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4058469551444681477)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [746](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11373970582737276898)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the beginning of a new chapter on [page 299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/305) of the 1830 edition.

1. [747](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-764867939323299933)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [748](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17366369248354528622)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “Nephi” and “Lehi”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/305) of the 1830 edition.

1. [749](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8860670660246675802)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [750](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4807687568933373871)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [751](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5156072033312300743)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [752](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4684501765981406639)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [753](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13305111701635731376)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [754](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2326638684920547152)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [755](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12065406690898228708)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [756](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4368005069804239773)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/306) of the 1830 edition.

1. [757](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7114438284792408372)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/307): “with”.

1. [758](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10028967914364524984)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/307) of the 1830 edition.

1. [759](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5580565548049173985)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/307) of the 1830 edition.

1. [760](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9709374967478941321)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/323): “whence”.

1. [761](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8985854415802581019)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “Jer” and “shon”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/307) of the 1830 edition.

1. [762](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5129666244545795752)

Original: “[were numb]ered among”.

1. [763](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7824782962245586993)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/307) of the 1830 edition.

1. [764](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-23404257480923384)

Original omits “of Jershon”.

1. [765](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-557270259358573744)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/324): “endeth”.

1. [766](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7536332111060280828)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/308): “in”.

1. [767](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5412228776463938699)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 302](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/308) of the 1830 edition.

1. [768](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7528653176215610088)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/309): “not be no”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/325): “not be”.

1. [769](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10647394208818804731)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/309) of the 1830 edition.

1. [770](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1708639391720589210)

TEXT: “i” changed to “e” by the compositor, or “e” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [771](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14084077299886511739)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/325) omits “yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable”.

1. [772](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12158976875606960676)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/309) of the 1830 edition.

1. [773](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6476279819685410762)

TEXT: “his” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery); it does not appear in any JS-era publication.

1. [774](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16748931163338065913)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/309) of the 1830 edition.

1. [775](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8353733761907796885)

Original: “I then” changed to “by then”; possible reading: “by them”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2206–2207.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [776](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5019996807308531748)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 304](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/310) of the 1830 edition.

1. [777](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16827025294509333549)

Original: “the commencement of the seventeenth year”.

1. [778](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10140412765548778311)

Original: “commandm[ents]”.

1. [779](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10037379843848661709)

TEXT: Parentheses, added by JS, first appear in the [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/327) (though that edition omits the second “&”, and the closing parenthesis comes after “him”).

1. [780](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15296068802869521941)

Original: “there” changed to “these”.

1. [781](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13655830689590682020)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/313): “blaspheme”.

1. [782](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17949282031032873468)

Original: “by” changed to “in”.

1. [783](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13765905634851611173)

Original: “&” inserted at this point. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2231.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [784](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3128132472507088658)

Original: “gd” changed to “God”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/305): “of God”.

1. [785](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14336287529447194706)

Original: “always”.

1. [786](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17072084451031520735)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/316): “had a great”.

1. [787](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14515121333858725343)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/333): “for”.

1. [788](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1751391938001837073)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [789](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10690407248507432830)

TEXT: “◊” canceled twice: once by erasure, once by strikethrough.

1. [790](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7983569880328110937)

TEXT: Period added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [791](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13520141945257528586)

Original: “had not led”.

1. [792](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11480101593431357940)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318) of the 1830 edition.

1. [793](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6625632550075279846)

Original: “when”.

1. [794](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3090309217052699265)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318): “this”.

1. [795](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6111543795353553460)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318) of the 1830 edition.

1. [796](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11627287139416652019)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [797](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6857397106782353017)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318) of the 1830 edition.

1. [798](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14253651281768190468)

Original: “infidelity”.

1. [799](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13522378971569858645)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318) of the 1830 edition.

1. [800](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10313794968648115384)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/318).

1. [801](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14616272377011732470)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/335) omits “near”.

1. [802](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14504219383093217465)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [803](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3633825257781698450)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [804](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9578419706423916428)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [805](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11243994342707631204)

Original: “poorer class of People” changed to “poorer class of the People”.

1. [806](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10982522692993351716)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [807](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3553408225306205183)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [808](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3935052787332942495)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper along this line.

1. [809](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4864793481418136544)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/336) omits “this”.

1. [810](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3844156511810494108)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/319) of the 1830 edition.

1. [811](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17947702902726204597)

TEXT: A cancellation of “p” makes “week” appear to be underlined.

1. [812](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2454769935139095492)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/320) of the 1830 edition.

1. [813](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8717074064572802262)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/320) of the 1830 edition.

1. [814](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1410313600923091640)

TEXT: A hyphen may follow “in”.

1. [815](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3950013228087563105)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [816](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14835136680380562745)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/320) of the 1830 edition.

1. [817](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10134117089955138414)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/321) of the 1830 edition.

1. [818](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6416735286278947616)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/321): “they”; possible reading: “let him be in whatsoever circumstances he”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2272–2273.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [819](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10140407223188038464)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/321) of the 1830 edition.

1. [820](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14576130817491608263)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/321) omits “& now behold will not this strengthen your faith yea it will strengthen your faith for ye will say I know that this is a good seed for behold it sprouteth & begineth to grow”.

1. [821](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3717364718142210938)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [822](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16300355830593894758)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/322) of the 1830 edition.

1. [823](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6791775244786356690)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/322) omits “it is”.

1. [824](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11657679874302169267)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/322) of the 1830 edition.

1. [825](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12639913082572276508)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) of the 1830 edition.

1. [826](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9206546304791483027)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [827](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17730347890844091064)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) omits “your”.

1. [828](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4903205042267448855)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “concern” and “ing”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) of the 1830 edition.

1. [829](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12295796801788636053)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “congrega” and “tions”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) of the 1830 edition.

1. [830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7111626613987664304)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) of the 1830 edition.

1. [831](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11254162585060017483)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/323) of the 1830 edition.

1. [832](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9857319254327466138)

Original: “Zenock” changed to “Zenoch”.

1. [833](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7936758844816525870)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/324) of the 1830 edition.

1. [834](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2357905314174504985)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/324) of the 1830 edition.

1. [835](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7248812232315953437)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [836](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1089860801745069113)

Original: “behold”.

1. [837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9113801605571249440)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/324) of the 1830 edition.

1. [838](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16737108448327554942)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/324) of the 1830 edition.

1. [839](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16049886895021545592)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/324) of the 1830 edition.

1. [840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8780230520388583848)

Original: “behold”.

1. [841](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2243154886722518846)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/325) of the 1830 edition.

1. [842](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14831859275551139493)

Original: “plans”.

1. [843](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17149527309812177319)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “hard” and “ened”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/325) of the 1830 edition.

1. [844](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18151697775548250406)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [845](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10283445234726194703)

Original: “can”.

1. [846](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15337995293326109482)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “ex” and “erciseth”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/326) of the 1830 edition.

1. [847](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15362845548557020193)

TEXT: Second mark, before “ness”, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/326) of the 1830 edition.

1. [848](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18437941295896552959)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/326): “my beloved brethren”.

1. [849](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8963867057258938717)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [850](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15555963262955249226)

TEXT: While editing for the publication of the 1837 edition, JS inserted “y” to make the printer’s manuscript agree with the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/326).

1. [851](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1279277592051512574)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/326) of the 1830 edition.

1. [852](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18027437457950393850)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [853](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-563888483325828069)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [854](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4877951032176737767)

TEXT: Underlining by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) possibly an accidental slip of the pen.

1. [855](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15867154030532405166)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/328) of the 1830 edition.

1. [856](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-891843983049459731)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [857](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1348137747638415696)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, (followed by JS’s period) corresponds to the end of [page 322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/328) of the 1830 edition.

1. [858](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15861520452848296424)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [859](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15294941893739235026)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a change on manuscript [page 262](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/266) makes “&”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), appear to be canceled.

1. [860](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2022007101108955525)

TEXT: “¶ 12”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the twelfth gathering of this manuscript. The notation was likely intended to keep the manuscript gatherings in order, particularly as gatherings were taken piecemeal to the printing office.

1. [861](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11296867081871413293)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/331): “prison”.

1. [862](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14274764022577526875)

TEXT: This line and the following twelve lines punctuated by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [863](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3268055796393318502)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/333): “sin”.

1. [864](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12504677134081903779)

Original: “preserve”.

1. [865](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9115259983459869490)

Original: “let all”.

1. [866](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2662899277111161470)

TEXT: Bleed-through from a cancellation on [page 265](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/269) makes “always” appear to be canceled. The compositors of the 1830 edition likely interpreted it as a strikeout, since “always” is not found in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/335).

1. [867](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9878016675934986781)

TEXT: Parentheses added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by the compositor or an unidentified scribe.

1. [868](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17046648161035592420)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/325): “surely”.

1. [869](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17306769232871697146)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the beginning of a chapter on [page 330](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/336) of the 1830 edition.

1. [870](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10904417439537729506)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/336): “cast”.

1. [871](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8347105170374341475)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/326): “know”.

1. [872](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2402300774292359441)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 331](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/337) of the 1830 edition.

1. [873](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1323146536062866378)

Original: “repair” likely intended, though it could be read as “retain”.

1. [874](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6379970766721364160)

Original: “when”.

1. [875](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15677515059930660950)

TEXT: “e” changed to “a” by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [876](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9654156644206000653)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/358): “choose”.

1. [877](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2559830158472190605)

TEXT: “at” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [878](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10092406105303952082)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/341): “the head”.

1. [879](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12527322601918020061)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/342): “dregs”.

1. [880](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9422130370474589831)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/342) of the 1830 edition.

1. [881](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8194660988576917352)

Original: “restor[ed]”.

1. [882](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1253326666233488237)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/342) of the 1830 edition.

1. [883](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11400960069665201716)

Original: “drove”.

1. [884](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8085500291109258773)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/344).

1. [885](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10971960350394904100)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/344) of the 1830 edition.

1. [886](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3187797254606656204)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/344): “preparatory” (the end of the word is difficult to decipher in the original manuscript).

1. [887](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5919537625680985928)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/344) of the 1830 edition.

1. [888](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10731103285313983361)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “co” and “uld”. [Page 338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/344) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “not”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [889](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6051383315228850600)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “ex” and “cept”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345) of the 1830 edition.

1. [890](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15982805174989526747)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345) of the 1830 edition.

1. [891](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11221083527968545752)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345) of the 1830 edition.

1. [892](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16956026381752722995)

TEXT: JS’s inserted mark aborted.

1. [893](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10977066926630448875)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345): “bringeth”.

1. [894](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10038406756352623972)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345) of the 1830 edition.

1. [895](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14015463028588371331)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/345) of the 1830 edition.

1. [896](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5737704529799504796)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346) of the 1830 edition.

1. [897](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12093286792016679036)

TEXT: Offsetting from an insertion on manuscript [page 275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/279) makes the second “X”, added by an unidentified scribe, appear to be canceled.

1. [898](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10069199019217148332)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346): “And”.

1. [899](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12339779414655310418)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “him” and “self”. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346).

1. [900](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15170042830480702758)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346) of the 1830 edition.

1. [901](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17821242887684585251)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346) of the 1830 edition.

1. [902](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13097731209027560475)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/346) of the 1830 edition.

1. [903](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17252065390342132914)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [904](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16974455176050635944)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [905](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9021785199039536442)

Original: “desenters”; possible reading: “dissenters”. (Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2463–2464.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [906](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13459701733032508341)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [907](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15644235529511418289)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [908](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16746327301820855363)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347): “commander”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/365): “captain”.

1. [909](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16420555772224842359)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [910](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3168718091192645677)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/347) of the 1830 edition.

1. [911](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9758790104327914799)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/348) of the 1830 edition.

1. [912](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10536766447647677250)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/348): “him desiring him that”.

1. [913](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17992654614318515780)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/348).

1. [914](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11519238748749749648)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/337): “whether”.

1. [915](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1720998113799004260)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/348) of the 1830 edition.

1. [916](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17249313437344426676)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/348) of the 1830 edition.

1. [917](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6752406829251449562)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. [Page 343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/349) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “know”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [918](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15497307730129183059)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/349) of the 1830 edition.

1. [919](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6464662914686552461)

TEXT: [Page 343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/349) of the 1830 edition has a line break between “Le” and “hi”; the comma, added by JS, may have been intended to mark that line break.

1. [920](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2703597340843255409)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [921](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11640926144705914900)

Original: “wounds”.

1. [922](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16318017558679232250)

Original: “met t[he] army of the Lamanites”.

1. [923](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1871878994583062600)

TEXT: Comma added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [924](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8193114790151891179)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 344](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/350) of the 1830 edition.

1. [925](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12631007502802120116)

TEXT: When changing “hath” to “has”, JS dropped a large drop of ink on “hath”.

1. [926](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7349763268922439669)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [927](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13901576580577568268)

TEXT: “/” in blue ink apparently an accidental mark.

1. [928](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5147580669826767574)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/351) of the 1830 edition.

1. [929](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16130053136748279901)

TEXT: Text supplied from the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/352). Bleed-through from an insertion on manuscript [page 278](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/282) makes “by” appear to be canceled.

1. [930](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13268436825990982046)

TEXT: An ink blot makes “d”, added by JS, appear to be canceled.

1. [931](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10022969638134298531)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 346](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/352) of the 1830 edition.

1. [932](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12982316652021601549)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [933](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16823874283466458408)

TEXT: Comma, added by JS, possibly intended to mark the end of a paragraph on [page 347](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/353) of the 1830 edition.

1. [934](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8041695411648203484)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new chapter at the top of [page 348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/354) of the 1830 edition.

1. [935](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14219965038041296997)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new chapter at the top of [page 348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/354) of the 1830 edition.

1. [936](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3017360348095109318)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/356) of the 1830 edition.

1. [937](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9831746906606116531)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/356) of the 1830 edition.

1. [938](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18304585854605950452)

TEXT: JS likely started to change “which” to “who”.

1. [939](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10568659432835843531)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/356): “deliverance”.

1. [940](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3265455096877517365)

TEXT: [Page 351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/357) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “And it”; this mark, added by JS, was likely intended to correspond to that line break. An uninked “\” at this point was also likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [941](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-168890920814254487)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [942](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1139285300926154581)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [943](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10526042980780701452)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/357) of the 1830 edition.

1. [944](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2925963519844694600)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [945](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2323554072998911931)

Original: “prisons”.

1. [946](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9448284976719401443)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [947](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13448013411821672643)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [948](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5644590681443022754)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358): “dissented”.

1. [949](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4017444146375908500)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [950](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11683440166226612)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [951](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14497814654405704116)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/287). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [952](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13687373478261168572)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/358) of the 1830 edition.

1. [953](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10655615721670974719)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/287). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [954](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17786211829421519770)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the beginning of [page 353](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/359) of the 1830 edition.

1. [955](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18146051183133567216)

Original: “come [do]wn to”.

1. [956](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10685806205386135689)

Original: “out with his tents into”.

1. [957](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15915594576368826644)

Original: “power to do”.

1. [958](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14074929319382778079)

TEXT: JS started to change “which” to “who”.

1. [959](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17545863296646944355)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/378): “to which men was subject”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/348): “to which men were subject”.

1. [960](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16489456332739100526)

TEXT: An ink blot makes the original “we” appear to be canceled; [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) rewrote “we” above the line.

1. [961](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13475896953890265133)

Original: “which were” changed to “which fled”.

1. [962](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1680582094718534259)

Original: “went” changed to “were”.

1. [963](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2495740622219976401)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/378): “in”.

1. [964](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12742919182958361462)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “them” and “sel-”. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/360).

1. [965](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17640619484021321772)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/360): “commandments”.

1. [966](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-847151916106696041)

TEXT: “in” stricken first and then stricken again with entire phrase.

1. [967](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5121927501486020991)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/360): “Onidah”.

1. [968](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13807682658036665486)

TEXT: “¶ 13”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the thirteenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [969](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10366222082656260854)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. [Page 355](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/361) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “down”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [970](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14836051671257922081)

TEXT: Apostrophe, added by an unidentified scribe, (which is low on the line, like a comma) possibly inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [971](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13830334310481504302)

Original: “the”.

1. [972](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17002591523459825513)

Original: “went up and” changed to “went forth and”.

1. [973](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2688148823612513745)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/380): “frighted”.

1. [974](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-480247901412801365)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/381): “in”.

1. [975](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12543657850648053964)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/381): “all”.

1. [976](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3860849595271611365)

Original: “encircle”.

1. [977](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17598131392412962014)

TEXT: Portions of “would” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [978](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12829909460031812847)

Original: “not”.

1. [979](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-587953593135682156)

Original: “year”.

1. [980](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7808104283164693088)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 359](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/365) of the 1830 edition.

1. [981](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13237568793170568649)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366) of the 1830 edition.

1. [982](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11201576128809910150)

Original: “repairing”, though an aborted “p” was begun before “repairing” was fully written; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366): “preparing”.

1. [983](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3362182519969287234)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366) of the 1830 edition.

1. [984](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14193359940664809111)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/385) omits “all”.

1. [985](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-643882627462253763)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366).

1. [986](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16710162865085368478)

TEXT: First layer of punctuation, added by the compositor, possibly an aborted period; compare period after “pleasure” in the second line of this page.

1. [987](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5087566634754209968)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366) of the 1830 edition.

1. [988](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1353441562119656916)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/366) of the 1830 edition.

1. [989](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1227491505132401443)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/367) of the 1830 edition.

1. [990](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13070883352896298471)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/367) of the 1830 edition.

1. [991](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4130483575875448333)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/367) of the 1830 edition.

1. [992](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12278422607409145409)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/367) of the 1830 edition.

1. [993](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5059618302596707368)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/368) of the 1830 edition.

1. [994](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6473387929143560902)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/368) of the 1830 edition.

1. [995](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8590430152438721293)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/368) of the 1830 edition.

1. [996](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4128619388683087308)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/368) of the 1830 edition.

1. [997](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11717873178562024745)

Original: “miraculous”.

1. [998](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6445623432820386602)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/369) of the 1830 edition.

1. [999](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15790973134551849944)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/369) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1000](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14874826290216095088)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/369) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1001](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-586337453127742632)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/369) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1002](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15155706612250052196)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1003](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7126781469965515394)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. [Page 364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “of”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1004](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11077646518926505677)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370): “were”.

1. [1005](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15300411244736160539)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1006](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4115092046102414479)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1007](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11497095095166225147)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/370) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1008](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15647388844369005527)

Original: “Morionton”.

1. [1009](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16771614158840213408)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/359) omits “up”.

1. [1010](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16832797990696355221)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/371) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1011](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12460802246949041832)

TEXT: “when”, added by the compositor, possibly inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [1012](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4973671002831352332)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/371) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1013](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17169212660457830981)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/371) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1014](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5145095214645871268)

TEXT: Staining from pins above and below this line and under “which” two lines below. The pins were attached to manuscript [page 297](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/301).

1. [1015](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13762200280722905172)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/371) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1016](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1944835529123348354)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/371) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1017](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5284724903338988577)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/372) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1018](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12055943959814173834)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/372) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1019](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4207383422451413730)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/372) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1020](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7094721484363398305)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “righteous” and “ly”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/372) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1021](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13667983692977536618)

Original: “Parhoron” or “Pahoron”.

1. [1022](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2230424019231869216)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1023](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12100148424786087020)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1024](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12105678966035708236)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 298](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/302). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1025](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8254765480987932186)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1026](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17122177139538866898)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1027](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-935645636352772417)

Original: “also among the people”.

1. [1028](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6863926262982322544)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1029](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11197661329503907960)

Original: “this”.

1. [1030](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17935803645981923794)

TEXT: Uninked mark etched into the paper between “-stand” and “ing”. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/373) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1031](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3704640445478510708)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1032](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9607927136119669947)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1033](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10846420649735442458)

Original: “heed”.

1. [1034](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5224522608337588870)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1035](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17940822495293634249)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1036](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4928715503769424777)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1037](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12300947256127803981)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. [Page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “came”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1038](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11859737263244551006)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/374) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1039](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8028888871746749445)

Possibly intended to be “Moroni”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2647–2649.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1040](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12776325082551602842)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/364): “the”.

1. [1041](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6187676199634008170)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/394): “and”.

1. [1042](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5197286306090322098)

TEXT: Stain from pin on facing page.

1. [1043](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2000554902554030746)

TEXT: Blue dash between “con” and “cerning” is not a hyphen but a mark related to the ruling of the paper.

1. [1044](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11110772588277347242)

TEXT: “by” possibly stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) at a later time.

1. [1045](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5498023884501657185)

TEXT: “while” possibly inserted by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) at a later time.

1. [1046](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5152967024700962542)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/398): “in”.

1. [1047](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6656988065068797262)

Original: “a”.

1. [1048](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9676972098701366121)

TEXT: JS likely began to change “which” to “who”.

1. [1049](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11983320031626476660)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/379).

1. [1050](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14471174592306110748)

Original: “whither”.

1. [1051](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10491650215543743806)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/380) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1052](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4786619314711798464)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/380) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1053](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15639981845369391614)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/380) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1054](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11088850363495225086)

TEXT: Aborted hyphen.

1. [1055](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5903715644578042235)

Original: “in the commencement of the”.

1. [1056](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17499825894598118030)

TEXT: “he” is smeared, making it appear to be canceled.

1. [1057](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16329044958347109612)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/383) omits “once”.

1. [1058](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14434692390690823240)

Original: “our lives”.

1. [1059](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16760836747780182278)

Original: “our lands the lands of our first”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/403): “our land of our first”.

1. [1060](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17014671658871964823)

Original: “rightfully”.

1. [1061](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7159187437939626118)

Original: “I am now”.

1. [1062](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8773925198401069759)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/405): “Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go”; possible reading: “to go with him should go to the city of Gid.” (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 4:2700–2702.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1063](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13232434383005199784)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the beginning of a paragraph on [page 380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/386) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1064](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-719287989709948659)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/405): “sent”.

1. [1065](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1477312609378604002)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) wrote “nites” above the line, likely to write around a tear in the page.

1. [1066](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5738758302025605438)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/386) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1067](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17524406418378282714)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/386): “the”.

1. [1068](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8548003586542180381)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper through the middle of “of”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/386) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1069](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13332890740827605395)

TEXT: “o-” of “Moro-” overlaps the gutter and is found on manuscript [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/289).

1. [1070](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4704560953034182947)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/387) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1071](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16478836178575008194)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/387) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1072](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11529219884148093091)

TEXT: Second “t” in “that” overlaps the gutter and is found on manuscript [page 285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/289).

1. [1073](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13959901672161902681)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/387) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1074](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15782692723537377691)

TEXT: “-” overlaps the gutter and is found on manuscript [page 332](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/336).

1. [1075](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6384122202249499000)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/407) omits “yea they would not take of wine”.

1. [1076](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5019476694571053036)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/387) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1077](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-438008292137642206)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the beginning of a chapter on [page 382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/388) of the 1830 edition. There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1078](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2275707127824471443)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “re” and “hearse”.

1. [1079](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-536255755443648771)

Original and [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/376): “sufficeth”.

1. [1080](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6057663556108736024)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page.

1. [1081](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1845799391277981452)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/388).

1. [1082](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8007825607594134206)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper.

1. [1083](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-700778575370148905)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/408): “because their forces had slain”; possible reading: “enormity of their forces.” Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/388) of the 1830 edition. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 5:2726–2727.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1084](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13240172671441369861)

TEXT: “¶ 14”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the fourteenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [1085](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5095165427004502513)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1086](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8549813640739293977)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1087](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17390700960948993582)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1088](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17604176852086716205)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1089](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6638778286223780411)

Original: “favored”.

1. [1090](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17235859913261987003)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 309](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/313). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1091](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16379559019361779338)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1092](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4239106707842213789)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389).

1. [1093](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16189550344344509127)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/389) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1094](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11014654674655203205)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/390) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1095](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6429301147940304955)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/390): “supposed it”.

1. [1096](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10871489515879320363)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/390) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1097](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15717444340277577898)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the beginning of [page 385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/391) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1098](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5934561117349353786)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/391): “knew it”.

1. [1099](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15031289264315798937)

TEXT: An ink blot obscures JS’s change from “which” to “who”.

1. [1100](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11247189475455721896)

Original: “enormity of our number”.

1. [1101](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12274643038546867196)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/394): “foes”.

1. [1102](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9120740128380379916)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the beginning of [page 390](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/396) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1103](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14968452332113129258)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/416): “much”.

1. [1104](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8575059683079615075)

Original: “great governor”.

1. [1105](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4806443109515485087)

Original: “with”.

1. [1106](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1471236227760462370)

TEXT: A stray ink mark after “the” has the appearance of a hyphen.

1. [1107](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12471191469975542682)

TEXT: “p” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1108](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13804302979867496846)

Original: “fraction”; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/399): “faction”.

1. [1109](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10370685888035023982)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1110](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10281032973017859476)

TEXT: “than to retake it from them” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery); this phrase is also inserted in the original manuscript.

1. [1111](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13377141658313523680)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph at the beginning of [page 395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/401) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1112](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8754437399051990136)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1113](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15609967989842754887)

TEXT: Uninked mark before “also” corresponds to the end of a line on [page 395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/401) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1114](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7539420155894650092)

TEXT: Offsetting from an insertion on [page 323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/327) makes part of “th◊y” appear to be canceled, indicating the pages were not stored in sequential order.

1. [1115](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10399458876346320811)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/389): “it is because”.

1. [1116](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4634439153054739203)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/402) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1117](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7071134107690447877)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/402) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1118](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12270164440131032231)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/402) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1119](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11604726632472938593)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/403) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1120](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1645890212707916703)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/403) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1121](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7491920425849517431)

TEXT: “b” wipe-erased and then stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery). “ed” possibly inserted at a later time.

1. [1122](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17024421646430271789)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/403) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1123](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4566093234037584898)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/404) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1124](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17117126511476586324)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/424): “in”.

1. [1125](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7045475316422580222)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/404) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1126](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6559978945809944289)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 324](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/328). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1127](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17244407505728244939)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1128](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6673322241894297338)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/404) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1129](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15399667940545081236)

TEXT: Uninked “-” etched into the paper. This mark does not correpond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/405).

1. [1130](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9172258972162567976)

TEXT: Stray ink mark is not a period.

1. [1131](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11208866367009547353)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/426) omits “in the”.

1. [1132](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11567038090014134239)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1133](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8515073977363826262)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/327). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1134](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10547159057395121102)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, and the horizontal cut correspond to the beginning of a paragraph on [page 399](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/405) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1135](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5095395073370997924)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/406) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1136](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16330735170539890464)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/406) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1137](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17766132360125554963)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/408) omits “up”.

1. [1138](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17067462136814215602)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/397): “he”.

1. [1139](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12186390126092988458)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper between “Mo” and “ronihah”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 404](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/410) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1140](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16867174344333690993)

Original: “are”.

1. [1141](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12187826927071618860)

TEXT: A hole in the paper hindered the first attempt to write the “r” in “righteousness”; there was no erasure.

1. [1142](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16727609647834676247)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/434) omits “a”.

1. [1143](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3435172929926319699)

TEXT: Compositor’s large “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this upper portion of the page.

1. [1144](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4092174045595003562)

Original: “Kishcumen”.

1. [1145](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10074120824926748988)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/415) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1146](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17426854360305181658)

TEXT: Compositor’s large “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this upper portion of the page.

1. [1147](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3289582289485992151)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “inso” and “much”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/415) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1148](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12992780290793254891)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/415) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1149](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11180108406892074655)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/415) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1150](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3396161246678294787)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1151](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1812061484288625420)

TEXT: Compositor’s large “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this upper portion of the page.

1. [1152](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13448201636054313343)

TEXT: Uninked mark etched into the paper between “in” and “to”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1153](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8007865570407761136)

Original: “up into”.

1. [1154](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14434460105422109149)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1155](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10899214272172039863)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1156](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1538486419038412389)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1157](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4183633602238504997)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/416) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1158](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11903987702355595081)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/417) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1159](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7935412045219883700)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/417) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1160](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14361251084624550485)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/417) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1161](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3397021539530454051)

TEXT: “¶. 15 Book”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the fifteenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [1162](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17904164147621280205)

Original: “Gaddianton”.

1. [1163](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6091335196260907663)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “Judg” and “es”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/417) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1164](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3741529582649122162)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1165](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18421241787049739797)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1166](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4948097058098512413)

Original: “in whatsoever”; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418): “into whatever”.

1. [1167](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16228554903985947889)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1168](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7914200360883166259)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. [Page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “go”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1169](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11755509232548811148)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1170](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7528372580019728589)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “Ship” and “ping”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1171](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10835762975510603060)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/418) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1172](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15444910055390005711)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/419) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1173](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15283111243922696052)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “build” and “ing”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/419) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1174](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1852054661249610691)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/419) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1175](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16594846464026213825)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/419) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1176](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11253383828175699433)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/419).

1. [1177](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10669215626344290246)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/407): “nobler”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/441): “robber”.

1. [1178](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7258764350002343165)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1179](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1684239150116792028)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420).

1. [1180](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13235061384646441749)

TEXT: Two instances of an uninked “\”, one before “believe” and one after. The mark after “believe” corresponds to the end of a line on [page 414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1181](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6792306152290055282)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420): “straight”.

1. [1182](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11676928203426046491)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1183](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12117486736741323918)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/420) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1184](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10885268584535057590)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/421).

1. [1185](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12840197118767540996)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/421) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1186](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8138924547651831243)

TEXT: Tear in the paper has the appearance of a hyphen.

1. [1187](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1515900977713776830)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/421) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1188](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16252690650884949548)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/421) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1189](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16579325575121778211)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/422) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1190](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1408676428002577238)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/422) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1191](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10216566089218561537)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/422): “deserting”.

1. [1192](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4302536840117958633)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “be” and “gin”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/422) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1193](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11635903152675700398)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/422) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1194](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15337490363454516304)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/423) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1195](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15527736433336165867)

TEXT: [Page 417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/423) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “they”; mark, added by the compositor, may have been intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1196](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2749384944861505043)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/410): “may remember”.

1. [1197](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15598573194672807758)

TEXT: Though this appears to be an ink blot, “eth” was canceled by JS.

1. [1198](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12071551396313659696)

TEXT: Possibly “Lamanit<​<​e​>s​>”.

1. [1199](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8522506125407553369)

TEXT: Tear in the corner of the page predates the inscription of this page.

1. [1200](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5159048675185902430)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/413): “up their”.

1. [1201](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15886780116315947466)

TEXT: Tear in the corner of the page predates the inscription of this page.

1. [1202](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10833825443233549443)

TEXT: The mark under “w” is offsetting from JS’s change on [page 339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/343) (changing “Which” to “who”), indicating the pages were not stored in sequential order.

1. [1203](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9950590606462108956)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 423](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/429) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1204](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13049730951279744852)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/451) omits “whatsoever was”.

1. [1205](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11446025973053411313)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/416): “part”.

1. [1206](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13998716083229665431)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1207](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9128683725614627718)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1208](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5444136310327212616)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1209](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9161303558998511777)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/433) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1210](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12811973655611029231)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/433) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1211](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17628397838553112414)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/434) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1212](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4159306075242567733)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/434) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1213](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13255824601792939683)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/349). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1214](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16236131805260237153)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/434) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1215](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18337344263877872516)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/434) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1216](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-865439683480939381)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/434) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1217](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6192633859671463702)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/435) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1218](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12283075970152961280)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/435) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1219](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-422640692518928915)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/435): “parted”.

1. [1220](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14117409787955582882)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/435) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1221](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11146750084084172222)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/436) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1222](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9148802927081348346)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/436) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1223](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17890547854480810019)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/436): “Ezias”.

1. [1224](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7538345338407722617)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/436) omits “not”.

1. [1225](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14502843189902316980)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “Jeru” and “salem”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/436) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1226](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11465458382585148888)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/437) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1227](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12597841909301797556)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/437) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1228](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1874909108135311244)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/437) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1229](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6410224845067194179)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/437) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1230](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11287283957669597248)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1231](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14876895507375392685)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438).

1. [1232](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2186653728660669614)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1233](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10571514551042493806)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the composition as he set type from this page. There are also two double slashes inserted across the cut. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1234](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2119288395023845307)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1235](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2396898092731379249)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438).

1. [1236](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14321278084085969840)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/438): “judgment”.

1. [1237](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9444382315699921780)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 433](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/439) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1238](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4688074954812118363)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 349](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/353). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1239](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9325231454248309368)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/440): “know”.

1. [1240](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15087694159450154292)

TEXT: “3” is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/352).

1. [1241](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2234074865415456575)

TEXT: [Page 437](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/443) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “it”; mark, added by the compositor, was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1242](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12646098776181892925)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/444) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1243](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14828110181597263559)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/444) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1244](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2975387669293775483)

TEXT: Compositor’s large “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this upper third of the page.

1. [1245](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7553796077584955988)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 356](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/360). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1246](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4086952708555392927)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/446) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1247](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4492422758453476017)

TEXT: Small mark inserted under “m”, possibly by the compositor, likely to separate the mistakenly joined “aman” into two words.

1. [1248](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13711800130850949802)

TEXT: JS first wrote “◊”, likely an “o”, to change “which” to “who” in the line above.

1. [1249](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5592746902842344644)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/447): “in”.

1. [1250](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1972218267998628606)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 441](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/447) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1251](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-68254543755284263)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “repent” and “ace”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 442](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/448) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1252](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1291925599086730130)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1253](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5520148368933914840)

Marks, added by the compositor, do not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/448).

1. [1254](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12898275918509923890)

TEXT: The type of asterisk added here by the compositor, was normally used to connect pieces of text on separate pieces of paper, so it is possible that this asterisk connected this portion of the page with the lower portion of the page after it had been cut off.

1. [1255](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17069910092669475978)

TEXT: Compositor’s large “X” may indicate the completion of typesetting for this portion of the page.

1. [1256](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8688027055804716998)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/449): “he”.

1. [1257](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7723188561316464168)

TEXT: “.16. Book”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the sixteenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [1258](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12082033162672881437)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/451) omits “be”.

1. [1259](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3303891596963136449)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/437) omits “all”.

1. [1260](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13480713098063299271)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/452): “have a”.

1. [1261](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17062681649882561295)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/475): “or”.

1. [1262](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17515709956027577117)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) ran out of ink while writing “the” and then rewrote it.

1. [1263](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3197713630643306400)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/454): “thing”.

1. [1264](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-723736496241751833)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/478) omits “again”.

1. [1265](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1210854860517226947)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/455): “this, that”.

1. [1266](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9780974989311974322)

Original and [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/456): “lands”.

1. [1267](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11394351114837667381)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/456): “these”.

1. [1268](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7645891753932552768)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 450](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/456) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1269](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4068815405646624196)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/459): “for behold”.

1. [1270](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11512527880427485553)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/482): “signal”.

1. [1271](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16085723597504665090)

TEXT: Offsetting from an insertion on manuscript [page 367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/371) makes “had” appear to be canceled.

1. [1272](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15797052725565221856)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) mistakenly changed “&” to “for” and then made his intended change in the line immediately above.

1. [1273](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2945581910690201402)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) changed “rights” to “rites”; [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/462): “rights”.

1. [1274](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3877012953305435007)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/485) omits “again”.

1. [1275](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9725439105178128538)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/464) omits “in”.

1. [1276](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11881954162829399217)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/464) omits “chief”.

1. [1277](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18382435058366917116)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/488) omits “& the land which was between the land of Zarahemla”.

1. [1278](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16783618863642640334)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 461](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/467) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1279](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9456897515738543886)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/467): “again in”.

1. [1280](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9233227015761049714)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/467): “up according”.

1. [1281](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17293855680442920332)

TEXT: Comma, added by JS, may have been intended to correspond to the end of a line on [page 464](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/470) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1282](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2460177723936786015)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/470): “insomuch”.

1. [1283](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14151711705241855027)

TEXT: There was a hole in the page before [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) wrote this line.

1. [1284](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14421163896759475987)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/471): “band”.

1. [1285](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12744940749977868737)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) inserted a hyphen to close up the space between “a” and “new”.

1. [1286](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7389003329836196985)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/472): “commandments”.

1. [1287](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14100522302255992872)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/472): “puffing”.

1. [1288](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1352504924424825894)

TEXT: [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/473): “land”.

1. [1289](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3851879807235604768)

TEXT: There was a hole in the page before [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) inscribed this line.

1. [1290](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2716100902675598017)

TEXT: JS started to change “which” to “who”.

1. [1291](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16632477860981472211)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to a new paragraph at the end of [page 471](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/477) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1292](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6835363314164868880)

TEXT: There was a hole in the page before [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) inscribed this line.

1. [1293](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6498643437658494081)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/502) omits “up”.

1. [1294](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17819548588407267940)

TEXT: JS’s inserted “o” likely intended to change “cometh” to “come”.

1. [1295](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14736386163435054805)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/504) omits “O ye people of the house of Israel”.

1. [1296](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8953674298534976767)

TEXT: Final “l” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1297](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2890569266573898573)

TEXT: There was a hole in the page before [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) inscribed this line.

1. [1298](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16177941489443618675)

TEXT: JS’s emendation of “vapours” to “vapour” changes the manuscript to match the singular form on [page 475](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/481) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1299](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2176516343192130279)

TEXT: “sus Christ sh” written over a dash that was drawn through the line after “V”, added by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1300](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11085443109797309988)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 476](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/482) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1301](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18382280588313298539)

TEXT: Stray ink dot, not a period, after “him”.

1. [1302](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8081479315615212052)

TEXT: “17, Book”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the seventeenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [1303](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-783625801738143051)

TEXT: Offsetting from an insertion on manuscript [page 385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/389) makes part of “verily” appear to be canceled.

1. [1304](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16717636336749757220)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/487): “the”.

1. [1305](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17087028285290670438)

TEXT: Yarn stain over “e” indicates that the text was written before the threading was added.

1. [1306](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7401091932945516120)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/490): “straight”.

1. [1307](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14374363502331955064)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/490): “straight”.

1. [1308](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17115366053277253270)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/518) omits “& shall reject the fulness of my Gospel”.

1. [1309](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8867044707305241888)

TEXT: JS’s emendation of “return” to “turn” changes the manuscript to agree with [page 488](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/494) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1310](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-627248887208148979)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/494): “his”.

1. [1311](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6192883761140467336)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/494).

1. [1312](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16677056256321137063)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/494): “beheld”.

1. [1313](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17175739690123598224)

TEXT: JS likely meant to change “wh[ich]” to “wh[o]”.

1. [1314](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4601456308159188889)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/522): “are ready”.

1. [1315](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12127921022151753834)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/497): “for”.

1. [1316](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6680516074901247317)

TEXT: JS started to change “which” to “who”.

1. [1317](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9069691176821445928)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/499): “beforetime”.

1. [1318](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10094635053434432129)

TEXT: “18. Book”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), marks the first page of the eighteenth gathering of this manuscript.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8530177109217071588)

[Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) handwriting ends; scribe 2 begins.

1. [1319](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17803485318454322099)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/500): “believe”.

1. [1320](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5988793158595733910)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/501): “blessed them”.

1. [1321](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-237722464736610862)

TEXT: Stray ink dot after “them” has the appearance of a period.

1. [1322](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12900438745653069888)

TEXT: “peo” canceled three times: once by wipe-erasure, once stricken by scribe 2, once stricken by JS.

1. [1323](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7927609111813775246)

TEXT: “s” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1324](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13891733740029173270)

TEXT: “t◊◊” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1325](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12043686247586314298)

TEXT: Final “e” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1326](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8267021812353880269)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 498](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/504) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1327](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18279354511612574970)

TEXT: Scribe 2 used a comma-like mark to separate “so” and “mared”.

1. [1328](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14904690710740405606)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/531): “among who”; [1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/490): “among them those who”.

1. [1329](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7711097812732425762)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/490): “land”.

1. [1330](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8303591209945027965)

TEXT: Period, added by JS, likely intended to correspond to the end of [page 500](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/506) of the 1830 edition, which is also the end of the chapter.

1. [1331](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13851735342893391473)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/533) adds “and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth”.

1. [1332](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4503393101715893531)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/508): “people”.

1. [1333](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16546630603085199066)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/508): “rise”.

1. [1334](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1819080797180541954)

TEXT: “of” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1335](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9952232864547425786)

TEXT: [Page 504](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/510) of the 1830 edition ends at “and”; the mark, added by JS, possibly intended to correspond to that page break.

1. [1336](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9141231821516010138)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/511): “healings”.

1. [1337](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13513137627434797723)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/511): “in”.

1. [1338](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11244149835726024571)

TEXT: Period likely inscribed by scribe 2 after the time of original inscription.

1. [1339](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18220771006853841793)

TEXT: Red ink stroke, on page number, possibly inscribed in the late nineteenth century.

1. [1340](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17454357995772163559)

For both instances of “strait”, [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/515) reads “straight”.

1. [1341](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4671953856083362421)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/541) omits “saying”.

1. [1342](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18344327156965175356)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/516): “desired”.

1. [1343](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5827166281051438711)

TEXT: Stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1344](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6403446130081632652)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe; not a JS cancellation.

1. [1345](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4312237569264705625)

TEXT: Punctuation possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1346](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8157558893237439435)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/502) omits “all”.

1. [1347](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-754602188596868100)

TEXT: “{n\m}er” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1348](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12819905702080130525)

TEXT: “of your” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1349](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13504288284702598635)

TEXT: Period possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1350](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9943064861367207559)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/521): “fill”.

1. [1351](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2524067499182867500)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1352](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5534367851648661314)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/548): “many churches”.

1. [1353](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14550966680522095859)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/522): “parts”.

1. [1354](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3448176740909772447)

TEXT: “erercise” and “over” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1355](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10835611461909021414)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/524): “become”.

1. [1356](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9048630191267278589)

TEXT: Scribe 2 used a comma-like stroke to separate “even” and “until”.

1. [1357](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17471090126893187350)

TEXT: Underlining under “the records” possibly a stray mark; it serves no known purpose.

1. [1358](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13362226215992131203)

TEXT: JS’s “◊” likely intended to change “sayeth” to “said”.

1. [1359](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12281307443913855071)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1360](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15768952476638793422)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/526): “Angelah”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/553): “Angola”.

1. [1361](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14901620275022607889)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/553): “sorrow”.

1. [1362](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5118201299524116603)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/527): “past”.

1. [1363](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6668134813450904511)

TEXT: Illegible character is likely a JS deletion of “s” in “words”, which changes the manuscript to agree with the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/527).

1. [1364](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10540383836907618390)

TEXT: “s” possibly inserted at a later time.

1. [1365](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13820134092490677555)

TEXT: Though this is the first page of the nineteenth gathering of this manuscript, neither [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) nor scribe 2 inserted a notation marking the gathering.

1. [1366](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11874161989002867885)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/530).

1. [1367](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4292521557571079393)

TEXT: [Page 524](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/530) of the 1830 edition ends with “to”; the mark, added by JS, was likely intended to correspond to that page break.

1. [1368](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4461685129119081365)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/558) omits “of”.

1. [1369](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10230802192997186814)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/516): “hope”.

1. [1370](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5507094683482696053)

TEXT: “<​s​>” appears to be stricken.

1. [1371](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3699926777360100478)

TEXT: [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/562): “Cumorah”.

1. [1372](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17300174370213055195)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/536): “Joneam”.

1. [1373](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6387402752861417958)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/536): “Camenihah”.

1. [1374](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14748426306622020657)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/536): “dissented”.

1. [1375](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18331699183697146908)

TEXT: JS added “e” to “this”, apparently intending to change “this” to “there”.

1. [1376](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6293163208327046739)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/538) adds “away”.

1. [1377](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14699399954193049778)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/538): “whether”.

1. [1378](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15531712958239234815)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/539): “beware”.

1. [1379](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3513468014469669572)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/540): “churches”.

1. [1380](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5268369376350684119)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1381](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5022535708067774367)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/568) omits “your”.

1. [1382](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10454049937347649386)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/541): “unquenchable”.

1. [1383](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8453561171586004373)

TEXT: “a” stricken by scribe 2, or possibly by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery).

1. [1384](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4457737893629267359)

TEXT: “shall be un{p\h}appy shall be unhappy shall be unhappy” stricken by scribe 2, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1385](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13599528302696918045)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1386](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18190472686969385322)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) wrote “n” above the line, likely to clarify the overwrite.

1. [1387](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13269572779308440655)

TEXT: “with” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1388](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5142637213323455242)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/544): “hear”.

1. [1389](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-292343534171966412)

TEXT: “s” stricken by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1390](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12746521522593095447)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/571) omits “& because that none other People knoweth our language”.

1. [new scribe logo](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5792653886978452276)

Scribe 2 handwriting ends; [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) begins.

1. [1391](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4595840548971654817)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/545) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1392](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9380515168561757561)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/572): “Corum”.

1. [1393](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-986761075225786521)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/545) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1394](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9824035864443017096)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/545) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1395](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11798622841937732387)

TEXT: Though this is the first page of the twentieth gathering of this manuscript, [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) did not insert a notation marking the gathering.

1. [1396](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13851032465365590540)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1397](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7939193174233977258)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546): “families”.

1. [1398](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16250176330827906417)

TEXT: “&” possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1399](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18403865361403671729)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1400](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18094161961824275943)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546): “thus”.

1. [1401](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15259857303636662720)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1402](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3553470079091933560)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, does not correspond to a new paragraph in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/546).

1. [1403](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3871386580446679771)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/547) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1404](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3951331478086882160)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/575) omits “be”.

1. [1405](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7693585732854081030)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/547) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1406](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4759564824288990272)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/575) omits “the”.

1. [1407](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2589836458968493017)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1408](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18230895564855072145)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 542](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/548) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1409](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5436808246519116370)

TEXT: Uninked “/” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 542](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/548) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1410](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4102707553707438090)

TEXT: Penciled em dash under “ye”, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 542](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/548) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1411](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-766521443721188146)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/549): “howbeit”.

1. [1412](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4776748790666908250)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1413](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14005552590560808429)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 543](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/549) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1414](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11609239850562313250)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/549).

1. [1415](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10623260345761592679)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/578): “not so”.

1. [1416](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9184154076227861774)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/550): “light”.

1. [1417](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-592236360277951924)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 544](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/550) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1418](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18404940819478751183)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 544](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/550) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1419](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5935082444445691102)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/533): “man might know”; possible reading: “all this because that this man knew that he was God”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 6:3758–3761.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1420](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9409331645468873144)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/534) omits “all”.

1. [1421](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3021981350938181436)

TEXT: “J” overwritten by JS, or possibly by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1422](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-941189721334817718)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 546](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/552) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1423](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9696819488014027564)

TEXT: Hyphen and retouching of “h” possibly inscribed at a later time by an unidentified scribe.

1. [1424](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8187569251052047990)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 548](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/554) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1425](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2116924126469881597)

TEXT: “u” in “daughters” mistakenly closed to make it look like an “a”.

1. [1426](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13681744408640329818)

TEXT: Dot before “And” appears to be a stray mark.

1. [1427](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6098445524494981768)

TEXT: Possibly stricken by an unidentified scribe at a later time.

1. [1428](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8136293028994057125)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 551](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/557) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1429](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14937688341244277219)

TEXT: JS may have stricken “the” with a circular cancellation that looks like an “o”.

1. [1430](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11289482025618727266)

TEXT: Parenthesis likely used to separate the two insertions.

1. [1431](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18211884212682526834)

TEXT: First “il” is stricken twice.

1. [1432](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7738328817212701085)

TEXT: Bleed-through under “s old age & there” comes from a JS strikethrough on [page 440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/444), indicating the pages were not stored in sequential order.

1. [1433](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6242497770968613881)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 552](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/558) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1434](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5115082897989129414)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 552](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/558) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1435](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16848560056625632440)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 552](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/558) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1436](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18222467415800979353)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/559) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1437](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7473217339901862562)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/559) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1438](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8239517766754802925)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/559) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1439](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10724293613880276825)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 553](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/559) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1440](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4516872449990794799)

TEXT: Page number is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/441).

1. [1441](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14641218415636045153)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “com” and “bination”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/560) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1442](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10802124679380284847)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/560) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1443](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4651556450711997556)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/560) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1444](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4642575344670476887)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 554](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/560) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1445](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3318019988792384854)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 555](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/561) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1446](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2079237797199978393)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 555](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/561) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1447](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15554999178165712681)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 555](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/561) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1448](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16771511945387809187)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/590) omits “a”.

1. [1449](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4236386818197300851)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “notwith” and “standing”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/562) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1450](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6661694472066597166)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/562) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1451](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2666580242520649963)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/562) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1452](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16925494258746299106)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “ele” and “phants”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/562) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1453](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10628232911262469866)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 556](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/562) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1454](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6309663073818319352)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 557](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/563) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1455](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12813986145642251718)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper along this line, and graphite is smeared along the fold line.

1. [1456](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13811558144274447143)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 557](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/563) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1457](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10572075384274854254)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/563).

1. [1458](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2277659075296067846)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 557](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/563) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1459](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5441009981935538893)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of the first line on [page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1460](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15391695322865516506)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. [Page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “the”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1461](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7715832527469579750)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1462](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3938595486812416925)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1463](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8287976643174550234)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1464](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15646581994231515767)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 558](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/564) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1465](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15565415026966693180)

[1840](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1840/547): “prisons”.

1. [1466](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10940330505861019730)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page.

1. [1467](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17477752832525193954)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 559](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/565) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1468](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6845143353884763910)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 559](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/565) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1469](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6579749171792252145)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 443](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/447).

1. [1470](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5920628494296023422)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 560](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/566) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1471](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3668196466043664315)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 561](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/567) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1472](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17043395419616076085)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a line on [page 561](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/567) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1473](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9772068547333154000)

Here and in five other instances on this page: likely “Shiblon”. (See Ether 1:11–12; and Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 6:3718–3720.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1474](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15895054839275694422)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/595): “greater”.

1. [1475](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14607325109276835232)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “mourn” and “ed”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 562](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/568) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1476](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17649468914777587943)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/597): “restrained”.

1. [1477](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6089110715391973429)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/569) omits “not”.

1. [1478](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16813879964839902098)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/572): “which dwelleth”; [1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/601): “who dwell”.

1. [1479](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14882783364913406390)

TEXT: “&” likely represents a misheard “an”. (See Skousen, Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon, 6:3842–3844.)

[Comprehensive Works Cited](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/works-cited)

Skousen, Royal. Analysis of Textual Variants of the Book of Mormon. 6 vols. Provo, UT: Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies, 2004–2009.

1. [1480](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12372853128482119927)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/572) omits “up”.

1. [1481](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2822047345058197743)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 566](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/572) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1482](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17483127033869607506)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of a paragraph on [page 567](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/573) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1483](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3520673229501862133)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following.

1. [1484](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13201984085049794150)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 567](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/573) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1485](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16974699378716236102)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 567](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/573) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1486](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16602179939445724767)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “Cor” and “iantumr”. [Page 568](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/574) of the 1830 edition has a line break after “Cori”; this mark was likely intended to correspond to that line break.

1. [1487](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-830918122429126103)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 568](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/574) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1488](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6020122352257568601)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/603): “restrain”.

1. [1489](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2054851608183846662)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/603): “his”.

1. [1490](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9766512798677202305)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following. Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 568](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/574) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1491](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16429258036062004956)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/575) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1492](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11661159284403474065)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/575) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1493](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10411732036393016065)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/575) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1494](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7548157938747133170)

TEXT: Mark, added by JS, corresponds to the end of [page 569](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/575) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1495](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2635536885802590694)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1496](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6319704285745783264)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1497](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3456510868489780292)

TEXT: There is a fold in the paper between this line and the one following, and graphite is smeared along the fold.

1. [1498](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-18308076052935361412)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1499](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-883374880065244869)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/605): “of”.

1. [1500](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17939171328682677395)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “fright” and “ened”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1501](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14242362171224277473)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576): “Comnor”.

1. [1502](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9654541353087298574)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 570](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/576) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1503](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15128697142527156373)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1504](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13515311350659976674)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1505](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2870297039651452837)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark does not correspond to the end of a line in the [1830 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577).

1. [1506](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-8661430404628085251)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1507](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-3214087522513017987)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1508](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5838144431546081493)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “be” and “fore”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 571](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/577) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1509](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17075760815626429345)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper between “peo” and “ple”. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/578) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1510](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16112537791323959336)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/578) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1511](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15189688160597886387)

TEXT: Pilcrow, added by the compositor, corresponds to a new paragraph on [page 572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/578) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1512](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10118814569172872605)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1513](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-6935034442998402846)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 572](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/578) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1514](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1417479025395001347)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 573](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/579) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1515](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-12141326350228403571)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line.

1. [1516](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15072585747817974829)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper.

1. [1517](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7453534923258248241)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line.

1. [1518](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2519514456445661259)

TEXT: “{b\th}t”, added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), first wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1519](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17634095607448091559)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper.

1. [1520](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9234602455714823616)

TEXT: Inked period after “God” added by JS, or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe. Period after “Amen” added by [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery), or possibly inserted by an unidentified scribe. Though this is the first page of the twenty-first gathering of this manuscript, Oliver Cowdery did not insert a notation marking the gathering.

1. [1521](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16522785265717493760)

TEXT: Page number is visible in the [1923 photos](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-1923-photostatic-copies/455).

1. [1522](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-16403754599897469849)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1523](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-1841854860813890937)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1524](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-14592642355381653486)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1525](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-9676939843226345414)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 576](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/582) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1526](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7900786607881708000)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of a line on [page 576](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/582) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1527](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-17019305904371847325)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from this page. Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1528](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-15372737694522305507)

TEXT: Mark, added by the compositor, corresponds to the end of [page 576](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/582) of the 1830 edition, to the end of a chapter, and to the end of the thirty-sixth gathering of that book.

1. [1529](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-7770543069365340620)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/612): “a”.

1. [1530](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2867815573096987918)

TEXT: The page is cut horizontally below this line, likely for the convenience of the compositor as he set type from manuscript [page 455](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/459). Pinholes indicate that pins were used to hold the two pieces of the page together.

1. [1531](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13831172956427930298)

TEXT: “not” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1532](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-2998082529557549428)

TEXT: [Oliver Cowdery](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/person/oliver-cowdery) began to strike “the” but then aborted the cancellation.

1. [1533](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-11341687709842600151)

TEXT: “ce” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1534](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5875531814395699575)

TEXT: The penciled cancellation of “do it”, by the compositor, is not incorporated into either the [1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/590) or [1837 edition](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/620).

1. [1535](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-5721902041669218695)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/591): “dissented”.

1. [1536](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-4334130989210751305)

[1830](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/591): “dissent”.

1. [1537](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-128704233821229439)

TEXT: Uninked “\” etched into the paper. This mark corresponds to the end of [page 585](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1830/591) of the 1830 edition.

1. [1538](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10767615389076308457)

TEXT: “t◊” wipe-erased and then stricken.

1. [1539](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10501244843134216193)

TEXT: JS apparently began to write “were”.

1. [1540](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-13544369930862798047)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/624): “their”.

1. [1541](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/printers-manuscript-of-the-book-of-mormon-circa-august-1829-circa-january-1830/5#full-10188285427650098721)

[1837](https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/book-of-mormon-1837/625): “Joseph Smith, Jr. the translator”.

© 2021 by Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved. [Terms of Use](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/legal/terms-of-use?lang=eng&country=go) Updated 2018-09-01 | [Privacy Notice](https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/legal/privacy-notice?lang=eng&country=go) Updated 2018-09-01 | Cookie Preferences